Kinyarwanda and Kirundi Comparative Grammar

R. David Zorc
and
Louise Nibagwire
Dunwoody Press’s Bantu language series

  John B. K. Rutayuga, John D. Murphy
- Elementary Swahili Newspaper Reader (1985)
  Agnes Musyoki, John D. Murphy
  Lumana Pashi, Alan Turnbull
  R. David Zorc, Paul Mokabe
  Lioba J. Moshi
- Lingala Parallel Texts (2002)
  David R. Woods
- Rwanda-Rundi Newspaper Reader (2002)
  Louise Nibagwire, R. David Zorc
- Xhosa Newspaper Reader and Lexicon (2002)
  Julian Lloyd, Linda Murphy-Marshall; R. David Zorc, Series Editor since 1998
  Aquilina M. Mawadza
  Derek F. Gowlett; Edited by R. David Zorc
- Kinyarwanda and Kirundi Comparative Grammar (2007)
  R. David Zorc, Louise Nibagwire
Kinyarwanda and Kirundi
Comparative Grammar

R. David Zorc
and
Louise Nibagwire

2007
Dunwoody Press
# Table of Contents

List of Tables ........................................................................................................................................... a

Acknowledgments ........................................................................................................................................ i

Preface ...................................................................................................................................................... iii

A Note on the Rendering of Bantu Language Names in English ................................................................. iii

Differences in Interpretation or Treatment ................................................................................................ iv

Abbreviations ........................................................................................................................................... ix

Resources .................................................................................................................................................. xi

1. Overview of Bantu Grammar ................................................................................................................ 1

1.1. Major Rwanda-Rundi Differences ..................................................................................................... 1

1.1.1. Difference Spelling System ........................................................................................................... 1

1.1.2. Minor Differences in Word Formation ........................................................................................ 2

1.1.3. Differences in Noun Class ........................................................................................................... 2

1.1.4. Differences in Word Pairs ........................................................................................................... 3

1.1.5. Same Words with Different Meaning .......................................................................................... 3

1.1.6. Completely Different Words ...................................................................................................... 4

1.1.7. Different Grammatical Constructions ......................................................................................... 4

1.2. Writing vs. Speech .............................................................................................................................. 6

1.2.1. Homonyms, Homographs, and Homophones ........................................................................... 6

1.2.2. Conjunctive Writing ...................................................................................................................... 9

1.3. Strong vs. Weak Noun Classes ......................................................................................................... 10

1.4. Sound Changes ................................................................................................................................... 12

1.5. The Makeup of Words (Root, Stem, Number of Syllables) ................................................................ 12

1.6. Learning Words Together ................................................................................................................ 13

1.7. Multiple Word Units ........................................................................................................................ 13

1.8. Major Grammatical Categories ......................................................................................................... 14

1.8.1. Person ......................................................................................................................................... 14

1.8.2. Gender ........................................................................................................................................ 17

1.8.3. Class or Noun Groups ................................................................................................................ 18

1.8.4. Number ....................................................................................................................................... 19

1.8.5. Case ............................................................................................................................................... 20

1.8.6. Inflection .................................................................................................................................... 21

1.8.7. Derivation: The Makeup of Word Families ................................................................................. 21

1.9. Irregularities ....................................................................................................................................... 22

1.10. Using a Rwanda-Rundi Dictionary .................................................................................................. 22

2. The Sound System ................................................................................................................................. 23

2.1. Consonants ...................................................................................................................................... 23

2.2. Vowels ............................................................................................................................................. 26

2.2.1. Short Vowels ................................................................................................................................. 27

2.2.1.1. Initial Vowels Are Usually Short ............................................................................................ 27

2.2.1.2. Final Vowels Are Usually Short ............................................................................................ 28

2.2.1.3. Shortening of Long Vowels .................................................................................................... 28

2.2.1.4. The Rwanda Suffix /-aga/ ....................................................................................................... 28

2.2.2. Long Vowels ............................................................................................................................... 29

2.2.2.1. Vowel Sequences Become Long ............................................................................................ 29

2.2.2.2. The Presentative Demonstrative Prefix Has a Long Vowel .................................................. 29

2.2.2.3. Lengthening of a Short Vowel after Possessives or Connectives ........................................... 29

2.2.2.4. Lengthening of a Short Vowel after Certain Markers ............................................................ 29

2.2.2.5. Long Vowels Next to Complex Consonants ........................................................................ 30

2.2.2.6. Long Vowels Follow by a Nasal and a Consonant ................................................................. 30

2.2.2.7. Not All Digraphs Are Complex Consonants ......................................................................... 31

2.2.2.8. Palatalized Labials Can Be Followed by Long or Short Vowels ........................................... 31

2.2.2.9. Lengthening of a Short Vowel before a First Person Object .................................................. 31

2.2.2.10. Lengthening of a Vowel after Negator nt- ............................................................................ 31

2.3. Allophones (Alternate Pronunciation of Sounds) .............................................................................. 32

2.4. Tonality and Intonation ..................................................................................................................... 33

2.4.1. Root Tonality [abr: R] ................................................................................................................ 34

2.4.2. Low Tonality [abr: L] ................................................................................................................ 35

2.4.3. Obligatory High Tonality [abr: T] .............................................................................................. 36
### 8.15. Voice (Passive)

- 8.15.1. The Possessive Verbs
- 8.15.2. The Cognitive Verbs
- 8.15.3. The Comparative Verbs
- 8.15.4. The Prohibitive Verb

### 8.16. Irregular Verbs

- 8.16.1. Copulative Verbs
- 8.16.2. Coverbs
- 8.16.3. Voice (Passive)

### 9. Negatives

- 9.1. Indicative & Subjunctive Negative (nti-, nt-, si-)
- 9.2. Dependent Negative (-ta-, -da-, -t-)
- 9.3. Predicative Negatives
  - 9.3.1. Indicative Predicative Negative (nta, ntaa)
  - 9.3.2. Participial Predicative Negative (ntaa (Rwand), atá (Rundi))
  - 9.3.3. Relative Predicative Negative (ntaa (Rwand), ataa (Rundi))
- 9.4. Invariable Copulative Negative (si, s')
- 9.5. Invariable Negatives (Adverbs, Interjections)

### 10. Auxiliary Verbs

- 10.1. Coverbs
- 10.2. Auxiliary Verbs
- 10.3. Copulative Auxiliary Verbs
- 10.4. Multiple Auxiliary Verbs

### 11. Adverbs

- 11.1. Adverbs of Time
- 11.2. Adverbs of Place
- 11.3. Adverbs of Manner
- 11.4. Adverbs of Degree or Intensity
- 11.5. Adverbs of Measure, Quantity, or Frequency
- 11.6. Adverbs of Opinion
- 11.7. Adverb Derivation
- 11.7.1. Adverbs of Comparison (nka-)
- 11.7.2. Adverbs Marked by na-
- 11.7.3. Adverbs Derived from Nouns

### 12. Conjunctions and Coordination

- 12.1. Coordinating or Non-Influencing Conjunctions
- 12.2. Subordinating Conjunctions
- 12.2.1. Conjunctions Governing the Relative
- 12.2.2. Conjunctions Governing the Participial
- 12.2.3. Conjunctions Governing the Infinitive
- 12.2.4. Conjunctions Governing the Subjunctive
- 12.2.5. Conjunctions Governing the Indicative

### 13. Interrogatives and Question Words

- 13.1. The Overall Structure of Question Sentences
- 13.2. 'Who?' - Person Noun Interrogative (ndé, baandé)
- 13.3. 'What? (invariable /ki/ or root /ké/)
- 13.4. 'What kind or sort of?' (invariable /ki/)
- 13.5. 'Which (of two or several)?' (-he)
- 13.6. 'When? - Time Interrogative (rýaari)
- 13.7. 'Where?' - Place Interrogative (hé and héehé)
- 13.9. 'How?' - Coverb (-té, Adverbial of Manner)
- 13.10. 'Why?' - Reason Interrogative
14. **Interjections** .......................................................... 338
   14.1. Independent Interjections .......................................................... 338
   14.2. Dependent Interjections .......................................................... 338

15. **Ideophones** ............................................................... 340

16. **Word Order** ............................................................. 342
   16.1. Word Order within Phrases (Nouns and Other Elements) .......................................................... 342
   16.1.1. Word Order of Possessive Constructions .......................................................... 342
   16.1.2. Word Order of Adjective Constructions .......................................................... 342
   16.1.3. Word Order of Numeral Constructions .......................................................... 343
   16.1.4. Word Order of Locative Constructions .......................................................... 344
   16.2. Standard Word Order within Sentences [SVO] .......................................................... 346
   16.3. Forms of Sentence Reversal .......................................................... 347
     16.3.1. Passivization [OVS] .......................................................... 348
     16.3.2. Other Kinds of Object-First Constructions [OV(S)] .......................................................... 348
     16.3.3. Indefinite Constructions [VS] .......................................................... 349
     16.3.4. Impersonal Constructions [V(O)] .......................................................... 350
     16.3.5. Locative First Constructions [LocV(S)] .......................................................... 350
     16.3.6. Grammatical Reversal [(O)VS] .......................................................... 351

17. **Index of Grammatical Terminology** .......................................................... 353
List of Tables

A. Differences in Noun Class Treatment........................................................................................................v
B. Differences in Tonal Marking.........................................................................................................................vi
C. Dialect-specific Tonal Marking in Kirundi......................................................................................................vii

Chapter 1
1. Rundi and Rwanda Spelling Differences.................................................................2
2. Minor Rundi and Rwanda Differences.....................................................................2
3. Rundi and Rwanda Noun Class Differences .............................................................3
4. Rundi and Rwanda Word Pairs, One Matched, the Other Completely Different....3
5. Rundi and Rwanda “False Friends”.........................................................................3
6. Different Words in Rundi and Rwanda.................................................................4
7. Some Grammar Differences Between Rundi and Rwanda....................................4
8. Text Example Illustrating Rundi and Rwanda Differences....................................5
9. Primary Homographs in Rundi and Rwanda.........................................................7
10. Derived Homographs in Rundi and Rwanda........................................................7
11. Disjunctive vs. Conjunctive Spelling.................................................................10
12. Weak Noun Forms...............................................................................................10
13. Strong Noun Forms...........................................................................................11
14. Weak vs. Strong Pronoun Forms.........................................................................11
15. Weak vs. Strong in Participial Verbs.................................................................12
16. Person-Oriented (primary) Kin Terms...............................................................15
17. Plural-Possessed (Secondary) Kin Terms............................................................16
18. Singular Possession with General (Non-Personal) Kin Terms............................17
19. English Gender Implied in Noun Classes............................................................18
20. Proto-Bantu and Rwanda-Rundi Noun Classes....................................................19
21. Number Marking in Rwanda-Rundi.....................................................................19
22. Realization of Case in Rwanda-Rundi...............................................................20
23. Example of Derivation (a Word Family) in Rwanda-Rundi..............................21
24. Some Irregular Nouns and Verbs........................................................................22

Chapter 2
25. Kinyarwanda-Kirundi Consonants......................................................................24
26. Acceptance of Kinyarwanda Consonants............................................................24
27. Acceptance of Kirundi Consonants.......................................................................25
28. Kinyarwanda-Kirundi Vowels.............................................................................26
29. Importance of Short vs. Long Vowels.................................................................27
30. Summary of Tone Patterns..................................................................................34

Chapter 3
31. Body Parts among the Noun Classes...................................................................57
32. Time Words among the Noun Classes ................................................................58
33. Word Families among Flora..............................................................................58
34. Rwanda-Rundi Noun Groups..............................................................................59
35a. Group 1 Nouns with Consonant Stems.............................................................66
35b. Group 1 Nouns with Vowel Stems....................................................................67
36a. Group 2 Nouns with Consonant Stems.............................................................73
36b. Group 2 Nouns with Vowel Stems....................................................................74
37a. Group 3 Nouns with Consonant Stems.............................................................79
37b. Group 3 Nouns with Vowel Stems....................................................................79
38a. Group 4 Nouns with Consonant Stems.............................................................85
38b. Group 4 Nouns with Vowel Stems....................................................................86
39a. Group 5 Nouns with Consonant Stems.............................................................90
39b. Group 5 Nouns with Vowel Stems or /'y/.........................................................91
39c. Group 5a and 5b Nouns (Consonant Stems Only)...........................................92
39d. Group 5 and Group 6 Vowel Root Forms.......................................................93
40a. Group 6 Nouns with Consonant Stems............................................................97
40b. Group 6 Nouns with Vowel Stems (See also Table 39d).................................97
41a. Group 7 Nouns with Consonant Stems............................................................100
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 4</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>49. Nominalized Possessive Constructions</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48. Possessive or Noun Phrase Agreement Markers</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47. Group 13 with Consonant and Vowel Stems</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46a. Group 12 with Consonant Stems</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46b. Group 12 with Vowel Stems</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45a. Group 11 Nouns with Consonant Stems</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45b. Group 11 Nouns with Vowel Stems</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 5</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>71. Deictics Oriented to the First Person</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72. Predicative Deictics Oriented to the First Person</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73. Double Predicative Deictics Oriented to the First Person</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74. Affective Deictics Oriented to the First Person</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75. Deictics Oriented to the First and Second Person</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76. Deictics Oriented to the Second Person</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77. Predicative Deictics Oriented to the Second Person</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78. Double Predicative Deictics Oriented to the Second Person</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79. Deictics Oriented to the Second Person Past</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80. Deictics Oriented to the Third Person</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 6</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>82. Adjective Roots in Kinyarwanda and Kirundi</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83. Adjective Agreement Affixes</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84. Adjectives Serving as Nouns</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85. Intensive Adjectives in Kirundi</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 7</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>88. Counting from One through Ten</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
89. Numbers from Eight through Ten (Uninflected) ............................................................................................................ 191
90. Numbers from Eleven through Nineteen (as Roots) ........................................................................................................ 191
91. Numbers from Twenty through Twenty-Nine (in Group 1) .................................................................................. 192
92. Numbers from Thirty through Ninety .................................................................................................................. 193
93. Numbers in the Hundreds ........................................................................................................................................... 194
94. Numbers in the Thousands ........................................................................................................................................ 195
95. Ordinal Numbers ......................................................................................................................................................... 196
96. Counting by Ordinals from One through Ten ............................................................................................................. 197
97. The Traditional Names of the Calendar Months ....................................................................................................... 198
98. Numerical Names of the Calendar Months .............................................................................................................. 199
99. Days of the Week ......................................................................................................................................................... 199
100. Hours of the Day (from Swahili) .......................................................................................................................... 200

Chapter 8
101. Order of Affixes (Morphology) in the Verb Complex ................................................................................................. 202
102. Grammar of the Rwanda-Rundi Verb .................................................................................................................. 202
103. Criteria Determining Government (Conjoint vs. Disjoint) ......................................................................................... 208
104. Tonality of Verbs Having Object Infixes .................................................................................................................. 208
105. Subject vs. Object Relative in Kinyarwanda ............................................................................................................ 235
106. Typical Order of Co-occurring Verb Augments ........................................................................................................... 289

Chapter 9
107. Indicative Predicative Negative .................................................................................................................................... 301
108. Participial Predicative Negative .................................................................................................................................. 302
109. Relative Predicative Negative ....................................................................................................................................... 303
110. Negative Copulative (sí) and Pronoun Roots ............................................................................................................. 304

Chapter 10
111. Quotative Coverb (-ti) ................................................................................................................................................... 307
112. Manner Coverbs (-tyá {both}, -ryá {Rundi}) ............................................................................................................. 307
113. Manner Coverbs (-tyó {both}, -ryó {Rundi}) ............................................................................................................. 308
114. Interrogative Coverb 'How?' (-té) .............................................................................................................................. 309
115. Auxiliary Verbs Governing the Participial ................................................................................................................ 311
116. Auxiliary Verbs Governing the Infinitive .................................................................................................................. 312
117. Auxiliary Verbs Governing the Subjunctive ................................................................................................................ 313
118. Auxiliary Verbs Governing the Indicative Disjoint with -ra- .................................................................................. 314
119. Auxiliary Verbs Governing the Simple Indicative ....................................................................................................... 314
120. Auxiliary Verbs Governing the Subsecutive or Sequence with -ka- ................................................................. 315

Chapter 12
121. Coordinating or Non-Influencing Conjunctions ...................................................................................................... 324
122. Vowel Length and Tone after Conjunctives na- and nka- ......................................................................................... 324
123. Conjunctions Governing the Relative .................................................................................................................. 326
124. Conjunctions Governing the Relative Conditional ............................................................................................... 326
125. Conjunctions Governing the Participial .................................................................................................................. 327
126. Conjunctions Governing the Infinitive .................................................................................................................. 327
127. Conjunctions Governing the Subjunctive .................................................................................................................. 327
128. Conjunctions Governing the Indicative .................................................................................................................. 328

Chapter 13
129. Question Markers ......................................................................................................................................................... 329
130. Declined forms of -ki 'which?' ................................................................................................................................. 331
131. 'Which (of two or several)?' (-hé) ............................................................................................................................... 333
132. Numerical Interrogatives (-ngáahé) .......................................................................................................................... 334
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors would like to express their deepest gratitude to each of the following, without whose help this book could never have been completed.

Prof. Juvenal Ndayiragije who promptly replied to dozens of emailed queries about the complexities of Rundi grammar, and who did a continuous flow of peer reviews as chapters were completed.

Mr. S. J. Harrell who translated the entire Overduvle textbook (1975) into English for us, keyboarded entries from Hurel's grammar (1959) into our database, and who assisted us unfailingly by answering hundreds of queries about the meaning of French words or passages in the various texts we consulted.

Mr. Drew Foerster who keyboarded or proofread in excess of 4,000 Rundi entries from the Rodegem dictionary (1970), and who did a statistical noun-class analysis of the Rundi plant and animal names therein.

Prof. Robert Botne who supported our work from day one and generously sent all of his published articles on Kinyarwanda.

Prof. Alexandre Kimenyi whose enthusiastic support of our work and fair assessments of our first forrays into Kinyarwanda grammar guided us through the beginning phases of our project.

Mr. Jhonny Merino who diligently helped keyboard Kirundi entries into our database.

Dr. Jeanine Ntihirageza who faithfully responded to our last minute queries about Rundi constructions and forms.

Mr. Ntwari Gérard who helped us with many forms for which our understanding of the tonal placement was very poor.

Prof. Derrick Gowlett who showed us where and how Kirundi and Kinyarwanda fit into the overall fabric of Bantu languages.

Dr. Elizabeth M. Bergman who patiently listened to our linguistic problems and always guided us towards supportable conclusions.

Mr. Michael Horlick for his own questions and many answers.

Mr. Ed Whitley and Ms. Carole Breakstone who assiduously proofread the entire manuscript and made hundreds of useful suggestions and emendations.

Mr. Aung Kyaw Oo whose technical expertise in formatting saw this effort through to its final published form.
This book has been prepared to fill a number of needs.

Firstly, no detailed comparison of Kinyarwanda and Kirundi has ever been published. Gasarabwe 1992 is primarily a treatment of Rwanda with a few parallel examples in Rundi (133–42); also see footnote 6 in §1.1.

Secondly most textbooks and grammars are aimed at beginning or intermediate levels (ILR 2-3); they either ignore complex constructions (ILR 4-5) or else mention that they are extremely difficult. In our own research we also faced the same frustration of incompleteness of treatment or exemplification that students have heretofore had to face, such as not having full paradigms of consonant vs. vowel root verbs in all major conjugations or the lack of coverage of how tonality is affected in the various moods and tenses when an object is incorporated into the verb.

Thirdly, most of the information on the grammar of these languages is only available in French; some monolingual publications are also available in each respective language.

Fourthly, while the grammatical structure of these dialects is enormously complex, there are ways to present them in a student-friendly manner.

Lastly, there are a number of innovative approaches herein, such as the difference in declension between vowel-initial roots of n5 with iny- and n6 with inz- (§3.2.6 and Table 39d), the interpretation of mood (§8 #2, Table 102, footnote 346), and the determination that subjunctive is an aspect (rather than a mood) in these languages (see end of footnote 346, §8 #10, §8.5).

We therefore hope to have provided an American learner of either or both of these dialects with an understandable and clear explication of the grammatical challenges these Bantu languages present. Wherever constructions coexist or are parallel, we provide exemplification in both dialects. If there is no parallel construction we explicitly state this.

A Note on the Rendering of Bantu Language Names in English

Many of the people of Rwanda and Burundi would take issue with the use of the Bantu roots for their language names. An appropriate rendition would require Ikinyarwanda and Ikirundi. However, these are the forms that would occur if the words were the first part of a sentence or direct objects of a verb. There are also the shortened forms Kinyarwanda and Kirundi, which are the names most often encountered in the literature1 and which we have used in our title for this book. But the problem does not stop there. A speaker of the language wishes to be identified as Munyarwanda (full form: Umunyarwanda) or Murundi (full form: Umurundi), and the group collectively as Banyarwanda (Abanyarwanda) or Barundi (Abarundi). In short, an English speaker would be required to have a pretty basic knowledge of Bantu grammar in order to talk about Bantu people or their respective languages. But English does not operate this way. Hence, we say Paris, not [parí], Vienna, not [veen], Munich, not [münchen], Canton not [guang zhou]. The recent accommodation of Beijing (for Peking) is relatively rare. Other well-known Bantu languages are also referred to in English by their root (Swahili, Zulu, Xhosa, Sotho, Shona), rather than by the autonym with a class prefix (KiSwahili, IsiZulu, IsiXhosa, SeSotho, ChiShona). With few exceptions, through most of this book we will be using the terms Rwanda and Rundi, since they are the accepted language names in standard American English and further serve to save some space, frequently as they are employed, as abbreviations. In the case of «Rwanda», this does entail a homograph referring both to a country and to its language, but context will always insure which is meant.

1 Only Ntahokaja (1976) uses the full form Ikirundi.
DIFFERENCES IN INTERPRETATION OR TREATMENT

Authors do not always agree in classification or terminology. Usually the student must draw up tables of equivalents if working with more than one book or author. For example, Overdulve (1975:302f and 1998:357) discusses nineteen noun classes, Kimenyi (1980:3) sixteen, while Hands (1952:6), Hurel (1959:21-24) and Cristini (2000:18) only ten. Thirteen are discussed in the present comparative survey. Such discrepancies have to do in part with whether singular and plural forms are treated together (as GROUPS) or separately (as CLASSES), and in part with comparison across the entire Bantu language family. We present a comparative overview in Table A.

Earlier scholars writing on Rwandan grammar interpreted the reciprocal verb augment as –na, whereas virtually every author after 1970 has correctly identified it as –an-. Note that some authors preferred to call it ASSOCIATIVE, either instead of or in addition to characterizing it as RECIPROCAL. There are similar interpretations of –ompí vs. –mpi (Rundi) or –ombi vs. –mbi (Rwanda) 'both' or –ose vs. –se 'all.'

Given such complexities, the introduction of still more technical terms would not normally be welcome. However, in a few instances new terms have been introduced if they could explain some phenomena more clearly, e.g., -ek or -ik [ATTRIBUTIVE verb] (rather than NEUTER, §8.14.5), -er- or -ir- BENEFACTIVE (rather than APPLIED, §8.14.1).

Lastly, where necessary, we have set sail on unchartered waters where scholars have been silent. One such area is that some verb conjugations have more than one tone rule affecting them, sometimes two or three, rarely even four. Furthermore, no grammarian or textbook author (to our knowledge) has outlined the complexity of auxiliary verbs – the number and kind of verbal complements they can govern. Ironically, the most thorough resource that we were able to consult on this topic is not a grammar, but rather a dictionary (Rodegem 1970). There, at appropriate entries, one finds clear statements to this effect:

kugera ... En complexe verbal, ce verbe régit cinq modes: l'indicatif, le conjonctif, l'infinitif, le subjonctif et le subsécutif. Il exprime diverses nuances circonstancielles: enfin, finalement. (Op cit:110f)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>prefix</th>
<th>Zorc herein</th>
<th>ALO, TIO</th>
<th>RLD</th>
<th>RGK</th>
<th>GKH</th>
<th>ERH, NGC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>umu-</td>
<td>n1-sg</td>
<td>c01</td>
<td>c01</td>
<td>c01</td>
<td>1-sg</td>
<td>c1-sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ø-</td>
<td>n1a-sg</td>
<td>no label</td>
<td>c01a</td>
<td>no label</td>
<td>no label</td>
<td>no label</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aba-</td>
<td>n1-pl</td>
<td>c02</td>
<td>c02</td>
<td>c02</td>
<td>1-pl</td>
<td>1-pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ba-</td>
<td>n1a-pl</td>
<td>no label</td>
<td>c02a</td>
<td>no label</td>
<td>no label</td>
<td>no label</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>umu-</td>
<td>n2-sg</td>
<td>c03</td>
<td>c03</td>
<td>c03</td>
<td>2-sg</td>
<td>2-sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imi-</td>
<td>n2-pl</td>
<td>c04</td>
<td>c04</td>
<td>c04</td>
<td>2-pl</td>
<td>2-pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i(ri)-</td>
<td>n3-sg</td>
<td>c05</td>
<td>c05</td>
<td>c05</td>
<td>5-sg</td>
<td>5-sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ama-</td>
<td>n3-pl</td>
<td>c06</td>
<td>c06</td>
<td>c06</td>
<td>5-pl</td>
<td>5-pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iki-</td>
<td>n4-sg</td>
<td>c07</td>
<td>c07</td>
<td>c07</td>
<td>4-sg</td>
<td>4-sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ibi-</td>
<td>n4-pl</td>
<td>c08</td>
<td>c08</td>
<td>c08</td>
<td>4-pl</td>
<td>4-pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iN-</td>
<td>n5-sg</td>
<td>c09</td>
<td>c09</td>
<td>c09</td>
<td>3-sg</td>
<td>3-sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-</td>
<td>n5a-sg</td>
<td>c09a</td>
<td>##</td>
<td>3-pl</td>
<td>3-pl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iN-</td>
<td>n5-pl</td>
<td>c10</td>
<td>c10</td>
<td>c10</td>
<td>3-pl</td>
<td>3-pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uru-</td>
<td>n6-sg</td>
<td>c11</td>
<td>c11</td>
<td>c11</td>
<td>6-sg</td>
<td>6-sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iN-</td>
<td>n6-pl</td>
<td>c10</td>
<td>c10</td>
<td>c10</td>
<td>6-pl</td>
<td>6-pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aga-</td>
<td>n7-sg</td>
<td>c12</td>
<td>c12</td>
<td>c12</td>
<td>7-sg</td>
<td>7-sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utu-</td>
<td>n7-pl</td>
<td>c13</td>
<td>c13</td>
<td>c13</td>
<td>7-pl</td>
<td>7-pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ubu-</td>
<td>n8-sg</td>
<td>c14</td>
<td>c14</td>
<td>c14</td>
<td>8-sg</td>
<td>8-sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ubu-</td>
<td>n8-pl</td>
<td>c14a</td>
<td>##</td>
<td>8-pl</td>
<td>8-pl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ama-</td>
<td>n8-pl</td>
<td>c06</td>
<td>c06</td>
<td>c06</td>
<td>8-pl</td>
<td>8-pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uku-</td>
<td>n9-sg</td>
<td>c15</td>
<td>c15</td>
<td>c15</td>
<td>9-sg</td>
<td>9-sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ku-</td>
<td>n9a-vn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ama-</td>
<td>n9-pl</td>
<td>c06</td>
<td>c06</td>
<td>c06</td>
<td>9-pl</td>
<td>9-pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aha-</td>
<td>n10</td>
<td>c16</td>
<td>c16</td>
<td>c16</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ku-</td>
<td>n11</td>
<td>prep</td>
<td>prep</td>
<td>prep</td>
<td>prep</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu-</td>
<td>n12</td>
<td>prep</td>
<td>prep</td>
<td>prep</td>
<td>prep</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-</td>
<td>n13</td>
<td>prep</td>
<td>prep</td>
<td>prep</td>
<td>prep</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
One of the greatest areas of disagreement is the marking of high tone. The student will be confronted by an array of different conventions, where sometimes the same symbol, e.g., ^ (the circumflex) has a completely different value. An overview is presented in Table B for students who work with other sources. However, all of our representations of both Rwanda and Rundi throughout this book have been regularized (in a single consistent system).

**Table B. Differences in Tonal Marking**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>symbol</th>
<th>explanation</th>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>plain vowel a, e, i, o, u (both)</td>
<td>short vowel</td>
<td>(gu)saba umugezi (gu)shika ikiraro gusa</td>
<td>(gu)saba umugezi (gu)shika ikiraro gusa</td>
<td>ask, request stream, river arrive bridge only, just</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>low tone</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accute á, é, í, ó, ú (both) but {Rwanda} pre-1998</td>
<td>short vowel</td>
<td>inká intébe igiti urugó urutúgu</td>
<td>inká intébe igiti urugó urutúgu</td>
<td>cow seat, chair tree; wood yard, corral shoulder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>high tone</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circumflex â, ê, í, û (Rwanda) recent IRS, TIO</td>
<td>short vowel</td>
<td>inká intébe igiti urugó urutúgu</td>
<td>inká intébe igiti urugó urutúgu</td>
<td>cow seat, chair tree; wood yard, corral shoulder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>high tone</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macron á, é, í, ó, ü (Rundi)</td>
<td>long vowel both with low tone</td>
<td>igisábo icēgēra (ku)gīsha ingōna urūho</td>
<td>igisaabo icyeegeera (ku)giisha intoona uruuo</td>
<td>gourd churn plant sp. make go crocodile gourd utensil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circumflex â, ê, í, û (Rundi)</td>
<td>long vowel</td>
<td>amázi (gu)têka iziko (ku)ryōha (gu)kūnda</td>
<td>amáazi (gu)tēka iziko (ku)ryōha (gu)kūnda</td>
<td>water cook hearth taste good love, like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>on the first mora</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hacek á, é, í, ó, ü (Rundi)</td>
<td>long vowel</td>
<td>ububâsha Abēga umuhiği umukôbwa umûnsi</td>
<td>ububaâsha Abeégä umuhiği umukôbwa umuûnsi</td>
<td>ability (Tutsi clan) hunter girl, daughter day, date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>on the second mora</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>double dots á, é, í, ó, ü (Rundi)</td>
<td>long vowel</td>
<td>bâkoze mwēse narí nzi bóse war-ūzi</td>
<td>[no equivalent tonal pattern in Rwanda]</td>
<td>having done all of you I have known all of them you knew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>on both morae</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Little stick á, é, í, ó, on penult (Rundi)</td>
<td>Dialect difference (high tone on final except for one dialect)</td>
<td>isáhu ikimêne igiti inkóko ubûshe</td>
<td>isahú ikimené igiti inkokó ubushyé</td>
<td>booty fragment tree chicken burning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In 1959, Meeussen (passim) introduced a hacek or “little hat” tone mark, which correlates with a “little stick” tone mark in Rodegem’s *Dictionnaire Rundi-Français* (1970). In both these instances, the authors were trying to accommodate a dialect found in the southwest of Burundi where words which have a high tone on the final vowel in most of Burundi (and all of Rwanda) have a high tone on the penult (second last) vowel.

**Table C. Dialect-specific Tonal Marking in Kirundi**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ama˙ta</td>
<td>milk</td>
<td>ERM:11</td>
<td>amàta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>igi˙ti</td>
<td>tree</td>
<td>ERM:66</td>
<td>igiti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ikimène</td>
<td>fragment</td>
<td>ERM:67</td>
<td>ikimène</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inkôko (nînyînshi)</td>
<td>chickens are many</td>
<td>ERM:19,67</td>
<td>inkóko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iриgi</td>
<td>egg</td>
<td>ERM:68</td>
<td>irigi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isåhu</td>
<td>booty</td>
<td>ERM:9</td>
<td>isåhu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ubûsheye</td>
<td>burning</td>
<td>ERM:67</td>
<td>ubûshe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>umugôzi</td>
<td>cord</td>
<td>ERM:67</td>
<td>umugózi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urukôba</td>
<td>skin</td>
<td>ERM:17</td>
<td>urukôba</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sadly, the introduction of symbols that were not employed in the writing of French, i.e., the macron (for long vowels) and the little stick, resulted in an enormous number of errors of omission in publications typeset by linguistically unsophisticated printer’s assistants. The cumulative effect of dialectal disagreements and unedited infelicities made the student's task all the harder in languages where inappropriate intonation led to confusion or downright misunderstanding.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/</td>
<td>sound change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>//</td>
<td>metathesis (sound switching)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>zero or null (no affix when one might be expected)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[</td>
<td>pronunciation (in phonetic script)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/</td>
<td>the essential sounds of a word in phonemic (not phonetic) script</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;</td>
<td>goes to, becomes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>comes from, derives from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>«»</td>
<td>orthographic form, the way a word is spelled (not pronounced)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>∆</td>
<td>root word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>tone on first vowel after a consonant §2.4.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1pl</td>
<td>first person plural (we)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1sg</td>
<td>first person singular (I)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>tone on second vowel complex §2.4.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2pl</td>
<td>second person plural (you, ye)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2sg</td>
<td>second person singular (you, thou)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3pl</td>
<td>third person plural (they)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3sg</td>
<td>third person singular (he, she, it)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>tone on first mora after prefix §2.4.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A2</td>
<td>tone on second mora after prefix §2.4.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abr</td>
<td>abbreviation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abs</td>
<td>abstract noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj</td>
<td>adjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adv</td>
<td>adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aff</td>
<td>affirmative construction (opposite of negative)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AGC</td>
<td>Coupez. 1980</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AK</td>
<td>Alexandre Kimenyi p.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALO</td>
<td>Overduve et al. 1975</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alt</td>
<td>alternate form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alt sp</td>
<td>alternate spelling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arb</td>
<td>Arabic loanword</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atr</td>
<td>attributive [noun or verb functioning as an adjective]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto</td>
<td>autonomous relative form [autonome]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aux</td>
<td>auxiliary (verb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>borrowed noun tone pattern §2.4.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ben</td>
<td>benefactive verb (do s.t. for or to s.o.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caus</td>
<td>causative verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>any consonant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CC</td>
<td>complex consonant (e.g., rw, mw, tw)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cl</td>
<td>noun class affix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CM</td>
<td>noun class marker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmp</td>
<td>compound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>col</td>
<td>collective noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con</td>
<td>conjoint or dependent verb (having an object or complement)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cond</td>
<td>conditional 'then' verb [Fr conditionnel]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conj</td>
<td>conjunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cop</td>
<td>copulative verb -ba, ni, ri 'to be' or si 'not be'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cw</td>
<td>velarized consonant (e.g., bw, kw, tw)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C'</td>
<td>palatalized consonant (e.g., by, vy, sh, shy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>tonal flip-flop or tone dissimilation §2.4.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEC</td>
<td>Cox. 1969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deic</td>
<td>deictic or demonstrative pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DFB</td>
<td>Bonneau. 1950</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dim</td>
<td>diminutive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dis</td>
<td>disjoint or independent verb form (no object or complement)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ditr</td>
<td>ditransitive verb (takes two objects)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DKB</td>
<td>Cox. 1969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRF</td>
<td>Rodegem. 1970</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRJ1/3</td>
<td>Jacob et al. [3 vols] 1984–1987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>end syllable tone pattern §2.4.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2</td>
<td>second syllable from end tone pattern §2.4.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E3</td>
<td>third syllable from end tone pattern §2.4.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emph</td>
<td>emphatic; emphasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng</td>
<td>English loanword</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERH</td>
<td>Hands. 1952</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERM</td>
<td>Meeussen. 1959</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EWB</td>
<td>Bennett. 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EWK</td>
<td>Kimenyi. 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex</td>
<td>example</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excl</td>
<td>exclamative (used for insistence or contrast)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exis</td>
<td>existential (-ba ho or -ri ho 'there is')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expr</td>
<td>expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ext</td>
<td>extended meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>high tone on affix pattern §2.4.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fact</td>
<td>factitive verb form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fig</td>
<td>figurative meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fr</td>
<td>French loanword</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fut</td>
<td>future tense or preverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G§</td>
<td>see Grammar Section #</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geog</td>
<td>geographic or place name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ger</td>
<td>gerund (verb form)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GKB</td>
<td>Bagein. 1951</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GKH</td>
<td>Hurel. [1911] 1959</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GN</td>
<td>Girard Ntwari p.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GSN</td>
<td>Ntahokaja. 1994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>high tone after prefix (if allowed) §2.4.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hort</td>
<td>hortative verb mood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hyp</td>
<td>hypothetical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>reflexive (ii-) tone pattern §2.4.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idiom</td>
<td>idiomatic construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>if</td>
<td>conditional 'if' verb [Fr conditionnant]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIK</td>
<td>Kimenyi website article on ideophones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IKN</td>
<td>Ntahokaja. n.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imm</td>
<td>immediate tense (present, today past or future)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imp</td>
<td>imperative mood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impf</td>
<td>imperfect verb form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inch</td>
<td>inchoative verb ['becoming']</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ind</td>
<td>indicative verb form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inf</td>
<td>infinitive verb form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr</td>
<td>instrumental ['with, by means of']</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intens</td>
<td>intensive construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intj</td>
<td>interjection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intl</td>
<td>international word (exact donor language unclear)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intr</td>
<td>intransitive verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inv</td>
<td>word order inversion [Fr renversement]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invar</td>
<td>invariable form (does not change)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPA</td>
<td>International Phonetic Alphabet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ir</td>
<td>irregular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRS</td>
<td>Bizimana. 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IYN</td>
<td>Ntahokaja. 1976</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>jump tone pattern (moves right one mora) §2.4.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JeN</td>
<td>Jeanine Ntihirageza p.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JH</td>
<td>Josephine Hatungimana p.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JN</td>
<td>Juvenal Ndayiragije p.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KBS</td>
<td>Stevic. 1965</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kin</td>
<td>kinship term</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>low tone pattern §2.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lit</td>
<td>literally (means)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LN</td>
<td>Louise Nibagire p.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc</td>
<td>locative case (in, at)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>mobile or leftward tone pattern (moves left one mora) §2.4.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
RESOURCES


—. 1980. *Abregé de grammaire rwanda, I-II*. Butare [Rwanda]: Institut national de recherche scientifique. [abr: AGC]


1. OVERVIEW OF BANTU GRAMMAR

Rwanda /ikinyarwaanda/ and Rundi /ikiruúndi/ are the primary and national languages of Rwanda and Burundi, respectively. Both are co-members of a chain of dialects within a northern subgroup of the Bantu language family. Since there are other dialects in each country, some of which are quite divergent, the term RWANDA here refers to the dialect of the greater Kigali area, while RUNDI to that of Bujumbura.

It is assumed that the reader has had some exposure to Rwanda or to Rundi. No matter how one has learned the language, he or she will have encountered many different grammatical patterns, some of which are difficult to control. The more the reader understands about the basic linguistics of this language family, the more effectively one can come to grips with the patterns covered in the study of either dialect. It is the goal of this chapter to introduce the reader to terms and constructions which should help in the understanding of later chapters and to offer a brief overview of the major variations between these two dialects.

1.1. Major Rwanda-Rundi Differences

The differences between these two speech varieties will be detailed throughout this book. However, it would be useful to have a general overview of the nature and ranges of the differences one encounters. The following sections outline them by order of difficulty or complexity, starting with "easy" or "trivial" ones, such as spelling, and ending with "hard" or "subtle" ones, such as grammar.

1.1.1. Different Spelling Systems

Rwanda and Rundi both utilize all but two letters of the Roman alphabet (q and x). Nevertheless, an examination of textual material between the two immediately reveals several differences, which are also reflected in the pronunciation. This comes about mostly when letters (especially «y») are combined «cy, sh, jy, pf», etc. Such two-letter combinations are called DIGRAPHS. There are also three-letter combinations, such as «shy», which are called TRIGRAPHS.

Because of the constant need to distinguish the way these dialects are written from the way they are spoken, we put the way a word is spelled in angle braces «akagwa» and indicate pronunciation (vowel length and tone) within slashes /akáagwa/ {Rwanda} ‘banana beer.’

The following table outlines the spelling differences between Rundi and Rwanda. All of these are AUTOMATIC in that one can work backwards from the Rwandan spelling to that of Rundi, e.g., Rw «cy» > Ru «c», Rw «shy» > Ru «sh», Rw «by» > Ru «vy». The inverse is not possible (e.g., Rundi «sh» ≠ Rwanda «shy»), because both dialects have words with just «sh», such as «ishami» {both} ‘branch,’ «ubushita» {both} ‘smallpox,’ «igishanga» {both} ‘swamp, marsh.’

5 The terms dialect and language are used loosely in everyday conversation. In linguistic terms, the two are bound together in the same definition: a language consists of all the dialects that are connected by a chain of mutual intelligibility. Thus, if a person from Bronx, New York can speak with someone from Mobile, Alabama, and these two can converse with someone from Sydney, Australia without significant misunderstandings, then they all form part of the English language. Kigali and Bujumbura are similarly connected within a chain of dialects that collectively make up the Rwanda-Rundi language.

6 The only attempt to do this kind of comparison in print of which we are aware is Gasarabwe 1992, but the discussion is cursory and brief (133–42). The bulk of that book is dedicated to Rwanda.
1.1.2. Minor Differences in Word Formation

There are many instances in which the two speech varieties have words that are slightly different. However, unlike those described as automatic above, these differences are SPORADIC and, as such, do not continually recur. The student has to memorize such differences as Rundi «–anka» vs. Rwanda «–anga」 'dislike, reject,' because the shift from «k» to «g» is exceptionally rare; witness «inka» {both} 'cow,' «inkono» {both} 'pot,' and over a hundred similar words where «nk» is common to both dialects. Such minor variations involve different consonants, vowels or vowel lengths, tones, or affixes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>summary</th>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>c+y</td>
<td>«cane»</td>
<td>«cyane»</td>
<td>very</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>«canje»</td>
<td>«canyje»</td>
<td>respect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>«icubahiro»</td>
<td>«icyubahiro»</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>«ntaco»</td>
<td>«ntacyo»</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j+y</td>
<td>«-ja»</td>
<td>«-jya»</td>
<td>go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>«jewe»</td>
<td>«jyewe»</td>
<td>I [emph]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>«yanje»</td>
<td>«yanjye»</td>
<td>my [n5-sg]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh+y</td>
<td>«-shira»</td>
<td>«-shyira»</td>
<td>put, place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>«indesho»</td>
<td>«indeshyo»</td>
<td>height</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>«nsha»</td>
<td>«nshya»</td>
<td>new [n5]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v/b+y</td>
<td>«umuvyeyi»</td>
<td>«umubyeyi»</td>
<td>parent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>«goroyye»</td>
<td>«gorohye»</td>
<td>became evening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>«-ivyé»</td>
<td>«-ibye»</td>
<td>stole [perf]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.1.3. Differences in Noun Class

There are a number of words which, while derived from the same root and having the same meaning, happen to fall into different noun classes in each national language. Some of the words in Table 3 are used more frequently in one dialect, but are not unknown in the other. The difference is therefore a matter of frequency rather than non-existence.
Table 3. Rundi and Rwanda Noun Class Differences

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/umudúga/</td>
<td>/imódoká/</td>
<td>automobile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ihahá/</td>
<td>/igihahá/</td>
<td>lung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ikinezero/</td>
<td>/umunezero/</td>
<td>happiness, joy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/igituúngwa, ibituúngwa/</td>
<td>/itúungo, amatúungo/</td>
<td>livestock, domestic animal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/impené/</td>
<td>/ihené/</td>
<td>goat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/uruvyino/</td>
<td>/imbyino/</td>
<td>song (and dance)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ubucafu/</td>
<td>/umucafu/</td>
<td>dust</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.1.4. Differences in Word Pairs

Rundi often has synonyms wherein one word is the same as or similar to the Rwandan word while the other is completely different. Less commonly, it is Rwanda which has a pair while Rundi has one. A mnemonic device to characterize such instances might be "Two for the price of one."

Table 4. Rundi and Rwanda Word Pairs, One Matched, the Other Completely Different

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>his / her</td>
<td>«be, biwe»</td>
<td>«be»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bicycle</td>
<td>«ikenga, igare»</td>
<td>«igare»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but, however</td>
<td>«mugabo, ariko»</td>
<td>«ariko»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost a lot, be expensive</td>
<td>«(ku)zimba»</td>
<td>«(gu)henda, (ku)zimba»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fireplace</td>
<td>«icoto, iziko»</td>
<td>«iziko»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide</td>
<td>«(ku)nyegeza, «(gu)hisha»</td>
<td>«(gu)hisha»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kill</td>
<td>«(ku)gandagura, «(kw)ica»</td>
<td>«(kw)ica»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>left; to the left</td>
<td>«ibubamfu, ibumoso»</td>
<td>«ibumoso»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lion</td>
<td>«intambwe, intare»</td>
<td>«intare»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money</td>
<td>«amahera, amafaranga»</td>
<td>«amafaranga»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elderly person</td>
<td>«umutama, umusaza»</td>
<td>«umusaza»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>search, look for s.t.</td>
<td>«(ku)rondera, «(gu)shaka»</td>
<td>«(gu)shaka»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>«(ku)dandaza, «(gu)curuza»</td>
<td>«(gu)curuza»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>«(gu)tegera, (kw)umva»</td>
<td>«(k)umva»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>want, wish</td>
<td>«(ku)gomba, (gu)shaka»</td>
<td>«(gu)shaka»</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.1.5. Same Words with Different Meaning

There are times when Rundi and Rwanda have INTERDIALECTAL HOMOGRAPHs, i.e., the words look (or even sound) the same, but have a completely different meaning. Within the field of translation, these are known as FALSE FRIENDS, and can lead one away from the true meaning.

Table 5. Rundi and Rwanda "False Friends"

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Rundi meaning</th>
<th>Rwanda meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>«(ku)gana»</td>
<td>mash, extract juice (of bananas); brew (beer)</td>
<td>go towards, go somewhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>«Kigarama»</td>
<td>December</td>
<td>commune in Kibungo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>«Nyakanga»</td>
<td>September /nyakaānga/</td>
<td>July /nyakaānga/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>«umugenzi»</td>
<td>friend</td>
<td>traveler; walker; passerby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>«umushumba»</td>
<td>servant</td>
<td>herder, shepherd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>«umusinzi»</td>
<td>fighter; bully</td>
<td>drunkard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1.1.6. Completely Different Words

Although Rwanda and Rundi have an enormous amount of vocabulary in common, there are words unique to each dialect. The most consistent area of difference is the name of each of the months.7

Table 6. Different Words in Rundi and Rwanda

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>January</td>
<td>«Nzero»</td>
<td>«Mutarama»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>February</td>
<td>«Ruhuhuma», «Nyamagoma»</td>
<td>«Gashyantare»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March</td>
<td>«Ntwarante», «Rwirabura»</td>
<td>«Werurwe»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April</td>
<td>«Ndamukiza», «Kaboza»</td>
<td>«Mata»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May</td>
<td>«Rusama»</td>
<td>«Gicurasi»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>June</td>
<td>«Ruhishi», «Kiyumpu»</td>
<td>«Kamena»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>July</td>
<td>«Mukakaro»</td>
<td>«Nyakanga»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>August</td>
<td>«Myandagaro»</td>
<td>«Kanama»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September</td>
<td>«Nyakanga»</td>
<td>«Nzeri»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>October</td>
<td>«Gitugutu»</td>
<td>«Ukwakira»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>November</td>
<td>«Munyonyo»</td>
<td>«Ugushyingo»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>December</td>
<td>«Kigarama»</td>
<td>«Ukubobo»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cultivator</td>
<td>«umurimiyi»</td>
<td>«umuhinzi»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be dumbfounded, be aghast</td>
<td>«(ku)gwamu gahundwe»</td>
<td>«(ku)gwamu mu kantu»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harvest</td>
<td>«umwimbu»</td>
<td>«umusaruro»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liver</td>
<td>«igitigu»</td>
<td>«umwijjima»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number</td>
<td>«igitigiri», «igiharuro»</td>
<td>«umubare»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or [conj]</td>
<td>«canke»</td>
<td>«cyangwa»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saliva</td>
<td>«amate»</td>
<td>«amacandwe»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>week</td>
<td>«indwi»</td>
<td>«icyumweru»</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.1.7. Different Grammatical Constructions

Finally, while there is substantial overlap, there are several ways in which the grammar patterns of these two dialects differ, as illustrated in Table 7.

Table 7. Some Grammar Differences Between Rundi and Rwanda

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
<th>Grammar function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/-oo/-</td>
<td>/-aa/-</td>
<td>would [conditional] 'we might remember'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/twookwiibuka/</td>
<td>/twaakwiibuka/</td>
<td>will [future preverb] 'he will work'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/-zoo/-</td>
<td>/-zaa/-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/azookora/</td>
<td>/azaakora/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-fise</td>
<td>-fite</td>
<td>have [possessive verb] 'I have'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/mfise/</td>
<td>/mfite/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ø [NIL]</td>
<td>-ga</td>
<td>[recent &amp; preterit suffix] 'he has given'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/yatáanga/</td>
<td>/yatáangaga/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[NO EQUIVALENT]</td>
<td>-aa-zaa-</td>
<td>[conditional future, see §8.1.6] 'we would be better off'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/twaazaakira/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a-</td>
<td>u-</td>
<td>[subject relative] 'he who hits'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/akubita/</td>
<td>/ukúbita/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ní S-Ø-Δ-a</td>
<td>ni-S-Ø-Δ-a</td>
<td>if [hypothetical] 'if I can'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ní nabaashá/</td>
<td>/niimbaashá/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 Speakers of the two dialects get around this difference by referring to a month by its number, i.e., /ukweézi kwaarmbe/ or /ukwaa mbe/ 'first month, January' (see §7.4, Table 98).

8 Both Rundi and Rwanda use the hypothetical conjunctive /ná/, however Rundi forms this with the RECENT RELATIVE (§8.3.2) while Rwanda uses the IMMEDIATE RELATIVE (§8.3.1).
Chapter 1: Overview of Bantu Grammar

| -ra- /muráazi kó .../ | [less frequently used] /muuzi kó .../ | [progressive / factual] 'you know that'
|------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| S-ra-Δ-a /uramenya/    | S-ra-Δ-e {both} /uramenye/       | should [hortative] 'you should know'
| [NO EQUIVALENT] /-ruuzzi/ |                                  | 'see, notice' [irreg v] |

In summary, Table 8 illustrates how all these dialectal differences can combine in an actual text. The Rundi passage (R5 in Nibagwire & Zorc 2002:8) was translated into Rwanda by L. Nibagwire. Superscript numbers relate to the seven differences described in this section.

1 spelling change
2 minor difference in word formation
3 noun class variation
4 word pair as opposed to a single word
5 false friend [Note: none appeared in this text sample]
6 completely different word
7 grammatical variation

Table 8. Text Example Illustrating Rundi and Rwanda Differences

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6Ingene</td>
<td>6Uko</td>
<td>how</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mwezi</td>
<td>Mwezi</td>
<td>he looked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7yasaga</td>
<td>mu gihe</td>
<td>at the time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1c’amasezerano</td>
<td>1cy’amasezerano</td>
<td>of peace treaty</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1y’igiti</th>
<th>1w’igiti</th>
<th>of tree</th>
<th>1y’ubuyonga,</th>
<th>1cy’umuvumu, of fig bark</th>
<th>1ba’komye</th>
<th>1ba’kanye</th>
<th>1ibisanzwe.</th>
<th>1igipande</th>
<th>1gipande</th>
<th>1c’impuzu</th>
<th>1cy’umwenda of clothing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7y’asaka</td>
<td>1cy’amasezerano</td>
<td>he looked</td>
<td>7yasaga</td>
<td>1c’impuzu</td>
<td>1cy’amasezerano</td>
<td>he should know</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1cy’umwenda</td>
<td>1cy’umwenda of clothing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1corohe,</th>
<th>1cyorohe,</th>
<th>it should be supple</th>
<th>1kizingwe,</th>
<th>1kizingwe it should be pliable</th>
<th>1kandi</th>
<th>1kandi also</th>
<th>1laje</th>
<th>1laje 7aragiterera</th>
<th>1ajye 7agiterera</th>
<th>so he would throw it</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ku rutugu</td>
<td>1cyorohe,</td>
<td>it should be supple</td>
<td>ku rutugu</td>
<td>1cyorohe, on (big) shoulder</td>
<td>1c’iburyo</td>
<td>1c’iburyo (of) right</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ku rutugu on shoulder</td>
<td>1kizingwe,</td>
<td>1kizingwe it should be pliable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uko ashatse.</td>
<td>ku rutugu on shoulder</td>
<td>1c’iburyo (of) right</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uko ashatse.</td>
<td>ku rutugu on shoulder</td>
<td>1c’iburyo (of) right</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as he wished.</td>
<td>ku rutugu on shoulder</td>
<td>1c’iburyo (of) right</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1hashororoka</th>
<th>1hashokaga</th>
<th>there tumbled down</th>
<th>1imihivu.</th>
<th>1uruhivu. raffia fibers.</th>
<th>Hagati ku mutwe</th>
<th>1hasigara</th>
<th>1hasigara there remained</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7hasigara</td>
<td>7hashokaga</td>
<td>there remained</td>
<td>7imihivu.</td>
<td>7uruhivu. raffia fibers.</td>
<td>Hagati ku mutwe</td>
<td>7hasigara</td>
<td>7hasigara there remained</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>6akagundu k’umushatsi</th>
<th>6isunzu</th>
<th>tuft of hair</th>
<th>1ahasigaye</th>
<th>1ahasigaye the place that remains</th>
<th>1hari</th>
<th>1hakaba</th>
<th>1uruhara.</th>
<th>1uruhara.</th>
<th>1y’isenga,</th>
<th>1y’isenga, of charm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7Mu gikonjo</td>
<td>7Ku gikonjo on wrist</td>
<td>1yasara</td>
<td>1yambara</td>
<td>1yambara he wore</td>
<td>1imiringa</td>
<td>1ibiri</td>
<td>1y’isenga,</td>
<td>1y’isenga, of charm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7Mu gikonjo on wrist</td>
<td>7Ku gikonjo on wrist</td>
<td>1yasara</td>
<td>1yambara</td>
<td>1yambara he wore</td>
<td>1imiringa</td>
<td>1ibiri</td>
<td>1y’isenga,</td>
<td>1y’isenga, of charm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7akagundu k’umushatsi</td>
<td>6isunzu</td>
<td>tuft of hair</td>
<td>1ahasigaye</td>
<td>1ahasigaye the place that remains</td>
<td>1hari</td>
<td>1hakaba</td>
<td>1uruhara.</td>
<td>1uruhara.</td>
<td>1y’isenga,</td>
<td>1y’isenga, of charm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7hashororoka</td>
<td>7hashokaga</td>
<td>there tumbled down</td>
<td>1imihivu.</td>
<td>1uruhivu. raffia fibers.</td>
<td>Hagati ku mutwe</td>
<td>7hasigara</td>
<td>7hasigara there remained</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1hashororoka</th>
<th>1hashokaga</th>
<th>there tumbled down</th>
<th>1imihivu.</th>
<th>1uruhivu. raffia fibers.</th>
<th>Hagati ku mutwe</th>
<th>7hasigara</th>
<th>7hasigara there remained</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7hasigara</td>
<td>7hashokaga</td>
<td>there remained</td>
<td>7imihivu.</td>
<td>7uruhivu. raffia fibers.</td>
<td>Hagati ku mutwe</td>
<td>7hasigara</td>
<td>7hasigara there remained</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>7Mu gikonjo</th>
<th>7Ku gikonjo on wrist</th>
<th>1yasara</th>
<th>1yambara</th>
<th>1yambara he wore</th>
<th>1imiringa</th>
<th>1ibiri</th>
<th>1y’isenga,</th>
<th>1y’isenga, of charm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7Mu gikonjo</td>
<td>7Ku gikonjo on wrist</td>
<td>1yasara</td>
<td>1yambara</td>
<td>1yambara he wore</td>
<td>1imiringa</td>
<td>1ibiri</td>
<td>1y’isenga,</td>
<td>1y’isenga, of charm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>7nini ’na ’ntoyi,</th>
<th>7umunini ’n’umuto, large and small</th>
<th>1igafatwa</th>
<th>1igafatwa and they are held</th>
<th>1n’uruhare</th>
<th>1n’agakwege gato cyane by very thin wire</th>
<th>1rw’umujumbu.</th>
<th>1k’umuringa. of copper</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7Akagundu k’umushatsi</td>
<td>6isunzu</td>
<td>tuft of hair</td>
<td>1ahasigaye</td>
<td>1ahasigaye the place that remains</td>
<td>1hari</td>
<td>1hakaba</td>
<td>1uruhara.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5
1.2. Writing vs. Speech

Because we have been educated in literacy from a very early age, we tend to think of language in terms of its written form. We forget that language, almost by definition, is a spoken medium. Nevertheless, there are many who primarily, if not exclusively, deal with the written form of a language (e.g., reading books or newspapers, translating texts, working through forms or other documents, etc.). In having to do so, one misses the many subtleties and clues presented by the spoken language, such as intonation, gesture, and even context. In the case of tone languages this can readily lead to misunderstanding or misinterpretation.

The Roman alphabet characters chosen for Rwanda and Rundi capture the consonant sounds fairly well, but the five vowel symbols «a, e, i, o, u» are unmarked for both length and tone. The absence of such distinction leads to serious problems in interpretation of which the student or translator must be aware.

1.2.1. Homonyms, Homographs, and Homophones

A HOMONYM is one of two or more forms that have the same sound but a completely different meaning. Thus the combination of English sounds /rayt/ can refer to:

- correct «right»
- the opposite of left «right»
- to put down in graphic form «write»
- a profession title «wainwright»
- a family name «Wright»

Because we spell some of these differently, even if they are pronounced the same, we need the term HOMOPHONE (a word with the same sound but a different spelling). When we consider a word like English «close», we also need the term HOMOGRAPH (for a word with the same spelling but a different sound) because it is spelled the same, but pronounced differently: /klos/ as opposed to /kloːz/. Note that in some dialects of English the verb «close» is itself a homophone of the noun «clothes». There are very many homographs in Rwanda-Rundi, which could seriously affect the correctness of a translation or interpretation.9 Especially when dealing with the written form, one should understand that, while many words may be spelled the same, they may have different tones or vowel length. Hence they are not homonyms, but rather HOMOGRAPHS.

The forms in Table 9, which would all be written «gusoma», illustrate what may be called PRIMARY HOMOGRAPHS, similar to English «light» 'not heavy' – «light» 'not dark.' What is important is that they are all the same part of speech and therefore can more readily lead to confusion.

| Throughout this book phonemic representation for vowels in BOTH Rwanda and Rundi will follow these conventions: |
| a long vowel is doubled /aa, ee, ii, oo, uu/ |
| a high tone vowel has an acute accent /â, é, ì, ó, ú/ |
| a low tone vowel is unmarked /a, e, i, o, u/ |

9 Cristini exemplifies this for Rundi in considerable detail (2000:13).
Chapter 1: Overview of Bantu Grammar

Table 9. Primary Homographs in Rundi and Rwanda

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/gusoma/ {both}</th>
<th>to read</th>
<th>v-tr-inf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/gusoma/ {both}</td>
<td>to drink</td>
<td>v-tr-inf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/kugaba/ {both}</td>
<td>to distribute one's goods; to pass out gifts</td>
<td>v-tr-inf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/kugaba/ {both}</td>
<td>to rule over, to be master of, to dominate</td>
<td>v-tr-inf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umushitsi/ {Rundi}</td>
<td>guest, visitor, stranger</td>
<td>n1-sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umushitsi/ {Rwanda}</td>
<td>exorcist, sorcerer, wizard</td>
<td>n1-sg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are also SECONDARY or DERIVED HOMOGRAPHs, similar to English «raise» – «rays», in which the difference is exaggerated by different grammar patterns, e.g., verb root vs. plural noun. In Rwanda-Rundi, there are a variety of prefix combinations written as «ba-», which can be /ba-/ {both} [subject], /b-aa/- {both} [subject + recent past], /b-aá/- {both} [subject + preterit], /b-aa/- {Rwanda} [subject + conditional] made all the more difficult by the failure to represent long vowels and tones in writing. The examples in Table 10, which would all be written «basoma»,

Table 10. Derived Homographs in Rundi and Rwanda

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/basoma/ {both}</th>
<th>they are reading s.t.</th>
<th>indicative affirmative immediate imperfect conjoint11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/baasoma/ {Rundi}12</td>
<td>they recently read s.t.</td>
<td>indicative affirmative recent imperfect conjoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/baasoma/ {Rundi}13</td>
<td>they have read s.t.</td>
<td>indicative affirmative preterit imperfect conjoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/baasoma/ {Rwanda}14</td>
<td>they would read</td>
<td>indicative affirmative conditional immediate imperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/basoma/ {both}</td>
<td>they reading</td>
<td>participial affirmative immediate imperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/baasoma/ {Rundi}15</td>
<td>they having read (recently)</td>
<td>participial affirmative recent imperfect conjoint or disjoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/báasoma/ {Rundi}16</td>
<td>they having read (formerly)</td>
<td>participial affirmative preterit imperfect disjoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/basomá/ {both}</td>
<td>who read; that they read</td>
<td>relative affirmative immediate imperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/baasomá/ {Rundi}17</td>
<td>who recently read</td>
<td>relative affirmative recent imperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/baasomá/ {Rundi}18</td>
<td>who have read</td>
<td>relative affirmative preterit imperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/baasomá/ {Rwanda}19</td>
<td>if they read; who then would read</td>
<td>relative affirmative conditional immediate imperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/basómá/ {both}20</td>
<td>those who read</td>
<td>reduced autonome affirmative immediate imperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/baasómá/ {Rundi}21</td>
<td>those who read (recently)</td>
<td>reduced autonome affirmative recent imperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/baasómá/ {Rundi}22</td>
<td>those who read (formerly)</td>
<td>reduced autonome affirmative preterit imperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/baasómá/ {Rwanda}23</td>
<td>those who would read</td>
<td>reduced autonome affirmative conditional imperfect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10 Many of these are adapted from Kimenyi 1980:212–6, but our representation of tone differs from his. For additional Rundi examples, see the excellent paradigm for «bavuze» in Cristini 2000:13.
11 The disjoint form in both Rwanda and Rundi is /barasoma/.
12 Rwanda is /baasomaga/.
13 Rwanda is /baasomaga/.
14 Rundi is /boosoma/.
15 Rwanda is /baasomaga/.
16 Rwanda is /báarasómaga/.
17 Rwanda is /baasomága/.
18 Rwanda is /baásomaga/.
19 Rundi is /boósomá/.
20 As in /mu básoma/ {both} 'among those who read.'
21 As in /mu baásoma/ {Rundi} 'among those who read (recently);' Rwanda would be /baásomaga/.
22 The preterit is homographic with the recent; thus /mu baásoma/ {Rundi} 'among those who read (formerly).'</ref>
23 Rundi is /boósoma/.
Chapter 1: Overview of Bantu Grammar

The above HOMOGRAPHs are the most frequent because they involve the forms of any verb so conjugated. There are other areas where one must be on guard for the possibility of different interpretations. There are, of course, true HOMONYMS, which are words identical in both vowel length and tone. The following pairs have neither long vowels nor high tone, i.e., they all have short low-toned vowels:

«buri» /buri/ {Rwanda} (1) pro-dist ‘each, every’

«guma» (ku)/guma/ (both) (1) v-intr ‘be firm, hard, solid, stable, permanent; [ext] stay, remain, dwell’

«kena» (gu)/kena/ (both) (1) v-st ‘be poor; become indigent; live in poverty’

There are also sets of words which have the same tone pattern, although this is unmarked in the orthography. The following are homonyms that have a high tone on the final syllable:

«hamwe» /hamwé/ (both) (1) num-n10-loc ‘one (place)’

«kuna» (gu)/kúunda/ (both) (1) v-tr ‘like, love’

These homonyms have a long vowel in the first syllable with high tone on the first mora:

«bumba» (ku)/búumba/ (both) (2) v-tr ‘form, shape, work (clay), mold (pottery), make (bricks)’

«cana» (gu)/céana/ (both) v-recip ‘cut one another; separate oneself from, fall out (of people)’

«eza» (kw)/éezá/ (both) (1) v-caus ‘whiten, brighten, make white’

«kanda» (gu)/kúnda/ (both) (1) v-tr ‘like, love’

Some are homographs which differ in vowel length:

«gisha» (ku)/giisha/ (both) v-caus ‘cause to go’

«hisha» (gu)/hiisha/ (both) v-caus ‘cause s.o. to get burned; let s.t. be cooked; make s.t. become ripe’

Still others differ in tone:

«inda» /inda/ (both) n5-sg/pl ‘belly, abdomen, stomach’

«ryari» /ryáari/ (both) qw-adv-time ‘when?’

«zima» /kuzima/ (both) adj-n9-sg ‘healthy, well; alive; normal’

24 Rundi is «umwe-umwe» /umwúumwé/.

25 The term MORA refers to the length of time it takes to pronounce a single vowel (this obviously differs from speaker to speaker). A long vowel consists of two MORAS or two MORAE (see §2.2).

26 Rundi is /igitigú/ ‘liver.’
There are homographs that differ in both tone and vowel length:

- «hana» /gu:háana/ {both} v-tr 'punish, reprimand' –
- /gu:háana/ {both} v-recip 'give to each other, exchange'

- «ikutia» /ikiiizá/ {both} n4-sg 'disaster, famine, epidemic; illness' –
- /kw:ikiiizá/ {both} v-refl 'save oneself; heal spontaneously (of a wound)'

- «pfuka» /gu:pfúka/ {both} v-tr 'cover' –
- /gu:pfúka/ {both} v-atr 'be dead (of hair only), be defeathered; lose one's hair, feathers'

Although a study of the contrasting meaning of the above examples would illustrate that homonyms can seriously affect the correctness of a translation, this point is particularly brought home by the stark differences of the following words:

- «gwira» /ku:gwíira/ {both} v-ben 'fall on or at (a specific place)' –
- /ku:gwíira/ {both} v-st 'increase, be numerous; multiply'

- «nebwa» /ku:nebwa/ {both} v-st 'loaf around; be lazy; have nothing to do' –
- /ku:nebwa/ {both} v-pass 'be excreted'

- «rwaza» /ku:rwáaza/ {both} (1) v-caus 'sicken, make s.o. sick' –
  (2) v-tr 'nurse, aid or help s.o. who is sick; have s.o. who is sick in one's household'

- «zira» /ku:zíra/ {both} v-st 'be forbidden, prohibited, taboo, illegal' –
- /ku:zíra/ {both} v-ben 'come to s.o., visit; come (at a certain time)'

Difficult as this may appear, most homonyms can be differentiated by their CONTEXT in a sentence. One should always be on the lookout for clues. For example, a capital letter would help distinguish the following two words:

- «bukeye» /búkeeye/ {both} adv-time 'the next morning, the following day' –
- Bukeye pn-geog (commune in the province of Muramvya in Burundi)

Surrounding grammar also helps clarify which form is intended:

- «umwe» /umwé/ {both} num-n1-sg 'one' – (2) num-n2-sg 'one'
- «umuntu umwe» {both} 'one person' [n1]
- «umwaka umwe» {both} 'one year' [n2]
- «umusozi umwe» {both} 'one hill' [n2]
- «umwana umwe» {both} 'one child' [n1]

Here are some other examples of where and how grammatical clues help make the meaning of homonyms clear:

- «nkabaruhurira» (R28.2) could mean 'and I allow [you / them] to rest,' but given the context of «Si jye ubacanira indaro, ngahemba abakozi, kandi nkabaruhurira bakaryama» the -ba- refers to abakozi 'workers,' and is therefore an object form of the group 1 plural, i.e., 'them.'
- «tubamenyeshe ko» (R30.2) could be translated as 'we should inform [you / them] that' – in the context of a news report on a soccer game, the author is addressing the readers, hence, 'you.'

Furthermore, many homonyms involve special applications within a single word class (such as a marker of subject, object, or relative agreement).

1.2.2. Conjunctive Writing

English generally writes DISJUNCTIVELY, that is, whole words are separated by spaces, as in they will have bought it. Rwanda-Rundi, on the other hand, represent entire verb phrases CONJUNCTIVELY (written together), as in /bazaabisoma/ {Rwanda} or /bazoobisoma/ {Rundi} 'they will read them' and /ukawuroonga/ {both} 'then you rinse it' (R18). This is the case in many other
Bantu languages, such as Swahili, Shona, Xhosa, and Zulu, where everything in agreement is written together as one word.27

This is reasonably well established for verbs. However, there are some other areas where authors do not agree. This especially applies to locative constructions where mw- or mu, kw- or ku, and i- may be written either disjunctively or conjunctively.

### Table 11. Disjunctive vs. Conjunctive Spelling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DISJUNCTIVE SPELLING</th>
<th>CONJUNCTIVE SPELLING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>«i bunyina»</td>
<td>«ibunyina»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>«i muhira»</td>
<td>«imuhira»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>«kw isi / ku isi»</td>
<td>«kwisi / kw'isi»</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>«mw ishure / mu ishure»</td>
<td>«mwishure / mw'ishure»</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 1.3. Strong vs. Weak Noun Classes

If a noun prefix consists of a single vowel, e.g., «i–», or if it always has a single nasal, «m, n», then it is called a WEAK NOUN, and follows different rules from strong nouns. One must draw a distinction between a WEAK m vs. a STRONG m. The former (in n1-sg, n2-sg, n3-pl, etc.) will be lost (see Tables 12, 14, 15); the latter (in n12-loc and pro-2pl) will be retained or strengthened into the cluster mw (see Tables 13–15). Weak verb forms have shorter prefixes and sometimes a different tone pattern from their strong counterparts, a factor which applies across the entire Rwanda-Rundi grammatical system. This affects subject agreement in that only the class vowel survives while any nasal is lost. In the possessive,29 one of two semivowels will always appear: w, for forms originally with u, and y for forms with i or a. Demonstrative pronouns or deictics (§5) are included in Tables 12–13 because their derivation heavily reflects this distinction. Weak forms of the first person affective [deic1 emph] (Table 12) have high tone on the final syllable; strong forms (Table 13) have high tone on the penult. In the third person [deic-3], high tone is on the first of two long vowels (on the second in the strong).

### Table 12. Weak Noun Forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>weak noun</th>
<th>prefix</th>
<th>subj</th>
<th>poss</th>
<th>num</th>
<th>deic-1</th>
<th>deic1emph</th>
<th>deic1+2</th>
<th>deic-2</th>
<th>deic-3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n1-sg</td>
<td>umu-</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>wa waa u-</td>
<td>uyu</td>
<td>unó</td>
<td>urya</td>
<td>uwo</td>
<td>uríiya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1a-sg</td>
<td>Ø-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-sg</td>
<td>umu-</td>
<td>u-</td>
<td>wa waa u-</td>
<td>uyu</td>
<td>unó</td>
<td>urya</td>
<td>uwo</td>
<td>uríiya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-pl</td>
<td>imi-</td>
<td>i-</td>
<td>ya yaa i-</td>
<td>iyí</td>
<td>inó</td>
<td>irya</td>
<td>iyo</td>
<td>iríiya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-pl</td>
<td>ama-</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>ya yaa a-</td>
<td>aya</td>
<td>anó</td>
<td>arya</td>
<td>ayo</td>
<td>aríiya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8 n9</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>i-</td>
<td>ya yaa i-</td>
<td>iyí</td>
<td>inó</td>
<td>irya</td>
<td>iyo</td>
<td>iríiya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-sg</td>
<td>iN-</td>
<td>i-</td>
<td>ya yaa i-</td>
<td>iyí</td>
<td>inó</td>
<td>irya</td>
<td>iyo</td>
<td>iríiya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n13</td>
<td>i-</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>ya8º</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>nó</td>
<td>iryá</td>
<td>iyo</td>
<td>iríiya</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

27 An exception among Bantu languages is Sotho, wherein nouns are written conjunctively, but verbs are written disjunctively, e.g., «o ile a mo tswala» ‘she gave birth to him’ (Zorc & Mokabe 1998:132), which in Rwanda would be rendered conjunctively as «yaramubyaye».

28 This valuable distinction does not appear in any discussion of Rwanda or Rundi, but can be found in some grammars of South African Bantu languages, such as Xhosa (Dowling 1998:37, 57, 123, 157).

29 Only weak nouns have an alternate possessive, short vs. long vowel; strong nouns (Table 13) have a single form with a long vowel, high tone on the first.

30 It is probable that possessive constructions involving locatives (e.g., «haruguru y'amavi» 'above the knees') represent n13 rather than n5-sg.
In contrast, a STRONG NOUN has a consonant (stop or strong nasal) within its prefix. Note how each affix tends to keep its shape (its characteristic class marker) intact throughout. There are only two exceptions: the n3-sg has a thematic consonant r- which does not appear in the prefix (i-) and n5-pl/n6-pl has a thematic consonant z- which also does not appear in the prefix (iN-). The irregularity is actually in the class prefix (where the consonant is lost), not in the various derivations (all of which retain the consonant). The first person affective [deic1-emph] has high tone on the penultimate syllable (whereas in the weak classes it is on the final syllable). The third person deictic has a high tone on the second of the long vowels, as well as on its first (thematic) syllable.

Table 13. Strong Noun Forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>strong noun</th>
<th>prefix</th>
<th>subj</th>
<th>poss</th>
<th>num</th>
<th>deic-1</th>
<th>deic1-emph</th>
<th>deic1+2</th>
<th>deic-2</th>
<th>deic-3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n1-pl</td>
<td>aba-</td>
<td>ba</td>
<td>baa</td>
<td>ba-</td>
<td>aba</td>
<td>báno</td>
<td>bárya</td>
<td>abo</td>
<td>báriiya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-sg</td>
<td>i-</td>
<td>ri</td>
<td>rya</td>
<td>ri-</td>
<td>iño</td>
<td>ríya</td>
<td>ríyo</td>
<td>ríriya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-sg</td>
<td>iki-</td>
<td>ki</td>
<td>cyaa</td>
<td>ki-</td>
<td>iki</td>
<td>kírya</td>
<td>icyo</td>
<td>kíriiya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-pl</td>
<td>ibi-</td>
<td>bi</td>
<td>byaa</td>
<td>bi-</td>
<td>ibi</td>
<td>bírya</td>
<td>ibyo</td>
<td>bíriiya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-pl</td>
<td>iN-</td>
<td>zi</td>
<td>zaa</td>
<td>cEC-</td>
<td>izi</td>
<td>zírya</td>
<td>izo</td>
<td>zíriiya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-sg</td>
<td>uru</td>
<td>ru</td>
<td>rwa</td>
<td>ru-</td>
<td>urú</td>
<td>rúrya</td>
<td>urwo</td>
<td>rúriiya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-pl</td>
<td>utu</td>
<td>tu</td>
<td>twaa</td>
<td>tu-</td>
<td>utú</td>
<td>túrya</td>
<td>utwo</td>
<td>túriiya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-sg</td>
<td>ubu</td>
<td>bu</td>
<td>bwa</td>
<td>bu-</td>
<td>ubú</td>
<td>búrya</td>
<td>ubwo</td>
<td>búriiya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-loc</td>
<td>aha</td>
<td>ha</td>
<td>haa</td>
<td>ha-</td>
<td>aha</td>
<td>hárya</td>
<td>aho</td>
<td>háriiya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11-loc</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>kwa</td>
<td>ku-</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>kúrya</td>
<td>uko</td>
<td>kúriiya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n12-loc</td>
<td>mu</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>mwa</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>umu</td>
<td>múrya</td>
<td>umwo</td>
<td>múriiya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


This distinction also applies to the PRONOUNS in that factors of vowel length or tone differ in various inflections between the WEAK and the STRONG forms (Table 14).

Table 14. Weak vs. Strong Pronoun Forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>weak form</th>
<th>subject</th>
<th>recent conjoint</th>
<th>recent disjoint</th>
<th>preterit</th>
<th>object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pro-1sg I</td>
<td>u-, w-</td>
<td>na-</td>
<td>na-</td>
<td>na-</td>
<td>-n-, -m-, -ny-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2sg you</td>
<td>u-, w-</td>
<td>wa-</td>
<td>waa-</td>
<td>wa-</td>
<td>-ku-, -gu-, -kw-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-3sg (s)he</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>ya-</td>
<td>yaa-</td>
<td>ya-</td>
<td>-mu-, -mw-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>strong form</th>
<th>subject</th>
<th>recent conjoint or disjoint</th>
<th>preterit</th>
<th>object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pro-1pl we</td>
<td>tu-</td>
<td>twa-</td>
<td>twaá-</td>
<td>-tu-, -du-, -tw-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2pl you</td>
<td>mu-, mw-</td>
<td>mwa-</td>
<td>mwaá-</td>
<td>-ba-, -b-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-3pl they</td>
<td>ba-, b-</td>
<td>baa-</td>
<td>baá-</td>
<td>-ba-, -b-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

While such distinctions appear to be GRAMMATICAL (i.e., a NUMBER difference between singular and plural pronouns), they are actually based upon sounds (the PHONOLOGICAL makeup): the weak pronouns consist of vowels (a-, u-) or a weak nasal (n-), whereas the strong forms consist of stop

31 There is no alternative possessive as occurs for weak nouns in Table 12.
consonants (b-, t-), a strong nasal (m-), or consonant clusters (mw-, tw-). Note that the second person singular pronoun irregularly becomes strong in its object forms (acquiring a k- or g-).

This difference pervades the grammar and will come up again and again in later chapters. Table 15 contains one further illustration of this phenomenon.

Table 15. Weak vs. Strong in Participial Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>Weak form</th>
<th>Strong form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ngéenda</td>
<td>nkóra</td>
<td>ntágeendá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ugéenda</td>
<td>ukóra</td>
<td>utágeendá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agéenda</td>
<td>akóra</td>
<td>atágeendá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>túgeenda</td>
<td>dúkora</td>
<td>tütageendá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>múgeenda</td>
<td>múkora</td>
<td>mútageendá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bágeenda</td>
<td>bákora</td>
<td>bátageendá</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sources: Juvenal Ndayiragije (pc), Cristini 2000:193 but the forms with -ta- before a voiceless consonant are in error; Overdulve 1975:156 for negative participial (his conjunction).

1.4. Sound Changes

There are some very unusual sound changes in Rwanda-Rundi. It takes considerable sophistication to know that /impuunzi/ {both} 'refugee; deserter' is a regularly derived noun from /–huunga/ 'flee, run away,' or that /inzúki/ {both} is the plural form of /uruyúki/ 'bee.' These are treated in detail in the next chapter (§2.5), and also relate to the discussion in §1.10 about finding a word in a dictionary.

1.5. The Makeup of Words (Root, Stem, Number of Syllables)

One of the more important distinctions to be aware of is between roots and stems. A ROOT is the minimal part of a word that carries its basic meaning (some linguists use the term RADICAL); a STEM is a form to which affixes may be or have been added. There are also little word bits (affixes) of all kinds which are used to create words in different grammatical categories. Some affixes come before the root and are called PREFIXES, others come after the root and are called SUFFIXES. In some languages, an affix can come in the middle of a word, and these are called INFIXES. In English, friend is a root, but it can also be the stem to which –ly is added in friendly. However, in the word unfriendliness, un- is a prefix, while friendliness is now the stem and friend is still the root. In Rwanda-Rundi, /–kór–/ is the root meaning ‘do, work’ in /bakoré/ ‘they should work,’ which has the prefix ba- and the subjunctive suffix -e; /–kóra/ is the primary stem to which affixes may be added, e.g., /bakora/ ‘they work’, or /barakóra/ ‘they are working.’ Such stems can grow. Thus in the following instances /–kór–/ remains the root: /–kóreesha/ ‘cause to work, use,’ /–kóra/ ‘work for someone; do something for a reason,’ /–kóra/ ‘work together,’ /–kórwa/ ‘be done,’ /igikorwá/ ‘task; product.’ There is also a secondary (or perfective) root /–kóz–/, used in the perfect stem /–kóze/ ‘did, worked,’ which also appears in the noun /umukózi/ ‘worker’ and in the common expression /urakóze/ ‘thank you!’

In Rwanda-Rundi there are different kinds of roots. Being aware of these can help in remembering how to handle them correctly. For example, there are roots of just one syllable (MONOSYLLABIC roots), e.g., /–nywá/ ‘drink’ and /–ryá/ ‘eat,’ and there are those of two syllables (DISYLLABIC roots), e.g., /–kúnda/ ‘love’ and /–shaaka/ ‘seek,’ or more (POLYSYLLABIC roots), e.g., /–gerageza/ ‘try’ and /–sóbaanura/ ‘explain.’

There is also a distinction between roots that begin with a consonant (CONSONANT ROOTS), e.g., /–kúbuura/ ‘sweep’ or /–guruka/ ‘fly,’ as opposed to those which begin with a vowel (VOWEL ROOTS), e.g., /–aandika/ ‘write’ or /–úubaka/ ‘build.’
of its prefix, thus: /dukubuura/ ‘we sweep’ (every day), /tuguruka/ ‘we take off’ (every day at 5:00 P.M.), /twaandika/ ‘we write’ (every day), /twuubaka/ ‘we build’ (houses). In Rwanda, one needs to distinguish verbs beginning with o- from all other vowels because the infinitive is reduced to k-, e.g., /kootsa/32 {Rwanda} ‘to roast.’

1.6. Learning Words Together

Apart from several INVARIABLES (adverbs, prepositions, and interjections), one rarely learns a single word alone in any Bantu language. Students face a kind of "double jeopardy"33 in that they must learn nouns and verbs in pairs, adjectives and noun classifiers in sets, and the varying grammatical conditions that preverbs and conjunctions govern.

With nouns, one must learn the singular and plural form of its noun class, /umuuntu/ ‘person’ – /abaantu/ ‘people’ [n1] {both}, /ikiintu/ ‘thing’ – /ibiintu/ ‘things’ [n4] {both}. Ultimately one must know the entire system of noun class agreement (subject, object, adjective, numeral, relative, etc.).

With verb roots, both the infinitive and perfect forms of each should be committed to memory. The infinitive carries the basic tonality, and the perfect reflects any sound changes that may apply. Thus, /kugera, -geze/ {both} ‘to arrive – arrived,’ /gutéera – téeye/ ‘to attack – attacked,’ /gukúrikira – kúrikiye/ ‘to follow – followed,’ /kuróota – róose/ ‘to dream – dreamt,’ etc.

With adjectives, it is important to know the root (e.g., /bí/ ‘bad’) and all the appropriate agreement forms: /mubí – babí [n1], mubi – mibí [n2], ribí – mabí [n3], kibi – bibí [n4], mbi [n5], rubí [n6], kabí – tubí [n7], bubí – mabí [n8], kubí – mabí [n9], habí [n10]/.

With preverbs, auxiliary verbs, and conjunctions, one must learn whether the following verb (or clause) will be in the

- INDICATIVE (with standard subject agreement),
- SUBJUNCTIVE (also with standard subject agreement),
- PARTICIPIAL (with weak vs. strong participial agreement),
- RELATIVE (usually with object relative agreement),
- CONDITIONAL, or
- INFINITIVE.

1.7. Multiple Word Units

Often, several words are combined to form a single unit and must be learned as such. While the more curious student may wish to know what each of the forms mean, in such combinations this kind of information serves to obfuscate the meaning and function of the entire unit.

/ivyó ari vyó/ {Rundi} ‘what it is all about’ (R23)
/bwáa buundí/ {both} ‘then, at the moment in question’
/aríko reeró/ {both} ‘however’
«hagatí aho» /hagatí áho/ {Rwanda} ‘meanwhile’
/ku mpaamvu z’uko/ {both} ‘because, due to the fact that’
/usiiye/ {Rwanda} ‘except’ [lit: you omitting]
/-iiva inyuma/ {Rundi} ‘do something with all one’s might’

32 In Rundi, the infinitive remains regular, i.e., /kwootsa/.
33 Referring to the TV game show wherein entire sets of questions become more and more difficult and valuable. In using the word here, we employ ‘double’ in a sense of ‘two or more.’
Chapter 1: Overview of Bantu Grammar

1.8. Major Grammatical Categories

Coming to grips with certain linguistic concepts should help in mastering various subsystems of Rwanda-Rundi grammar. Such categories include person, gender, number, case, inflection, conjugation, and derivation. The following sections discuss and exemplify how and why this is so.

1.8.1. Person

PERSON refers to the orientation of who is speaking, who is listening, and who or what is being talked about. The speaker is the FIRST PERSON, as in English I, we. The one who is listening, also called the ADDRESSEE, is the SECOND PERSON, as in English you (old English thou, ye). The person or thing being discussed is called the THIRD PERSON, and relates to English he, she, it, they. This is very important in coping with Rwanda-Rundi (and English) pronouns and demonstratives (deictics).

However, PERSON forms the basis of an entire system of KIN TERMS in these and other Bantu languages which specify one's relationship (i.e., my father, your father vs. his father). The entire system of kinship terms can be subdivided into three groups based on how possession is shown: PRIMARY (built in, with no possessive marking\textsuperscript{34}), SECONDARY (with obligatory plural possessive marking), and GENERAL (with usual possessive marking). All but a handful of kin terms are in Groups 1 or 1a.\textsuperscript{35}

In Table 16, note how the following words are compounded to modify the six PRIMARY KINSHIP TERMS (\textit{data}, \textit{so}, \textit{se}, \textit{mama}, \textit{nyoko}, and \textit{nyina}).

- Forms followed by /-k\textit{úru}/ 'older' designate grandparents.
- Forms followed by /-k\textit{úruza}/ designate great-grandparents. (Note that the distinction between first and second person is mostly lost.)
- The n1a-sg form /m\textit{weéne}-/ 'child of' refers to a half-brother or half-sister, e.g., paternal vs. maternal sibling.
- The roots /-s\textit{éenge}/ 'paternal aunt' or /-r\textit{úme}/ 'maternal uncle' designate relationships through one's parent; the inverse of these relationships ('paternal uncle' vs. 'maternal aunt') is designated by compounding plural POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS /-\textit{wáacu}/, /-\textit{wáanyu}/, and /-\textit{wáabo}/, which lose any plural reference) to the appropriate primary kin terms.
- Forms compounded with /\textit{u}b\textit{ukwé}/ 'marriage' designate parents-in-law.
- The n1a-sg form /m\textit{káa}/ expresses 'wife of,' both generally and with regard to step-relations.
- Forms compounded with /\textit{u}b\textit{uja}/ 'servitude' designate ownership within the traditions of serfdom in classic times (perhaps still practiced in rural areas), which are extended in urban centers to refer to one's employer.

\textsuperscript{34} The linguistic term for a situation where nothing appears when something is expected is ZERO, often utilizing the symbol \(\emptyset\). Normally English verbs have –\textit{ed} in the past; however, \textit{set} in the past is \textit{set-}\(\emptyset\), not *\textit{settled}. Rwanda-Rundi /\textit{daatá}/ is a single word meaning 'my father.' Since no part of it means 'my,' possession is ZERO-marked.

\textsuperscript{35} A detailed survey of Rundi kin terms can be found in Rodegem 1970:613–26.
### Table 16. Person-Oriented (Primary) Kin Terms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RELATIONSHIP</th>
<th>my/our first person</th>
<th>your second person</th>
<th>his/her/their third person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>father</td>
<td>/daatá/</td>
<td>/só/</td>
<td>/se/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother</td>
<td>/maamá/</td>
<td>/nyoko/</td>
<td>/nyina/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandfather</td>
<td>/sogókuru/</td>
<td>/sookúru/</td>
<td>/seekúru/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandmother</td>
<td>/nyogókuru/</td>
<td>/nyookúru/</td>
<td>/nyirákuru/ [Rwanda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>great-grandfather</td>
<td>/sogókurüza/ [Rwanda] 'my ancestor'</td>
<td>/seekúruza/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>great-grandmother</td>
<td>/nyogókuruza/</td>
<td>/nyirákuruza/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paternal sibling</td>
<td>/mweéne-dáatá/</td>
<td>/mweéne-só/</td>
<td>/mweéne-se/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maternal sibling</td>
<td>/mweéne-máamá/</td>
<td>/mweéne-nyoko/</td>
<td>/mweéne-nyina/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paternal cousin</td>
<td>/mweéne-dáata-wáacu/</td>
<td>/mweéne-só-wáanyu/</td>
<td>/mweéne-sé-wáabo/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncle (maternal)</td>
<td>/maarúme/</td>
<td>/nyokórome, nyokórumé/</td>
<td>/nyirárumé/ [Rwanda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncle (paternal)</td>
<td>/daatá wáacu/</td>
<td>/só wáanyu/</td>
<td>/sé wáabo/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aunt (maternal)</td>
<td>/maamá-wáacu/</td>
<td>/nyok(o)-wáanyu/</td>
<td>/nyina-wáabo/ [Rwanda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aunt (paternal)</td>
<td>/maaséenge/</td>
<td>/nyogóseenge/</td>
<td>/nyiráseenge/ [Rwanda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father-in-law</td>
<td>/daatábukwé/</td>
<td>/soobukwé/</td>
<td>/seebukwé/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother-in-law</td>
<td>/maabukwé/</td>
<td>/nyokóbukwé/</td>
<td>/nyirábukwé/ [Rwanda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stepmother</td>
<td>/mukáadaatá/</td>
<td>/mukáasó/</td>
<td>/mukáasé/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>master (male)</td>
<td>/daatábuja/</td>
<td>/shóobuja/</td>
<td>/shéebuja/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>master (female)</td>
<td>/maabuja/</td>
<td>/nyokobuja/</td>
<td>/nyirabuja/ [Rwanda]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Forms are {both} unless otherwise stated. Sources: Overdulve 1975:200–1, 257–8; Rodegem 1970:616, 621.

On the other hand, there are SECONDARY KIN TERMS which (like some of the primary forms) receive PLURAL POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS, even though the referent may be singular. What happens in this case is that the pronoun loses its referential value: *umogore wacu* could literally mean 'our woman' (as a GENERAL term in the unlikely event that two men shared the same woman) or 'my sister-in-law' (when a man uses it as a SECONDARY kin term to refer to his brother's wife).  

---

36 Words cited in Table 16 belong to both dialects, except where R {Rwanda} or B {Rundi} follows, primarily compounds with *ina*-.
### Table 17. Plural-Possessed (Secondary) Kin Terms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECONDARY KIN TERMS {Rwanda}</th>
<th>my/our first person</th>
<th>your second person</th>
<th>his/her/their third person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sister-in-law (brother's wife, said by a man) {Rundi} fused form</td>
<td>/umugoré-wáacu/ R</td>
<td>/umugoré-wáanyu/ R</td>
<td>/umugoré-wáabo/ R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brother-in-law (husband's brother)</td>
<td>/umugabo-wáacu/</td>
<td>/umugabo-wáanyu/</td>
<td>/umugabo-wáabo/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nephew, niece (wife's sister's child) {both}</td>
<td>/umwáana-wáacu/</td>
<td>/umwáana-wáanyu/</td>
<td>/umwáana-wáabo/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nephew (brother's son, said by a brother)</td>
<td>/umuhuúngu-wáacu/</td>
<td>/umuhuúngu-wáanyu/</td>
<td>/umuhuúngu-wáabo/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niece (brother's daughter, said by a brother)</td>
<td>/umukobwa-wáacu/</td>
<td>/umukobwa-wáanyu/</td>
<td>/umukobwa-wáabo/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Finally, there are GENERAL KINSHIP TERMS with no reference to person, that are broad in nature and can receive appropriate SINGULAR POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

**Ascending generation**

/umubyéeyi/ {Rwanda}, /umuvyéeyi/ {Rundi} n1-sg-kin 'parent, progenitor, mother, father'

**Descending generation**

/umuhuúngu/ {both} n1-sg 'son, male offspring'
/umukobwa/ {both} n1-sg 'girl, daughter, female offspring'
/umuwúzukuru/ {both} n1-sg-kin 'grandchild'
/umuwúzukuruza/ {both} n1-sg-kin 'great-grandchild; descendant'
/museéngenezá/ {Rundi}, /mwíiseengenezá/ {Rwanda} n1a-sg-kin 'nephew or niece through paternal aunt (child of older brother, said by a sister)'

**Same generation**

/murúmuna/ {both} n1a-sg-kin 'younger sibling (brother or sister of the same sex)'
/mukúru/ {both} n1a-sg-kin 'elder sibling (brother or sister of the same sex)'
/musáaza/ {both} n1a-sg-kin 'brother (said by a sister)'
/mushíki/ {both} n1a-sg-kin 'sister (said by a brother)'
/umuváandimwé/ {both} n1-sg-cmp-kin 'kinsman, blood relative of the same generation (unspecified close relationship) [lit: coming from one belly]'

Apart from the «umwana-» compounds, Rundi has a series of shortened or fused forms corresponding to the Rwandan kin terms in Table 17, which can be found in Rodegem 1970:619, 622, 625. Note how those terms given in the first row differ in tone as well as form.

38 Parallel cousins are called 'brother' or 'sister.'
Affinal or Marriage Relationship

/umugoré/ {both} n1-sg 'wife'
/umugabo/ {both} n1-sg 'husband'
/umukéebá/ {Rwanda} n1-sg-kin, /mukeebá/ {both} n1a-sg-kin 'co-wife (term used among wives of a polygamous husband)'
/murámú/ {both} n1a-sg-kin 'brother-in-law (wife's brother), sister-in-law (wife's sister, said by a man); brother-in-law (sister's husband, said by a woman)'
/murámukazi/ {both} n1a-sg-kin 'sister-in-law (husband's sister; brother's wife, said by a woman)'
/umukwé/ {both} n1-sg 'son-in-law; groom, bridegroom'
/umukázáana/ {both} n1-sg-kin 'daughter-in-law'

Table 18. Singular Possession with General (Non-Personal) Kin Terms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rwanda</th>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/umugabo waanjye/</td>
<td>/umugabo waanje/</td>
<td>my husband</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umugabo waawe/</td>
<td>/umugabo wiwé/</td>
<td>your husband</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umugoré waanjye/</td>
<td>/umugoré waanje/</td>
<td>my wife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umugoré waawe/</td>
<td>/umugoré wiwé/</td>
<td>your wife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umuhuúngu waanjye/</td>
<td>/umuhuúngu wiwé/</td>
<td>my son</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umuhuúngu waawe/</td>
<td>/umuhuúngu wiwé/</td>
<td>your son</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umukoóbwa waanjye/</td>
<td>/umukoóbwa wiwé/</td>
<td>my daughter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umukoóbwa waawe/</td>
<td>/umukoóbwa wiwé/</td>
<td>your daughter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.8.2. Gender

Gender in grammar usually involves the distinction between male (MASCULINE) or female (FEMININE), and sometimes neither (NEUTER). Many European languages (German, Spanish, French, etc.) have sharp distinctions among nouns on this basis. Although this is mostly lost in English, we still have to decide whether to use the pronouns he, she, or it. Rwanda-Rundi (and other Bantu languages) do not make such distinctions anywhere in their grammar. Some scholars interpret the noun class system as a very expanded and highly idiomatic gender system. In this view they consider gender an arbitrary classification system within the grammar of quite a few worldwide language families. But this is not related to what is called NATURAL GENDER, the sex of the referent. Obviously Rwanda and Rundi have nouns that refer to males (father, brother, uncle, ox, ram) as opposed to females (mother, sister, aunt, cow, ewe). But these do not affect the grammar. The student will have to unlearn his or her need to find pronouns that agree (father => he, him; mother => she, her) and practice agreement with class (§1.8.3). Table 19 is a guide to how noun classes[^39] in Rwanda-Rundi intersect with English he, she, and it.

[^39]: Noun classes are treated in the immediately following section (§1.8.3).
Table 19. English Gender Implied in Noun Classes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>group</th>
<th>status</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n1/n1a</td>
<td>only human</td>
<td>he, she</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2</td>
<td>never human</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3</td>
<td>never human</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4</td>
<td>any generic</td>
<td>he, she, it</td>
<td>they; it (generic neuter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5</td>
<td>any</td>
<td>he, she, it</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6</td>
<td>sometimes human</td>
<td>it; he, she</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7</td>
<td>any</td>
<td>he, she, it</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8</td>
<td>never human</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9</td>
<td>never human</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10</td>
<td>location</td>
<td>it (the place, time, situation)</td>
<td>they (the places, times, situations)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11</td>
<td>location or manner</td>
<td>it (the place or manner)</td>
<td>they (the places or manners)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n12</td>
<td>location</td>
<td>it (the place)</td>
<td>they (the places)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n13</td>
<td>location</td>
<td>it (the place)</td>
<td>they (the places)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Most nouns referring to humans or animals, when used alone, refer to either the generic or the male. If one must stress feminineness, the suffix -kazi is used, as in:

/inkaúndwaakazi/ {both} n5-sg 'favorite woman'
/inyuúngwaakazi/ {Rwanda} n5-sg 'abandoned wife'
/umugabékazi/ {both} n1-sg 'queen mother (mother of the king)'
/umuréerakazi/ {both} n1-sg 'Hutu clanswoman (descendant of Barera)'
/imbwáakazi/ {both} n5-sg 'bitch, female dog'
/umupfáakazi/ {both} n1-sg 'widow'

The use of Group 4 plural (bi Bantu class 8) to express the NEUTER and of Group 10 (ha Bantu class 16) to express the IMPERSONAL, both translated as it in English, are discussed in Chapter 3.

1.8.3. Class or Noun Groups

Having a complex noun class system is a hallmark of the Bantu language family as a whole. Historical linguists attempt to reconstruct something of the parent language, which they call PROTO BANTU.

Table 20 shows the Proto (prehistoric) Bantu noun class system as reconstructed or proposed by comparative linguists as well as a broad indication of what each class represented. The Rwanda-Rundi forms relating to these are presented (also see §3.1). Note that some prefixes have become prepositions [17, 18, 23] or emphatics [20, 20a] and no longer mark a specific noun class. Although none of the daughter languages retains all of the noun classes, Rwanda-Rundi have been quite conservative and retain twenty altogether, more than most other descendants. Two Southern Bantu languages (Xhosa and Sotho) are represented for comparative purposes only.
Table 20. Proto-Bantu and Rwanda-Rundi Noun Classes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>class</th>
<th>Bantu category</th>
<th>Rwanda &amp; Rundi</th>
<th>Xhosa</th>
<th>Sotho</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>01</td>
<td>m(u)-</td>
<td>umu</td>
<td>um-</td>
<td>mo-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>01a</td>
<td>u-</td>
<td>Ø (zero)</td>
<td>u-</td>
<td>Ø (zero)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>02</td>
<td>va-</td>
<td>aba</td>
<td>aba</td>
<td>ba-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>02a</td>
<td>vo-</td>
<td>baa</td>
<td>oo-</td>
<td>bo-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[voc]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>03</td>
<td>mu-</td>
<td>umu</td>
<td>um-</td>
<td>mo-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04</td>
<td>mi-</td>
<td>imi</td>
<td>imi</td>
<td>me-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05</td>
<td>li-</td>
<td>i-</td>
<td>ili</td>
<td>i-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>06</td>
<td>ma-</td>
<td>ama</td>
<td>ama</td>
<td>ma-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07</td>
<td>ki-</td>
<td>iki</td>
<td>isi</td>
<td>se-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08</td>
<td>vi-</td>
<td>ibi</td>
<td>izi</td>
<td>di-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>09</td>
<td>ni-</td>
<td>iN-</td>
<td>iliN</td>
<td>diN-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>li-ni-</td>
<td>iN-</td>
<td>iliN</td>
<td>diN-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>lu-</td>
<td>uru-</td>
<td>ulu</td>
<td># (lost)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>ka-</td>
<td>aka-</td>
<td>aga</td>
<td># (lost)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>tu-</td>
<td>utu-</td>
<td>udu</td>
<td># (lost)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>vu-</td>
<td>ubu-</td>
<td>ubu</td>
<td>bo-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>ku-</td>
<td>uku-</td>
<td>uku-</td>
<td>ho-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>pa-</td>
<td>aha-</td>
<td>pha</td>
<td>ha-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>ku-</td>
<td>ku- [prep] / ko</td>
<td>uku-</td>
<td>ho-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>mu-</td>
<td>mu- [prep] /-mo</td>
<td># (lost)</td>
<td>mo-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>pi-</td>
<td># (lost)</td>
<td># (lost)</td>
<td># (lost)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>ya-</td>
<td>ng- [deic emph]</td>
<td>ngu-[cop]</td>
<td># (lost)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20a</td>
<td>ya-</td>
<td>ng- [deic emph]</td>
<td># (lost)</td>
<td># (lost)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>yi-</td>
<td># (lost)</td>
<td># (lost)</td>
<td># (lost)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>ya-</td>
<td># (lost)</td>
<td># (lost)</td>
<td># (lost)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>ji-</td>
<td>i- [prep]</td>
<td>e-[prep]</td>
<td># (lost)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table by R. David Zorc, most data drawn from Werner (1919:38–53) and interpreted with the help of Derek Gowlett (email 2/10/1999).

1.8.4. Number

The grammatical category of number is traditionally split into: SINGULAR (referring to one and only one) and PLURAL (identifying more than one). With English, any noun standing by itself is singular (e.g., king, river, color, wound, snake, pebble, type, arm); the addition of –s signifies the plural (e.g., kings, rivers, colors, wounds, snakes, pebbles, types, arms). Rwanda and Rundi are quite different in this regard, since they have a full set of affixes that signify singular, with a corresponding set that marks the plural. Table 21 illustrates this with words common to both dialects.

Table 21. Number Marking in Rwanda-Rundi

| /umwaámi/ 'king' – /abaámi/ 'kings' [n1] |
| /umugezi/ 'river (minor)' – /imigezi/ 'minor rivers' [n2] |
| /ibára/ 'color' – /amahára/ 'colors' [n3] |
| /igisebe/ 'wound' – /ibisebe/ 'wounds' [n4] |
| /inzóka/ 'snake' – /inzúza/ 'snakes' [n5] |
| /urúuzi/ 'river (major)' – /inzúzu/ 'major rivers' [n6] |
| /akabuye/ 'pebble' – /utubuye/ 'pebbles' [n7] |
| /ubwóoko/ 'type' – /amóoko/ 'types' [n8] |
| /ukubóko/ 'arm' – /amabóko/ 'arms' [n9] |
There are languages where the grammar is seriously affected if just two individuals or items are involved (called DUAL). Fortunately, the student of Rwanda or Rundi is spared such complications. Although there is a subcategory of DUAL pronouns (§4.10.2), they require standard plural agreement.

-mpi {Rundi}, -mbi {Rwanda} 'both, two of'

### 1.8.5 Case

Several years ago some linguists described nouns as satellites. If one thinks of our solar system, this can be a very helpful, student-friendly analogy. Every sentence (or clause) consists of a sun (the head verb) with one or more satellites or planets (the nouns) surrounding it. Just as planets need their own orbit to avoid collision, nouns must be marked for their relationship within the sentence to avoid confusion. Given the following words

*buy – man – candy – child – money – store*

there are many possible linguistic configurations or human scenarios, such as:

The man bought some candy for the child with his money at the store.

The child will buy the store for the man with money and candy.

This is the store where the man bought candy for the child with the stolen money.

It is easy to see that each language has got to have some way to keep the satellites (nouns) in place!

This kind of demarcation is called CASE in traditional grammar, and such marking can be made by word order or by special affixes or endings. Thus, in English, WORD ORDER alone determines the case of the subject and the object. When we say *Peter hit Paul* we know that *Peter* is the SUBJECT (the doer or agent) and that *Paul* is the OBJECT (the receiver of the action). Anyone who has studied Latin, Greek, or other Indo-European languages will be familiar with up to six cases: nominative (the subject), genitive (possessive), dative (indirect object), accusative (direct object), ablative (place from or out of which), and vocative (used for addressing or calling someone). Rwanda and Rundi assign noun satellites in a way amazingly parallel to that of English.

While there is no direct marking for each case, the following cases can be identified in Rwanda or Rundi: SUBJECT (initial word order), OBJECT (either following the verb, as in English, or as a special infix before the verb root), POSSESSIVE (following special class agreement prefixes which might all be loosely translated as *of*), LOCATIVE (following the prepositions *ku, kwa, mu, i*), and VOCATIVE (with a special tone pattern signalling the address function). Additionally, with a series of COPULATIVE verbs, a noun (or an adjective) can become the center of its own solar system, so to speak. This sentence construction can be called PREDICATIVE and gets a special kind of marking. Table 22 presents several examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Realization</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| SUBJECT      | word order before verb SVO                      | *Petero arakubita Paulo*  
  'Peter hits Paul.' |                  |
| OBJECT       | word order after verb SVO                       | *Petero arakubita Paulo*  
  'Peter hits Paul.' |                  |
|              | infix before verb root S-()-OBJ-A-a              | *Petero aramukubita*  
  'Peter hits him.' |                  |
| POSSESSIVE   | singular possessive pronoun                     | *Incuti yanji(y)e yansuye*  
  'My friend (recently) visited me.' |                  |
|              | plural possessive pronoun                       | *Incuti yanz(y)e zansuye*  
  'My friends (recently) visited me.' |                  |
Chapter 1: Overview of Bantu Grammar

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>_singular possessor noun</th>
<th>«Umwana w'incuti yanj(y)e yansuye»</th>
<th>'The child of my friend (recently) visited me.'</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LOCATIVE</td>
<td>«Bamwe mu ncuti yanj(y)e bansuye»</td>
<td>'Some of my friends visited me.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu (partitive)</td>
<td>«Petero agiye mu nzu»</td>
<td>'Peter is going into the house.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu into (inside)</td>
<td>«Petero agiye ku mugezi»</td>
<td>'Peter is going to the river.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ku to (outside)</td>
<td>«Petero agiye i Kigali»</td>
<td>'Peter is going to Kigali.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i to (fixed location)</td>
<td>/peeeters, ngwiinó hano/</td>
<td>'Peter! Come here!'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOCATIVE</td>
<td>«Peter ni incuti yanj(y)e»</td>
<td>'Peter is my friend.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PREDICATIVE</td>
<td>«Peter ni mwiza»</td>
<td>'Peter is good-looking.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>affirmative copulative</td>
<td>«Peter ni incuti yanj(y)e»</td>
<td>'Peter is my friend.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– adjective</td>
<td>«Peter ni mwiza»</td>
<td>'Peter is good-looking.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negative copulative</td>
<td>«Peter si incuti yanj(y)e»</td>
<td>'Peter is not my friend.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– noun</td>
<td>«Peter si mwiza»</td>
<td>'Peter is not good-looking.'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.8.6 Inflection

The process of moving around within a single part of speech is called INFLECTION; for example, friend, friends, friend's, of (my) friends. This can involve going from singular to plural, from subject to object, from simple noun to either possessor or possessed noun, etc. See the possessive examples in Table 22.

There is a special term for moving around from one verb form to another (CONJUGATION). A verb can be inflected or conjugated in the PRESENT (we study, she studies), PAST (studied), or FUTURE (will study); it can be ACTIVE (they study hard) or PASSIVE (the law is studied). Examples of some verb conjugations can be reviewed in Tables 7, 10, and 15.

1.8.7 Derivation: The Makeup of Word Families

Conversely, the process of moving from one part of speech to another or even to a subclass of a given part of speech is termed DERIVATION; for example, friend, friendship, friendliness, friendly, unfriendly. In these last five English examples, friend, friendship, and friendliness are all nouns, but friend is a simple or count noun, friendship is a stative noun, and friendliness is an abstract noun; friendly and unfriendly are both adverbs, one positive, the other negative. A similar derivation process can be seen in both Rwanda and Rundi for the root /-cutí/ in Table 23.

Table 23. Example of Derivation (a Word Family) in Rwanda-Rundi

| /incuti/ [both] n5-sg/pl | 'relative, parent, kin; close friend' |
| /mucuti/ [both] n1a-sg  | 'inseparable friend'                |
| /ubucuti/ [both] n8-sg-abs | 'friendship'                     |
| /agacuti/ [both] n7-sg  | 'distant relative'                 |
| /gicuti/ [Rwanda] adv (n4-sg) | 'in a friendly way or manner'     |

Table 23. Example of Derivation (a Word Family) in Rwanda-Rundi

The full collection of all derived forms in a language may be called a WORD FAMILY. In Bantu languages, some word families can be quite extensive. The growth of the stem /-kór/- into many other words was discussed in §1.5.

40 Root tone differs between /peeeters/ [Rundi] and /peeeters/ [Rwanda]. Both dialects share this vocative with high tone on the second mora, /peeeters/ (i.e., the second of two identical vowels).
Chapter 1: Overview of Bantu Grammar

1.9. Irregularities

Every language has at least some irregularities, and these present the learner with special problems. English is replete with irregularities in all its systems: irregular plurals (*child* – *children*), irregular past forms (*sing* – *sang* – *sung*, *go* – *went* – *gone*), non-conforming adjectives (*good* – *better* – *best*), and so on. The majority of Rwanda-Rundi nouns and verbs behave in a predictable way, but there are some that follow different patterns. A few examples are provided in Table 24.

Table 24. Some Irregular Nouns and Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/inzira/ n5-sg-ir road, path</th>
<th>/amayira/ n3-pl-ir 'roads, paths'</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Expected would be /inzira/ n5-pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/iryinyo/ n3-sg-ir tooth</td>
<td>/améenyyo/ n3-pl 'teeth'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Root /ínno/ gets ir- prefix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ájiísho/ n3-sg-ir eye</td>
<td>/amáaso/ n3-pl-ir 'eyes'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Root /V:so/ gets ij- prefix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/úurma/ n6-sg-ir intestine</td>
<td>/amara/ n3-pl 'intestines'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cf. /índa/ n5-sg/pl belly</td>
<td>Expected would be /inda/ n6-pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-:za/ v-intr-ir come, arrive</td>
<td>-:je/ v-perf 'came, arrived'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Expected would be -:zeye/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-:úumva/ v-tr-ir hear; feel</td>
<td>-:úumvise/ v-perf 'heard; felt'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Expected /-úumvye, -úumbye/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-:zi/ v-ir know</td>
<td>[defective – no perfect form]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A more detailed discussion will be found in §3.5.1–4 for nouns and §8.16 for verbs.

1.10. Using a Rwanda-Rundi Dictionary

Locating a word in any Rwanda or Rundi dictionary can be a difficult task. In all dictionaries or wordlists we have surveyed (Cox 1969, Jacob 1984–87, Overdulve 1975, Rodegem 1970, Stevick 1965), one must work the word down to its root, which requires that the learner know quite a bit about it in the first place (e.g., removing the singular or plural affixes of a noun, the multiple prefixes and suffixes of a verb, the agreement forms of an adjective, etc.). Thus «umugabo» 'man' {both} has to be looked up under -:gab-, «abavye» parents' {Rundi} under -:vyar-, «umwambi» {Rwanda} 'arrow' under -:ambi. Listing words alphabetically under their roots can even be a problem for a native speaker, who might be familiar with a derived form (e.g., a noun), but not the details about its root, e.g., that a word like «icese» {Rundi} 'clarity; openness' is found under «-es-».

The effects of sound changes can add to this difficulty (see §1.4 ABOVE). Finding any of the following words can be a daunting task: «umukozi» {both} 'worker' under -:kor-, «umwanzí» {Rwanda} 'enemy' under -:ang-, «umutetsí» {both} 'cook' under -:tek-, «umwambuzí» {both} 'robber' under -:ambur-, «umudeshí» {Rwanda} 'idle person' under -:deh-, «impano» {both} 'gift, donation' under -:h- 'give', «impumyi» {both} 'blind person' under -:hum- 'be blind.'

What is sorely needed for the study of this language is a beginner's dictionary. The Glossary at the back of the Rwanda-Rundi Newspaper Reader (Nibagwire & Zorc 2002) was a step in such a direction because words are listed alphabetically as they were encountered; they are also cross-referenced to their roots, affixes, and variant forms.
2. THE SOUND SYSTEM

Letters are one thing; the sounds that they represent are quite another. Any student looking at the literature (especially textbooks and grammars) of Rwanda or Rundi may rightfully feel bewildered at the lack of agreement as to how many sounds are significant. Although all authors propose the same number of vowels (five: a, e, i, o, u), with length and tonal distinctions (short vs. long, high vs. low), different authors accept anywhere from 19 to 26 consonants. Since no author disputes the analysis of another, there is technically no disagreement. In part, the discrepancies are based on theoretical issues that need not concern a language student.41

What is important for someone learning to speak the language is how to pronounce effectively the words, phrases, or sentences being studied. In linguistic terms, the PHONETICS of the language is of greater relevance to the student than is the PHONOLOGY. Phonetics describes how the sounds that actually occur in words are pronounced; phonology deals with those sounds that are critical to the language. For example, English has the PHONEME /p/,42 which has different pronunciations depending on where it occurs in a word. At the beginning, it has a strong puff of air (called aspiration) accompanying it, as in «pin» [pʰɪn];43 after another consonant it is weak or lenis, as in «spin» [spɪn]; at the end of a word, it is unreleased «nip» [nɪp]. A student of English must learn to pronounce this (and the other voiceless stops /t/ and /d/) according to such "rules" if he or she wishes to sound like a native speaker; otherwise, one's speech will be marked by an "accent."

2.1. Consonants

Consonants are sounds which, in one way or another, obstruct the flow of air through either the mouth or nose. As the air first passes through the vocal chords, they are either at rest (so the sound is VOICELESS) or vibrating (so the sound is VOICED).44 If the airflow gets fully obstructed, the resulting sound is called a STOP or OBSTRUENT, e.g., /b, p, d, t, g, k/. If the airflow gets partially obstructed, resulting in some form of friction within the mouth, the sound is called a FRICATIVE or SPIRANT, e.g., /v, f, z, s, h/. If the air flows through the nose rather than the mouth, the sound is called a NASAL, e.g., /m, n/. If the air is stopped by the tongue tapping against the ridge just behind the teeth, the resulting sound is called a TAP or FLAP, /r/. Finally, if the air flows freely (which is the characteristic of a VOWEL), but is affected by the shape of the mouth, the sound is called a GLIDE or SEMIVOWEL, /w, y/.

41 For example, if one considers the three affricates «pf, ts, c» /pf, ts, ʧ/ as combination-sounds, i.e., /p + f/, /t + s/, /t + ʧ/, then the phonemic inventory can be reduced by three. Furthermore, many grammarians are not PHONOLOGISTS (sound specialists) and may consider a phonetic feature as if it were phonemic (i.e., a significant sound).
42 A significant sound within a language is called a PHONEME by linguists and is written between slashes /a/. Such a rendition is called a PHONEMIC REPRESENTATION, e.g., /pin/, and indicates the significant sounds making up a word; when written as such, it is not a guide to pronunciation.
43 A PHONETIC RENDITION is written within square brackets [a], usually using the IPA (International Phonetic Alphabet), which serves as a guide for how a word is pronounced.
44 The easiest way to become familiar with the feature of VOICING is to put a finger on the outside of your throat (Adam's apple area) and say "zzzzzzzzz." You should feel the vibration of your vocal chords. If you then say "ssssssss" you will notice that they stop vibrating.
Chapter 2: The Sound System

See Table 25 for an inventory of all consonants proposed (shaded cells indicate sounds that are probably not PHONEMIC, i.e., not differentiated from all other sounds). Table 26 for acceptance by various scholars of Kinyarwanda, and Table 27 for acceptance by various scholars of Kirundi.

### Table 25. Kinyarwanda-Kirundi Consonants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>labial</th>
<th>alveolar</th>
<th>alveolo-palatal</th>
<th>palatal</th>
<th>velar</th>
<th>glottal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stop</td>
<td>+voice</td>
<td>b [β]</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>g’ ‘jy’</td>
<td>g</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-voice</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>k’ ‘cy’</td>
<td>k</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fricative</td>
<td>+voice</td>
<td>v</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>ʒ ‘j’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-voice</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>ʃ ‘sh’</td>
<td>f’ ‘shy’</td>
<td>h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>affricate</td>
<td>pf</td>
<td>ts</td>
<td>ʧ ‘c’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nasal</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>n ‘ny’</td>
<td></td>
<td>n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continuant</td>
<td>tap</td>
<td>r</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glide</td>
<td>(w)</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>w</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


### Table 26. Acceptance of Kinyarwanda Consonants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>b [β]</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c [tʃ]</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cy [k’]</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j [ʒ]</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jy [j]</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ny</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ng [ŋ]</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pf</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh [ʃ]</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shy [ʃ’]</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ts [tʃ]</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>(ALT)</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>(ALT)</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Key:** √ accepted; NO not accepted; (ALT) alters sound with which it occurs (e.g., palatalization with ‘, velarization ‘)
Table 27. Acceptance of Kirundi Consonants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>b [β]</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c [tʃ]</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cy [kʷ]</td>
<td>√ (DIAL)</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j [ʒ]</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jv [g']</td>
<td>√ (DIAL)</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ny</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ng</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pf</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh [ʃ]</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>(DIAL)</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shy [ʃ']</td>
<td>√ (DIAL)</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ts</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Key: √ accepted; NO not accepted; (DIAL) found in some dialects

For the purposes of this study, the significant (PHONEMIC) sounds of Kigali Kinyarwanda and Bujumbura Kirundi are those **without shading** in Table 25. The **five shaded ones** are either phonetic (non-phonemic) or dialect variants:

- «w» is both a LABIAL and VELAR sound; because it is involved in the process of VELARIZATION [∫] it is best considered VELAR;
- «jy» [g'] is a palatalized variant of /g/, it may be phonemic (significant) in some dialects;
- «cy» [k'] is a palatalized variant of /k/, it may be phonemic (significant) in some dialects;
- «ng» [ŋ] is the phonetic realization of /n/ before /g/;
- «hy» [h'] is a palatalized variant of /h/.
Chapter 2: The Sound System

2.2. Vowels

Rwanda and Rundi have an identical vowel inventory representing long and short versions of the CARDINAL VOWEL SYSTEM /a, e, i, o, u/. Most linguistic works on Rwanda represent LONG VOWELS by doubling them /aa, ee, ii, oo, uu/, whereas studies in or on Rundi use a series of symbols depending on whether there is a high tone or not (thereby melding the phonologically separate categories of VOWEL LENGTH and TONE):

- a MACRON designates a long low-toned vowel, /kuɡʃa/ [Rundi], /kuɡiɡsha/ [Rwanda] 'make s.o. go'
- a CIRCUMFLEX marks a long vowel the first of which is high-toned, /ɡuˈtêka/ [Rundi], /ɡuˈtêekə/ [Rwanda] 'to cook'
- a HACEK (or upside-down circumflex) indicates a long vowel, the second of which is high-toned, /ububəsha/ [Rundi], /ububaásha/ [Rwanda] 'ability'
- and DAERISIS (or DOUBLE DOTS) designates a long vowel, both of which are high-toned, /mwëese/ [Rundi] 'all of you' = /mwéése/

In order to maintain a distinction between long and short vowels without regard to their tonality (which will be treated in the immediately following section), this book represents long vowels by doubling them, as portrayed in Table 28.

Table 28. Kinyarwanda-Kirundi Vowels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>FRONT</th>
<th>CENTRAL</th>
<th>BACK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LENGTH</td>
<td>SHORT</td>
<td>LONG</td>
<td>SHORT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIGH</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MID</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>ee</td>
<td>o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOW</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>aa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROUNDNESS</td>
<td>UNROUNDED</td>
<td>ROUNDED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The terms FRONT – CENTRAL – BACK refer to the location in the mouth or oral cavity where the sounds are made. These terms apply as much to English as they do to Rwanda-Rundi. Listen and feel how you pronounce bit – bat – boot. Notice how the i of bit is pronounced further towards the front of the mouth while the oo of boot is much further back.

The terms HIGH – MID – LOW are equally universal and refer to the position of the tongue (TONGUE HEIGHT). While pronouncing beet – baɪt – bat, notice how your tongue (and jaw) drop. The same applies to boot – boɪt – bat.

Linguists use the term MORA to describe the length or duration of a vowel. A single vowel occupies one mora, a long vowel lasts two moras (or MORAE). Some tone rules will be discussed later on in this chapter and throughout this book that involve first vs. second mora.

---

46 This four-way marking of length and tone can be found in Rodegem 1967, 1970, Ntahokaja 1994, and Cristini 2000. A much earlier study, Bagein 1951 illustrates an author's attempt to account for both vowel length and tone and how typesetting errors foil the best of intentions.
47 There is no equivalent (phonemically significant) tone pattern with two successive high vowels in Rwanda. The phonemic Rwandan equivalent is /mwéese/, pronounced by tonal carryover as [mwéése]. Whether the Rundi pattern is phonemic or phonetic has neither been challenged nor investigated.
48 This decision has the advantage of avoiding typographically difficult symbols, a practice which has led to numerous errors of omission in the Rundi literature, e.g., the lack of a macron on hundreds of entries in Rodegem's Dictionnaire Rundi-Français (1970).
49 Meeussen 1959, Stevick 1965 and Bennett 2001 portray Rundi length and tone in the same way as we do in this book.
Understanding these terms is of some importance to the study of Rwanda and Rundi grammar. The choice of several verb augment, such as -ir- vs. -er-, depends on MID vs. NON-MID VOWELS, e.g., -ir- occurs if the previous syllable has a, i, or u (NON-MID), but -er- if e or o (MID). Thus, /kó-er-a/ 'do s.t. for s.o.' as opposed to /úumv-ir-a/ 'obey s.o.; taste s.t. for s.o.' See VOWEL HARMONY in §2.5.13.

There are also changes that involve UNROUNDED VOWELS (i, e, a), which are deleted or ELIDED in final position if the following word starts with a vowel: /ba-aa-uuba(k)/-tse inzu/ > [buubats' inzu] "They (recently) built a house." See §2.5.10.2 for further discussion and exemplification.

Roots that begin with vowels cause a number of sound changes, such as when the noun prefix umu- becomes umw- or the infinitive prefix ku- becomes kw-. Long initial vowels get shortened under some circumstances, and tone will shift from the first to the second vowel of the pair in certain inflections or conjugations.

### 2.2.1. Short Vowels

Short vowels contrast with long vowels. Vowel length plays an important role in both dialects; it is a PHONEMIC, contrastive, or distinctive feature (Table 29).

| /basomá/ {both} v-rel-imm 'that they read (now)' – /baasomá/ {Rundi} v-rel-recent 'that they read (recently)' |
| /guhéréza/ {Rundi} v-ben-caus 'terminate at' – /guhéereza/ v-ditr {both} 'hand s.t. to s.o.' |
| /ku(b)íka/ {both} v-intr 'crow (as a rooster)' – /ku(b)íka/ {both} v-tr 'put away' |
| /uruto(ki)/ {both} n6-sg 'finger' – /urutooki/ {both} n6-sg 'banana plantation' |
| /kużir(a)/ {both} 'to be hostile to' – /kuuzíra/ {both} 'to visit' |

However, vowel length (i.e., whether a vowel should be long or short) is predictable in some environments.

#### 2.2.1.1. Initial Vowels Are Usually Short

An INITIAL VOWEL (i.e., one at the beginning of a word) is usually short. This applies broadly to all noun class prefixes, the weak subject prefixes of verbs, deictics, etc.

| /ákaryáamyéendá/ {both} n7-sg 'person up to his ears in debt' |
| /gramúbaza/ {both} v-ind-imm+n1-sg-obj 'He asks her.' |
| /gýyíri/ {Rundi}, /gbyìri/ {Rwanda} n3-n5-pl 'two' |
| /dúuká/ {both} n3-sg 'store, shop' |
| /íkinyámakurú/ {both} n4-sg 'newspaper' |
| /gfiisi/ {both} n5b-sg 'office' {French} |
| /gumúbaaji/ {both} n1-sg 'carpenter; sculptor' |
| /gumugaanda/ {both} n2-sg 'scaffold, framework' |

---

50 Generalization and Rwandan example drawn from Kimenyi 1980:15. For Rundi, see Cristini 2000:10, e.g., /du-t-é ama-buye/ > [dut’ámabuye] 'Let’s throw out the eggs.' Contrast this process of ELISION with the lengthening that occurs in CONTRACTION, i.e., when two vowels come together (§2.2.2.1).

51 This was discussed and illustrated in terms of homographs (see §1.2.1).

Chapter 2: The Sound System

However, note that these initial vowels can become long in certain constructions (§2.2.2.3).

2.2.1.2. Final Vowels Are Usually Short

A FINAL VOWEL (i.e., one at the end of a word) is usually short.53

/uburaang/ /both/ n8-sg-abs 'beauty'
/uruvaáng/ /both/ n6-sg 'conglomeration, mixture'
/injiishi/ /both/ n5-sg 'braid, tress'
/ubwóoko/ /both/ n8-sg 'type, sort, kind'
/abaácu/ /both/ pro-1pl-nom-poss-n1-pl 'ours'

2.2.1.3. Shortening of Long Vowels

Long vowels become short under some circumstances. In the imperative, vowel verbs which ordinarily start with a long vowel have a short vowel.54

/akiira/ /both/ v-imp 'Accept!' < /kw/akíira
/emera/ /both/ v-imp 'Agree!' < /kw/éema
/iyyyumvire/ /both/ v-imp 'Just listen!' < /kw/iyyumvira/

When the prefix of n3-sg /-i-, n5-sg, n5-pl, or n6-pl /-in-, the first person pronoun object infix /-ny-/55 and the reflexive verb affix /-ii-/ come before a long vowel root, that root-initial vowel is shortened. Technically, the vowel of the prefix is lengthened (see §2.2.2.8), but the resulting sequences of /ii/ before another vowel are all reinterpreted as /iy/.56

/iyyandikwa/ /both/ n3-sg 'enrollment' (R39.5) < /i-i-aandik-w-a/
/iyyiqiisha/ /both/ n3-sg 'instruction' < /i-iig-iish-a/
/íimáana/ /both/ n5-sg 'God' < /i-N-máana/
/íinyandiko/ /both/ n3-sg/pl 'writing' < /i-n-i-aandik-o/
/íinyibano/ /both/ n5-sg/pl 'stolen item' < /i-n-i-iib-an-o/
/-íiyoroosa/ /both/ v-refl 'cover oneself up' < /i-i-ooroos-a/
/-íiyicarira/ /both/ v-refl-ben 'be seated' < /i-iicar-ir-a/
/kuuñymbika/ v-inf+pro-obj 'to clothe me!' < /ku-n-aambik-a/
/aráanyemera/ /both/ v-ind-imm-dis+obj 'He believes me.'
< /a-ra-n-éemer-a/
/uráanyandika/ /both/ v-ind-imm-dis+obj 'You will write me.'
< /u-ra-n-aandik-a/

2.2.1.4. The Rwanda Suffix /-aga/

The initial vowel of the Rwanda suffix /-aga/ [recent past and preterit imperfect] is always short, even if preceded by a long consonant.57

/nuúmvaga/ /Rwanda/ 'I was thinking.' (R34.3)
/baáhaabwaga/ /Rwanda/ '...that they received.' (R40.5)

---

54 Cf: Cristini 2000:10.
55 After a vowel the object infix -n- gets palatalized, becoming /-ny-/ [pro-1sg-obj].
56 That is, the class affixes cited have the forms /iy-/ [n3-sg], /íiny-/ [n5-sg/pl, n6-pl], /íiy-/ [reflexive verb].
2.2.2. Long Vowels

As illustrated in Table 29, long vowels contrast with short ones. However, vowel length is predictable in some environments.

2.2.2.1. Vowel Sequences Become Long

A vowel will be long if it represents a sequence (CONTRACTION) of two or more vowels within a word. Be mindful that such vowel length is not shown in the orthography.

/\baákoze/ {both} v-ind-pret-perf 'They did.' < /\ba-á-kó(r)-ze/
/meénsí/ {both} adj-n3-pl 'lots of' < /ma-iínsí/

2.2.2.2. The Presentative Demonstrative Prefix Has a Long Vowel

The initial vowel of a predicative or presentative demonstrative pronoun is always long.

/'ngaaá/ {both} deic-1-emph-n10-loc 'Here it is!'
/'ngaaá/ {both} deic-2-emph-n10-loc 'There it is!'
/'ngaaayá/ {both} deic-1-emph-n3-pl 'Here they are!' /
/'nguubwó/ {both} deic-2-emph-n8-sg 'There it is! (near you);' {Rundi} 'Same to you! [returning a greeting]'

2.2.2.3. Lengthening of a Short Vowel after Possessives or Connectives

In possessive or connective constructions, the short initial vowel becomes long if the word has high tone on the first vowel of its second syllable.

/n'úumwáana/ {both} 'even a child' (R38.1)
/íjaambo ry'íibáanzé/ {Rwanda} 'preface, foreword'
/mu makomiíne y'íintáará/ {both} 'in communes of the province'
/ubwaátsi bw'íinká/ {both} 'grass for cows' (R40.4)

Note that in a construction like /ínkóno y'ítaábi/ {both} 'tobacco pipe,' the high tone is on the second vowel (mora) of the second syllable, so the first syllable vowel is not lengthened.

2.2.2.4. Lengthening of a Short Vowel after Certain Markers

A short initial vowel becomes long if the word is preceded by the locatives /kúrí/ and /múrí/, the copulatives /ní/ and /sí/, the locative /-rí/, or the imperative /mpá/. In all these cases, the final vowel of the function word is lost, so the extension of the following vowel is a case of COMPENSATORY LENGTHENING.

/n'úurugóri/ {both} 'It is the crown.' < /ní ùru-góri/
/mur'úuru/ {both} 'in this one' [n6-sgl] < /múrí uru/ /ur'úumugaangá/ {both} 'You’re the doctor.' < /u-ri ùmu-gaangá/ /mp'aamafaraanga/ {both} 'Give me some money!' < /n-h-a ama-faraanga/

58 This contrasts with the loss (ELISION) of vowels across a word boundary (see §2.5.10.2), e.g., /ínká imwé/ > [inkýmwe] {both} 'one cow'.

59 Jacob et al. suggest that the prefix is ngá - (1987:392), whereas Overduivel et al. relate it to ngo (1975:248). Table 20 (in §1.8.3) shows possible Bantu class 20 derivations (yu- or ya-). What is clear is that the vowel of the prefix has been lost, but there is COMPENSATORY LENGTHENING of the initial vowel of the deictic (hence, our ngV-).

60 Cf: Kimenyi 2002:95.
2.2.2.5. Long Vowels Next to Complex Consonants

It so happens that a long vowel is usually found preceded or followed by a long consonant. If a consonant plus a semivowel (w or y, i.e., a VELARIZED or PALATALIZED consonant) comes before any vowel, that vowel will be long, as in the following examples common to BOTH dialects:

\(/umwaavu/ n2-sg 'sweepings'\)
\(/umutwaáre/ n1-sg 'chief'\)
\(/umuryáango/ n2-sg 'doorway'\)
\(/ubvééng/ n8-sg-\text{abs} 'intelligence'\)
\(/iryíinyo/ n3-sg-ir 'tooth'\)
\(/urwooba/ n6-sg 'hole'\)
\(/ubwóoba/ n8-sg-\text{abs} 'fear'\)
\(/umwuuga/ n2-sg 'trade, profession'\)
\(/umwuuna/ n2-sg 'flow'\)

2.2.2.6. Long Vowels Followed by a Nasal and a Consonant

A long vowel also appears if it is followed by a nasal /m, n/ and another consonant, as in the following examples common to BOTH dialects:

\(/intáambwé/ n5-sg/pl 'step'\)
\(/urugeendo/ n6-sg 'journey'\)
\(/ikireenge/ n4-sg 'foot'\)
\(/ubutiindi/ n8-sg-\text{abs} 'bad luck'\)
\(/umuzlinga/ n2-sg 'beehive'\)
\(/umuroongo/ n2-sg 'line, row'\)
\(/umwuumbati/ n2-sg 'cassava'\)
\(/umuuntu/ n1-sg 'person'\)
\(/umuhuúngu/ n1-sg 'boy, son'\)

This rule also applies if a vowel is followed by /n plus any other nasal /n, m, ny/. Note, however, that the first /n of the resulting cluster is actually lost [linguistically speaking it becomes ZERO (Ø)] and is not represented as a nasal, but rather by length on the preceding vowel.\(^{63}\)

\(/kuumenya/ \{\text{both}\} 'to know me' < \text{/ku-n (Ø)-meny-a/}\)
\(/kumyooza/ \{\text{both}\} 'to try to eliminate me' < \text{/ku-n (Ø)-mooz-a/} (R27.3)\)
\(/siimesá/ \{\text{Rwanda}\} 'I don't wash (clothes)' < \text{/si-n (Ø)-mes-a/}\)

Such vowel lengthening even applies across a word boundary, as when function words, such as /mu/, /ku/, /muri/, /kuri/ [prep], /ni/, /si/, or /-ri/ [cop], relative pronouns, etc. are followed by any form having a nasal complex.

\(/kuu máana/ \{\text{both}\} 'to God' < \text{/ku N(Ø)-máana/}\)
\(/muu náama/ \{\text{both}\} 'at the meeting' < \text{/mu-n (Ø)-náama/}\)
\(/muu nzu/ \{\text{both}\} 'at home'\)
\(/nii ndé wabikúwiiyie/ \{\text{both}\} 'Who told you that?'\)
\(/uri ndé?/ \{\text{both}\} 'Who are you?'\)
\(/iýóó mbá wé sinooj/ \{\text{Rundi}\} 'If I were him, I would not come.'\)
\(/ukóó ndjé/ \{\text{Rwanda}\} 'each time that I come'\)

---

\(^{61}\) Cf: Overdulve 1975:42.
\(^{62}\) Cf: Cristini 2000:10 and Overdulve 1975:42.
\(^{63}\) Yet another case of COMPENSATORY LENGTHENING.
\(^{64}\) These are called PRECESSIVE PRONOUNS (French précessif) by several linguists, e.g., Cristini 2000:130f, Overdulve 1975:185, Rodegem 1967:25.
2.2.2.7. Not All Digraphs Are Complex Consonants

The symbols « ny » {both} and « shy » {Rwanda}, « sh » {Rundi} each designate a single consonant, IPA /ɲ/ and /ʃ/ respectively, not a consonant plus a semivowel. They can therefore be preceded or followed by either a short or long vowel, e.g.,

/umúunyu/ {both} n2-sg 'salt'
/umunyurúru/ {Rwanda} n1-sg 'prisoner'
/gutinyuka/ {both} v-rev-st-inf 'to be fearless'
/amarushywá/ {Rwanda}, /amarushwá/ {Rundi} n3-pl 'difficulties'
/ishyaamba/ {Rwanda}, /áshaamba/ {Rundi} n3-sg 'jungle'

2.2.2.8. Palatalized Labials Can Be Followed by Long or Short Vowels

After by {Rwanda} – vy {Rundi} and py {Rwanda} – fy {Rundi}, i can be either long or short.65

/mpyisi/ {Rwanda} – /mfyisi/ {Rundi} n5-sg/pl 'jackal, hyena'
/imbyino/ {Rwanda} n5-sg/pl – /uruvyino/ {Rundi} n6-sg 'song'
/ebyirí/ {Rwanda} – /evyirí / {Rundi} num-n5-pl 'two'
/iñbyímba/ {Rwanda} n4-sg 'swelling; tumor, abscess'
/byinshi/ {Rwanda} – /vyinshi/ {Rundi} adj-n4-pl 'many'
/iyižá/ {Rwanda} – /yižá/ {Rundi} adj-n4-pl 'good (things)'

2.2.2.9. Lengthening of a Short Vowel before a First Person Object

Sometimes a short vowel becomes long. For example, when the first person object pronoun /-m-, -n-, -ny-/ 'me' is added to a verb, the vowel before it is lengthened and may receive high-tone from the root:

/baansabá/ {Rwanda} v-rel-cond+obj 'If they ask me.' (R32)
/uraanduta/ {both} v-ind-imm+obj 'You are better than me.' (R28.2)
/kuúnkorera/ {both} v-inf-imm+obj 'to work for me' (R36.5)

2.2.2.10. Lengthening of a Vowel after Negator nt-

When the negator nt- is followed by a vowel its final i is dropped. In Rwanda, the vowel remaining becomes long if the following syllable has low tone; it is short if the following syllable has high tone.66 In Rundi, with POLYSYLLABIC forms (three or more syllables), there is no length variation because the i is always lost, i.e., it coalesces with the following vowel. However, both dialects agree in having a long vowel when the root is MONOSYLLABIC (one syllable).

/ntaakorá/ {Rwanda} vs. /ntakorá/ {Rundi} 'He does not work.'
</nt(i)-a-kór-á/
/ntaamesá/ {Rwanda} vs. /ntamesá/ {Rundi} 'He does not wash.'
</nt(i)-a-mes-á/
/ntaabbrá/ {Rwanda} vs. /ntaburá/ {Rundi} 'She does not have.'
</nt(i)-a-búr-á/
/ntázamosa/ {Rwanda}, /ntazóomesa/ { Rundi} 'He will not wash.'
</nt(i)-a-FUT-mes-a/

2.3. Allophones (Alternate Pronunciation of Sounds)

The introductory paragraph to this chapter gave examples of how the English sound /p/ has different pronunciations depending on where it occurs in a word: initially (at the beginning of a word), after a consonant, or finally (at the end of a word). Such alternate pronunciations of a given phoneme are called ALLOPHONES by linguists. The allophones of Rwanda and Rundi are covered in the majority of the textbooks available, the most thorough being Bizimana for Rwanda (1998:12–73) and Stevick for Rundi (1965:xl–lviii). Furthermore, actual pronunciation can be emulated by listening carefully to one’s teacher, any mother-tongue speaker, or the recording which accompanies the Rwanda and Rundi Newspaper Reader. Since such a discussion at this point would be lengthy, tedious, and repetitious, the reader is referred to the studies cited above, or to any of the following.


The student should pay particular attention to sound combinations found in either dialect. Sometimes when sounds occur together, the pronunciation is quite different from the individual parts. Rwanda and Rundi each have a series of combinations that affect the pronunciation quite drastically. Combinations with /y/ result in PALATALIZED consonants while those with /w/ result in VELARIZED consonants. These phonetic changes are AUTOMATIC SOUND CHANGES because each specific fusion will result in a special fixed pronunciation.

---

67 The study of sound combinations is called PHONOTACTICS by linguists.
68 Kimenyi (1980:15) summarizes these two processes as a form of consonant insertion "which takes on the articulatory features of the following glide and agrees in VOICING, NASALITY, and SPIRANTIZATION with the preceding consonant." Palatalization rules for Rwanda can be summarized in a kind of linguistic shorthand as follows: C + y > C\text{\textacute{y}} if C is voiced, C\text{\textacute{y}} if C is voiceless, C\text{\texttilde y} if C is a nasal. Velarization rules can be written as: C + w > C\text{\texttilde g} + voice, C\text{\textbar}w -voice, C\text{\texttilde w} + nasal.
2.4. Tonality and Intonation

TONE is critical to the understanding of Rwanda and Rundi as it is in almost all Bantu languages. Each root has a particular tone pattern which must be memorized. However, even this basic tonality can change under certain circumstances. Such changes may involve a particular syllable (SYLLABIC TONALITY) or a given mora (MORAIC TONALITY) of the word or root. Thus, when a verb is negated (/ntibaandika/ {both} ‘they do not write’) or put into the subjunctive (/twaandike/ {both} ‘we should write’) or the relative mood (/mwaandika/ {both} ‘that you are writing’), a SYLLABIC TONE CHANGE causes tone to appear on the second syllable of the root (see P rule, §2.4.4). On the other hand, participial verb forms (/mwáandika/ {both} ‘you writing’), have a MORAIC TONE RULE: high tone appears on the first mora following the first consonant of the word (see 1 rule, §2.4.14). When many nouns are derived with the -e suffix (/umutwaáre/ {both} ‘chief’, /umugomé/ {both} ‘rebel’) tone appears on the second mora of the root. Note that some inflections can either override the root tone or introduce additional tone patterns to the derived form.

INTONATION, however, is important in all languages, including English, where tone marks a sentence type (e.g., question, exclamation, statement, etc.). Reflect on:

What are we having for dinner, mōther↓?
Here we are asking our mother what she might be preparing. But contrast:

What are we having for dinner, mōther↑?
where we are asking each other, with some shock, if we are resorting to eating our mother for dinner!

In this regard Rwanda and Rundi are no different. The intonation assigned to individual words is relative to how and where they occur in a sentence. As Overdulve points out:

The general intonation of each sentence has a falling quality: this descending intonation regularly affects the tones of the sentence: a high [tone] at the end of a sentence may therefore be pronounced lower than a low [tone] at the beginning of the same sentence. (1975:19, translation S. Harrell)

Although a large number of tone rules will be discussed below, it is of critical importance to understand that these apply to the formation of individual words. INTONATION RULES will affect how such words are pronounced. Thus, while its derivation is phonemically /umwáarimú/ {both} ‘teacher,’ when it is the first word of a sentence it can be intoned [úmwáarímú].

Overall, the tone rules described below affect words insofar as they PRESERVE or DROP TONALITY, move it LEFTWARD (towards or onto a PREFIX or to a given AFFIX) or RIGHTWARD (away from the beginning of the root to the next syllable or all the way to the SUFFIX). Some tone rules apply to SYLLABLES, while others to MORAE. There are FIXED or OBLIGATORY patterns, in which the tone is always found on a given syllable, as opposed to VARYING patterns, where tone shifts one or two morae.

---

70 Except Swahili, which lost tonal contrasts.
71 Kimenyi discusses the difference between morphological tone rules and intonational tone rules in his newest book (2002 passim).
72 See Kimenyi 1980:41. Sentence-initial high tone occurs on the first syllable [úmwáarimú] while TONE ANTICIPATION brings the word-final high tone to the penult [umwáarímú]. Kimenyí's later book (2002 passim) discusses these phonetic tonal phenomena in far greater detail.
### Table 30. Summary of Tone Patterns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abr</th>
<th>Mnemonic device (memory guide)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1st vowel after a consonant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2nd (second) mora of the word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>after the prefix tone is on the first mora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A2</td>
<td>tone on the 2nd mora after the prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>borrowed noun – penultimate vowel has a long vowel with high tone on the second mora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>tone dissimilation or tonal flip-flop; a low tone root has a high tone prefix; a high tone root has a low tone prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>end syllable – high tone falls on the last syllable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2</td>
<td>high tone on 2nd syllable from the end of the word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E3</td>
<td>high tone on 3rd syllable from the end of the word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>affix, e.g., future, gets high tone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>high tone after the prefix on the next vowel if allowed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>ii– reflexives have their own tone pattern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>jump to the right – tone moves one mora to the right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>low tone throughout; high tones are lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>mobile morpheme – tone moves one mora to the left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>negative or ni – high tone falls on the initial syllable of the word if this word does not follow a pause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>object tonality – tone occurs on first object and skips every other syllable up to first root syllable of the root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O2</td>
<td>2 objects postradical tone rule – high tone on the second object and no further into the word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>postroot tone; postradical syllabic tonality – high tone appears on the 2nd syllable of the root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2</td>
<td>postradical moraic tonality – tone appears on the 2nd mora of the root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>root tonality; radical tone – whatever tone pattern the root has is maintained</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>tone obligatorily appears on the first mora of the root – introduced high tonality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>uii– the subject relative of weak verbs has high tone on the second mora of the prefix yielding uii-, ii-, and aa-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc</td>
<td>vocative tonality – vocatives derived from low tone roots have high tone on the second mora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>Two consecutive high tones do not co-occur; a high tone one mora after another is cancelled (Xed out)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2.4.1. Root Tonality [abr: R]

The most basic tone pattern is that assigned to a root, which must be memorized in specific citation forms. Roots either have all vowels with LOW TONE (unmarked, i.e., a vowel without any characters above it in most articles on both Kinyarwanda and Kirundi73) or they have one or more vowels with HIGH TONE (marked herein and in many textbooks and dictionaries with an ACUTE ACCENT74). Several inflections maintain root tonality, such as the infinitive, which has a tonal and grammatical pattern that can be designated as: R ku-Δ-a.75

**HIGH TONE ROOTS**

/gufásha/ (both) v-inf ‘to help’
/gutéeka/ (both) v-inf ‘to cook’
/guhiíiga/ (both) v-inf ‘to hunt’
/kubóna/ (both) v-inf ‘to find’
/kuvúga/ (both) v-inf ‘to speak’

---

73 One occasionally encounters a GRAVE ACCENT in some linguistic articles to designate low tone, e.g., /əràvúgá/ ‘he says’ [low-low-high-low].
74 Some recent authors (Bizimana 1998, Overduilve & Jacob 1998) are now marking high tone in Kinyarwanda with a circumflex rather than acute accent, e.g., /umutwê/ instead of /umutwé/.
75 That is, ROOT TONALITY (R), INFINITIVE PREFIX /ku-, kw-, gu/, ROOT (Δ), plus IMPERFECTIVE SUFFIX /-a/.

34
Chapter 2: The Sound System

LOW TONE ROOTS
/gutaangaara/ {both} v-inf 'to marvel'
/guseka/ {both} v-inf 'to laugh'
/kuvoorora/ {both} v-inf 'to fetch water'
/gushima/ {both} v-inf 'to praise'
/kugura/ {both} v-inf 'to buy'

Another verb conjugation which maintains root tonality is the indicative immediate disjoint, with the pattern: R S-ra-∆-a.76
/aravúga/ {both} v-ind-imm-dis 'He says.' [HIGH TONE ROOT]
/uraseka/ {both} v-ind-imm-dis 'You’ll laugh!' [LOW TONE ROOT]

Many full-form nouns either maintain root tonality (if they derive from a verb or adjective) or establish their own pattern as R cl-∆.77

HIGH TONE ROOTS
/umuryáango/ {both} n2-sg 'door'
/igihúgu/ {both} n4-sg 'country'
/injiangwé/ {both} n5-sg/pl 'wildcat'
/urugó/ {both} n6-sg 'enclosure (around house and yard); fence'

LOW TONE ROOTS
/akazi/ {both} n7-sg 'job, employment'
/umutiindi/ {both} n1-sg 'unlucky person' [Rundi], 'poor person' [Rwanda]
/ibuye/ {both} n3-sg 'rock'
/urutoki/ {both} n6-sg 'finger'

2.4.2. Low Tonality [abr: L]

Some inflections strip the resulting word of any high tones, leaving low tone throughout, i.e., any high tone associated with the root or a prefix is lost. Thus high-toned roots will lose the high tone, while low-toned roots maintain low tonality. In some other inflections, the root loses high tone in favor of the tonality of an affix. In such instances, two or more tone rules (one of which is this low-tone rule) operate on the word. There are several verb conjugations which require low tonality, among them are the INDICATIVE IMMEDIATE CONJOINT [L S-Ø-∆-a78], the IMPERATIVE [L Ø-∆-a79], the INDICATIVE FUTURE [L S-zoo-∆-a {Rundi}, L S-zaa-∆-a {Rwanda}]], and the HORTATIVE [L S-ra-∆-a {Rundi}, L S-ra-∆-e {both}].

HIGH TONE ROOTS
/yabikoze hééhé/ {both} v-ind-imm-con 'Where did he do it?'
< /–kóra, -kóze/ 'do, work'
/kóra/ {both} v-imp 'Work!'
/uzaakora/ {Rundi}, /uzaakora/ {Rwanda} v-ind-fut 'You will work.'
/urarririimba/ {Rundi}, /urarririimbe/ {Rwanda} v-hort 'You should sing.' < /-ríriimba/ 'sing'

LOW TONE ROOTS
/amatá agurwa itaábi/ {both} v-ind-imm-con 'Milk can be exchanged for tobacco.' < /-gura/ 'buy, barter, exchange'
/ameze até/ {both} v-ind-imm-con 'How is he doing?' < /-mera, -meze/
/soma/ {both} v-imp 'Read!' < /-soma/
/nzoobahana/ {Rundi}, /nzaabahana/ {Rwanda} v-ind-fut 'I will punish them' < /-hana/

76 That is, ROOT TONALITY (R), SUBJECT PREFIX (S), DISJOINT MARKER /–ra–/, ROOT (∆), plus IMPERFECTIVE SUFFIX /-a/. DISJOINT refers to a verb that does not have any object or other complement following it.
77 That is, ROOT TONALITY (R), CLASS AFFIX (cl), and ROOT (∆).
78 That is, LOW TONE RULE (L), SUBJECT PREFIX (S), no TENSE MARKER (--Ø--), ROOT (∆), plus IMPERFECTIVE SUFFIX /-a/. CONJOINT refers to a verb that has an object or some other complement following it.
79 That is, LOW TONE RULE (L), no SUBJECT PREFIX (--Ø--), ROOT (∆), plus IMPERFECTIVE SUFFIX /-a/.
2.4.3. Obligatory High Tonality [abr: T]

A few inflections require high tone on the first syllable of the root. A high-toned root keeps its tonality while a low-toned root acquires high tone. Note that this tone rule never occurs by itself, but that there is always at least one other tone rule operating with it. Thus, there is the INFINITIVE IMMEDIATE NEGATIVE + OBJECT [A^{10}+T ku-tá-OBJ-Δ-a] or the INDICATIVE AFFIRMATIVE PRETERIT PERFECT DISJOINT [2^{81}+T S-āā-Δ-ye].

HIGH TONE ROOTS
/kutábkóra/ {both} v-inf-imm-neg+obj 'not to do them'
mwaárakúunze {both} v-ind-aff-pret-perf-dis 'You loved.'

LOW TONE ROOTS
/kutábisába/ {both} v-inf-imm-neg-obj 'not to request them'
/baáraméshe/ {Rwanda} v-ind-aff-pret-perf-dis 'They washed.'

2.4.4. Postradical Syllabic Tonality (Second Syllable of the Root) [abr: P]

In several inflections, high tone obligatorily falls on the SECOND SYLLABLE starting from the beginning of the root. Thus, on roots with high tone on the first syllable, it seems to move to the second syllable. On low-toned roots, however, tone appears on the second syllable. A verb in the SUBJUNCTIVE IMMEDIATE has the pattern P S-Δ-e, whereas the RELATIVE AFFIRMATIVE IMMEDIATE has P S-Ω-Δ-a, and the RELATIVE NEGATIVE IMMEDIATE has P S-ta-Δ-a.

HIGH TONE ROOTS
/uvugé/ {both} v-sub-imm 'You should say.' < /–vúga/ 'say'
/bateeká/ {both} v-rel-aff-imm '...that they cook.' < /–téeka/ 'cook'
/iteéméra/ {both} v-rel-neg-imm '...that it does not consent.' (R38.5) < /–éemera/ 'agree, consent'

LOW TONE ROOTS
/dutaahé/ {both} v-sub-imm 'We should go home.' (R14) < /–taaha/ 'go home'
/ageendá/ {both} v-rel-aff-imm '...that he leaves.' < /–geenda/ 'go'
/ingáruká zikoméye/ {Rwanda} v-rel-aff-imm-perf 'serious consequences' [lit. results that are serious] (R20) < /–komera/ 'be hard, difficult, serious'
/zitagarágara/ {both} v-rel-neg-imm '...that they are not visible.' (R26) < /–garagara/ 'be visible'

When these verbs have objects, the tone will differ (see §2.4.12).

2.4.5. Postradical Moraic Tonality (Second Mora of the Root) [abr: P2]

Analogous to the preceding rule, there are some constructions where high tone obligatorily falls on the SECOND MORA of the root. With roots that have high tone on the first mora, it seems to move to the second; but on low-toned roots, high tone appears on the second mora. The operation of this rule is very clear on roots with long penult\(^82\) vowels. However, with roots that have short penult vowels, the resulting pattern (movement to the next mora which is in the next syllable) is identical to that produced by the P rule discussed in §2.4.4. One can only extrapolate that it must be the same tone rule applying across the same derivational class. One such pattern is apparent in the formation of certain nouns: P2 cl-Δ-e or P2 cl-Δ-i.

\(^{80}\) The A (after prefix) tone rule is discussed below in §2.4.16.

\(^{81}\) The 2 rule (high tone at the end of the second mora of the word, negative prefix and article excepted) is discussed below in §2.4.15.

\(^{82}\) PENULT is another word for PENULTIMATE, the next to last syllable or the second syllable from the end of the word.
HIGH TONE ROOTS

/umutwaâre/ {both} n1-sg 'chief, ruler' < /–twáara/ 'rule, govern'
/imiriire/ {Rwanda} n2-pl-vn 'manner of eating' < /–ryá/ 'eat'
/ubukóønje/ {both} n8-sg-abs 'coldness' < /–kóonja/ 'be cold'
/ubukiré/ {both} n8-sg 'well-being' < /–kira/ 'be well (healthy) or well off (rich)'
/umuhigi/ {both} n1-sg 'hunter' < /–hiiga/ 'hunt'

LOW TONE ROOTS

/umugomé/ {both} n1-sg 'rebel, revolutionary' < /–goma/ 'revolt'
/ubugomé/ {both} n8-sg-abs 'rebellion'
/imisabíre/ {Rwanda} n2-pl 'petitions' < /–saba/ 'ask'
/ubushaáke/ {Rwanda} n8-sg-abs 'will, desire' < /–shaaka/ 'want'
/ubukené/ {both} n8-sg-abs 'poverty' < /–kena/ 'be poor, needy'
/impigi/ {Rwanda} n5-sg/pl 'amulet' < /–higa/ 'show bravery'

With verbs, the presence of ONE OBJECT (§2.4.11) affects postradical tonality (§2.4.4). While high tone is normally introduced to the second syllable of the root in certain constructions (e.g., negative, subjunctive, or relative), it will not occur beyond the THIRD MORA starting with the first infix (including the negative infix -ta-). Tone must be moved leftward to comply, so it winds up on the second mora of the root.83

/kukó ndazikuúnda/ {Rundi}, /kukó nzikuúnda/ {Rundi} v-rel-aff-imm-impf+obj '...because I love them.' [n5-pl] < /-ra-(1)-ki(2)u(3)ndá/; rw: /–kuúnda/
/bátagisóma/ {both} v-part-neg-imm-impf+obj 'they not reading it' < ba-ta(1)-gi(2)-so(3)má; rw: –soma (low tone root) 'read'
/kó bakibigéenza/ {both} v-rel-aff-persist-impf+obj '...that they still do it.' < ba-ki-bi(1)-ge(2)e(3)nzá/; rw: /-geenza/ (low tone root)

2.4.6. Borrowed Noun Tonality [abr: B]

There is a tone pattern common to some (not all) borrowed noun roots whereby the penultimate syllable has a long vowel with high tone on the second mora. This pattern is B cl-Δ.

/yohaáni/ {both} n1a-sg-pn 'John' {German Johan}
/umupiíra/ {both} n2-sg 'ball' {Swahili}
/igaáre/ {both} n3-sg 'bicycle' {Swahili}
/amazutútu/ {both} n3-pl 'fuel oil, kerosine' {French mazout}
/ikíniní/ {both} n4-sg 'pill, medicine' {French quinine}
/inóóti/ {both} n5a-sg/pl 'note, banknote' {English, French note}
/ibaánki/ {both} n5a-sg, /baánki/ {both} n5b-sg 'bank' {French banque}
/moóshi/ {both} n5b-sg 'smoke, steam' {Swahili moshi}

2.4.7. Vocative Tonality for Low-Tone Roots [abr: Voc]

There are several VOCATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS used to call a person or address a thing. Which one of these applies depends on the tonality of the root. However, any vocative that derives from a LOW TONE ROOT has HIGH TONE ON THE SECOND MORA of the derivation, i.e., the whole word.84

83 This has led some scholars to postulate a special "three morae tone rule," i.e., a 3rule (for example, see Overdulve 1975:317). However, the resulting tonal pattern is actually this P2rule.
84 Contrast this rule, which adds high tone to the second syllable of the derived word, to one which moves a preexisting high tone to the next mora (§2.4.8).
Chapter 2: The Sound System

2.4.8. Jump to the Right Tonality [abr: J]

The JUMP TONAL RULE moves a high tone within the root word85 ONE MORA TO THE RIGHT.86 Thus, if high tone occurs on the first mora of a long vowel, the tone moves to the second mora. Otherwise, in the case of short vowels, the tone moves to the next syllable. One of the VOCATIVE constructions behaves this way, J-∆. This pattern also occurs with the INDICATIVE AFFIRMATIVE RECENT DISJOINT of vowel verbs, J S-Ø-V-∆-a or J S-Ø-∆-ye.

2.4.9. Mobile Tonality or Leftward Tone Shift [abr: M]

The MOBILE TONAL RULE or LEFTWARD TONE SHIFT moves a high tone ONE MORA TO THE LEFT.87 This is one of the least productive (i.e., rarely encountered) tonal patterns. It occurs on a few VOCATIVE forms where the noun root has high tone on its final syllable (as M cl-∆), full prefix derivations of -ndí ‘another of the same kind’ {both}, full prefix derivations of -hé ‘which?’ {Rwanda}, and a few other forms.

2.4.10. Tone Dissimilation or Flip-flop [abr: D]

There is a special pattern where the tonality of the prefix and that of the root intertwine. If the root has a high tone, then the prefix will be low-toned; if the root has a low tone, then the prefix itself

---

85 There is another tone rule that moves a high tone one mora to the right within an affix (see §2.4.20). Although this rule seems similar to the P2 rule (§2.4.5), it differs in that it only applies to high-tone roots; it moves a high tone, it doesn't add it.

86 This is the inverse of the pattern discussed in §2.4.9.

87 This is the inverse of the pattern discussed in §2.4.8.
gets a high tone. Kimenyi calls this process TONE DISSIMILATION (2002:323–29). This seems to apply exclusively to prefixes ending in /aa/, i.e., to nouns derived with the prefixes /kaa/-, /rwaar/-, and /saa/- (mostly in Rwanda), and to vocative constructions with /mwaar/ or /waar/ 'hey you!'  

HIGH TONE PREFIX – LOW TONE ROOT  
/rwaabugiri/ {Rwanda} n1a-sg-pn (male personal name; former king of Rwanda) < /rwaar-/- + /-bugiri/  
/káaburiimbo/ {both} 5b-sg 'asphalt, tarmac;' n1a-sg (nickname for a person with very dark complexion) < /kaa/- + /-buriimbo/  
/waar muga/ 'Hey mister!' [cf: /umugabo/ n1-sg 'man, adult male']  

LOW TONE PREFIX – HIGH TONE ROOT  
/rwaamiko/ {Rwanda} pn-geog (commune in the prefecture of Gikongoro in Rwanda) < /rwaar-/- + /-miko/  
/kaavúuta/ {both} n1a-sg-pn (male personal name) [lit. a child is born] < /kaa/- + /-vúuka/ 'be born'  
/waar wa/ 'Hey, kid!' [cf: umwaaana/ n1-sg 'child']

The following two tone rules revolve around the presence of an OBJECT INFIX in a verb.

2.4.11. Object Verb ("Skipping") Tonality [abr: O]  
An OBJECT PRONOUN INFIX, including the CONJUNCTIVE PREVERB -na-, attached to certain high-tone verb conjugations (e.g., indicative immediate disjoint, sequential immediate disjoint, infinitive with object) ATTRACTS HIGH TONE. Basically, this tone pattern puts high tone on the FIRST OBJECT and then SKIPS EVERY OTHER SYLLABLE, stopping at the first syllable of the verb root. If there is only ONE OBJECT, it alone receives the high tone. However, if TWO OBJECTS are present, then high tone appears on the first object and, skipping the second object, is found on the verb root. If there are THREE OBJECTS, high tone appears on the first and then third object, but not on the verb root. This pattern continues in this manner for as many objects as are logically or grammatically possible. Obviously, the tonality of low-toned verbs is not affected; all vowels remain low.

ONE OBJECT  
/ndamuukaanda/ {both} 'I love her.' < /–kúunda/ 'love'  
/araányemuera/ {both} 'He believes me.' < /–émera/ 'believe'  
/kudufata/ {both} 'to arrest us' < /–fáta/ 'catch, arrest'  
/aramuúhaaye/ {both} 'He just gave him.' < /–há/ 'give s.t. to s.o.'  
/baranákora/ {both} with conjunctive preverb 'Even they do.' < /–kóra/ 'do'

TWO OBJECTS  
/arabágúháaye/ {both} 'He entrusts them (the children) to you.' < /–há/ 'entrust'  
/baranábiikóra/ {both} with conjunctive preverb 'Even they do it'  

THREE OBJECTS  
/barahábíimukóra/ {Rwanda} v-ind-aff-imm-impf-dis+objx3 'They are going to do it for him there.' < /–kóra/ 'do s.t. for s.o.'  
/ndahábímushíra/ {Rundi} 'I (will) put them there for him.' < /–shíra/ 'put, place'  

FOUR OBJECTS  
/baranábihiámukóra/ {Rwanda} v-ind-aff-imm-impf-dis+objx4 '...and they are going to do it for him there.'

2.4.12. Two Object Postradical Tone Rule [abr: O2]  
This rule is triggered when TWO OR MORE OBJECTS are found in both Rwanda and Rundi, but it operates on different conjugations for each. Rather than follow other tone patterns, such as postradical tone (§2.4.4) or the "skipping" object pattern (§2.4.11), high tone is placed on the second object and no further into the word. Root tonality is lost.

88 Note the vowel lengthening before pro-1sg-obj (see §2.2.2.9).  
89 Note the root vowel shortening in this example (see §2.2.1.4).
Chapter 2: The Sound System

/[yaráymúhaaye]/ [Rwanda] v-ind-aff-perf-dis+objx2 'He gave it [n5-sg] to him.' < /-hál/ 'give'
/[baárabimúsabiye]/ [Rwanda] v-ind-aff-perf-dis+objx2 'They have requested it [n4-pl] for him.' < /-sába/ 'request'
/[abíbábwiire]/ [Kirundi] v-sub-aff-imm+objx2 'Should he tell it to them?' < /-bwiira/ 'tell s.t. to s.o.'
/[tubimwáandikire]/ [Rwanda] v-sub-aff-imm+objx2 'We should write it for you.' < /-aandikira/ 'write s.t. to s.o.'
/[ahó tukizimúbariirira]/ [Kirundi] v-rel-aff-persist-impf+objx2 '...while we are still sewing them (the dresses) for her.' < /-bariirira/ 'sew'

2.4.13. Non-stable Initial Tone [abr: N]

Several verb constructions will have high tone on the first syllable so long as the verb does not come first in the sentence or follow a pause. This includes negative verbs with ntí-, copulatives with ni, si or -rí, and imperatives.

/igíité ntíkirí háriíya/ {both} 'The tree is not over there.'
/nagíiyé i waábo sínámubona/ {both} 'I went to his place (but) didn’t find him.' [Otherwise:
/sínámubona i waábo/]
/íkíríindi ntíkiríándikwa nk-úukó kivugwá/ {both} 'Kirundi is still not written the way it is spoken.' [or /ntíkiríándikwa/]
/iwáacu ni i kigali/ {Rwanda} 'Our home is in Kigali.'
/ivyo sí vyiizá/ {Rundi}, /ibyo sí byiizá/ {Rwanda} 'Those (things) are not nice.'

2.4.14. First Vowel after a Consonant [abr: 1]

Participial verbs in both languages and subject relative forms in Rwanda require a HIGH TONE ON THE FIRST VOWEL AFTER THE FIRST CONSONANT. Weak forms which begin with a vowel therefore will have high tone on the first mora of the second syllable, whereas strong forms have high tone on the first mora of the first syllable. The structure of such verbs in the PARTICIPIAL IMMEDIATE TENSE is 1+L S-∆ a or 1+L S-∆ ye.

/bányerera/ {both} v-part-imm-n1-pl 'they slipping' (R23)
/yúumva/ {both} v-part-imm-n1-sg 'he hearing' (R23)
/kímeze/ {both} v-part-imm-n4-sg 'it being in such a state' (R40.3)
/kwáakomeretse/ {both} v-part-recent-n9-sg 'it having been injured' (R34.5) [1+L S-áa-∆ ye < /-kómereka/ 'be wounded; get injured'
/indwáara ikómye/ {Rwanda} v-rel-subj-imm-perf 'a serious illness'

2.4.15. Tone on Second Mora of Word [abr: 2]

Preterit forms in all moods and negative subjunctive verb forms require an OBLIGATORY HIGH TONE at the end of the SECOND MORA of the word. In most conjugations, when this rule applies, the root LOSES ANY HIGH TONE. The structure for such verbs is: INDICATIVE PRETERIT 2+L S-a-∆ a or 2+L S-a-∆ ye or NEGATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE 2+L ntí-S-a-∆ e.

90 Besides the O2 tone pattern, this form also has preterit tonality, i.e., 2+O2.
91 This and the following Kinyarwanda examples are from Overdulve & Jacob 1998:326.
92 This Kirundi example is from Cristini 2000:204f.
93 This Kirundi example is from Cristini 2000:171.
94 Our mnemonic is here based on ntí- or ni-like constructions, hence our use of NON-STABLE. Other authors have called this pattern PROVISIONAL HIGH TONE (Stevick 1965:22) or INITIAL UNSTABLE TONE (Cristini 2000:186f, Rodegem 1967:102 ton initial instable).
95 That is, only this tone pattern persists on the resulting word. Any root tonality is lost.
96 Although the weak participial form of this verb (and all other verbs with high tone on the first vowel) seems to preserve the root tonality of /–úumva/, the high tone here follows the 1 RULE, not the R RULE.
2.4.16. Tone on First Mora after Prefix [abr: A]

Some noun derivations and a few verb conjugations, especially the AUTONOME, put an obligatory high tone on the first mora after the prefix.97

/umwáana/ {both} n1-sg 'child' < /–aana/ 'cry like a baby'

/ikáramú/ [A+E rules] {Rwanda} n5a-sg-ir 'pencil' [Swahili kalamu < Arb]

/abaándi/ {both} atr-n1-pl 'others (of the same kind)' < /–ndí/ 'other'

/abaándika/ {both} auto-n1-pl-imm 'the ones who work' < /–kóra/ 'work'98

/ababíkoreesha/ {both} auto-n1-pl-imm+obj 'the ones who use them' < /–kóreesha/ 'employ; use, utilize'99

/kutázáasaba/ [A+F+R] {Rwanda} v-inf-neg-fut 'to not ask (later)'

2.4.17. Tone on Second Mora after Prefix [abr: A2]

This tone pattern affects long vowels that follow noun prefixes and requires an obligatory high tone on the second mora after the prefix. This applies broadly to many nouns derived from vowel roots and to autonome conjugations which have long vowels (e.g., the immediate of vowel verbs or consonant verbs in conditional, recent, and preterit). It also affects pronouns and demonstratives that follow conjunctive or possessive prefixes.

/icaámbu/ {Rundi}, /icyaámbu/ {Rwanda} n4-sg 'ford, passage' < /–aambuka/ {both} v-tr 'ford (a river), cross (a border)'

/ubwaátsi/ {both} n8-sg 'grass'

/ubwiíhaangaane/ {both} n8-sg 'patience, hiding one's pain or suffering' < /–íihaangaana/ 'hide one's pain, endure; resign oneself to s.t.; bear patiently'

/umwaámi/ {both} n1-sg 'king' < /–áama/ 'endure, go on and on'

/umwiígiisha/ {both} n1-sg 'teacher' < /–íigiisha/ 'teach'

/icoómpa/ {Rundi} – /icyaámpa/ {Rwanda} v-auto-n4-sg-cond+obj 'I wish that ...' [lit. 'It would give me...']

/uwoóbariira/ {Rundi} v-auto-n1-sg-cond-imppf 'one who can sew'

/uwaámpa/ {Rwanda} v-auto-n1-sg-cond+obj 'one who would give me' (R32)

/abiciwa/ {both} v-auto-n1-pl-imm 'the ones who are killed'

/abaávuga/ {Rundi}, /abaávugaga/ {Rwanda} v-auto-n1-pl-recent 'the ones who spoke (recently)'

/uwakúumpaaye/ {Rundi} v-auto-n1-sg-pret-perf+obj 'he who gave you to me'

/abaáshaakanye/ {Rwanda} v-auto-n1-pl-pret-perf 'the ones who got married'

/abiánnyu/ {both} pro-2pl-nom-poss-n1-pl 'yours'

/naánje/ {Rundi}, /naánjye/ {Rwanda} pro-1sg-conj 'I also, me too'

/iwaábo/ {both} pro-3pl-poss-n13-loc 'at their place'

/naáha «n'áha» {both} deic-1n10-loc-conj 'here also'

/wiíyo/ «wiíyo» {both} deic-2-n5-sg-poss 'of that'

97 Our mnemonic is here based on after a prefix or like an autonome.
98 Although it appears in this example as if high tone is falling regularly on the root, this construction requires high tone immediately after the class prefix. This pattern is made quite clear by the following two examples.
99 Note that here the object seems to usurp root tonality; however high tone is occurring on the first mora after the prefix.
2.4.18. High Tone after Prefix, if Allowed [abr: H]

According to this very frequent tone pattern, high tone will appear immediately after the prefix so long as there is no high tone on the following mora. This rule applies with very high frequency to full form nouns that follow consonant-only possessive prefixes, the conjunctive or agentive n-, and the comparative nk-. This rule also derives n1a plural forms from high-toned roots with the structure: H baa-∆.

/baadåatá/ [both] n1a-pl 'our fathers' [sg: /daatá/]
/nábatégesi/ [both] n1-pl-conj 'and public figures' (R39.3)
/nk’ábaándi/ [both] attr-n1-pl-comp 'like other people' (R34.2)
/ubumwé bw’áburuündi/ [both] n8-sg + n8-sg-poss 'the unity of Burundi' (R3)

2.4.19. High Tone on Affix [abr: F]

Certain affixes are considered by many grammarians to have a high tone associated with them, such as the future (-záa- {Rwanda}, -zóo- {Rundi}) or the punctual (-ráa- {both}). If this interpretation is followed, then one must account for when such affixes lose their tonality. Our interpretation includes a rule or pattern when high tone does appear on these affixes and when it does not. When it does, it always occurs in conjunction with one or two other high tone rules. Thus, the NEGATIVE AFFIRMATIVE FUTURE has the pattern F+R nti-S-záa-∆-a {Rwanda} and F+R nti-S-zóo-∆-a {Rundi}. Nouns derived with the -nya- prefix (§3.3) also employ this rule; if any of the following three syllables has high tone, the prefix itself will also have high tone.

/sinzóobitáanga/ [Rundi] v-ind-neg-fut+obj 'I will not offer it.'
/ntazáaryá/ [Rwanda] v-ind-neg-fut 'He will not eat.'
/ażogaríke/ [Rundi] v-sub-aff-fut 'He would return.' [F+P]
/umunyáweenge/ [both] n1-sg 'a wise man' < /úweenge/ 'mind'
/umunyábuté/ [both] n1-sg lazybones, slothful person' < /ubuté/ 'indifference, laziness' [F+R]
/ntibaráabyíitabiira/ [Rwanda] v-ind-neg-punc+obj 'They do not yet comply with it.' (R38.6) [N+F+R]
/ntáráavúga/ [both] v-part-neg-punc 'Before I spoke...' [lit. 'I not speaking yet'] (R27.4) [1+F+R]

2.4.20. Subject Relative Tonality [abr: U]

This rule applies only to a series of double vowel autonome prefixes which carry a high tone on the second mora: /uí-, íi-, áa/-; Although this construction does occur in Rundi, it is far more common or frequent in Rwanda.101

/uúvuga/ [both] auto-n1-sg-imm 'one who speaks' [U + L]
/uúhagarikiwe n'íngwe/ [Rundi] auto-n1-sg-imm 'one who is protected by a leopard' [U + L]
/uútaakuunda/ [Rwanda] auto-n1-sg-cond+obj 'someone who should not love you' [U + L]
/uú táayyaaye/ [Rundi] auto-n1-sg-pret-perf 'one who has not been a parent' [U+A2]
/iikamwa/ [both] auto-n5-sg-imm 'the one that is milked' [U+L]
/amáazi aákoonje/ [Rwanda] auto-n3-pl-imm-perf 'cold water' [U+L]

2.4.21. Reflexive /íi-/ Tone Pattern [abr: I]

The REFLEXIVE infix /íi-/ (see §8.13) carries its own obligatory high tonality and cancels out any high tones associated with the root. No matter what noun derivation or verb conjugation (tense or

---

100 Note that its affirmative counterpart, the INDICATIVE AFFIRMATIVE FUTURE, has the pattern L S-zaa-∆-a {Rwanda} or L S-zoo-∆-a {Rundi} where both the future prefix and the root have low tone.

101 The more usual Rundi prefixes, which follow the standard rules for autonomies, are uwu- n1-sg, iyi- n2-pl, n5-sg, aya- n3-pl.
mood) is involved, high tone can only occur in one of three positions: the first mora /íi-/ [I, 1 or R], the second mora /íi-/ [2, A2, or P2], or the third mora (the vowel immediately following this prefix) [P]. As with all other verbs, tone will be lost in conjugations where the L rule applies, as in the IMMEDIATE CONJOINT or SEQUENCE CONJOINT.

/\(kw)íiyoroosa/ {both} v-refl 'cover oneself up' < /–ooroosa/ 'cover'
/\baritiwinegera/ {both} v-refl-ben-ind-imm-dis 'They just laugh.' [I]
/\umuryaango w'ábhiibumbye/ {Rwanda} n2-sg-cmp 'United Nations' [A2+L]
/\abiifite/ {Rwanda} auto-n1-pl-imm 'wealthy people' < /\ab(a)-iì-fite/
/\ativiúza/ {Rundi} v-refl-part-neg-imm 'he not getting himself treated...' (R31.3) [I+P]
/\bakiibonera/ {both} v-refl-ben-seq 'Then they just get for themselves.' [L]


2.4.22. High Tone on Final or End Syllable [abr: E]
This rule mostly applies to the locative postpositions /-hó/, -kó/, -yó/ {both}, /-mó/ {Rwanda}, /-mwó/ {Rundi} and the derivation of some nouns.

/\harihó/ {both} v-cop-loc-ind-imm-n10-cmp 'there are' (R33.6, R37.3) [E]
/\ingáruká/ {Rwanda} n5-sg/pl 'result, consequence' (R20, R26) [A+E]
/\imódoká/ {both} n5a-sg/pl 'automobile' (R16) {English motorcar} [A+E]
/\ugashyiramó/ {Rwanda} v-seq-imm-con+post 'and you put in' [E]
/\kwitaabwahó/ {both} v-inf-pass+post 'to be cared for' (R38.11) [I+E]
/\vyaáteerwamwó/ {Rundi} v-rel-pret-pass-impf+post '(bombs) were dropped upon' (R37.4) [2+L+E]

2.4.23. High Tone on Second Syllable from End [abr: E2]
This rule applies to a few long (POLYSYLLABIC) noun derivations.

/\umukirisíto/ {both} n1-sg 'Christian' {intl} [E2]
/\umuhwéenyegéri/ {Rwanda} n2-sg 'old dried root (in a field)' [R+E2] < /–hwéenyegera/ 'grow old and dry up (of roots in a field)'

2.4.24. High Tone on Third Syllable from End [abr: E3]
This rule applies to a few very long (POLYSYLLABIC) noun derivations, most of which are loans.

/\buriugumeesítiri/ {both} n1a-sg 'mayor, burgomaster' {Flemish}
/\isegíteeri/ {Rwanda} n5a-sg-ir 'sector (administrative unit)' (R38.11) {French secteur}
/\umuníiniisítiri/ {Rwanda} n1-sg 'minister (of government)' (R32) {French ministre} [A+E3]

2.4.25. Elimination of Two High Tones in a Row [abr: X]
Two high tones do not normally occur on immediately-following morae; the second one will be dropped (this process is called TONAL HAPLOLOGY; it is also referred to as MEUSSEN'S RULE).

/\umunyábwooba/ {both} n1-sg 'coward' < /\umu-
\nyá-(u)bwóoba/ [F+X]
/\umunyábweenge/ {both} n1-sg 'wise man, intelligent person' < /\umu-
yá-(u)bwéenge/ [F+X]
/\abatári/ {both} v-auto-neg-n1-pl-imm 'the ones who are not' < /\aba-
tá-ri/ [A+X]
/\nyabáki/ {both} qw-invar 'of what sort?, what kind of?' < /\nya-
ba-
\ki/ [A+X]
/\nyakámwe/ {Rwanda} n1a-sg 'person all alone in life (without any family), lone survivor' < /\nya-
ka-
mwé/ [A+X]; cf: /\nyákamwe/ {Rundi}
Chapter 2: The Sound System

There are a few exceptions to this rule. When the negative infix -ta- obtains a high tone, it can be followed by another high tone.\(^{102}\)

- /kutává/ [Rwanda] v-inf-neg-imm 'not to leave' [A+P]
- /ibitári/ [Rwanda] auto-n4-pl-cop-loc-neg-imm 'things that are not' [A+P]
- /abatáári/ [both] auto-n1-pl-cop-loc-neg-pret 'the ones who were not (formerly)' [A+A2]

Subsequent high tones occur with REDUPLICATED ADJECTIVES\(^{103}\) where the first ends with a high tone:

- /bakurúbákuru/ [both] adj-n1-pl-redup 'very important, extremely powerful (people)' [P2+F]
- /mugufimágufi/ [Rwanda] adj-n1-sg-redup 'very short (person)' [R+F]

When a word ending with high tone is followed by a POSTPOSITION [Rule E], two high tones can appear in adjacent syllables.

- /batuuyémó/ [Rwanda] v-rel-imm-cmp 'that they live in' [P+E]
- /yiitáhó/ [Rundi] v-rel-recent-cmp 'who cared for' [P+E]

Note the following form that has succeeding high tones on each of its three syllables:

- /ntábáhó/ [both] v-cop-cmp-part-neg-imm 'Before I existed...' [lit. 'I not existing'] (R28.2) [1+P+E]

Some loanwords are allowed to have subsequent high tones.

- /umukómíseeri/ [Rwanda] n1-sg 'commissioner (of police, of customs)' [French] [A+E3]

2.5. Sound Changes (Morphophonemics)

There are a number of ways in which sound changes affect the shape of a word when it is inflected or derived. For example, the plural in English is spelled «-s», but it is pronounced three different ways depending on the nature of the sound just before it: [-z] if the preceding consonant is an affricate (churches, judges), otherwise [-s] if the preceding consonant is voiceless (cats), and [-z] if it is voiced (dogs). Linguists call these MORPHOPHONEMIC CHANGES. Sometimes the sounds that make up a word become more like or more different from affixes or other parts of the word. Such changes can be so drastic that the relationship between a word and its root form are barely discernable.\(^{104}\) This section will outline the major types of consonant, vowel, and other changes that occur in Rwanda and Rundi.

2.5.1. Consonant Voice Dissimilation (Dahl's Law)

One of the most commonly-occurring changes is the "flip-flop" or swapping of VOICING (see §2.1 and Table 25) referred to as Dahl's law. If the first consonant of the root is VOICELESS /p, t, c, k, f, s, sh, shy, h, pf, ts/,\(^{105}\) then the consonant of the prefix will be VOICED. If the first consonant of the root is VOICED /b, d, j, g, v, z, m, n, ny, r, w, y/ or it begins with a vowel, then the consonant of the prefix will be VOICELESS. This broadly affects singular nouns of group 4 (iki- vs. igi-), all nouns in group 7 (aka- vs. aga-, utu- vs. udu-), and the singular of group 9 (uku- vs. ugu-), pronoun prefixes and infixes (tu- vs. du-), infinitives (ku- or kw- vs. gu-), and dependent negatives (-ta- vs. -da-).

---


\(^{103}\) The process of reduplication is treated in more detail in §2.5.17.

\(^{104}\) For example, the English word illegal is actually the combination of the negative prefix in- (as in incomplete) and the root legal, while irreverent is in- + reverent. In both of these cases the nasal [n] ASSIMILATES to the following consonant [l] or [r].

\(^{105}\) Overdulve offers a handy mnemonic "T-KOFSCHIP" (1975:62,81).
Chapter 2: The Sound System

VOICED CONSONANT IN A PREFIX BEFORE A VOICELESS CONSONANT IN THE ROOT
[c] /gucéeka/ {both} v-inf ‘to keep silent’
[f] /agafaraanga/ {both} n7-sg-dim ‘a small coin’
[h] /agahéra/ {both} n7-sg ‘little finger’
[k] /agakóókó/ {both} n7-sg ‘insect, bug’

/gukóra/ {both} v-inf ‘to work’

[p] /agapapuro/ {both} n7-sg ‘a small sheet of paper’

[pf] /igipfuúnsi/ {both} n4-sg ‘fist’

[s] /agasózi/ {both} n7-sg ‘mound, small hill’

/vusoma/ {both} v-inf ‘to read’

/uragisomye/ {both} v-ind-imm-perf ‘You just read it (the book).’

[sh] /gushiima/ {both} v-inf ‘to praise, to approve of’

/dushobora/ {both} v-ind-imm-impf-con ‘We can.’

[t] /gitióondo/ {both} n4-sg-time ‘morning’

/idateeyé/ {both} v-rel-neg-imm-perf ‘that does not cause...’

[tw] /ugutwí/ {both} n9-sg ‘ear’

VOICELESS CONSONANT IN A PREFIX BEFORE A VOICED CONSONANT IN THE ROOT
[a] /kwáanika/ {both} v-inf ‘to dry in the sun’

[b] /ikibázo/ {both} n4-sg ‘question’

/ukubóko/ {both} n9-sg ‘arm’

/urakibooneye/ {both} v-aff-imm-perf ‘You just saw it (the thing) [n4-sg-obj].’

[d] /ikidaági/ {both}, /ikidaáge/ {Rwanda} n4-sg German (language and culture)

[e] /ukwéezi/ {both} n9-sg ‘moon; month’

[g] /iikigaanza/ {both} n4-sg ‘hand’

/ukuguru/ {both} n9-sg ‘leg’

/kugeenda/ {both} v-inf ‘to leave, to depart’

[i] /kwíigiisha/ {both} v-inf ‘to teach’

[j] /ikijúujú/ {Rundi} n4-sg ‘fool, idiot’

/ikijuumba/ {Rwanda} n4-sg ‘sweet potato’

[m] /ikimasá/ {both} n4-sg ‘bull, male calf (about 4 years old)’

/ikiméra/ {both} n4-sg ‘plant, vegetation’

[n] /ikíntu/ {both} n4-sg ‘thing’

/ukunu/ {both} n11-sg ‘method, way, manner’

[ny] /ikinyomá/ {both} n4-sg ‘lie, falsehood’

/ikinyamakurú/ {both} n4-sg ‘newspaper, journal’

[o] /kwóoza/ {Rundi}, /kóoza/ {Rwanda} v-inf ‘to wash’

[r] /ikireenge/ {both} n4-sg ‘foot’

/kuryá/ {both} v-inf ‘to eat’

/turuhúuke/ {both} v-sub-imm ‘We should rest.’

[v] /ikivúra/ {both} n4-sg ‘deluge, heavy rain’

/ikivaánge/ {both} n4-sg ‘mixture; mulatto’

[u] /kwúubaka/ {Rundi}, /kúubaka/ {Rwanda} ‘to build’

/wu/ /kwuugura/ {both} v-inf-imm+obj-n2-sg ‘to buy it’

[y] /ikiyága/ {both} n4-sg ‘lake’

/ikiyíiko/ {both} n4-sg ‘spoon’

/kuyobora/ {both} v-inf ‘to direct’

[z] /akazu/ {both} n7-sg ‘cottage, hut, small house’

/ikizúungu/ {both} n4-sg ‘the White Man’s way’

/ikizúuba/ {both} n4-sg ‘blazing sun, hot sunlight’
2.5.2. Nasal Assimilation

In another common sound change a nasal (m or n) becomes more like the following sound. Thus, in English, the negative prefix in- changes in words like imperfect [im-] and incomplete [in-]. In Rwanda and Rundi, the n5-sg prefix in- becomes im- before a labial sound [b, f, p, pf, v]. The same happens when the first person pronoun object -n- becomes -m-. Similarly, before [k] or [g], an [n] sounds more like an ng [ŋ]. In the case of alveolar sounds [d, t, r, s, z] the n remains unchanged.

| b | imbúto/ {both} | n5-sg/pl 'fruit; seed' |
| f | umfureba/ {Rwanda} | v-ind-imm 'You wrap me up.' |
| m | mfise/ {Rundi}, /mfite/ {Rwanda} | v-ind-imm 'I have.' |
| p | /impfizí/ {both} | n5-sg/pl 'stud, adult male animal' |
| p | /mpfukama/ {both} | v-ind-imm 'I kneel.' |
| p | /impapuro/ [imhapuro] {both} | n5-sg/pl 'paper, sheet of paper' |
| t | /mpaanga/ {both} | n5-sg/pl 'I rent.' |
| v | /imvúra/ {both} | n5-sg/pl 'rain' |
| v | /mvuga/ {both} | v-ind-imm 'I say.' |
| g | /ingeso/ [ingeso] {both} | n5-sg/pl 'habit, trait' |
| k | /inká/ [iŋha] {both} | n5-sg/pl 'cow' |

2.5.3. Murmuring of Voiceless Stops after Nasals

The voiceless stops /p, t, k/ almost sound like an [h] when they follow a nasal. Note that the nasal has the place of articulation: bilabial, alveolar, or velar. However, when a nasal actually precedes an [h] it behaves just like /m+p/.

| p | /mpiima/ {Rundi} [mhiima], /mpima/ {Rwanda} [mhima] v-imm 'I weigh.' |
| h | /ku-n-híisha/ [kuúmhisha] {both} v-inf+obj 'to hide me' |
| t | /ntaa/ [nhaa] {both} neg-pred-ind 'There is not.' |
| k | /nkina/ [ÑÑÑÑ nha] {both} 'I (habitually) play' |

2.5.4. Consonant Strengthening after a Nasal

After a nasal, the liquid /r/ becomes the stop [d] and the fricative [β] spelled «b» becomes the stop [b].

| r > d | /indwáara/ {both} n5-sg/pl 'illness, disease' | /-rwáara/ v-st 'be sick' |
| n | /ndi/ {both} v-cop-loc-ind-imm 'I am.' | < n- pro-1sg-subj 'I' + /-ri/ v-cop-loc 'be at' |
| β > b | /imbabázi/ {both} n5-sg/pl 'forgiveness, pardon' | /-bábara/ v-st 'suffer, be hurt' |

---

106 The sequence spelled «imp-» is pronounced [imh] and actually derives from a sound change involving roots beginning with h- which change (orthographically) to «p». This will be taken up in the next section.

107 Kimenyi (2002:151f) refers to this process as ASPIRATION, a term usually associated with the process of pronouncing a consonant with a puff of air such as word initial voiceless stops in English (pit, tank, kick). Peter Ladefoged worked on this phenomenon in 1968 and says: "My memory is that it is something like a breathy voiced (murmured) nasal" (p.c., email dated 22 Jan 2004).
2.5.5. Deaffrication after a Nasal

The affricates /pf, ts, c/ become fricatives /f, s, sh/ after a nasal, which will take the same place of articulation (i.e., become homorganic).

N+pf > mf /ɪmfúra/ {both} n5-sg/pl 'firstborn; [ext] noble' < /N-pfúra/
/ɪmfiiizi/ {both} n5-sg/pl 'stud, adult male animal' < /N-pfiizi/
/ɪmfa kuríyáama/ {both} vp-aux-imm 'I just lie down.' (even though the bed is unmade) < /N-pfá/
N+ts > ns /nsíinda/ {both} v-imm-con 'I (usually) win.' < /N-ntsínda/
/agatíínsíiino/ {Rwanda} n7-sg 'heel' < /aga-ntsíin-tsíi-n-o/
/ntibaanseembere/ {both} v-neg-sub+obj 'May they not wipe my family out!' < /ntí-ba-N-tséemb-ere/
N+c > nsh /inshúro/ {Rwanda} n5-sg/pl 'measure; time, turn' < iN-cúr-o [Alt: /incúro/ {both}]
inshúti/ {Rwanda} n5-sg/pl 'relative, kinsman' < iN-cut-i [Alt: /incuti/ {both}]
insháabiti/ {Rwanda} n5-sg-cmp 'axe, hatchet' < /iN-cá-ibi-tíi/

2.5.6. Nasal Harmony (Ganda Law, Meinhoif's Law)

Sometimes, instead of a nasal becoming more like a consonant (in- > im- discussed in §2.5.2), the consonant /b/ becomes the nasal /m/ if the following syllable begins with a nasal. This irregular sound change is sometimes referred to as Meinhoif’s law or Ganda law.

/ɪmaáanza/ {both} n6-pl 'disputes, litigations, legal proceedings, lawsuits' < /N-baánz-a/ cf: /uru-baánza/ n6-sg
/ɪmaambo/ {both} n6-pl 'stakes, nails' < /N-baamb-o/ cf: /baamba/ 'nail down, impale'

2.5.7. Palatal Consonant Change or Mutation

Besides the standard automatic changes in pronunciation when a /y/ follows many consonants (alluded to in §2.3), suffixes that begin with [y] (perfective -ye and nominal -yi) induce a wide variety of consonant changes involving palatalization, as illustrated by the following examples.

b > v {Rundi only} /-iitaba/ > /-iıtavye/ v-tr 'answer, respond'
/baamwiiyeye/ {Rundi} v-ind-pret-perf+obj 'They stole from him.' < /b-aá-mu-iiib-ye/
c > sh /-iča/ > /-iče/ {both} v-tr 'kill; damage'
d > z /-kúunda/ > /-kúunze/ {both} v-tr 'love'
g > z /-siiga/ > /-siıze/ {both} v-tr 'smear s.t. on'
/-vüga/ > /-vüze/ {both} v-tr 'say s.t., speak'
h > sh(y) /-guumbaha/ > /-guumbashe/ {Rundi}, /-guumbashye/ {Rwanda} v-st 'be sterile, infertile'
/ubudeshi/ {Rundi}, /ubudeshyi/ {Rwanda} n8-sg-abs 'idleness, laziness' < /u-bu-deh-yi/
k > s /-óonka/ > /-óonse/ {both} v-intr 'suckle'
/umwáansi/ {Rundi} n1-sg 'enemy, adversary' < /-ánka/ 'hat'
k > ts /-shaaka/ > /-shaatse/ {both} v-tr 'search, look for s.t.'
/-manika/ > /-manitse/ {both} v-tr 'hang (up), suspend'
/umutéetse/ {both} n1-sg 'cook' < /umu-téek-yi/
r > z /-kóra/ > /-kóze/ {both} v-tr 'do s.t., work at or on, perform'
/umukózi/ {both} n1-sg 'worker' < /umu-kó-r-yi/
/-éra/ > /-éeeze/ {both} v-st-atr 'whiten, become white, get clean'
s > sh /-mesa/ > /-meshe/ {both} v-tr 'wash, launder'
/-rása/ > /-ráshe/ {both} v-tr 'aim at, shoot'
t > s /-heta/ > /-hese/ {both} v-tr 'curve, bend s.t. back'
/-fáta/ > /-fáshe/ {both} v-tr 'catch, seize'
/-kúbita/ > /-kúbise/ {both} v-tr 'hit'

108 Linguists variously transcribe «c» as [tš] (Bizimana), [tʃ] (Kimenyi), or [tf].
109 The change of c > sh is also discussed in the section on consonant mutation (§2.5.7).
Chapter 2: The Sound System

\[\text{-ótota} / \text{/ótose} / \{\text{both}\} \text{ v-intr} \ '\text{warm oneself}'\]
\[\text{/umuhísi} / \{\text{both}\} \text{n1-sg 'deceased, dead person; [atr] the late'} / \text{/umu-hit-yi} / \text{/taahiriza} / \{\text{both}\} \text{ v-tr 'sharpen, whet'}\]
\[\text{z > j} / \text{tyáaza} / \{\text{both}\} \text{ v-intr 'warm oneself'\}
\[\text{z > j} / \text{tyáaje} / \{\text{both}\} \text{ v-tr 'sharpen, whet'}\]
\[\text{/ingaanji} / \{\text{both}\} \text{n5-sg/pl 'power, supreme authority'} / \text{/iN-gaanz-yi} / \text{/umuhísi} / \{\text{both}\} \text{n1-sg 'deceased, dead person; [atr] the late'}\]

This kind of change affects the lower numerals inflected with the prefix /e-/ in the plural of groups 5 and 6:

\[\text{t > s} / \text{eshatu} / \{\text{both}\} \text{ num-n5/n6-pl 'three'} / \text{/tatu} / \text{/eshaanu} / \{\text{both}\} \text{ num-n5/n6-pl 'five'} / \text{/taanu}\]

The nasal \[\text{n}\] changes to \[\text{ny}\] before a vowel or semivowel (\text{y} or \text{w}).

\[\text{n > ny} / \text{inyandiko} / \{\text{both}\} \text{n5-sg/pl 'writing' < in- + /aandik- 'write'}\]
\[\text{n > ny} / \text{inyíbano} / \{\text{both}\} \text{n5-sg/pl 'stolen item' < in- + /íiba 'steal'}\]
\[\text{n > ny} / \text{inyungú} / \{\text{both}\} \text{n5-sg/pl 'increase; income' < in- + /uunguka 'increase'}\]

\[\text{z > j} / \text{guza} / \{\text{both}\} \text{ v-tr 'borrow money'}\]

\[\text{z > j} / \text{baanza} / \{\text{both}\} \text{ v-tr 'begin, commence'}\]

\[\text{z > j} / \text{baaza} / \{\text{both}\} \text{ v-tr 'carve, polish or smooth wood'}\]

### 2.5.8. Palatalization of Fricatives Across a Syllable Boundary

Besides the palatalizations just discussed in §2.5.7, this feature can spread from one syllable to another. The fricatives \[\text{s}\] and \[\text{z}\] are palatalized to \[\text{sh}\] and \[\text{j}\] respectively when the preceding or following syllable contains either the vowel \[\text{i}\] or a palatal fricative consonant.

\[\text{s > sh} / \text{amasaká} / \{\text{n3-pl, but /ishaká/ n3-sg} \{\text{both}\} \text{'sorghum, Sorghum caudatum'}\]
\[\text{amáaso} / \{\text{n3-pl, but /jijísho/ n3-sg} \{\text{both}\} \text{'eye'}\]
\[\text{-soonza} / \{\text{v-st} > /-shoonje/ v-perf \{\text{both}\} \text{'be hungry'}\]
\[\text{-sáaza} / \{\text{v-inch > /-sháaje/ v-perf \{both\} 'age, grow old'}\]
\[\text{-súbíza} / \{\text{v-tr 'make a bed'} > /-sháije/ v-perf \{both\} 'answer, reply'}\]

\[\text{z > j} / \text{-guza} / \text{-gujije} / \{\text{Rwanda} v-perf \{both\} 'borrow money'}\]
\[\text{-baanza} / \text{-baanjije} / \{\text{both\} 'begin, commence'}\]

\[\text{-baaza} / \text{-baajije} / \{\text{both\} 'carve, polish or smooth wood'}\]

### 2.5.9. Consonant Loss or Deletion (Change to Zero)

Under certain conditions, a consonant can be lost completely. For example, after a long vowel, stem-final \[\text{r}\] is lost (or changes to ZERO, symbolized as \(\text{Ø}\)). Similarly, all perfective forms of the benefactive verb (\text{-er-, -ir-}) lose the \[\text{r}\].

\[\text{-kúura} / \{\text{both\} v-tr 'remove, take s.t. out'} [ < -\text{kúur-ye; r + y > Øy}\]
\[\text{-téera} / \{\text{both\} v-tr 'sow (seeds)'}\]
\[\text{-taangaara} / \{\text{both\} v-tr 'marvel at'}\]
\[\text{-úubakira} / \{\text{both\} v-ben 'build s.t. for s.o.'}\]
\[\text{-úumvira} / \{\text{both\} v-ben 'listen to s.o.; obey'}\]

---

111 Note the METATHESIS of \[\text{n} + \text{y}, i.e., 'zan-w-ye > /zanywe/ (see §2.5.16).\]
112 See Kimenyi 1980:18.
113 The change of /\text{z/} to /\text{j/} is induced by the palatal ending -ye and does not illustrate a syllabic jump.
114 Besides this sound change, note the addition of an extra syllable (see §2.5.14).
When two semivowels follow each other, one of them is lost.

\(-/\text{gaya}/ > /\text{gaye}/\) \{both\} v-perf 'despise, scorn, have contempt for' [perf < -\text{-gaye}-yε; y + ε > Øy]
\(-/\text{gaya}/ > /\text{gawa}/\) \{both\} v-pass 'be despised' [pass < -\text{-gaw-w-}a; y + w > Øw]

When two nasals follow each other, one of them is lost.

\(/\text{ikinéerezerej}/\) \{both\} auto-n4-sg-imm-perf+obj '...that which pleases me.' (R1) [ < iki-n-ñéerezeyε: n + n > Øn]
\(/\text{maríra}/\) \{both\} v-rel-imm-pro-1sg '...that I serve.' (R34) [ < n-marirε: n + m > Øm]
\(/\text{inumá}/\) \{both\} n5a-sg/pl 'turtledove' [ < in-numá: n + n > Øn]

2.5.10. Vowel Loss or Deletion

Changes affecting vowel length or shortness were treated in §2.2.1 (SHORT vowels) and §2.2.2 (LONG vowels). However, other kinds of changes affect the vowels of Rwanda and Rundi. For example, they can be lost or deleted under various circumstances.

2.5.10.1. Loss of the Pre-prefix

With nouns, the article or pre-prefix is deleted if a noun is in the vocative, if it is preceded by a demonstrative or a locative preposition, if the noun is the second part of a compound, or if it is used adverbially.

\(/\text{maána}/\) \{both\} n5a-sg-voc 'Oh God!' < /imáana/
\(/\text{mwaána}/\) \{both\} n1-sg-voc 'Oh child!, Hey kid!' < /umwáana/
\(/\text{abo banyaambo}/\) \{both\} 'these Nyambo people' (R38) < /abo (a)banyaambo/
\(/\text{abahiinzii-bóorozi}/\) \{Rwanda\} 'farmers and cattle grazers' (R32) < /abahiinzii (a)bóorozi/
\(/\text{akaraangamuuntu}/\) \{Rundi\} n7-sg-cmp, /ndaangamuuntu/ \{Rwanda\} n5-sg-cmp 'identification' [cf: --raanga + umuuntu]
\(/\text{ku manywá}/\) \{both\} 'during the day'
\(/\text{mu bwoónko}/\) \{both\} 'in the brain'
\(/\text{kizuúngu}/\) \{both\} 'like a white person'

2.5.10.2. Loss of Final Non-round Vowels

Non-round vowels i, e, a are deleted in final position if the following word starts with a vowel.116 Note that if the lost vowel has high tone it is passed on to the surviving vowel.117

\([\text{ink'i} '\text{imwé}] < /\text{inká imwé}/\) \{both\} 'one cow'\(^{117}\) [a > Ø but high tone survives]
\([\text{kuny'úmuti}] < /\text{kunywá umutí}/\) \{both\} 'to take medicine' [a > Ø but high tone survives]
\([\text{buubats'inzu}] < /\text{b-a-a-ùuba(k)-tse inzu}/\) \{both\} 'They (recently) built a house.' [e > Ø]
\([\text{dusom'igitabo}] < /\text{du-som-é iji-tabo}/\) \{both\} 'We should read a book.' [e > Ø but high tone survives]
\([\text{umwaám' atwaara néezá}] < /\text{umwaámj atwaara néezá}/\) \{both\} 'The king rules well.' [i > Ø]

2.5.10.3. Loss of /\text{a}/, /\text{i}/ or /\text{u}/ before Another Vowel

The vowel /\text{a}/, even if it is long, is deleted if it precedes a morpheme that starts with another vowel.118

\(/\text{akúunyu}/\) \{both\} n7-sg 'pinch of salt' < /ak(a)-úunyu/
\(/\text{aziica}/\) \{Rwanda\} v-ind-fut 'He will kill.' < /a-z(aa)-íic-a/
\(/\text{twúubatse}/\) \{both\} v-ind-aff-recent-perf-dis 'We built recently.' < /tw-(aa)-úuba(k)-ts/

---

116 See Kimenyi 1980:15.
117 Note the sequence of high tones (see §2.4.25), which is allowed across a word boundary.
Bizimana shows how this same rule affects the vowels /i/ and /u/ when they are part of prefixes, object infixes, or monosyllabic roots. However, the most common change for both /i/ and /u/ is to become the semivowels /y/ and /w/ (see §2.5.12 below).

[turazúubaka] [both] ‘We are building them (the fences).’ < tu-ra-z(i)-úubaka
[abo baantu bapfaana iki?] [Rwanda] ‘How are those people related?’ < ba-pf(ü)-aan-a

2.5.10.4. Three or More Morae Are Shortened to Two

Long vowels are limited to two morae; if three vowels would occur together, one of them is lost.

/-hiisha/ [both] v-caus ‘make s.o. burn s.t.; let s.t. be cooked or become ripe’ < -hi- + -iish-a < -sh(y)á ‘get burned, be cooked’
/-riiká/ [both] v-atr ‘be edible’ < -ri- + -iik-a < -ryá ‘eat’
/ntaráaza/ [both] v-ind-neg-punc ‘He has not arrived yet.’ < nt(i)-a-ráa-z-z-a
/kúumva/ [both] v-inf ‘to listen’ < ku-úumva
/koooshya/ [Rwanda] v-inf ‘to lead astray’ < k(u)- + -ooshya ‘tempt, lead s.o. astray’

2.5.11. Vowel Coalescence

If the vowel /a/ occurs before a morpheme beginning with the vowel /i/, vowel coalescence occurs, producing a long /ee/. This applies broadly to all prefixes ending in /a/, e.g., ama-, ba-, ha-, nya-, etc. joined to roots or other affixes beginning with /i/.

/améényo/ [both] n3-pl ‘teeth’ [ < ama- + iínnyo – three morae to two; cf: iryíinyo n3-sg ‘tooth’]
/beezá/ [both] adj-n1-pl ‘good (people)’ [ < ba-iizá – three morae to two]
/keenshi/ [both] adv-time ‘often, many times’ [ < ka-íinshi – three morae to two]
/hééesha/ [both] v-caus ‘have s.o. give s.t. to s.o.’ [ < -há + -iish-a – three morae to two]
/heeejuru/ [both] adv-loc-n10a ‘above, on top’ [ < ha-ijuru – coalescence of two vowels]
/umunyéeshuúri/ [Rwanda] n1-sg ‘student, pupil’ [ < umu-nyá-i-shuúri – coalescence of two vowels]
/ikinyéekoóngo/ [both] n4-sg ‘Congolese’ (language and culture) [ < iki-nyá-i-kóóngo – coalescence of two vowels]

2.5.12. Vowel Gliding (Vowels Change to Semivowels)

When coming before another vowel, a front vowel /i/ changes to the semivowel /y/ or becomes a palatalized consonant, whereas a back vowel /u, o/ changes to the semivowel /w/ or becomes a velarized consonant. These are HIGH FREQUENCY CHANGES because they affect the derivation of hundreds of nouns across several groups, e.g., umu- > umw- {both} n1-sg, n2-sg, imi- > imy-

---

120 Bizimana speaks of "loss of the second vowel among two vowels following each other in a word or in a sentence" (1998:124f, translation ours), but the examples he cites all illustrate how three or more vowels are limited to two and favor that of the suffix.
121 The verb root /-tza/ requires a long vowel to precede it, however /-ráa/ already has a long vowel.
123 Bizimana 1998:133 discusses the coalescence of a + u to /oo/, which is a historical or frozen change in /-tóora/ {both} v-rev-tr ‘pick out, select; find’ < /-tá/ ‘throw away’ + /-uur-a/ (reversive). This change does not happen in the current dialects, where the a gets lost (§2.5.10.3), e.g., ba- + -úubaka > /buubaka/ ‘they build,’ not /boobaka/.
124 Although Kimenyi 1980:15 specifies this change of e to y, he does not exemplify it and we have been unable to find any instance of it among our data.
2.5.13. Vowel Harmony

Vowel harmony involves a change in vowel quality to match a previous vowel. In Rwanda and Rundi, this affects a few high-frequency verb suffixes (augments): the BENEFICIAL -ir-, the INSTRUMENTAL -ish-, the ATTRIBUTIVE -ik-, and the REVERSIVES -uuk- and -uur-. If the verb stem has a MID VOWEL (e, o), the augment will also have a mid vowel to match it; thus: -er-, -eesh-, -ek-, -ook-, and -oor- respectively. If the verb stem has a non-mid vowel (a, i, u), the augment remains NON-MID as well, matching the same series of suffixes found in many other Bantu languages.

MID VOWELS (e, o)
- er- /-kenera/ (both) v-ben 'require, be in need of' /-kena/ 'be poor, needy'
- yobera/ (both) v-ben 'lead s.o. into error; perplex, dumbfound' /-yoba/ 'lose one's way'
- ek- /-mëneka/ (both) v-atr 'get broken, be shattered' /-mëna/ 'break, shatter'
- bôneka/ (both) v-at 'be visible, appear' /-bôna/ 'find, acquire, obtain'
- eesh- /-menyeeshaa/ (both) v-caus 'notify, inform, let s.o. know s.t.' /-menya/ 'know; recognize'
- hómeshe /-v/as /-v/ /-v/ /-v/ /-v/ 'cause to plaster; use s.t. to caulk (instr)'/-hóma/ 'plaster, apply to a coating'

NON-MID VOWELS (a, i, u)
- ir- /-raangira/ (both) v-show s.o. s.t., indicate, demonstrate' /-raanga/ 'indicate (with one's eyes), show'
- shimira/ (both) v-thank s.o.' [lit: approve of s.o.]/-shima/ 'praise; prefer; appreciate'
- úmvira/ (both) v-listen to s.o., obey'/-úmvaa/ 'hear, listen'
- ik- /-riikka/ (both) v-atr 'be edible; get eaten' /-ryä/ 'eat'
- gurika/ (both) v-atr 'sell well' /-gura/ 'buy, purchase'
- vûnika/ (both) v-atr 'get broken' /-vûna/ 'break, cut (up), split'
- iish- /-iigiisha/ (both) v-caus 'teach, instruct' /-iiga/ 'learn, study'
- fâshiisha/ (both) v-caus 'make s.o. help' /-fâsha/ 'help, aid, assist'
- ruhiisha/ (both) v-caus 'fatigue, tire s.o. out' /-ruhâ/ 'tired, be fatigued or exhausted'
- uuk- /-âaguka/ (both) v-rev-st 'become enlarged; be vast, spacious' /-âaga/ 'be narrow'
- kiinguuka/ (both) v-rev-st 'get opened, be unlocked' /-kiingâ/ 'open, unlock (door)'
- bûumbuuka/ (both) v-rev-st 'be open; open up' /-bûumba/ 'be open; open up (door)'
- uru- /-âagura/ (both) v-rev-tr 'stretch, widen, enlarge' /-âaga/ 'be narrow'
- kiinguura/ (both) v-rev-tr 'open s.t.; unlock (a door)' /-kiingâ/ 'be open; open up (door)'
- pfûkuura/ (both) v-rev-tr 'uncover, disclose, reveal' /-pfûka/ 'cover'

126 Although Rundi does not spell the extra «y» in the derivation of n4-sg (see §1.1.1), the sound (originally a velar [k]) is still a palatal consonant. Rwandans pronounce /cy/ using the BLADE OF THE TONGUE whereas Rundis pronounce the /c/ using the TIP OF THE TONGUE. Rwandans also have this [c] sound, but in different shared words, such as /cûumû/ n3-sg 'spear.'

127 Vowel harmony is very common in Turkish and other Turkic languages (Azerbaijani, Uzbek, Kazakh, Uyghur).
Chapter 2: The Sound System

In a few cases involving words having four or more syllables, vowel harmony can work backwards to such an extent that it changes a root vowel; this results in a process which linguists call REGRESSIVE ASSIMILATION.

/-gomorora/ {both} v-rev-tr 'take down a dam or blockade, remove an obstacle' < /-gomera/ v-tr 'build a dam, obstacle, blockade' [the /e/ of the root changes to /o/ to match the suffix]

2.5.14. Syllable Addition

A few irregular two-syllable roots ending with -sha or -za and many polysyllabic derived verbs (e.g., causatives, reciprocals) form their perfect with the addition of a syllable.\(^{128}\) Note that the added vowel is the product of VOWEL HARMONY (mid vs. non-mid, §2.5.13) and that with many derived forms the final consonant of the root reverts from any changed form (see §2.5.7).

IRREGULAR DISYLLABIC -sha or -za VERBS\(^{129}\)
- sha > -sheje /-báasha/ > /-báashije/ {both} v-aux 'can, be able to'
  /-fásha/ > /-fáshije/ {both} v-tr 'help, aid, assist'
  /-húsha/ > /-húshije/ {both} v-tr 'miss, fail to achieve'
  /-rusha/ > /-rushije/ {both} v-tr 'surpass, excel, be better than'
- sha > -sheje /-héeshaja/ > /-héeesheje/ {both} v-tr 'forge, work on metal'
  /-kéesha/ > /-kéeesheje/ {both} v-ditr 'have s.t. thanks to s.o.; obtain s.t. from s.o.'
  /-neesha/ > /-neesheje/ {both} v-tr 'conquer, triumph'
- za > -jije /-báaza/ > /-bájitje/ {both} v-tr 'ask, question'
  /-baanja/ > /-baanjije/ {both} v-tr 'begin (a series of actions), commence, do s.t. first'
-ra VERBS WITH A LONG PENULT VOWEL\(^{10}\) and MONOSYLLABIC BENEFAC TIVE VERBS\(^{131}\)
  /-ra/ > -reye /-eegeera/ > /-eegeereye/ {both} v-tr 'approach, get near s.o., go up to s.t.'
  /-hiira/ > /-hiirije/ v-ben 'be cooked or ripened for s.o.'
  /-remeera/ > /-remeereye/ {both} v-st 'be heavy, strong, powerful'
-ra > -riye /-akiriira/ > /-akiriirije/ {both} 'accept; catch; take (from another)'
  /-pfíra/ > /-pfíriirije/ {both} v-ben 'die for'
  /-siinzíra/ > /-siinzíriirije/ {both} v-st 'sleep, be asleep'

RECIprocAL VERBS WITH -nya
- nya > -njije /-kóranja/ > /-kóraniije/ {both} 'put together, pile up'
  /-fáshanya/ > /-fáshaniirije/ {both} v-recip 'help one another'

CAUSATIVE OR TRANSITIVIZED VERBS

/-rusha/ {Rundi}, /-rushya/ {Rwanda} > /-ruhi/ {both} v-caus 'exhaust, tire out, make s.o. tired' [cf: /-ruha/ 'get tired']
  /-eessha/ > -eesheje /-köréesha/ > /-kóréesheje/ {both} v-caus 'employ, cause to work; use, utilize'
  /-menyeesha/ > /-menyeesheje/ {both} v-caus 'notify, inform, let s.o. know s.t.'
  /-iisha/ > -ishije /-rimiisha/ > /-rimíshije/ {both} v-caus 'cultivate land with (a tool)'
-/iiíisha/ > /-iiíiishije/ {both} v-caus 'teach'
  /-tsa/ > -keje /-ootsa/ > /-okeije/ {both} v-tr 'roast (in coals), bake'
  /-kóreretsa/ > /-kórerekeje/ {both} v-tr 'wound, injure' [cf: /-kórereka/ 'be wounded']
  /-tsa/ > -keje /-iíutsa/ > /-iíukije/ {both} v-tr 'remind'
  /-ramutsa/ > /-ramukije/ {both} v-tr 'greet, salute'
- za > -geje /-óóza/ > /-óógeje/ {both} v-tr 'wash, rinse' [cf: /-óoga/ 'immerse, put into water']
- za > -geje /-vúzva/ > /-vúgijwe/ v-pass 'be played (of musical instrument)'
  /-za/ > -geje /-ééza/ > /-éejeje/ {both} v-caus 'ripen, let s.t. ripen'
  /-kóza/ > /-kójeje/ {both} v-caus 'soak, dip s.t. in (sauce); eat s.t. with spices'

---


\(^{129}\) There are other verbs ending with -sha that take a simple perfect ending -e, e.g., /-béshe/ > /-bésheje/ {Rundi} 'lie, fib,' /-hísha/ > /-hísheje/ {both} v-tr 'hide, conceal' or /-óogosha/ > /-óogoshe/ {both} v-tr 'shave, shear, clip.' Because /sh/ is already a palatal sound, the full suffix -ye does not appear.

\(^{130}\) Note that the long penult vowel is shortened in the perfect tense when the extra syllable is added.

\(^{131}\) These verbs always have a long vowel.
Chapter 2: The Sound System

2.5.15. Syllable Deletion or Truncation

The opposite phenomenon of the above also happens whereby a syllable is lost. For example, the final syllable of some vocative forms is lost completely.

/bagó/ [both] n1-pl-voc 'Oh women!' < /abagoré/ = (a)bago(re)

/hiitimá/ [both] n1a-pn-voc 'Oh Hitimana!' < /hiitimáana/ = hiitimá(ana)

Some nouns seem to be formed from verbs by a process of truncation.132

/umuhemú/ [both] n1-sg 'ingrate, cheat; traitor' and /ubuhemú/ [both] n8-sg 'treachery, betrayal' [Cf: /hemuka/ v-tr 'betray (a secret); break (a promise)'

/ishavú/ [both] n3-sg 'sorrow, sadness; affliction [Cf: /shávura/ v-st 'be saddened or cantankerous; grieve']

/icaámbu/ [Rundi], /icyaámbu/ [Rwanda] n4-sg 'ford, passage, river crossing' [Cf: /aambuka/ v-tr 'ford (river), traverse; cross (border), leave the country'

/indagú/ [both] n5-sg/pl 'prophecy, divination' [Cf: /ragura/ v-tr 'predict, prophesize, divine']

2.5.16. Sound Switching or Metathesis

Sometimes the sounds in a word switch around or swap places.133 Linguists call this process METATHESIS. Some English examples include dialectal pronunciations of the words sentence [se′ns134], didn’t [di′nt135], or hundred [hunert136]. In Rwanda and Rundi a /z/ in a root swaps places with an /r/ when the benefactive suffix -ir- or -er- is added (§8.14.1). The palatal perfective y also swaps places with the passive suffix -w-, yielding -Y-w-e.

/-kíriza/ [both] v-ben-caus 'cure or heal s.o. for s.o.; save s.o. (for a reason)' < /-kiz-ir-a/

/-komereza/ [both] v-ben 'continue or carry on for s.o.' < /-komez-er-a/

/-sóoreza/ [Rwanda] v-ben 'complete s.t. for s.o.' < -sóoz-er-a [note: Rundi: /-sóozeera/]

/ubíitswe/ [both] v-part-imm-perf-pass 'it being stored' (R35.1) < /u-bíik-w-ye/

/-kúunzwe/ [both] v-pass-perf 'was loved' < /-kúund-w-ye/

2.5.17. Reduplication

REDUPLICATION is the process of repeating part or all of a word. An English word like helter-skelter shows such repetition with the initial consonant changing whereas flip-flop illustrates repetition with vowel change. However, such words are fixed and not actively coined by speakers. Generally, English reduplicates by using a conjunction, such as in it rained and rained. In Rwanda and Rundi the process of reduplication is very common. However, one of the most linguistically fascinating properties of these two languages is the fact that the tonal pattern of reduplications depends on the PART OF SPEECH.

The implication of reduplication on verbs is usually an INTENSIVE OR REPETITIVE ACTION. This process is limited in two ways: FORMALLY (only two-syllable stems can be repeated137) and

---

132 An alternate explanation would be that the verb is formed from the noun root by adding some verb forming suffix, such as -uk- or -ur-.

133 See: Hands 1952:284.

134 Here the /n/ and the /t/ swap places, except that the /t/ is pronounced as a glottal stop, like a Cockney would pronounce the word butter [ba′tər].

135 Here the /d/ and the /n/ swap place, but the /d/ is pronounced as a glottal stop (see preceding footnote).

136 Here the the consonant cluster beginning the final syllable /dred/ simplifies or reduces to /r/ switches places to follow the vowel /e/ becoming /ert/.

137 Some authors treat verbs that show first-syllable reduplication, such as /-tutuumba/ 'swell up little by little' related to /-tuumba/ 'swell.' However, from the student's point of view, these are FROZEN, that is they are not
SEMANTICALLY (only verbs that logically denote a repeatable action or process). Monosyllabic and polysyllabic stems do not reduplicate. Any reduplicated high-toned verb root will have only ONE HIGH TONE, and this will fall on the first part. Low-toned verbs maintain their low tone. The first part of a reduplicated verb always has the simple root with the -a suffix, never the palatalized form of the perfect; the second part is a toneless but inflected ECHO.

/-shaakashaaka/ {both} v-redup 'research, look all around for s.t.'
/-büungabungai/ {both} v-intens 'care for, protect, watch over, safeguard'
/-váangavaangai/ {both} v-tr 'stir, beat, mix vigorously'
/-kórákora/ {both} v-tr 'touch, feel'
/-shukaashutse/ {Rwanda} v-perf 'enticed, tempted'

Nouns show the greatest variation when it comes to reduplication. With many, but not all, nouns, there are usually TWO HIGH TONES. Where they occur depends on whether the root begins with a consonant or a vowel. High-toned consonant roots maintain a parallel high tone on the first and second part [Rrule + Rrule]; monosyllabic roots additionally have vowel lengthening. In Rwanda, high-toned vowel roots have high tone on the first vowel of the first part and on the final vowel of the second part [Rrule + Erule].

/ikigóorigóori/ {both} n4-sg-redup 'corncob' [rw: /ikigóori/ n4-sg 'corn']
/ikinyinyuniyúgu/ {both} n4-sg-redup 'butterfly'
/amakóbekóbe/ {Rundi} n3-pl-mass-redup 'goat's milk'
/amabéerebëere/ {Rundi} n3-pl-mass-redup 'breast milk (human only)' [rw: /ibéere/ n3-sg 'breast']
/amabívéabíwá/ {both} n3-pl-mass-redup 'udders of a mammal' [cf: /imbwá/ 'dog' MONOSYLLABIC]
/ubúsáabusá/ {both} n8-sg-redup 'very little (in quantity)' [cf: /ubusá/ n8-sg-abs 'nothing, zero' MONOSYLLABIC]
/icyézezezi/ {Rwanda} n4-sg-redup 'light' [rw: -éeza v-caus 'whiten, brighten']
/icyúunyuunyú/ {Rwanda} n4-sg-redup 'saltiness' [cf: /umúunyu/ n2-sg 'salt']
/icyáangáangá/ {Rwanda} n4-sg-redup 'loathing, disgust' [rw: -áangá v-tr 'dislike, hate']

However, in most dialects, if the high tone appears on the second or final syllable of the stem, the reduplicate will only have one high tone.

/umutóboítóbo/ {both} n2-sg-redup 'tree or bush sp., Solanum aculeastrum'
/amahénchéne/ {Rwanda} n3-pl-mass-redup 'goat's milk' [cf: /iñené/ n5a-sg 'jenny, she-goat']
/itoóto/ {Rwanda} n3-sg-redup 'youthfulness' [cf: /-tó/ adj-root 'small, little' MONOSYLLABIC]

The tendency to regularize tone on the reduplicate can even work backwards, yielding an alternate form where the tonality of both parts conform.

/igitaábitáabi/ {both} n4-sg-redup 'tobacco leaf rib (used when one runs out of tobacco)' [Alt: /igitaábitáabi/; Cf: /itäábi/ n3-sg 'tobacco'] tone moves from second mora to first
/umutóboítóbó/ {Rwanda alt} n2-sg-redup 'tree sp' [See /umutóboítóbo/ ABOVE] final tone is copied onto reduplicate

---

138 A repeated or intensive action can be marked by an augment -agur- in both Rwanda and Rundi which occurs on stems of two or more syllables (-kúbítagura {both} 'thrash soundly'), while -agagur- occurs on monosyllables (-ryáagagura 'eat voraciously' {Rwanda}, 'insult' {Rundi}). Some verbs that would appear to be reduplicateable take this suffix instead, e.g., /-témagura/ {both} 'cut to pieces' – one does not find 'tématema.'

139 We can find no parallel examples of vowel-root noun reduplications in Rundi.
Low-toned noun roots generally maintain the low tone throughout. But in some cases they acquire a high tone [Arule] which will also be reduplicated on consonant roots; whereas low tone vowel roots acquire high tone on the second mora but keep low tone on the second part.

/bamataamataama/ {both} n3-sg-redup 'sheep's milk' [cf: /intaama/ n5-sg/pl 'sheep']
/uruunturuuntu/ {both} n6-sg-redup 'human scent' [cf: /umuuntu/ 'person, human being']
/ikiményaménya/ {Rundi} n4-sg-redup 'sign, symbol; symptom' [cf: /menya/ 'know' Arule+Trule]
/icyaayaaya/ {Rwanda} n4-sg-redup 'wasteful woman' [rw: -aaya v-tr 'waste, squander']
/icaayaaye/ {Rundi} n4-sg-redup 'negligent, wasteful (person)

With adjectives, the entire inflectional form is usually repeated, the first part will carry the normal tonality while the second part, if the first syllable of the root has high tone, will have tone on the prefix. Monosyllabic roots that are high-toned will have two tones as well as vowel lengthening. Note that subsequent high tones are allowed, i.e., the Xrule does not apply. Such forms usually imply very much so. Although the last two examples serve as nouns, it is clear in terms of their grammatical behavior (reduplication of class prefix) and their meaning (very) that they derive from adjectives.

/bakurúbakuru/ {both} adj-n1-pl-redup 'very important, extremely powerful (people)'
/bagufibágufi/ {Rwanda} adj-n1-pl-redup 'very short (people)'
/bikurúbíkuru/ {both} adj-n4-pl-redup 'very important, principal'
/matóomató/ {Rundi} adj-n3-pl-redup 'small, inferior, basic'
/dutóodutó/ {both} n7-pl-redup 'very small pieces'
/ubusáabusá/ {both} n8-sg 'very little (in quantity)'

With numeral reduplications, a high-toned root will have two high tones in accordance with the root tonality. However, high tone obligatorily appears on the prefix of the second part when the root is low-toned. These forms usually serve as adverbs and imply at a time or by.

/rimwéerimwé/ {both} adv-time 'once in a while, from time to time' rw: /-mwé/
/kamwéekamwé/ {both} num-n7-sg-redup 'one at a time'
/babiribábiri/ {both} num-n1-pl-redup 'two by two' rw: /-biri/
/batatubátatu/ {both} num-n1-pl-redup 'three by three' rw: /-tatu/

It should be noted that there is only one part of speech where TRIPLICATION can occur, and that is on IDEOPHONES, which will be discussed much later (§15).
Chapter 3: Nouns

3. Nouns

In Rwanda and Rundi, the noun is the focal point of grammar in that any other sentence element (e.g., adjective, verb, or possessive noun) must agree with its class and number. That is, nouns determine grammatical concord throughout the system. Nouns are composed of sets of prefixes indicating their class or group membership, and of a series of suffixes that happen to represent the entire vowel system (-a, -e, -i, -o, -u). They serve several sentence functions (what have traditionally been described as "cases" in the grammar of other languages) such as subject, object, possessive, locative, and vocative, see §1.8.5 and below.

3.1. Noun Groups or Classes

Nouns are distributed over 13 groups (representing 19 Bantu classes), membership in which is highly idiomatic and culture-specific. Some of the broadest generalizations that can be made are: human and kin [n1, n1a], collective or mass [n3-pl], language names [n4], abstract nouns [n8], verbal nouns [n9a], and locatives [n10-13]. However, this should not lead to a false sense of security. There are so many exceptions that one must simply memorize the singular and plural form of each noun (along with major agreement forms), see §1.6. For example, while all nouns in group 1 (or 1a) are human, not all human nouns are in group 1 – they are also distributed among groups 4, 5, and 7.

Similarly, while all nouns in group 9a [ku-] are verbal nouns (which also double as infinitives), nouns derived from verbs are found in verbs are found in most groups, usually with specialized meanings: doers [n1, umu-∆], results [n2, umu-∆-o], characteristics [n3, i-∆-a], products [n4, iki-∆-o], high level of competence [n5, in-∆-i], effects [n5, in-∆-o], statives [n6, uru-∆-o], etc. See examples in the respective group presentations below.

Another area to watch out for is that of loanwords. Most words adopted from French, Swahili, Arabic, or English are either in group 3 or 5a, but can be found in most groups (n1–n8). For more details on the characteristics pertaining to each class consult each of the following sections.

3.1.1. Problems with Semantic Classes

As long ago as 1919, the following observation was made:

"Much ingenuity has been expended – and, I cannot but think, wasted – in drawing up definitions of the classes: the attempt seems to be hopeless at the present day, because prefixes originally distinct may have become identical in form, through elision or contraction, and so two or more classes have been merged into one." [Werner 1919:43f]

Nevertheless, there are areas where noun classification seems to make sense:

[n1] /umuuntu/ 'person, human' – /abaantu/ 'people' {both}
[n4] /ikiintu/ 'thing' – /ibiintu/ 'things' {both}
[n6] /uruenturuuntu/ 'human scent' {both}
[n7] /akaantu/ 'trifle, small thing, little item' {both}
[n8] /ubuentu/ 'humanitarianism, humaneness, generosity' {both}
[n10] /ahaantu/ 'place, location' {both}
[n11] /ukuuntu/ 'method, way, means; how' {both}

Some two decades ago, Kimenyi stated:

"These classes have no semantic function whatsoever, since nouns which belong to the same semantic category as well as nouns which belong to the same semantic class are found in different classes. It is important to note, however, that classes 1 and 2 refer exclusively to human beings. Classes 7, 8, and 11-14 also serve as secondary or derived classes, since any noun in this language can shift into any of these classes:

/umugabo/ 'man' – /abagabo/ 'men' [c1/2 = n1] {both}
/ikigabo/ 'big man' – /ibigabo/ 'big men' [c7/8 = n4] {both}
/urugabo/ 'big man' [c11 = n6] {both}
Classes 7, 8, and 11 have a pejorative and augmentative meaning, classes 12 and 13, a diminutive meaning, and class 14 is for abstract nouns.” [Kimenyi 1980:4; noun group numbers by RDZ]

As an example of the frustration to be encountered in over-analyzing Bantu noun classification, it is instructive to look at BODY PARTS (Table 31), because they are distributed among all noun groups except group 1 (the human class).

**Table 31. Body Parts among the Noun Classes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group 2</th>
<th>Group 3</th>
<th>Group 4</th>
<th>Group 6</th>
<th>Group 5</th>
<th>Group 7</th>
<th>Group 8</th>
<th>Group 9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/imitsí/</td>
<td>/ibabá/</td>
<td>/igitiiintsiíri/</td>
<td>/urubavu/</td>
<td>/inka/</td>
<td>/agahéra/</td>
<td>/ubwoónko/</td>
<td>/ugutwí/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umutwé/</td>
<td>/ibéere/</td>
<td>/icyuúya/</td>
<td>/urugóhe/</td>
<td>/indurwe/</td>
<td>/agatsíinsiíno/</td>
<td>/ubwoóya/</td>
<td>/ukubóko/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umusatsí/</td>
<td>/igúfa/</td>
<td>/içuúya/</td>
<td>/urura/</td>
<td>/ingiingo/</td>
<td>/akáanaanwá/</td>
<td>/ubwaánwa/</td>
<td>/ukuguru/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umushatsí/</td>
<td>/igúfwa/</td>
<td>/igifié/</td>
<td>/ururími/</td>
<td>/inkókorá/</td>
<td>/akanwa/</td>
<td>/ukwáaha/</td>
<td>/ukwáaha/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umubiri/</td>
<td>/ijíisho/</td>
<td>/igifú/</td>
<td>/urushí/</td>
<td>/intóboro/</td>
<td>/akanigó/</td>
<td>/ubwaánwa/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umunwa/</td>
<td>/iño/</td>
<td>/igihuúna/</td>
<td>/urushí/</td>
<td>/inkógorá/</td>
<td></td>
<td>/ubwoónko/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umutima/</td>
<td>/ityiinyo/</td>
<td>/igihuúna/</td>
<td></td>
<td>/ukuguru/</td>
<td></td>
<td>/ubwoóya/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umuhogó/</td>
<td>/ivi/</td>
<td>/igihuúna/</td>
<td></td>
<td>/ukwáaha/</td>
<td></td>
<td>/ubwaánwa/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umurúndi/</td>
<td>/iziúru/</td>
<td>/igihuúna/</td>
<td></td>
<td>/akanigó/</td>
<td></td>
<td>/ubwaánwa/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umugóongo/</td>
<td>/amaríru/</td>
<td>/igihuúna/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>/ubwoónko/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umwiijíma/</td>
<td>/amaríruí/</td>
<td>/igihuúna/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>/ubwoóya/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umurízo/</td>
<td>/amaríruí/</td>
<td>/igihuúna/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>/ubwaánwa/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Another good example is that of TIME WORDS (Table 32), again distributed across most of the noun class system:

---

140 Rundi has a different word in a different class /igitigú/ [n4].
141 Rwanda uses the same root, but in a different class /igiháhá/ [n4].
142 Rundi has a different derivation in a different class /agatsíinsiíno/ [n7].
143 Rundi has a different word in a different class /umushíishiito/ [n2].
144 Rundi uses the same root, but in a different class /ihahá/ [n3].
Table 32. Time Words among the Noun Classes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group 2</th>
<th>Group 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/umwaaka/ year {both}</td>
<td>/igihe/ time; moment {both}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umuünisi/ day {both}, /umuüsi/ {Rundi alt}</td>
<td>/igitéondo/ morning {both}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umuhiindo/ spring {Rwanda}</td>
<td>/icyümwéeru/ week {Rwanda}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umwákaka/ {Rundi alt}</td>
<td>/ikinjana/ century {Rundi}, /ikinyeejana/ {Rwanda}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umúnsi/ day {both}, /umuúsi/ {Rundi}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umuhindo/ spring {Rwanda}</td>
<td>/icyümwéeru/ week {Rwanda}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group 3 – singular</th>
<th>Group 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/iýoro/ night {both}</td>
<td>/amakúuka/ mid-afternoon (from about 2 to 3 p.m.) {both}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/icyí/ dry season {Rwanda},</td>
<td>/amanywá/ daytime {both}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ici/ dry season {Rundi}</td>
<td>/amatárama/ social evening {Rwanda}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/itúumbá/ rainy season {both}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ipfá/ time of one’s death {both}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/isahá/ hour {Rundi}</td>
<td>/urugáryi/ short dry season (from the summer solstice to autumnal equinox) {Rwanda}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/saa/ o’clock {both}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/itärikí/ date, day (of the month) {both &lt; Arb}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/impeéshi/ {Rundi} dry season,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/impeéshyi/ {Rwanda}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group 3 – plural</th>
<th>Group 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/amakúuka/ mid-afternoon (from about 2 to 3 p.m.) {both}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/amanywá/ daytime {both}</td>
<td>/amatárama/ social evening {Rwanda}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/icyúmweeru/ week {Rwanda}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/itum咽a/ {Rwanda} rainy season {both}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ipfa/ time of one’s death {both}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/amakúuka/ mid-afternoon (from about 2 to 3 p.m.) {both}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/amanywá/ daytime {both}</td>
<td>/amatárama/ social evening {Rwanda}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/itum咽a/ {Rwanda} rainy season {both}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ipfa/ time of one’s death {both}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/amakúuka/ mid-afternoon (from about 2 to 3 p.m.) {both}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/amanywá/ daytime {both}</td>
<td>/amatárama/ social evening {Rwanda}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/itum咽a/ {Rwanda} rainy season {both}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ipfa/ time of one’s death {both}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 33. Word Families among Flora

| /umugano/ {both} n2-sg bamboo, Arundinaria alpina |
| /urugano/ {Rwanda} n6-sg bamboo forest |
| /ikiganogano/ {Rundi} n4-sg bamboo slat or strip |
| /umukíindo/ {Rwanda} n2-sg palm (tree) |
| /urukíindo/ {both} n6-sg palm rod; switch made of palm ribs |
| /umunyinyá/ {both} n2-sg acacia tree |
| /urunyinyá/ {both} n6-sg acacia fruit |
| /umunazi/ {both} n2-sg small tree or bush sp. |
| /inazi/ {Rundi} n3-sg fruit of umunazi |
| /inazi/ {Rwanda} n5-sg/pl oil of umunazi (used as a perfume) |
| /igitooke/ — /igitooki/ {both} n4-sg banana stalk, bunch of bananas |
| /urutooke/ — /urutooki/ {both} n6-sg banana plantation |
| /ivyaátsi/ {Rundi}, /ibyaátsi/ {Rwanda} n4-pl grass (collective) |
| /ubwaátsi/ {both} n8-sg pasture, prairie |

Although approximately half of the plant kingdom can be found in group 2 (see §3.2.2 and Rodegem 1970:636-642), word families (§1.8.7) are derived indicating such things as: its fruit – a flower, outgrowth, or seed of it – a byproduct – a grove, garden or thicket of that species, etc. Again, there is no clearly defined system, as illustrated by examples in Table 33.

Table 33. Word Families among Flora

Agreement is straightforward for the first nine groups, but tends to fall apart for the locative nouns (groups 10-13). The primary noun affixes are presented in Table 34; alternate forms are discussed under each respective noun group.

---

145 Rundi has a different word in a different class /indwi/ [n5].
Table 34. Rwanda-Rundi Noun Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n1</td>
<td>/umu-/</td>
<td>/aba-/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1a</td>
<td>Ø (zero)</td>
<td>/baa-/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2</td>
<td>/umu-/</td>
<td>/imi-/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3</td>
<td>/i-/</td>
<td>/ama-/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4</td>
<td>/iki-/</td>
<td>/ibi-/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5</td>
<td>/iN-/</td>
<td>/iN-/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5a-sg</td>
<td>/i-</td>
<td>/i-/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5b-sg</td>
<td>Ø (zero)</td>
<td>/zaa-/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6</td>
<td>/uru-/</td>
<td>/iN-/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7</td>
<td>/aka-/</td>
<td>/utu-/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8</td>
<td>/ubu-/</td>
<td>/ama-/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9</td>
<td>/uku-/</td>
<td>/ama-/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9a</td>
<td>/ku-/</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10</td>
<td>/aha-/</td>
<td>/aha-/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11</td>
<td>/uku-/</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n12</td>
<td>/mu / -mwo/</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n13</td>
<td>i / -yó</td>
<td>[prep / post]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Basically, there are three different ways of organizing (and learning) Bantu nouns. While this book has chosen the group system, a student should use whichever system works best for him or her:

- **The CLASS system** looks at each type independently, relating them across the Bantu family: *umu-* [cl 3], *imi-* [cl 4]
- **The GROUP system** looks at singular and plural nouns together (i.e., as a single unit): *umu-* / *imi-* [n2]
- **The MNEMONIC system** typifies nouns on the basis of their singular and plural affixes without regard to numbering: *umu-* / *imi-*.

Agreement forms are quite similar to the prefix, creating an alliterative system. Be mindful that WEAK sounds drop, i.e., the nasals *[m, n]* and all initial vowels, so that *umu-* > *u-*, *imi-* > *i-, ama-* > *a-, in-* > *i-; whereas STRONG sounds persist, i.e., *iki-* > *ki-, ibi-* > *bi-, uru-* > *ru-*, etc. Review the discussion of strong vs. weak noun classes in §1.3.

### 3.1.2. The Tonality of Nouns

When encountering a new noun in its spelled form, one can generally predict whether the vowels will be long or short based on patterns discussed in §2.2.1 and §2.2.2. However, it is difficult to assign or "extrapolate" tonality, even if one knows the tone pattern of the root. For almost any noun, there are eight tonal possibilities, plus combinations of several of these. There is no tonal correlation with either the noun class or the noun suffix used (-*a*, -*e*, -*i*, -*o*, -*u*). In other words, the student will have to memorize the tone pattern of nouns encountered.

Generally, a noun in one class that has a corresponding form in another will follow the same tone pattern:

- /umukúunzi/ [both] *n1-sg* 'close friend' < /– /kúunda/ [long penult vowel high tone on first mora]
- /igikúundiro/ [both] *n4-sg* 'charm, loveliness; favor; affection'
- /urukúundo/ [both] *n6-sg* 'love'

---

<sup>146</sup> There is clearly a semantic plural involved in an expression like /ahaantu heénsi/ [both] 'many places.' Some scholars consider n10-pl as n/a.
Chapter 3: Nouns

ubukúunzi / {Rundi} n8-sg-abs 'intimacy, affection, charity'

ígicumá / {Rwanda} n4-sg 'squash, gourd' [high tone on final vowel]

/ágacumá / {Rwanda} n7-sg 'small squash'

However, there may be tonal differences between Rwanda and Rundi and other local dialects.

/ágacúma / {Rundi} n7-sg 'small squash' [borrowed from Rwanda but with different tone]

/umukónó / {Rundi}, /umukonó / {Rwanda} n2-sg 'hand; handshake'

/umufaránzó / {Rundi} [Brule], /umufaránzá / {Rwanda} [Erule] 'French (person)'

/íráadiyó / {Rundi} [Lrule], /íráadiyó / {Rwanda} [Arule+Erule] 'radio'

3.1.2.1. Maintaining the Tonality of the Root [Rrule]

About one-third of all nouns are derived from verb stems and maintain the root tonality (see: Kimenyi 2002:181).

/umusáaza / {both} n1-sg 'old man, elderly person' < /–sáaza/ 'age, grow old'

/umusooonga / {both} n2-sg 'point; sharp pain' < /–soonga/ 'be pointed, come to a point'

/umutúunzi / {both} n1-sg 'rich person' < /–túunga/ 'have a lot of cows, possess animals or goods'

/impuunzi / {both} n5-sg/pl 'runaway, refugee, deserter' < /–huunga/ 'flee (from); run away'

/uburozi / {both} n8-sg 'poison; witchcraft' < /–roga/ 'cast a spell (upon); give the evil eye (to)'

/umugomé / {both} n1-sg 'rebel' < /–goma/ 'rebel, revolt'

/umurimá / {both} n2-sg 'field, garden' < /–rima/ 'dig, hoe, farm'

/amarirá / {both} n3-pl-mass 'tears' < /–rita/ 'cry, weep'

/ubukené / {both} n8-sg-abs 'poverty' < /–kena/ 'need, be in need of'

3.1.2.2. High Tone on the Second Mora of the Root [P2rule]

The second highest percentage of nouns are derived from verb roots where the tone either moves to or appears on the second mora of the root. This means that if the penult vowel is long, the tone will be on the second of the two vowels; if the penult vowel is short, tone will move to the next syllable.

HIGH TONE ROOTS WHERE TONE MOVES ONE MORA

/umwaámi / {both} n1-sg 'king' < /–áama/ 'endure, go on and on'

/umutwaáre / {both} n1-sg 'chief, ruler' < /–twáara/ 'carry (on the head); transport'

/umwéeru / {Rwanda} n2-sg 'white (color)' < /–éra/ 'be or become white'

/Low Tone Roots Where Tone Is Added, Appearing on the Second Vowel of the Root

/imviánga / {both} n5-sg 'mixture' < /–vánga/ 'mix'

/umugomé / {both} n1-sg 'rebels' < /–goma/ 'rebels, revolt'

/umurimá / {both} n2-sg 'field, garden' < /–rima/ 'dig, hoe, farm'

/amarirá / {both} n3-pl-mass 'tears' < /–rita/ 'cry, weep'

/ubukené / {both} n8-sg-abs 'poverty' < /–kena/ 'need, be in need of'

3.1.2.3. High Tone Introduced Immediately Following the Noun Prefix [Arule]

There are instances when a low-tone root will have a high tone nominal counterpart where the tone appears on the first vowel following the class prefix.

/umwáana / {both} n1-sg 'child' < /–aana/ 'cry, weep'

/umwóotsi / {both} n2-sg 'smoke' < /–ootsa/ 'roast, bake'

/agatáanu / {Rwanda} n7-sg-abs 'poverty' < /–taanu/ 'five'
Chapter 3: Nouns

Several nouns are formed with both this Arule and the Rrule.

/amaseekuru/ [Rwanda] 'genealogy, ancestral lineage' (Jacob #3 1986:52) < /seekuru/ [both] n1a-sg-kin 'his, her, their grandfather'

/iciiza/ [Rundi] (Rodegem 1970:567), /icyiza/ [Rwanda] (Jacob #2 1986:104) n4-sg-adj 'a good thing, a good deed' < ic(y)–n4-sg-prf + /–iizaz/ [both] adj-root 'good'

/intaraabona/ [both] n5-sg-neg-punc 'inexperienced person' (Rodegem 1970:40, Jacob #3 1986:281) < /in–n5-sg-prf + /–ta–/ 'not' + /–raa–/ 'not yet' [punctual preverb] + /–bona/ v-tr 'find, see, realize'

3.1.2.4. High Tone on the Second Syllable of the Root [Prule]

In just a few noun derivations, high tone appears on or is moved to the second syllable of the root (on the first mora if there is a long vowel). This tone pattern is most frequently found on verbs conjugated in the negative and relative.

/kavuukire/ [both] n7-sg-ir 'aborigine, indigenous person' < /–vukira/ [both] 'be a native of'

/paadir/ [both] n1a-sg 'priest' < Italian padre

/hoteeri/ [Rwanda] n5b-sg 'hotel' < French hôtel

Several nouns are formed from negative verbs with both this Prule and the Arule.

/mudasuumbwa/ [both] n1a-sg 'person who is not surpassed; [atr] unsurpassable' < /–suumbwa/ [both] 'be surpassed'

/intakira/ [Rundi] n5-sg/pl 'incureability; [atr] incurable, fatal, mortal' < /–kira/ [both] 'heal, be cured'

/igitaraganya/ [Rwanda] n4-sg 'haste; [adv] quickly, speedily, in haste' < /–ragana/ [both] 'confer, come to an agreement' [lit. 'not coming to an agreement']

3.1.2.5. Borrowed Tonality [Brule]

This rule, which primarily affects loanwords, assigns length to the penult vowel and puts high tone on its second mora.

/umubooyi/ [Rundi] n1-sg 'houseboy' < English boy – Note: Rwanda /umubooyi/ (low tone)

/jeneraal/ [both] n1a-sg 'general' < French général

/kinini/ [both] n4-sg 'pill, medicine tablet' < French quinine

/itaabi/ [both] n3-sg 'tobacco' < int; French tabac

/indeego/ [both] n5-sg 'airplane' < Swahili

/risaansi/ [both] n5b-sg 'distilled fuel' (gasoline, diesel, petrol) < French l'essence

This Brule is often found in combination with the Arule.

/uburéengeeti/ [both] n8-sg 'blanket' < Eng blanket

/akamashiini/ [both] n7-sg 'machine' < French machine

/imodokaari/ [both] n5a-sg 'automobile' < English motorcar

/sukaari/ [both] n5b-sg-mass 'sugar' < Arb sukkaar

3.1.2.6. High Tone on the Final Syllable [Erule]

A few loanwords seem to have high tone assigned to the last syllable.

/isafuriya/ [both] n5a-sg 'cooking pot, casserole' < Swahili

/raadiyo/ [Rwanda] n5b-sg 'radio' < French, English radio

/tarik/ [both] n5b-sg 'date' < Arb [Cf. /itariki/ below]

/umufaraansa/ [Rwanda] n1-sg 'French person' – Note: /umufaraansa/ [Rundi] [Brule]
Generally, though, this rule occurs along with other tone rules, resulting in two high tones. For example, high tone is introduced immediately after the prefix and on the final syllable [Arule + Erule].

\[\text{/umupáapá/ \{both\} n1-sg 'pope' < French pape}\]
\[\text{/itäumbá/ \{both\} n3-sg-time 'rainy season, autumn' < /–tuumba/ 'swell up'}\]
\[\text{/kirééré/ \{both\} n4-sg 'sky, atmosphere'}\]
\[\text{/itärikí/ \{both\} n5a-sg 'date, day (of the month)' < Arb [Cf: /tariiki/ above]}\]
\[\text{/urushíningé/ \{both\} n6-sg 'needle (for sewing); [ext] injection' < /–shiinga/ 'fix, plant, drive a stake into'}\]

This tone pattern is also found on some nouns derived from verbs in conjunction with root tonality (high tone is on the first vowel of the root) but another high tone is added to the last vowel of the derivation [Rrule + Erule].

\[\text{/umubyáará/ \{Rwanda\} n1-sg-kin 'first cousin, cross cousin' < /–byáara/ \{Rwanda\} 'give birth to'}\]
\[\text{/umweérá/ \{both\} n2-sg 'dry skin' < /–éera/ \{both\} 'become white'}\]
\[\text{/impéruuká/ \{both\} n5-sg 'end, termination' < /–héruuka/ \{both\} v-aux 'last VERBed'}\]
\[\text{/amahíirwé/ \{Rwanda\} n3-pl-col 'happiness; good luck' < /–híirwa/ \{both\} 'be happy, have good luck'}\]

### 3.1.2.7. High Tone on the Second Last Syllable [E2rule]

A few words, mostly loans, seem to have high tone assigned to the second last syllable.

\[\text{/umukirišito/ \{both\} n1-sg 'Christian' < intl}\]
\[\text{/meetéro/\{Rwanda\} n5b-sg 'meter' < French mètre}\]
\[\text{/sipóoro/ \{Rwanda\} n5b-sg 'team (in sports)' < English sports}\]

Some words have two high tones: immediately after the prefix and on the second last syllable [Arule+E2rule].

\[\text{/umumárayíka/ \{both\} n1-sg 'angel, God's messenger' < Swahili}\]
\[\text{/umupáadíri/ \{both\} n1-sg 'priest' < Italian padre}\]

### 3.1.2.8. High Tone on the Third Last Syllable [E3rule]

Just a few loanwords have been noted with high tone assigned to the third last syllable.

\[\text{/burugumeesítiri/ \{Rwanda\} n1a-sg 'mayor, burgomaster' < Flemish}\]
\[\text{/minisítiri/ \{Rwanda\} n1a-sg 'minister (of government)' < French ministre}\]
\[\text{/komiséeiri/ \{both\} n1a-sg 'commissioner' < French commissaire}\]
\[\text{/isegitéeri/ \{both\} n5a-sg 'sector (administrative unit)' < French secteur}\]

Again, this rule occurs in combination with the Arule [Arule+E3rule].

\[\text{/umukómíseéri/ \{both\} n1-sg 'commissioner' < French commissaire}\]
\[\text{/umuminiisítiri/ \{Rwanda\} n1-sg 'minister (of government)' < French ministre}\]

---

147 This rule results in nouns that are indistinguishable from those formed from the Arule+Erule, except that the roots that are involved in these derivations already have high tone. From the point of view of a student learning this language, it is easier to remember that root tonality is maintained here while it is added in forms treated in the immediately preceding paragraph.

148 The dictionary (Jacob et al. 1987:350) gives this as an alternate pronunciation to low toned /meetéro/.

149 Rwanda /icyúumwéeru/ n4-sg 'week; Sunday' would seem to fit this pattern (A+E2), but is actually a nominalized possessive 'that of the white' < /icyaa/ + /umwéeru/ n2-sg 'white' < /–éera/ 'be white' (Overdulve 1975:181).
3.2. Characteristics of the Noun Classes

Each of the noun groups will be examined in terms of their FORM (affixes), CONTENT (meaning or derivation), and GRAMMATICAL CHARACTERISTICS. In some cases, a subgroup (e.g., n1a, n5a, n5b, n9a) is established. This is done when the nominal affix itself differs from the predominant pattern, but the agreement forms are all the same. Thus the majority of group 1 nouns are marked in the singular by /umu-/ and in the plural by /aba-/; however, some nouns that behave grammatically just like these do not have any prefix in the singular (i.e., zero or Ø-) and have /baa–/ (with a long vowel) in the plural. Nevertheless, all other parts of speech (verbs, adjectives, pronouns, etc.) agree with either of these in a straightforward and regular way.

3.2.1. Group 1 – Bantu Classes 1 and 2

Singular: umu- {both} [weak] Bantu class 1 – before consonant stems
            umw- {both} – before vowel stems

Plural: aba- {both} [strong] Bantu class 2 – before consonant stems
        ab- {both} – before vowel stems

3.2.1.1. Semantic Characteristics of Group 1

- Human class (homo sapiens)\(^{150}\) including nouns ascribing age or gender
  /umuuntu – abantu/ {both} 'person, human being; [pl] people'
  /umugabo – abagabo/ {both} 'man, adult male; husband; gentleman; warrior; virile personality; [ext] arbitre, intermediary'
  /umugoré – abagoré/ {both} 'woman, female; wife'
  /umusóre – abásóre/ {both} 'young man, pubescent youth'
  /umusáaza – abásáaza/ {both} 'old man'
  /umukeécuru – abakeécuru/ {both} 'old woman'

- Nouns indicating nationality, ethnic affiliation, or race\(^{151}\)
  /abéezi/ [Rundi] members of the royal family descended from King Mwezi Gisabo
  /umudaági – abadaági/ [Rundi], /umudaáge, abadaáge/ [Rwanda] German (person or people)
  /umunyéekoóngo – abanyéekoóngo/ {both} Congolese (person or people)
  /umuruúndi – abaruúndi/ {both} Rundi (person or people)
  /umuzuúngu – abazuúngu/ {both} white person or people, European(s); foreigner, stranger
  /umwáarabú – abáarabú/ {both} Arab(s), Arabian person or people

- Nouns identifying one's status in the community, position in life, or occupation
  /umugabékazi/ {both} queen mother (mother of the king); (ruling) queen
  /umugaanga – abagaanga/ {both} doctor (of medicine)
  /umugarágu – abagarágu/ {both} servant, boy, male slave
  /umuja – abaja/ {both} servant girl
  /umupfumú – abapfumú/ {both} sorcerer, witch doctor, healer
  /umunyámahaánga/ {both} stranger, foreigner
  /umuyovu – abayovu/ {both} potter
  /umukáraáni – abakáraáni/ {both} secretary
  /umukuúngu – abakuúngu/ {both} rich person
  /umwóoro – abóoro/ {both} poor person, pauper
  /umwuúngere – abuúngere/ [Rundi], /umwuúngeri – abuúngeri/ [Rwanda] shepherd

---

\(^{150}\) This class does not include living beings (Hands 1952:10) or animateness (Dubnova 1984:31), only humans; cf: /umwuúka/ 'air, vapor; spirit' n2 or the many animal names in n5, e.g., /inzovu/ 'elephant.'

\(^{151}\) Many of these roots can be found in Group 4 designating the language or culture, and in Group 8 designating the country or area associated with the ethnic group, thus /umuyápaáni/ 'Japanese person,' /ikiyápaáni/ 'Japanese language,' /ubuyápaáni/ 'Japan.'
Chapter 3: Nouns

- Nouns indicating kinship (blood and affinal relationships)\[152\]
  /umwaana – abawaana/ {both} child; [pl] children
  /umugeni – abageni/ {both} bride
  /umuhuungu – abahuungu/ {both} boy, son, male offspring
  /umukwe – abakwe/ {both} groom, bridegroom; son-in-law
  /umuwuzukuru/ {both} grandchild
  /umuvandimwe – abavandimwe/ {both} blood relative

- Nouns indicating personality traits
  /umudeshi/ {Rundi}, /umudeshyi/ {Rwanda} 'idle person'
  /umunebwe – abanebwe/ {both} 'sloth, lazy person'
  /umunyabweenge/ {both} 'wise or intelligent person'
  /umunyabwooba/ {both} 'coward'
  /umupfu/ {Rwanda} 'fool, idiot'\[153\]

3.2.1.2. Derivations in Group 1

Group 1 nouns that come from other parts of speech are primarily derived from verb stems with the addition of any of the five vowels as suffixes. A few are also formed from adjective roots. In many instances the tone pattern of the root is preserved; it mostly changes when the suffix is -e. See the discussion of tone patterns in §3.1.2.

- Nouns derived from the PALATALIZED (perfect) stems of verbs (umu-∆-yi) show a person associated with the action. Root tonality is maintained.
  /umucuzzi – abacuzzi/ {both} 'blacksmith' < /–cúra/ 'forge (metal)' [Rrule]
  /umukamyi – abakamyi/ {both} 'milk' < /–káma/ 'milk' [Rrule]
  /umukózi – abakózi/ {both} 'worker' < /–kóra/ 'work, do, perform' [Rrule]
  /umukúunzi – abakúunzi/ {both} 'close friend' < /–kúunda/ 'love' [Rrule]
  /umurozi – abarozi/ {both} 'magician, sorcerer, witch doctor' < /–roga/ 'cast a spell (upon); give the evil eye to; poison s.o.' [Rrule]

- Nouns derived from the PALATALIZED (perfect) stems of verbs show a person associated with the action. Root tonality is maintained.
  /umutiindi – abatiindi/ {both} 'unlucky or unfortunate person' < /–tiindahara/ 'become very poor, get impoverished' [Rrule]
  /umutoni – abatoni/ {both} 'favorite (person)' < /–tôna/ 'be someone's favorite; be in the good graces (of s.o. in authority)' [Rrule]
  /umuhigi – abahigi/ {both} 'hunter' < /–hiiga/ 'hunt' [P2rule]

\[152\] The majority of kinship terms are in Group 1a (see §1.8.1 and §3.2.1a).
\[153\] Contrast /umupfu/ {both} 'dead person, corpse' BELOW.
Chapter 3: Nouns

• Such nouns can have the form umu-Δ-e. Note that high tone always appears in these derivations on the second mora of the root [P2rule].

/umukené – abakené/ {both} 'pauper, poor person' < /–kena/ 'be poor'
/umutwaáre – abatwaáre/ {both} 'chief, ruler' < /–twáara/ 'rule, govern'

• Group 1 nouns may also have the form umu-Δ-a. With consonant stems the root tonality is maintained [Rrule], whereas with vowel stems, high tone moves to the second mora [Jrule].

/umucáamaánza/ {both} 'judge, magistrate' < /–urubaánza 'arbitrate, undertake a legal proceeding'
/umushuumba – abashuumba/ [Rundi] 'servant, domestic' < /–shuumba/ 'give oneself to the service of another'

/umujuura/ [Rwanda] 'thief' < /–juura/ [Rwanda] 'steal s.t.'
/umweéra/ {both} 'white man; innocent person' < /–éera/ 'be white or clean'
/umwiígiisha – abiígiisha/ {both} 'teacher, instructor' < /–íigiisha/ 'teach' [v-caus]

• Rarely, they have the form umu-Δ-u.

/umupfú – abapfú/ 'dead person, cadaver' < /–pfá/ 'die'

• Nouns are also derived from passive verbs with the form umu-Δ-w-a. These derivations have high tone on the second mora of the root [P2rule].

/umwiígiishwa – abiígiishwa/ {both} 'student, pupil, apprentice' < /–ig-ish-wa/ 'be taught'
/umukoóbwa – abakoóbwa/ {both} 'girl, daughter' < /–kóob-wa/ 'be paid (of a dowry) < /–kwá/ 'pay a dowry'
/umugorórwa/ [Rwanda] 'prisoner' < /–gorora/ 'straighten up, make straight (s.t. that is bent or crooked)'
/umutumírwa/ {both} 'guest, one who is invited' < /–tumira/ 'summon, call; invite'

3.2.1.3. Loans in Group 1

/Umukirisíto – Abakirisíto/ {both} 'Christian' < Intl
/Umukáraáni – Abakáraáni/ {both} 'secretary, clerk' < Arb
/Umuyápaáni – Abayápaáni/ {both} 'Japanese' < French Japonais

3.2.1.4. The Grammar of Group 1 Nouns

The following tables will illustrate the overall grammatical behavior of nouns, group by group. The first of each table will exemplify roots that have consonant stems and the second those with vowel stems. Altogether, fifteen grammatical or syntactic categories will be treated:

prefix – the full prefix associated with the singular and plural of each noun group,
red – the reduced form of the prefix (such as occurs after demonstratives or prepositions),
class – the simple class prefix (such as is used on demonstrative pronouns),
poss – possessive forms used when a noun follows,
poss vn / poss loc – possessive forms used when a locative or verbal noun follows,
loc – the various locative constructions allowed with this noun class (mu, ku, i, kwáa),
obj – the object form which appears infixed within verbs,
adj – the form an agreeing adjective will take,
um – the form an agreeing numeral will take,
subj – the prefix used when agreeing with the subject of an indicative verb,
part – the prefix used when agreeing with a participial verb,
rel subj – the relative form when the verb refers to the subject of an action,
rel obj – the relative form when the verb refers to the object of an action,
auto – the form of an autonome (relative verb used as a noun), and
pass agent / conj – the form used with a passive agent (done by ...) or a conjunctive nominal (and ...).

154 See also /umugomé/ {both} 'rebel, insurgent' and /umukiré/ {both} 'rich person' ABOVE.
155 Besides /umukizá/ {both} [P2rule] 'savior, redeemer' ABOVE, there is /umukiza/ [Rwanda alt] [Rrule].
In order to fit the patterns or paradigms being discussed, some of the examples presented are admittedly contrived or even strained. We present them with the aim of completeness of coverage.

Table 35a. Group 1 Nouns with Consonant Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>plural</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>umu-</td>
<td>umusóre young man</td>
<td>aba-</td>
<td>abásore young men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>mu-</td>
<td>uyu mugaanga this doctor</td>
<td>ba-</td>
<td>aba bagaanga these doctors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>u-</td>
<td>uryá this</td>
<td>ba-</td>
<td>bárya these</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss</td>
<td>wa</td>
<td>umuhuúngu wa Peetero</td>
<td>baa</td>
<td>abahuúngu baa Peetero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>waa</td>
<td>umwáana waa mbere</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>first child</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss vn</td>
<td>wó</td>
<td>umugabo wó mu baantu a</td>
<td>bó</td>
<td>abaantu bó ku karwa people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc</td>
<td>kwaa</td>
<td>kwaaw mugaanga at a doctor's</td>
<td>kwaa</td>
<td>kwaaw baamaarúme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>ku mugaanga waanjye to</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>ku baantu bakoméye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mu</td>
<td>ikíri mu muuntu what is</td>
<td>mu</td>
<td>mu Baruúndi among the Rundi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>inside a person</td>
<td></td>
<td>people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj</td>
<td>-mu-</td>
<td>aramúbwiira he tells him</td>
<td>-ba-</td>
<td>arabátsíinda he defeats them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj</td>
<td>mu-</td>
<td>muníni huge (person)</td>
<td>ba-</td>
<td>baníni huge (people)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num</td>
<td>u-</td>
<td>umugóre umwé one wife</td>
<td>ba-</td>
<td>abagóre babiri two wives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>aramutsa he greets</td>
<td>ba-</td>
<td>baramutsa they greet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>a-C'V</td>
<td>akúrikije he following up</td>
<td>bá-</td>
<td>báhabwa they being given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel subj</td>
<td>u-</td>
<td>umwáana uvúutse</td>
<td>ba-</td>
<td>abáana bavuutsé children who</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rwanda only</td>
<td>a child who is born</td>
<td>[same as rel</td>
<td>are born</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>obj]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel obj</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>umwáana akubíta</td>
<td>ba-</td>
<td>umwáana bakubíta the child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>the child whom he hits</td>
<td></td>
<td>whom they hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto</td>
<td>uu-</td>
<td>uúkóra one who works</td>
<td>aba-C'V</td>
<td>abákóra the ones who work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uu-</td>
<td>uúkóra {Rwanda}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uuwu-</td>
<td>uuukóra {Rundi}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass agent</td>
<td>n'úmu-</td>
<td>zaandikwa n'úmuuntu</td>
<td>n'ába-</td>
<td>zaandikwa n'ábaantu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conj</td>
<td></td>
<td>written by a person</td>
<td></td>
<td>written by people</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 35b. Group 1 Nouns with Vowel Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>plural</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>umw-</td>
<td>umwáarimú teacher</td>
<td>ab-</td>
<td>abáarimú teachers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>mw-</td>
<td>uyu mwáarimú teacher</td>
<td>b-</td>
<td>abá baáarimú these teachers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>w-</td>
<td>wáa that (person there)</td>
<td>b-</td>
<td>báa those (people there)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss</td>
<td>w’V</td>
<td>umwáana w’umurerano adopted child</td>
<td>b’V</td>
<td>abáana b’abárerano adopted children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss vn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss loc</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Table 35b does not differ from the consonant forms because the vn (ku-, gu-) and loc (mu- and ku-) prefixes always begin with a consonant, thus wó mu, bó ku, etc.

### 3.2.1a. Group 1a – Personal Names & Kin Terms

#### Singular:
Ø (ZERO) {both} [no prefix on singular] (Bantu class 1a) [weak]

#### Plural:
baa- {both} [group 1a plural (Bantu class 2a) noun prefix] [strong]

This is a special subclass of the first group which usually has no prefix (ZERO marking) in the singular and /baa/ in the plural. Note that all agreement affixes for Group 1a are the same as those for Group 1 and will be identical to those taken up in tables 35a and 35b.

The plural prefix /baa/ on personal names usually has the effect of indicating a person and any people associated with him or her (family members, associates, companions, etc.). It can, of course, refer to more than one person with the same name, as in English 'There are three Davids in our office.'

#### 3.2.1a.1. Semantic Characteristics of Group 1a
- All personal names (proper names), including the personal interrogative
  /ndé – baandé/ {both} qw-n1a-sg 'who?, which (person)'
  /kaanaaká – baakaanaaká/ {both} n1a-sg-masc 'so-and-so, whoever, such a one, someone like that' [used to hide the identity of the person]
  /peetéro/ [Rundi], /peetero/ [Rwanda] n1a-sg-pn 'Peter' < intl
  /yohaáni/ {both} n1a-sg-pn 'John' < intl
Chapter 3: Nouns

The vast majority of personal names are derived from other noun classes (see §3.2.1a.2 BELOW).

- Most kinship terms, some of which relate to first, second, or third person
  /daáta – baádaáta/ [both] nla-sg-kin 'my father'
  /só – baásó/ [both] nla-sg-kin 'your father'
  /sé – baásé/ [both] nla-sg-kin 'his father'
  /maamá – bamaamá/ [both] nla-sg-kin 'my mother'
  /nyoko – baannyoko/ [both] nla-sg-kin 'your mother'
  /nyina – baanyina/ [both] nla-sg-kin 'her mother'
  /murúmuna – barúmuna/ [both] nla-sg-kin 'younger sibling' (brother or sister of the same sex)
  /musáaza – basáaza/ [both] nla-sg-kin 'brother' (said by a sister)
  /mushíki – bashíki/ [both] nla-sg-kin 'sister' (said by a brother)

For more details see the discussion in §1.8.1 and Tables 16 and 17.

- Titles of professionals, political offices, religious figures, etc.
  /buramataari/ [Rundi] nla-sg 'governor; government official'
  /burugumeesitiri/ [Rwanda] nla-sg 'mayor, burgomaster' < Flemish
  /jéneraálí/ [both] nla-sg 'general' < French général
  /paápá/ [both] nla-sg 'pope' < French pape
  /perezida/ [both] nla-sg 'president' < French président
  /veteríneéri/ [Rundi] (JN), /veterineéri/ [Rwanda] nla-sg 'veterinarian' < French vétérinaire

- Terms for certain social relationships or character types in society
  /gicá/ [Rwanda] nla-sg 'mischief-maker'
  /kírimbuzí/ [Rwanda] nla-sg 'destroyer; murderer'
  /migueenzi – bageenzi/ [both] nla-sg 'companion, mate, comrade, friend'
  /múkáa – baámúkáa/ [both] nla-sg-kin-prf 'wife (of),' e.g., /múkáa-gahútú/ 'the wife of Gahutu'
  /shéebuja – shóobuja/ [both] nla-sg-cmp 'his, her master or boss' [Note third person reference]

3.2.1a.2. Derivations in Group 1a

- Shortened Forms from other noun classes

Group 1a nouns come from shortened or reduced forms in other noun classes, however they lose the inflection of or agreement with that noun class and often lose any number distinction.

  /barabéeshya/ [Rwanda] 'Barabeshya' (masculine proper name) [lit. 'They do not tell the truth.' Note: although the verb form is plural, this proper name is singular.
  /mukúru – baamúkúru/ [both] nla-sg-kin 'elder sibling' (brother or sister of the same sex) [cf: /umu- n1]
  /gikerí/ [Rwanda] nla-sg-pn 'Gikeri' (male personal name) [cf: igikerí n4-sg 'frog']
  /kabeba/ [both] nla-sg-pn 'Kabeba' (male personal name) [cf: aka- n7, imbeba n5-sg/pl 'mouse']
  /kabúmba/ [Rwanda] nla-sg-pn 'Kabumba' (female personal name) [lit. 'small piece of clay']

- Derivations with iná- [Rundi], nyirá- [Rwanda] [Frule, the prefix carries high tone if the following root has a high tone; the word to which it is joined keeps its high tone, except if it would occur in the immediately following syllable, Xrule]
  /inábukwé/ [Rundi], /nyirábukwé/ [Rwanda] nla-sg-kin 'his, her mother-in-law' [cf: /ubukwé/ n8-sg 'wedding, marriage']
  /inárume/ [Rundi], /nyirárumé/ [Rwanda] nla-sg-kin 'his, her maternal uncle' (mother's brother) [Xrule, cf: /–rúme/ [both] 'uncle']
  /ináséengo/ [Rundi], /nyiráseengo/ [Rwanda] nla-sg-kin 'his, her paternal aunt' (father's sister) [Xrule, cf: /–séengo/ [both] 'aunt']
  /nyiramajoro/ [Rwanda] nla-sg-pn 'Nyiramajoro' (female personal name) [lit. 'Mother of the Nights;' cf: /ijaoro/ n3-sg 'night']
Chapter 3: Nouns

/nnyiranda/ [Rwanda] n1a-sg-pn 'Nyiranda' (female personal name) [lit. 'Mother of the Stomach;' cf: /inda/ n5-sg/pl 'stomach']

- Name derivations of kaa- and rwaa- with TONE REVERSAL (if the root has high tone the prefix is low-toned, if the root has low tone, the prefix is high-toned).

/kaa-vuutse/ [both] n1a-sg-pn 'Kavutse' (male personal name) [lit. 'a child is born;' cf: /–vúuka/ 'be born']

/káamagaaju/ [Rwanda] n1a-sg-pn 'Kamagaju' (female personal name) [cf: /igaaju/ n3-sg 'light brown']

/rwáabugiri/ [Rwanda] n1a-sg-pn 'Rwabugiri' (male personal name; former king of Rwanda)

/rwamakúba/ [Rwanda] n1a-sg-pn 'Rwamakuba' (male personal name) [cf: /amakúba/ n3-pl 'troubles']

- Derivations with the prefix nya- indicating a type or sort of what the following root implies, often with some extreme attribute associated, come word-initial before the root. If the following root has low tone, there is low tone on the derived word; if any of the following three syllables has high tone, high tone appears on the first mora following this prefix; if the root has a high tone on its second syllable, that tone will be lost. See also -nya- association with in §3.3.

/nyawuubahwa/ [Rundi], /nyakuubahwa/ [Rwanda] n1a-sg 'excellency; reverend' [cf: /–úubahwa/ 'be respected']

/nyamweeru/ [both] n1a-sg 'albino' [cf: /–éera/ 'be white']

/nyagasani/ [Rwanda] n1a-sg 'lord (title of a king); Lord (alternate term for God)'

/nyamugabó/ [Rwanda] n1a-sg 'the man in question' [cf: Rundi /nyaa mugabo/ deic + n1-sg]

- Masculine derivations with sée- usually keep this affix's high tone and also preserve the tonality of the root.

/séebuéré/ [Rundi] n1a-sg 'sovereign, father of the people'

/séenjáangwé/ [Rwanda] n1a-sg-pn (male personal name) [lit. 'Father of the Wild Cat;' cf: /injáangwé/]

/séegeba/ [Rundi] n1a-sg 'God, the All Powerful, the Omnipotent'

/séehéne/ [Rwanda] n1a-sg-pn (male personal name) [lit. 'Father of a She-Goat;' cf: /ihéne/ n5a-sg 'jenny, she-goat']

/séenda/ [both] n1a-sg-pn (male personal name) [lit. 'Father of the Stomach;' cf: /inda/ n5-sg/pl 'stomach']

There are some unexplained tonal exceptions:

/seebukwé/ [both] n1a-sg-kin 'his, her father-in-law'

/seekúru/ [both] n1a-sg-kin 'his, her, their grandfather'

/seekúruza/ [both] n1a-sg-kin 'my ancestor'

- Masculine kin derivations with soo- usually preserve the tonality of the root but the prefix does not have high tone as does /sée- in the previous section.

/soobukwé/ [both] n1a-sg-kin 'your father-in-law'

/sookúru/ [both] n1a-sg-kin 'your grandfather'

/sookúruza/ [both] n1a-sg-kin 'my ancestor'

---

156 Probably derived from the third person kinship term /sé/ {both} n1a-sg-kin 'his, her, their father' with vowel lengthening.

157 Bizimana (1998:165) disassociates these exceptions from the /sée- prefix and its /sé/ root. However, in terms of both form and meaning they appear to be exceptions, not different derivations. Thus, the plural form of /seekúru/ is /baaseekúru/, where the expected high tone reappears. Also see the next footnote.

158 When this word is derived, the expected tone pattern reappears: /igisékúru/ 'ancestor; lineage' and /amaseékúru/ 'genealogy.'

159 Probably derived from the second person kinship term /só/ {both} n1a-sg-kin 'your father' with vowel lengthening, but loss of the high tone.
Chapter 3: Nouns

3.2.1a.3. Loans in Group 1a

Numerous personal names and title of positions have been borrowed from other languages.

/beyatrisi/ {both} 'Beatrice' < French Béatrice
/yohaani/ {both} 'John' < German Johan
/burugumeesitiri/ {Rwanda} < Flemish
/bwaana/ {both} 'mister, sir' < Swahili
/perezida/ {both} 'president' < French président

3.2.2. Group 2 – Bantu Classes 3 and 4

Singular: umu- {both} [weak] Bantu class 3 – before consonant stems
         umw- {both} – before vowel stems
Plural:   imi- {both} [weak] Bantu class 4 – before consonant stems
         imy- {both} – before vowel stems

3.2.2.1. Semantic Characteristics of Group 2

This group consists of exclusively non-personal nouns. Scholars and textbook authors have generalized that most plant names are in Group 2 (Bantu class 3). Taking the reasonably comprehensive list of plant names in the back of the Kirundi dictionary (Rodegem 1970), we can see that just about half are indeed in Group 2. However, the remainder are spread across Groups 3 through 8, with the biggest concentrations in Group 4 and then Group 5.¹⁶⁰

Figure 1. Distribution of Plant Names in Kirundi

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>n2</th>
<th>n3</th>
<th>n4</th>
<th>n5</th>
<th>n6</th>
<th>n7</th>
<th>n8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FLORA</td>
<td>50.9</td>
<td>04.6</td>
<td>18.6</td>
<td>09.8</td>
<td>06.2</td>
<td>08.2</td>
<td>02.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• Names of flora (trees, shrubs, bushes, and other plants), their parts, and their byproducts, including foodstuffs.

FLORA
/umugano – imigano/ {both} 'bamboo,' Arundinaria alpina
/umukó – imikó/ {both} 'tree sp.,' Hyphaene ventricosa (Kirk)
/umukoni – imikoni/ {both} 'tree sp. (used medicinally),' Sinaderia sp. Synadenium umbellatum (Pax.)
/umunyinyá – iminyinyá/ {both} 'acacia,' Acacia abyssinica (Hochst.)
/umwuúngu – imyuúngu/ {both} 'pumpkin'
/umuyeenzi – imiyeenzi/ {both} 'tree sp.,' Euphorbia tirucalli L.

¹⁶⁰ None are found in Group 1 (strictly human) and Group 9.
PLANT PARTS, BYPRODUCTS and FOODSTUFFS

/umufá – imifá/ {both} 'sauce (for meat)'
/umugózi – imigózi/ {both} 'string, rope, cord'
/umukáaté – imikáaté/ {Rundi}, /umukaáte – imikaáte/ {Rwanda} 'bread'
/umuneke – imineke/ {both} 'ripe banana'
/umucúungwá/ {Rundi} 'orange' 
/umutí – imití/ {both} 'medicine, drug'
/umuzi – imizi/ {both} 'root'
/umweénda – imyeénda/ {both} 'cloth (piece of cloth)'

• Natural phenomena, several objects in nature perceived of as mobile
/umugezi – imigezi/ {both} 'river (minor), stream'
/umuriro – imiriro/ {both} 'fire'
/umwóotsi – imyóotsi/ {both} 'smoke'
/umurávyo – imirávyo/ {Rundi}, /umurábyo – imirábyo/ {Rwanda} 'lightning (flash)'
/umuyaga – imiyaga/ {both} 'wind, breeze'
/umucezi – imigezi/ {both} 'river (minor), stream' 
/umurimá – imirimá/ {both} 'field, garden'
/umuseényi – imiseényi/ {both} 'sand, grain of sand'
/umusózi – imisózi/ {both} 'hill, mountain; dry land (as opposed to sea)'
/umuziinga – imiziinga/ {both} 'beehive'
/umwoobo – imyoobo/ {both} 'hole, pit'

• Elements of the HUMAN ECOSYSTEM or social environment
/umuhana – imihana/ {both} 'locality, neighborhood'
/iminyago/ {Rwanda} 'booty, plunder, spoils of war' [cf: /umunyago/ 'single captured item']
/umudugúdu/ {Rwanda} 'city'
/umugishá – imigishá/ {both} 'blessing; prosperity'
/umuháanda – imiháanda/ {both} 'road, route'
/umuhirá – imihirá/ {Rundi} 'dwelling, domicile, home' [cf: /imuhirá/ {both} 'at home, homewards'
/umuragé – imiragé/ {Rwanda} 'inheritance, legacy'
/umuryaango – imiryáango/ {both} 'family, clan, social group'
/umwaáku/ {both} 'bad luck, misfortune'
/umweénda – imyeénda/ {Rundi}, /umvéenda – imvéenda/ {Rwanda} 'debt'

• Names of some body parts (of humans and animals), including the word for 'body' itself (See Table 31)
/umubiri – imibiri/ {both} 'body'
/umugóongo – imigóongo/ {both} 'back'
/umuhogó – imihogó/ {both} 'throat, gullet'
/ununwa – iminwa/ {both} 'mouth; lip; beak'
/umurizó – imiriizó/ {both} 'tail'
/umuruúndi – imiruúndi/ {both} 'shin'
/umushatsi – imishatsi/ {Rundi}, /umusatsi – imisatsi/ {Rwanda} 'hair (of the head)'
/umutíma – imítíma/ {both} 'heart, spirit; conscience'
/umutsí – imitsí/ {both} 'sinew, nerve'
/umutwé – imítwé/ {both} 'head'

---

161 Rwanda has /içuúnga/ n3 for 'orange'.
162 Homographic with /umweénda/ {Rundi}, /umvéenda/ {Rwanda} 'debt' in the [human ecosystem] BELOW.
163 However, note /uruuzí/ {both} n6-sg 'river (major).'
164 This noun can mean 'prisoner-of-war,' but is always non-human and follows the postposition /hó/.
165 Rundi has /igisagára/ n4 'city.'
166 Rundi has /iragí/ n3-sg 'inheritance.' While both come from the same verb root (/– raga/ 'bequeath') these derivations fall into different noun classes.
167 Homographic with /umweénda/ 'cloth' treated among {plant byproducts} ABOVE.
Chapter 3: Nouns

/umwiijimá – imyiijimá/ {Rwanda} 'liver (organ)'

- Manufactured items: tools and implements; many objects having to do with wood
  /umuryáango – imiryáango/ {both} 'door, portal'
  /umuhéhá – imihéhá/ {both} 'pipe; drinking straw'
  /umuheto – imiheto/ {both} 'bow (weapon)'
  /umuhíni – imihíni/ {both} 'handle (of a mattock, hoe or pickaxe)'
  /umuhoro – imihoro/ {both} 'machete, scythe, pruning hook'
  /umwaambi – imyaambi/ {Rundi}, /umwaampi – imyaampi/ {Rwanda} 'arrow'
  /umweénda – imyeénda/ {both} 'cloth (piece of cloth)'

- Things which spread or extend
  /umukóno – umukóno/ {Rundi}, /umukonó – umukonó/ {Rwanda} 'cubit (unit of measure)'
  /umukweége – imikweége/ {Rwanda} 'wire'
  /umuroongo – imiroongo/ {both} 'line, row, queue'
  /umurúungá – imirúungá/ {Rwanda} 'rope, big braided cord'

- A few animals or insects and their byproducts
  /umusaámbi – imisaámbi/ {both} 'crested crane, royal crane'
  /umuswí – imiswí/ {Rundi}, /umushwi – imishwi/ {Rwanda} 'chick, baby bird'
  /umubú – imibú/ {both} 'mosquito'
  /umuswá – imiswá/ {both} 'termite, white ant'
  /umugina – imigina/ {both} 'termite mound'

- A few time words (see Table 32)
  /umuúnsi – imínsi/ {both}, /umuúsi – imísi/ {Rundi} 'day'
  /umwaánya – imyaánya/ {both} 'time, moment, period (of time)'
  /umuseké – imiseké/ {both} 'dawn, daybreak'
  /umugórooba – imigórooba/ {both} 'evening, late afternoon'

- Some human emotions
  /umunéezeero/ {both} 'happiness, joy'
  /umwaága/ {both} 'bad mood'
  /umweéte/ {both} 'interest, enthusiasm, zeal'
  /umujinyá/ {both} 'anger, rage, fury'

3.2.2.2. Derivations in Group 2

The majority of derived nouns in Group 2 come from verb stems. Adjectives that agree with a member of this class can also be nominalized.

- Nouns derived from verbs with -o showing the RESULT of applying the action (umu-Δ-o)
  /umubábaro – imibábaro/ {both} 'grief, sorrow, sadness' < /–bábara/ 'grieve'
  /umuního – iminiho/ {both} 'groan; complaint' < /–niha/ 'groan; complain'
  /umunuuko – iminuuko/ {both} 'odor, bad smell' < /–nuuka/ 'stink, smell bad'
  /umuraambararo – imiraambararo/ {both} 'length' < /–raambarara/ 'lie flat'
  /umurávyo/ {Rundi}, /umurábyo/ {Rwanda} 'lightning (flash)' < /–ráyva/ {Rundi}, /–rábya/ {Rwanda} 'produce lightning; shine like lightning'
  /umurimo – imirimo/ {both} 'work, labor; job; function, office' < /–rima/ 'work the earth, cultivate'
  //iminyago/ {Rwanda} 'booty, plunder' < /–nyaga/ 'plunder'

168 Rundi has /igitigú/ n4 'liver.'
169 Also see previous examples /umugozí/ {both} 'string, rope, cord' in {plant byproducts}, /umuhehá/ 'pipe' under {manufactured items}, and /umuryaango/ {both} 'family, clan, social group' under {human ecosystem}.
170 See /umubábaro/ {both} 'grief under [result] derivations below.
171 See /umunéezeero/ {both} 'happiness, joy' < /–néezeera/ 'please s.o., make s.o. happy' under {human emotions} above.
/umutwáaro – imitwáaro/ 'load, pack, burden' < /–twáara/ 'carry on the head'

/umwaambaro – imyaambaro/ {both} 'garment, dress' < /–aambara/ 'get dressed'

• In Kinyarwanda for the most part,172 there are several plural nouns derived from benefactive verbs with -e and which indicate a MANNER or PROCEDURE. [P2rule imi-∆-ir-e or imi-∆-er-e].

/imitwáaro/ {Rundi, Rwanda} 'load, pack, burden' < /–twáara/ 'carry on the head'

/umutó – imutó/ {both} 'small item; [rel adj] one which is small'

/imuganí – imiganí/ {both} 'fable, fairy tale; parable; proverb' < /gana/ 'tell stories of long ago'

/umwóotsi/ 'smoke, fume' < /–ootsa/ 'roast in coals, bake, broil, grill'

• Nouns derived from verbs with -i which indicates a RESULT (umu-∆-i)

/imutó/ {both} 'small item; [rel adj] one which is small'

/umupiíra/ {both} 'ball; [ext] rubber; tire' < Swahili

/umudúga/ {mostly Rundi & Rwanda rarely} 'automobile' < English motorcar

/umusáraáni/ {both} 'latrine, toilet' < Swahili

/umunotá/ {Rwanda} 'minute' < French minute (reanalyzed as if mi-nute)

3.2.2.3. Loans in Group 2

/umupiíra/ {both} 'ball; [ext] rubber; tire' < Swahili

/umudúga/ {mostly Rundi & Rwanda rarely} 'automobile' < English motorcar

/umusáraáni/ {both} 'latrine, toilet' < Swahili

/umunotá/ {Rwanda} 'minute' < French minute (reanalyzed as if mi-nute)

3.2.2.4. The Grammar of Group 2 Nouns

Table 36a. Group 2 Nouns with Consonant Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function</th>
<th>singular example</th>
<th>plural example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>umu-umutí pill</td>
<td>imi-imítí pills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>mu-unó mutí this medicine</td>
<td>mi-inó mití these medicines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>u-uryá this</td>
<td>i-iryá these</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss</td>
<td>wa umutí wa Peetero Peter's medicine</td>
<td>ya imítí ya Peetero Peter medicines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>waa umugezi waa mbere the first river</td>
<td>yaa imigezi yaa mbere the first rivers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss vn</td>
<td>wó umutí wó kwaa mugaa- nga drug from the doctor's</td>
<td>yó imítí yó kwaa mugaanga drugs from the doctor's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mu ku muúnsi per day</td>
<td>mu muúnsi ibiri every other day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-wu- mu muúnsi in a day</td>
<td>-yi- mu muúnsi ibiri in two days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc</td>
<td>-wu- mura wúhuinga? Are you plowing it?</td>
<td>-yi- murayihiinga? Are you plowing them?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj</td>
<td>u- umuriizo munini big tail</td>
<td>i- imuriizo minini big tails</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num</td>
<td>u- umutí umwé one pill</td>
<td>-i- imiti imwé some pills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj</td>
<td>u- umwéenda urameswa the cloth will get washed</td>
<td>-i- imisaambilí irahunze the cranes are running away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>u- uhéze</td>
<td>-i- ihéze</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

172 Juvenal Ndayiragije (pc) cites /imigeénderanire/ {both} 'frequenting, visiting one another,' so this construction is not unknown in Kirundi. Also see the first example /imigeéndere/ BELOW.

173 In Rundi n2-pl derivation from verbs is not productive, but there is /imyiígire/ {Rwanda only} 'study habits, manner of studying' < /–iiga/ 'learn, study.'
### Chapter 3: Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>plural</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rel subj</td>
<td>u- {only Rwanda}</td>
<td>umwáaka utáaha next year</td>
<td>i- {only Rwanda}</td>
<td>imirwano ihítana battles which kill (innocent civilians)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel obj</td>
<td>u- {both}</td>
<td>ko umwiijjimá uhuungá that the darkness flees</td>
<td>i- {both}</td>
<td>imihigo itaandúkanye (that) the promises are different</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto</td>
<td>uu- {Rwanda}</td>
<td>uukarishye {Rwanda} that (medicine) which is bitter</td>
<td>ii- {Rwanda}</td>
<td>iiteemba {Rwanda}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uu- {Rundi}</td>
<td>uwukaríshe {Rundi}</td>
<td>yi- {Rundi}</td>
<td>iyitéemba {Rundi}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass agent</td>
<td>n’úmu-</td>
<td>n’umuyaga by the wind n’ümuryaango and family</td>
<td>n’imi-</td>
<td>n’imiti by drugs n’imiryanga and families</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 36b. Group 2 Nouns with Vowel Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>plural</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>umw-</td>
<td>umwáaka year</td>
<td>imy-</td>
<td>imyáaka years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>mw-</td>
<td>uyu mwáaka this year</td>
<td>my-</td>
<td>iyi myáaka these years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>w-</td>
<td>wáa that</td>
<td>y-</td>
<td>yáa those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss</td>
<td>w’V</td>
<td>umwóotsi w’itaábi cigarette smoke</td>
<td>y’V</td>
<td>imití y’úmutwé headache medicines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss vn</td>
<td>Does not differ from the consonant forms because the vn (ku-, gu-) and loc (mu- and ku-) prefixes always begin with a consonant, thus wó mu, yó ku, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss loc</td>
<td>Does not differ from consonant forms because all numeral roots start with a consonant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>mu</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>mu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mu</td>
<td>mu per year</td>
<td>myeénda</td>
<td>among the clothes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj</td>
<td>-w-</td>
<td>ndawaandika</td>
<td>-y-</td>
<td>muyiíce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj</td>
<td>mw-</td>
<td>umuúnsi wíwiizá nice day</td>
<td>my-</td>
<td>imicó myiizá good character</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num</td>
<td>Does not differ from consonant forms because all numeral roots start with a consonant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj</td>
<td>w-</td>
<td>waanduye it got dirty</td>
<td>y-</td>
<td>yaanduye they got dirty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>w-</td>
<td>wáanduza it contaminating</td>
<td>y-</td>
<td>yáanduza they contaminating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel subj</td>
<td>w- {Rwanda}</td>
<td>umugozi weeraá {Rwanda only} the rope that is white</td>
<td>y-</td>
<td>imigozi yeerá {Rwanda only} the ropes that are white</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel obj</td>
<td>w-</td>
<td>umusózi wiitwá a mountain that is called... {both}</td>
<td>y-</td>
<td>imisózi yiitwá mountains that are called... {both}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto</td>
<td>uw-</td>
<td>uwibuumbye {Rwanda}</td>
<td>iy-</td>
<td>iyibuumbye {Rwanda}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uwibuumyve {Rundi}</td>
<td>that (group) which is united</td>
<td>iy-</td>
<td>iyibuumyve {Rwanda}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass agent</td>
<td>n’úmw-</td>
<td>n’uumwijímá by darkness n’uumwijímá and darkness</td>
<td>n’imi-</td>
<td>n’ümuyanga and families</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 3.2.3. Group 3 – Bantu Classes 5 and 6

**Singular:**

- i- {both} [weak] Bantu class 5 – before consonant stems
- iji-\(^{174}\) {rare} – before consonant stems
- iri- {rare} – before consonant stems
- i ry-\(^{175}\) – before vowel stems

**Plural:**

- ama- [weak] Bantu class 6 – before consonant stems
- am- – before vowel stems

---

\(^{174}\) This prefix occurs frozen in /iijíisho – amáaso/ {both} 'eye.'

\(^{175}\) Such as in /iiryíinyo – améenyo/ {both} 'tooth' and /iiryóóya – amoóýa/ {both} 'feather.' This prefix is also found in demonstratives, possessives, and autonomes.
3.2.3.1. Semantic Characteristics of Group 3

If one is forced to characterize most of this class, it would be the notion of {MORE THAN ONE}. Hence, it encompasses things that come in pairs, items that come in groups or in bulk. This is then extended to MASS nouns and to LIQUIDS.176

- Things which usually come or occur in quantities, but singly as well
  /ibuye – amabuye/ {both} 'stone, rock'177
  /igúfa – amagúfa/ {both}, /ágúfa – amagúfa/ {Rwanda alt} 'bone'
  /isáro – amasáro/ {both} 'pearl' – Note: /urusáro/ {Rundi alt} (JN)
  /hiindú – amahiindú/ {Rwanda} 'hailstone'178
  /iriqi – {both} 'egg' [Note pl: /amagi/ {both} 'egg'; Rundi has the rare prefix iri-]
  /ijaambo/ {both} n3-sg 'word' [Note: /amajaambo/ {Rundi}, /amagaambo/ {Rwanda} 'words'
  /icébe – amacébe/ {both} 'cow udder'
  /ino – amano/ {both} 'toe'
  /iruumbu/ {both} 'swarm (of bees, flies, etc.)'179
  /iryínyo – améényo/ {both} 'tooth; teeth'
  /irooyo – amóoyo/ 'feather'
  /isepfu – amasépfu/ {Rundi} 'hiccup'180
  /isuunzu – amasuunzu/ {both} 'tuft of hair'
  /ivúunjá – amavúunjá/ {both} 'chigger, tick,' Pulex penetrans

- Parts of the body (human or animal) that come in pairs181 (See Table 31)
  /ibabá – amababá/ {both} 'wing'
  /ibéere – amabéere/ {both} 'breast, teat'
  /ibondo – amaboondo/ {both} 'flank, side of the body (between the hip and the lowest rib)'
  /ibahá – amaháhá/ {Rundi} 'lung'182
  /iheémbé – amahéémbé/ {both} 'horn'183
  /ijíisho – amáaso/ {both} 'eye'
  /itáko – amatáko/ {both} 'buttock, rump; thigh'
  /itáma – amatáma/ {both} 'cheek'
  /ivi – amaví/ {both} 'knee'
  /izúuru – amazúuru/ {both} 'nostril'

- Constituent parts of trees or bushes; or their products
  /ibabí – amababí/ {both} 'leaf'
  /iháwá – amahwá/ {both} 'thorn'
  /ishaká – amasaká/ {both} 'sorghum,' Sorghum caudatum
  /ishámi – amashámi/ {both} 'branch'
  /ishaza/ {Rwanda} 'small' pea184
  /ishúurwé – amashúurwé/ {Rundi} 'flower'
  /itaábi – amatáábi/ {both} 'tobacco'

176 We reject the category {items of exceptionally large size} (Dubnova 1984:38), and reserve that for Group 4 which is properly an augmentative group.
177 In southern Bantu languages, e.g., Zulu and Xhosa, many {hard objects} are in this class. In Rundi and Rwanda, only this word and 'bone,' 'pearl,' and 'hailstone' (BELOW) seem to qualify, but also fit the {quantity} designation discussed here. 'Egg' is {hard} only if one considers the shell.
178 The individual hailstone or several (plural); the collective is /urubúra/ {both} n6-sg.
179 This form is singular and indicates a collection; more commonly (see BELOW) such nouns are plural.
180 Rwanda has a homonym, /isepfu/ n5-sg, however its plural /amasépfu/ is in group 3.
181 Both /izosi/ {Rundi} and /ijosi/ {Rwanda} 'neck' illustrate how the semantics of noun class assignment fall apart. It is unclear why this body part is in group 3 since it does not come in pairs or as part of a group.
182 Rwanda has /ìgihahá – ibihahá/ 'lung' in group 4.
183 Its extended meaning, 'tusk,' does not always occur in pairs.
184 Rundi has /ubushaza/ based on the same root, but in group 8.
Chapter 3: Nouns

- **Nouns indicating time (of day, year, season, etc.)**
  - /amakúuka/ (both) 'mid-afternoon' (from about 2 to 3 p.m.) [No singular]
  - /amanywá/ (both) 'daylight hours; daytime' [No singular]
  - /amatárama/ (Rwanda) 'social evening, night spent socially' [No singular]
  - /icí/ (Rundi), /icyí/ (Rwanda) 'dry season' (from the winter solstice to the vernal equinox)
  - /idákiiká–amadákiiká/ (Rwanda) 'minute' (unit of time) [Arb]
  - /jóró–amajóró/ (both) 'night'
  - /itúumbá–amatúumbá/ (both) 'rainy season, autumn' (from the autumnal equinox to the winter solstice)

- **Natural phenomena and substances**
  - /ibára–amabára/ (both) 'color'
  - /ícó/ (both) 'dirt, dirtiness; stain, taint' [No plural]
  - /ijuru–amajuru/ (both) 'sky; heaven'
  - /ishaamba–amashaamba/ (Rundi), /ishyaamba–amasyaamba/ (Rwanda) 'jungle, rain forest'
  - /ísóoko–amasóoko/ (both) 'spring; source'
  - /ivú–amavú/ (both) 'ash, cinders'
  - /izúuba–amazúuba/ (both) 'sun'

- **Collective nouns in the plural that do not have a singular**, sometimes called "PLURALIA TANTUM"186
  - /amaganyá/ (both) 'worries, anxiety'
  - /amagará/ (both) 'strength, energy'
  - /amahóro/ (both) 'peace'
  - /amajyaambere/ (Rundi), /amajyaambere/ (Rwanda) 'progress'
  - /amakuba/ (Rundi), /amakuba/ (Rwanda) 'troubles; misfortune' [col]
  - /amapfá/ (both) 'famine; drought'
  - /amasé/ (both) 'dung (of large animal, e.g., cow, buffalo, hippopotamus, elephant)'
  - /amaziinda/ (both) 'forgetfulness'

- **Liquid or viscous substances which also have only a plural form**
  - /amaté/ (Rundi), /amacáandwé/ (Rwanda) 'saliva, spittle'
  - /amagaanga/ (both) 'urine (of an animal)'
  - /amaráso/ (both) 'blood'
  - /amavúta/ (both) 'butter, grease, fat, (cooking) oil'
  - /amáazi/ (both) 'water'

- **Some nouns within the HUMAN ECOSYSTEM**189
  - /ibuúmba–amabuúmba/ (both) 'clay (as used for earthenware)'
  - /idírishá/ (Rundi), /idírishyá/ (Rwanda) 'window'
  - /ijwí/ (both) 'voice'
  - /iríri/ 'inheritance, heritage, legacy'190
  - /iréembo–amaréembo/ (both) 'portal, doorway' (to the court)
  - /ishuúri/ (both) 'school' [< German Schule]
  - /izíiko–amazíiko/ (both) 'hearth, fireplace'
  - /izína–amazína/ (both) 'name'

---

185 See also /ibuye/ 'stone,' /ihiíndu/ 'hailstone' under {quantity} terms and /amáazi/ under {liquid}.
186 See also /amakúuka/ 'mid-afternoon' and /amanywá/ 'daytime' in {time} words ABOVE.
187 See Dubnova 1984:38 who uses this term.
188 Although these words are not at all related in form or root, they share identical semantic components.
189 There is no clearly definable thread uniting these as opposed to those treated in group 2 (§3.2.2.1).
190 Rwanda has /umuragé/ 'inheritance' which is formed from the same root but in group 2.
• Manufactured items, tools, and implements

\[
i\text{icúmu} – \text{amacúmu} / \{\text{both}\} 'spear, lance'
\]
\[
i\text{kára} – \text{amakára} / \{\text{both}\} 'coal; charcoal'
\]
\[
i\text{raa}go / \{\text{lance}, knife\} (for slaughtering cattle)
\]
\[
i\text{ékuro} – \text{amasékuro} / \{\text{both}\} 'mortar' (for pounding, grinding)
\]
\[
i\text{úka} – \text{amasúka} / \{\text{both}\} 'pick-axe; hoe'
\]
\[
i\text{ára} – \text{amatára} / \{\text{both}\} 'light, lamp'
\]

• A few emotions

\[
i\text{inda} / \{\text{Rundi}\} 'anxiety, preoccupation, worry, grief'
\]
\[
i\text{fá} / \{\text{both}\} 'greed, envy'
\]
\[
i\text{rári} – \text{amarári} / \{\text{Rwanda}\} 'lust, passion'
\]
\[
i\text{равú} / \{\text{both}\} 'sorrow, sadness, grief'
\]
\[
i\text{harí} / \{\text{Rundi}\}, /\text{yarí} / \{\text{Rwanda}\} 'jealousy' – \text{amaharí} / \{\text{both}\} n3-pl 'jealousies, rivalries (between co-

wives of a polygamous husband)'
\]
\[
i\text{óni} / \{\text{both}\} 'modesty, decency; shyness, (sense of) shame'
\]

3.2.3.2. Derivations in Group 3

The majority of derivations in Group 3 come from verb stems. Reduplicated nouns form a subset within this group. Nominalized adjectives that agree with a member of this class do not occur with any great frequency.192

• Verbal nouns with the suffix -\text{a} showing the OBJECT or THEME of an action (i-\Delta-a or ama-\Delta-a)

\[
\text{amaganyá} / \{\text{both}\} 'worries, anxiety' < /\text{ganya}/ 'moan, groan, complain; worry, be anxious'
\]
\[
\text{amajya n'amaaza} / \{\text{Rwanda}\} 'comings and goings' < /\text{jya}/ 'go' /\text{na}/ 'and' /\text{za}/ 'come'
\]
\[
\text{amakeenga} / \{\text{both}\} 'suspicions; suspects' < /\text{kéenga}/ 'distrust, be on one's guard against'
\]
\[
\text{huunga} – \text{amahuunga} / \{\text{both}\} 'flight, fleeing' < /\text{huunga}/ 'flee'
\]
\[
\text{rema} – \text{amarema} / \{\text{both}\} 'creation' < /\text{rema}/ 'create, form, organize'
\]
\[
\text{seenga} – \text{amaseenga} / \{\text{Rwanda}\} 'prayer, entreaty' < /\text{seenga}/ 'worship, pray to' [caus]
\]
\[
\text{íigiisha} / \{\text{both}\} 'teaching, instruction' < /\text{íigiisha}/ 'teach' [v-caus]
\]

• Verbal nouns with the suffix -\text{a} indicating an appropriate TIME for the action (i-\Delta-a)

\[
\text{rima} / \{\text{Rundi}\} 'time for plowing, farming season' < /\text{rima}/ 'dig, hoe, farm, cultivate'
\]
\[
\text{íinga} / \{\text{Rwanda}\} 'time for plowing, farming season' < /\text{híinga}/ 'cultivate, plow'
\]
\[
\text{pfá} / \{\text{both}\} 'death, mortality; death's door, time of one's death' < /\text{pfá}/ 'die, lose one's life'
\]
\[
\text{saaruura} / \{\text{both}\} 'harvest time' < /\text{saaruura}/ 'harvest'
\]
\[
\text{taaha} / \{\text{both}\} 'time for returning; the moment of coming back' < /\text{taaha}/ 'go home, come back'
\]

• Verbal nouns with the suffix -\text{o} showing the OBJECT or INSTRUMENT of an action (i-\Delta-o or ama-\Delta-o)

\[
\text{homóro} / \{\text{both}\} 'peace, tranquility' < /\text{hóra}/ 'cool, become cold; become calm; be silent'
\]
\[
\text{pfúundo} – \text{amapfúundo} / \{\text{both}\} 'knot' < /\text{pfiundika}/ 'tie, make a knot'
\]
\[
\text{sáano} – \text{amasáano} / \{\text{both}\} 'similarity' < /\text{sa ná}/ 'resemble, look like (physically)'
\]
\[
\text{seezerano} – \text{amaseezerano} / \{\text{both}\} 'promise, accord; contract, covenant' < /\text{seezerana}/ 'promise'
\]
\[
\text{amahoro} / \{\text{both}\} 'calamity, disaster; punishment' < /\text{hána}/ 'punish'193
\]
\[
\text{tégeko} – \text{amatégeko} / \{\text{both}\} 'order, command; instruction; law' < /\text{tégeka}/
\]
\[
\text{tuuro} – \text{amatuuro} / \{\text{both}\} 'gift, offering, donation, something bestowed' < /\text{túura}/ 'offer'
\]
\[
\text{tyázao} / \{\text{both}\} 'whetstone, grindstone' < /\text{tyáaza}/ 'whet, sharpen'
\]

---

191 Again, there is no clearly definable thread distinguishing these from those treated in group 2 (§3.2.2.1).

192 In speaking of a collection of rocks /\text{ibuye} – \text{amabuye}/, one could say /\text{iriníni}/ 'the big one,' or of several of them /\text{amaníni}/ 'the big ones.' The only group 3 nominalized adjective we encountered in our research was /\text{itoóto}/ /\text{Rwanda}/ 'youthfulness.'

193 Rwanda also has the singular form /\text{ishyano}/.
Chapter 3: Nouns

• Nouns with the suffix -o derived from BENEFATIVE verbs showing the PLACE associated with an action (i-Δ-ir-o or i-Δ-er-o)

/ibáagiro/ {both} 'butchery, slaughtering place' < /–báaga/ 'butcher'
/bóhero/ {Rundi} 'prison, jail' < /–bóha/ 'tie, bind'
/gúriro/ {Rwanda} 'market (place)'< /–gúra/ 'buy, sell'
/kóraniro/ {both} 'gathering, get-together' < /–kóraná/ 'put together, gather (up)'
/téékeró/ {Rwanda} 'kitchen' < /–tééká/ 'cook'
/tééraniro/ {both} 'meeting, gathering, get-together' < /–téeraná/ 'gather, come together'
/vuuriro/ {both} 'dispensary, pharmacy; hospital' < /–vuura/ 'medicate, cure, treat (a sick person)'

• Forms involving the REDUPLICATION of a noun stem (see §2.5.17)

/amabéerebéere/ {Rundi} 'mother's milk, breast milk (human only)'
/amabwáabwá/ {both} 'udder of a mammal (e.g., bitch or sow)'
/amahenéhene/ {Rundi} 'goat dung' [cf: /–impené/ 'goat'], /amahenéhene/ {Rwanda} 'goat's milk' [cf: /–ihéné/ 'goat']
/amakóbekóbe/ {Rundi} 'goat's milk'
/amataamataama/ {both} 'sheep's milk' [cf: /–intaama/ 'sheep, ewe']

3.2.3.3. Loans in Group 3

/amalalí/ {Rundi} 'illness, sickness' < French maladie
/igaáre – amagaáre/ {both} 'bicycle' < Swahili
/isoqué – amasóqué/ {both} 'market place' < Arb souk
/ishúúri/ {both} 'school' < German Schule
/idákiiká/ {Rwanda} 'minute (unit of time)'
/ifaraangá – amafaraangá/ {both} 'franc; [pl] money' [collective] < French franc
/iliitíro – amaliitíro/ {both} 'liter' < French litre
/itaábi – amataábi/ {both} 'tobacco' < intl; cf: French tabac
/idákiiká – amatárikí/ {both} 'date, day' (of the month)

3.2.3.4. The Grammar of Group 3 Nouns

• The prefix ama- marks the irregular plural of many nouns which have their singular in other classes.

/amafí/ {both} 'fishes; fish' (generic) < /ífi/ n5a-sg
/amafu/ {both} 'flour (mass); types of flour' < /ífu/ n5a-sg 'flour, powder'
/amasábuné/ {Rwanda} 'bars of soap' < /isabuné/ n5a-sg
/amasáhaáni/ {Rundi}, /amasáhaáne/ {Rwanda}, 'plates, dishes' < «isahani, isahane» n5a-sg
/amasaáke/ {both} 'roosters' < /isake/ n5a-sg
/amashí/ {Rundi}, /amashyí/ {Rwanda} 'palms' < /urushí/ {Rundi}, /urushyí/ {Rwanda} n6-sg 'palm, interior part of the hand (including the fingers)'
/amatárikí/ {both} 'dates' < /–ítárikí/ n5a-sg 'date, day' (of the month) (Arb)
/amashí/ {both} 'houses' < /înzu/ n5-sg 'house, residence'
/amara/ {both} n3-pl-ir 'intestines, entrails' < /–urura/ n6-sg 'intestinal'

---

194 Rundi has /akagúriro/ n7-sg 'market' with the same root and derivation, but in a different noun class.
195 Rundi has /igitékeró/ n4-sg 'kitchen' with the same root and derivation, but in a different noun class.
196 Rwanda has /amahérëka/ n3-pl 'mother's milk, breast milk.'
197 Although clearly in the form of a reduplication, there is no known Rundi stem 'kóba' or 'kóbé.'
### Table 37a. Group 3 Nouns with Consonant Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prefix</td>
<td>i-</td>
<td>ibuwe</td>
<td>ama-</td>
<td>amabuye stones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Ø-</td>
<td>zina</td>
<td>ma-</td>
<td>mazina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ri-</td>
<td>rírya</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>aryá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poss</td>
<td>ryaa</td>
<td>izina ryaa Peetero name of Peter ryaa mbere the first</td>
<td>ya</td>
<td>amazína ya Peetero names of Peter yaa yaa mbere the first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poss VN</td>
<td>ryó</td>
<td>izína ryó mu baantu a name among humans</td>
<td>yó</td>
<td>amashírahámwe yó ku kirwa associations of the island</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poss LOC</td>
<td>Does not differ from the consonant forms because the vn (ku-, gu-) and loc (mu- and ku-) prefixes always begin with a consonant, thus ryó mu, yó ku, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loc</td>
<td>Does not differ from consonant forms because all numeral roots start with a consonant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obj</td>
<td>-ri-</td>
<td>ndarigütúura I give it to you -ya-</td>
<td>ndayágutúura I give them to you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adj</td>
<td>ri-</td>
<td>igi rini a big egg</td>
<td>ma-</td>
<td>amáaso manini big eyes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Num</td>
<td>ri-</td>
<td>igi rimwé one egg</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>amágí abiri two eggs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subj</td>
<td>ri-</td>
<td>rígera it reaches</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>ntaagerá they do not reach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part</td>
<td>ri-</td>
<td>rígeze it arriving</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>agize they consisting of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rel Subj</td>
<td>ri-</td>
<td>rikoméye {both} which is important [same for both]</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>amáazi ashuyúshye {Rwanda} amáazi ashushé {Rundi} hot water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rel Obj</td>
<td>ri-</td>
<td>kó risigúura amaráso that it represents blood</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>kó amajái anyúránye that voices are different</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>i-ri-</td>
<td>irikoonje {both} that which is cold</td>
<td>aá- {Rwanda} aya- {Rundi}</td>
<td>aákoonje those which are cold aayaréenga those that exceed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass Agent</td>
<td>n'i-</td>
<td>n'iibéere 'by breast' n'iizúuba 'and the sun'</td>
<td>n'áma- n'ámaferi 'by brakes' n'ámafi 'and fish'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 37b. Group 3 Nouns with Vowel Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prefix</td>
<td>iry-</td>
<td>iryínýo tooth</td>
<td>am-</td>
<td>améenyo teeth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>ry-</td>
<td>ri rínyo this tooth</td>
<td>ma-</td>
<td>aya méenyo these teeth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ry-</td>
<td>ryáa rínyo that tooth</td>
<td>y-</td>
<td>yáa méenyo those teeth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poss</td>
<td>ry'</td>
<td>iryínýo ry'iritéerano artificial tooth</td>
<td>y'</td>
<td>amabuye y’agacíiro precious stones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poss VN</td>
<td>Does not differ from the consonant forms because the vn (ku-, gu-) and loc (mu- and ku-) prefixes always begin with a consonant, thus ryó mu, yó ku, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poss LOC</td>
<td>Does not differ from consonant forms because all numeral roots start with a consonant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loc</td>
<td>Does not differ from consonant forms because all numeral roots start with a consonant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obj</td>
<td>-ry-</td>
<td>bararyúumva they hear</td>
<td>-y-</td>
<td>barayúumva they hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adj</td>
<td>ry-</td>
<td>ijwi ríiizá a nice voice</td>
<td>m-</td>
<td>amaráso meénshi lots of blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Num</td>
<td>Does not differ from consonant forms because all numeral roots start with a consonant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subj</td>
<td>ry-</td>
<td>ryéenda kumera it is almost like</td>
<td>y-</td>
<td>yéenda kumera they are almost like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part</td>
<td>ry-</td>
<td>ryáari it recently being</td>
<td>y-</td>
<td>yugaye they being sealed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rel Subj</td>
<td>ry-</td>
<td>iryoóya ryeréá {both} a white feather</td>
<td>y-</td>
<td>kó amaferi yaciités {both} that the brakes failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rel Obj</td>
<td>ry-</td>
<td>kó ryáabae {both} that it occurred</td>
<td>y- {both}</td>
<td>kó amabutiike yayíiroónse that the stores obtained it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>i-ry-</td>
<td>iryákoomootse one that originated</td>
<td>ay-</td>
<td>ayeéra the ones that are white</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass Agent</td>
<td>n'i(i)-</td>
<td>n'iyiínyo by a tooth n'iyróöya and a feather</td>
<td>n'áma- n'ámaferi by teeth n'ámafi and feathers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.2.4. Group 4 – Bantu Classes 7 and 8

Singular:  
iki- {both} [strong] Bantu class 7 – before voiced consonant stems  
igi- {both} [strong] Bantu class 7 – before voiceless consonant stems  
ic- {Rundi} – before vowel stems  
icy- {Rwanda} – before vowel stems  

Plural:  
ibi- {both} [strong] Bantu class 8 – before consonant stems  
ivy- {Rundi} – before vowel stems  
iby- {Rwanda} – before vowel stems  

3.2.4.1. Semantic Characteristics of Group 4

This group encompasses both human and non-human nouns. A number of characterizations have been discussed or can be determined for this class.¹⁹⁸

- Nouns referring to language, ethnic group, or culture
  
Note: many of these roots can be found in group 1 designating a person of that nationality or ethnicity, or in group 8 designating the country or area associated with the group.¹⁹⁹

/ícáarabó/ {Rundi}, /ícýáarabó/ {Rwanda} 'Arabic (language and culture)'
/icóongerezá/ {Rundi}, /ícýóongerezá/ {Rwanda} 'English (language and culture)'
/ıkídaaği/ {Rundi}, /ıkídaağé/ {Rwanda} 'German (language and culture)'
/ıkigándá/ {both} 'Ganda, Luganda, Ugandan (language and culture)'
/ıkinyarwaanda/ {both} 'Rwanda (language and culture)'
/ıkinyéekoonó̱ng/ {both} 'Congo, Kongo, Congolese' (language and culture)'
/ıkiriünđi/ {both} 'Rundi' (language and culture)'

- Body parts or products (See Table 31)

/ícuúya/ {Rundi}, /ícýuúya/ {Rwanda} 'sweat'
/igikórórwa – ibikórórwa/ {both} 'spittle, sputum'
/igihaánga – ibihaánga/ {both} 'skull, cranium'
/igihaáha – ibihaáha / {Rwanda} 'lung'²⁰⁰
/igikoónjó – ibikoónjó/ {both} 'wrist'
/igipfúkamiro – ibipfúkamiro/ {both} 'knee; knee-cap'
/igipfúünsti – ibipfúünsti/ {both} 'fist'
/igitígü/ {Rundi} 'liver'²⁰¹
/igitíúza – ibitiúza/ {both} 'chest; torso'
/ikigaanza – ibigaanza/ {both} 'hand; wrist'
/ikíreenge – ibíreenge/ {both} 'foot'

- Several manufactured items

/icaánsi – ivyaánsi/ {Rundi}, /icyaánsi – ibyaánsi/ {Rwanda}, 'milk pot or can'
/icúuma – icyúuma/ {Rundi}, /icyúuma – ibyúuma/ {Rwanda} 'knife, blade; iron, metal; [pl] tools, equipment'
/igikáangiisho – ibikáangiisho/ {both} 'scarecrow'
/igikóombe – ibikoómbe/ {both} 'tin container, cup, mug'
/igisaabo – ibisaabo/ {both} 'churn' (made from a hollowed out gourd)
/igiteebo – ibiteebo/ {both} 'basket'

¹⁹⁸ Two proposed by Hurel (1959:105) have not stood the test of time, namely: "objects composed of small units which form a complex whole" and "everything that astonishes, inspires fear, shame, or causes discomfort." All of his examples fit into other domains. Translation by S. J. Harrell.

¹⁹⁹ Thus /umugándá – abagándá/ n1 'Ganda, Ugandan person,' /ubugándá/ n8 {both} 'Uganda (country).'

²⁰⁰ Rundi has /ihahá – amahahá/ n3 'lung' with the same root, but in a different noun class.

²⁰¹ Rwanda /umwíijímá – imyíijímá/ n2 'liver.'
Chapter 3: Nouns

• Certain FLORA (plant names) including their parts or products\(^\text{202}\)
  /i\-kibaando – ibibaando/ \{both\} 'big stick; cane, walking stick; wooden door bolt'
  /i\-kirago – ibirago/ \{both\} 'rush mat, mat'
  /i\-kiremo – ibiremo/ \{both\} 'piece of fabric; animal skin or hide'

  \begin{itemize}
  \item Certain FAUNA (animals, birds, insects, etc.) and their products\(^\text{203}\)
    /i\-ca\-ri – ivya\-ari/ \{Rundi\}, /i\-cy\-a\-ri – ibya\-ari/ \{Rwanda\} 'nest'
    /i\-gi\-here – ibi\-here/ \{Rundi\}, /i\-gi\-he\-ri – ibihe\-ri/ \{Rwanda\} 'bedbug, stinkbug'
    /i\-gi\-ker\-e – ibi\-ker\-e/ \{Rundi\}, /i\-gi\-ker\-i – ibiker\-i/ \{Rwanda\} 'frog, toad, Bufo regularis'
    /i\-gi\-ko\-ko – ibiko\-ko\-ko/ \{both\} 'wild animal, savage beast'
    /i\-gi\-ko\-o\-na – ibiko\-ona/ \{both\} 'crow, raven'
    /i\-gi\-si\-ga – ibi\-si\-ga/ \{both\} 'bird of prey, hawk, large bird'
    /i\-gi\-tu\-ung\-wa – igitu\-ung\-wa/ \{Rundi\} 'small livestock animal'\(^\text{204}\)
    /i\-ki\-bu\-gu – ibibu\-gu/ \{both\} 'tsetse fly; horsefly'
    /i\-ki\-m\-a\-sa – ibi\-ma\-sa/ \{both\} 'bull, male calf (about 4 years old)'
    /i\-ki\-rei\-me – ibire\-me\-vi/ \{both\} 'cooked blood of an ox (coagulated blood)'
    /i\-ki\-ru\-ura – ibiru\-ura/ \{both\} 'wolf; wild leopard'
  \end{itemize}

  \begin{itemize}
  \item Some nouns within the HUMAN ECOSYSTEM\(^\text{205}\)
    /i\-ca\-aha – ivya\-aha/ \{Rundi\}, /i\-cy\-a\-ha – ibya\-aha/ \{Rwanda\} 'fault, sin; felony'
    /i\-cu\-umba – ivyu\-umba/ \{Rundi\}, /i\-cy\-u\-umba – ibyu\-umba/ \{Rwanda\} 'room, chamber'
    /i\-gi\-ho\-me – ibi\-ho\-me/ \{Rundi\}, /i\-gi\-ho\-m\-e – ibih\-om\-e/ \{Rwanda\} 'fortress, palisade'
    /i\-gi\-hu\-gu – ibihu\-gu/ \{both\} 'country, nation'
    /i\-gi\-ko\-ni – ibiko\-ni/ \{both\} 'kitchen'
    /i\-gi\-sa\-ga\-ra – ibisaga\-ra/ \{Rundi\} 'city'\(^\text{206}\)
    /i\-ki\-ge\-ga – ibige\-ga/ \{both\} 'granary, silo, loft for storing grain'
    /i\-ki\-ri\-ari – ibiri\-ari/ \{both\} 'path (seldom-frequented); country road'
  \end{itemize}

  \begin{itemize}
  \item Several items within the natural environment
    /i\-ca\-\-mbu – ivya\-\-mbu/ \{Rundi\}, /i\-cy\-a\-\-mbu – ibya\-\-mbu/ \{Rwanda\} 'ford, passage' < /-aambuka/
    'cross, traverse'
    /i\-co\-\-ndo – ivyo\-\-ndo/ \{Rundi\}, /i\-cyo\-\-ndo – ibyo\-\-ndo/ \{Rwanda\} 'mud, mire'
    /i\-gi\-cu – ibicu/ \{both\} 'cloud'
    /i\-gi\-sha\-a\-nga – ibisha\-a\-nga/ \{both\} 'muddy swamp, marsh'
    /i\-ki\-me/ \{both\} 'dew'
    /i\-ki\-no\-go – ibino\-go/ \{both\} 'hole, hollow'
    /i\-ki\-re\-er\-e – ibire\-er\-e/ \{both\} 'sky; atmosphere, air'
    /i\-ki\-zi\-ba – ibizi\-ba/ \{both\} 'puddle (of dirty water)'
    /i\-ki\-\-ya\-ga – ibily\-ga/ \{both\} 'lake'
  \end{itemize}

\(^{202}\) While the majority of plant names are in group 2 (approx 50%), the second highest concentration (18%) is in this group (See Figure 1 in §3.2.2.1).

\(^{203}\) The majority of animal names are in group 5 (see Figure 2 in §3.2.5.1) with the second highest in group 4.

\(^{204}\) Rwanda has /itúungo – amatu\-ungo/ \(n3\) 'livestock' with the same root, but in a different noun class.

\(^{205}\) Contrast these with those taken up in groups 2 and 3.

\(^{206}\) Cf: Rwanda /umudugúdu/ \(n2\) 'city, town, village.'
Chapter 3: Nouns

• A person considered as outside social norms\(^{207}\)
  /\'gig\'anga\'ange/ 'giant, powerful person' {Rwanda}; 'heroic, brave person' {Rundi}
  /\'gih\'um\'uk\'/ {Rwanda} 'coward'
  /\'gipf\'\'amat\'wi – \'ibipf\'\'amat\'wi/ {both} 'deaf person'
  /\'gik\'\'uri – \'ibik\'\'uri/ {both} 'dwarf'
  /\'gisaa\'am\'/ – /\'bisa\'am\'/ {both} 'thief; glutton'
  /\'gik\'\'\'ab\'\'a/ {Rundi} 'headstrong person; [atr] disobedient, intractable, hard to manage' < /\'g\'\'ab\'/ 'disobey; be disobedient, rebellious, hard to manage'
  /\'kim\'\'\'iga – /\'bim\'\'\'iga/ {both} 'invalid, infirm, cripple, handicapped person'
  /\'kiragi – \'ibiragi/ {both} 'mute, dumb person; [atr] stupid'
  /\'kir\'\'ema – \'ibir\'\'ema/ {both} 'cripple' (person with a disability)

• Names of a few ailments and physical afflictions
  /\'bicur\'\'ane\'/ {both} 'cold, head cold'
  /\'iny\'\'a – /\'bin\'\'ya/ {both} 'cramp, muscle pain, tingling sensation, numbness, pins and needles'
  /\'ig\'\'e\'be – /\'ibie\'be/ {both} 'wound, sore, ulcer'
  /\'i\'i\'\'ya – /\'ibi\'i\'\'ya/ {both} 'plague, epidemic, severe illness'
  /\'ik\'\'\'un\'\'tu – /\'ibit\'\'un\'\'tu/ {both} 'tuberculosis, consumption'
  /\'ik\'\'r\'\'y\'\'i – \'ibir\'\'y\'\'i/ {Rwanda} 'boil, abscess'

• Units of measurement relating to time, place, position
  /\'icy\'\'u\'\'m\'\'\'e\'e\'r\'u – /\'ibiy\'\'u\'\'m\'\'\'e\'e\'r\'u/ {Rwanda} 'week'
  /\'i\'i\'\'he – /\'ibi\'i\'\'he/ {both} 'time, period, era; moment, interval'
  /\'ig\'\'o\'\'ondo – /\'ibit\'\'o\'\'ondo/ {both} 'morning'
  /\'i\'i\'\'ya\'\'ar\'\'ug\'\'uru/ {Rwanda} 'perpendicular height; uphill'
  /\'i\'i\'\'y\'e\'ep\'\'o/ {Rwanda} 'perpendicular depth; downhill'
  /\'i\'i\'\'m\'\'a\'\'y\'\'u – /\'ibi\'i\'\'\'y\'\'a\'\'y\'\'u/ {both} 'slice, piece, fraction' < /\'m\'\'\'a\'\'ny\'\'u\'a\' – /\'ma\'\'ny\'\'u\'a\'/ 'slice, break (up, into pieces), fracture'
  /\'ik\'\'i\'\'\'n\'\'a – \'ibin\'\'na/ {Rundi}, /\'ik\'\'i\'\'\'\'y\'e\'e\'\'j\'\'a\'\'na – \'ibin\'\'j\'\'a\'\'\'j\'\'a\'/ {Rwanda} 'century'

• A few nouns which might be considered NEUTER in gender (see §1.8.2)\(^{208}\)
  /\'i\'i\'\'n\'\'u – /\'ibi\'i\'\'n\'\'u/ {both} 'thing'
  /\'icy\'\'u\'\'r\'\'y\'\'a – /\'ivy\'\'o\'\'k\'\'u\'\'y\'\'a/ {Rundi}, /\'i\'\'c\'\'\'y\'\'o\'\'k\'\'u\'\'y\'\'a – /\'ibiy\'\'o\'\'k\'\'u\'\'y\'\'a/ {Rwanda} 'food' [lit. 'something to eat']

3.2.4.2. Derivations in Group 4

Besides containing nouns derived from verbs as in the other classes discussed so far, group 4 has many nouns from other groups which connotes bigness or exaggeration or even some form of contempt. These drastic differences in meaning (from highly positive to extremely negative) are readily understood by native speakers but require careful analysis of the context on the part of a student.

/\'i\'bik\'\'/ {both} 'huge cows' VS 'ugly cows' [cf: /\'ink\'\'/ n5-sg/pl 'cow']
/\'ik\'\'i\'\'g\'e\'r\'e/ {both} 'big woman' VS 'stupid woman' [cf: /\'umug\'e\'r\'e/ n1 'woman, female; wife']

• Amplicative or augmentative meaning of nouns in other classes.
  /\'i\'c\'\'\'a\'\'n\'\'a – /\'icy\'\'a\'\'n\'\'a/ {Rundi}, /\'icy\'\'a\'\'n\'\'a – /\'icy\'\'a\'\'n\'\'a/ {Rwanda} 'pup, faun, colt, cub (young of some large animals)' [cf: /\'um\'w\'a\'na/ 'baby, infant' (n1), /\'iny\'a\'na/ 'calf' (n5)]
  /\'i\'g\'\'i\'\'\'s\'\'e\'r\'e/ 'whopper, solidly built young man' [cf: /\'um\'u\'s\'o\'\'r\'e/ n1 'young man, pubescent youth']
  /\'ig\'\'i\'\'\'s\'o\'\'i\'/ {both} 'very large hill, mountain,' /\'ibis\'o\'\'i/ 'mountain range' [cf: /\'um\'u\'s\'o\'z\'i/ n2 'hill']
  /\'ik\'i\'\'b\'\'u\'\'e/ {both} 'boulder, very large rock' [cf: /\'ibu\'e/ n3 'stone']
  /\'ik\'i\'\'v\'u\'\'a/ {both} 'deluge, downpour' [cf: /\'m\'\'v\'u\'r\'a/ n5 'rain']

\(^{207}\) These differ from the [pejorative] or [augmentative] derivations taken up in the next section in that they are not derived from counterparts in other noun classes.

\(^{208}\) Some authors consider this the closest thing to a neuter class in Bantu, e.g., Overdulve et al. 1975:88, Hands 1952:44. This is certainly so in terms of the GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION of group 4 (see §3.2.4.4 BELOW), but not generally so semantically.
• Derogatory, insulting, or pejorative meaning of nouns in other classes. 

/ibinyábwooba/ {both} 'extreme cowards' [cf: /ubwóoba/ n8 'fear, cowardice' – /umunyábwooba/ n1 'coward'] 

/ikigábo/ {both} 'clumsy man; rebellious man' [cf: /umugábo/ n1 'man, adult male; husband'] 

/ibyeénda/ {Rwanda} 'pile of messy clothing' [cf: /umweénda/ n2 'cloth (piece of cloth); clothing']

• Nouns involving the reduplication of the stem (see §2.5.17).

/ibinéezánéezá/ [R+R] {Rwanda} 'glee, delight' – cf: /akaáneezá/ n7 'happiness, gladness'

/igitaábítáábi/ [B+M] {both} 'tobacco leaf rib (used when one runs out of tobacco)' – cf: /itaábi/ n3 'tobacco'

/ikiményaménya/ {A+T} {Rundi}, /ikiményíményi/ {Rwanda} 'evidence, proof, clear sign'

/ikinyúgunyúgu/ {R+R} {both} 'butterfly'

• Nouns derived from verbs with -a (igi-Á-a).

/igisoonga/ {Rundi} 'tip, point.' {Rwanda} 'sharpened piece of wood, arrow' [Rrule] < /– soonga/ 'be pointed; come to a point'

/igitaángaaaza/ [both] 'miracle, s.t. wonderful, amazing event' [P2rule] < /– taangaaza/ 'astonish, surprise' [cf: /– taangaara/ 'marvel, be astonished']

/ikibyímba/ {Rwanda} 'swelling' < /– byímba/ 'swell'

/ikiméra – ibiméra/ {both} 'plant, vegetation' [Arule] < /– mera/ 'sprout, germinate'

• Nouns derived from passive verbs -w- + -a (igi-Á-w-a).

/ibyáambarwa/ n4-pl {Rwanda} 'clothing' < /– aambara/ 'wear, put on (clothing)'

/igikorwá – ibikorwá/ {both} 'work, product < /– kóra/ work, do, perform; touch; make' + -w-

/igituúngwa – ibituúngwa/ {Rundi} 'small livestock animal' < /– túnga/ 'have a lot of cows, possess animals or goods'

/ikinyóóbwá – ibinyóóbwá/ {both} 'drink, beverage' < /– nyóówá/ 'drink'

/ikiremwá – ibiremwá/ {both} 'creature' < /– remá/ 'create; form, organize'

• Nouns derived from the PALATALIZED (perfect) stems of verbs with -yi (igi-Á-yi).

/ibisazi/ [Rrule] n4-pl {both} 'lunacy, madness' < /– sara/ 'be mad'

/ikigúzi/ {Arule} {Rundi}, /ikigúzi/ {Erule} {Rwanda} 'price, cost, value' < /– gúra/ 'buy, sell'

• Nouns derived from verbs with -o (igi-Á-o)

/ibiyiiríingiro/ {Rwanda} n4-pl 'hopes; trust confidence' < /– jiriingira/ 'trust, hope in, rely on'

/iciirore – iviyiirore/ {Rundi} 'mirror' < /– irora/ 'look at oneself'

/icyiízeere/ {Rwanda} 'hope' < /– íizeera/ 'hope, count on, expect s.t. from s.o.'

/igíci – ibícié/ {both} 'piece, part, fraction, division' < /– cá/ 'cut, sever, slice'

/igikomére – ibikomére/ {both} 'wound, injury, lesion' < /– kómeraka/ 'be wounded'

/igiteérane – ibiteérane/ {both} 'meeting, gathering' < /– térana/ 'gather, come together'

/ikivaánge – ibikaánge/ {both} 'mixing, mixture; [ext] mulatto, person of mixed race' < /– váangá/ 'mix'

• Nouns derived from the reduplication of the monosyllabic root /– cá/ tone appears on the final syllable. Nevertheless, as can be seen in the other examples, the tonality of these particular derivations comes on the second mora of the root.

---

209 But in another context it can mean 'hulk, hunk, solidly built man.'

210 This same word can also mean 'large clothes (i.e., made for big people).'

211 Since this word is based upon the monosyllabic root /– cá/ tone appears on the final syllable. Nevertheless, as can be seen in the other examples, the tonality of these particular derivations comes on the second mora of the root.
Chapter 3: Nouns

\[\text{/ikirúundo/} \text{ (both)} 'pile, heap, mass' < /–ruunda/ 'pile up or together, amass'\]
\[\text{/ikiziriko – ibiziriko/} \text{(both)} 'hobble, shackle, fetter, strap, bond' < /–zirik/ 'attach s.t. with a rope'\]

- Nouns derived from benefactive verbs with -o (igi-∆-ir-o)
  \[\text{/icúubahiro – ivyúubahiro/} \text{(Rundi), /icyúubahiro – ibyúubahiro/} \text{(Rwanda)} 'respect, esteem, dignity, honor, consideration' < /–úubaha/ 'respect'\]
  \[\text{/igicáaniro – ibicáaniro/} \text{(both)} 'hearth, fireplace; altar' < /–cáana/ 'kindle, light, build a fire'\]
  \[\text{/igikúundiro – ibikúundiro/} \text{(both)} 'charm, loveliness; favor' < /–kúunda/ 'love'\]
  \[\text{/igitéekero/} \text{(Rundi)} 'kitchen' \[212\] < /–téeka/ 'cook'\]

3.2.4.3. Loans in Group 4

The only loanwords in this group "sound" like they belong in this class, i.e., they begin with syllables such as [ki], [gi], or [bi] and are reinterpreted as if those sounds were a classificatory prefix.

\[\text{/ibiro/} \text{(both)} 'office, bureau' < French bureau [Note plural form with singular meaning]\]
\[\text{/ibitaro/} \text{(both)} 'hospitals, dispensaries' < French hôpital [Note plural form can have a singular meaning]\]
\[\text{/icáayi – ivyáayi/} \text{(Rundi), /icyáayi – ibyáayi/} \text{(Rwanda)} 'tea; tea plant' < Indic chaay < Chinese chaa\]
\[\text{/igitabo – ibitabo/} \text{(both)} 'book' < Arb kitab\]
\[\text{/ikiniíni – ibiniíni/} \text{(both)} 'quinine, Quinquina; pill, medicine tablet'}< French quinine\]
\[\text{/ikiró – ibiró/} \text{(both)} 'kilo' < French kilo\]

3.2.4.4. The Grammar of Group 4 Nouns

- This class corresponds with the NEUTER GENDER of English it or German das.

In Kinyarwanda and Kirundi, this construction is used if there is no clearcut reference to a particular noun class. However, when used in this sense, plural agreement (bi-) is more usual than the singular (ki-).

\[\text{/ni vyiizá/} \text{(Rundi), /ni byiizá/} \text{(Rwanda)} 'That's good'; 'It's ok!'\]
\[\text{/nivyó/} \text{(Rundi), /nibyó/} \text{(Rwanda)} 'That's it!'\]
\[\text{/bizooba vyiizá/} \text{(Rundi), /bizaaba byiizá/} \text{(Rwanda)} 'That would be good!'\]
\[\text{/ndabíizi/} \text{(both)} 'I know it.'\]
\[\text{/simbíizi/} \text{(Rundi), /simbíizi/} \text{(Rwanda)} 'I don't know it.'\]
\[\text{/ni bíte/} \text{(both)} 'What's going on?, What happened?'\]

- When the subject consists of two or more nouns in different classes, n4-pl is commonly used.
  \[\text{/ibishyíimbo n'ámafí biri mu sahaane/} \text{(Rwanda)} 'Beans and fish are in the dish.'\]

- Group 4 can have ADVERBIAL force.

When a short form of the singular prefix is added to a noun stem, it conveys the qualities specified by that noun. Such constructions appear to be more common in Kinyarwanda than in Kirundi.

\[\text{/bibí/} \text{(both)} 'badly, poorly, not in a good manner'\]
\[\text{/kizuúngu/} \text{(both)} 'like a white person; in a European way'\]
\[\text{/cyáana/} \text{(Rwanda)} 'childishly, like a child'\]
\[\text{/gicutí/} \text{(Rwanda)} 'in a friendly way or manner'\]
\[\text{/kigabo/} \text{(both)} 'manfully, like a man; [atr] manly, virile' – Rundi is usually /rugabo/ \text{(both)}\]
\[\text{/kigoré/} \text{(both)} 'womanly, like a woman; [atr] feminine' – Rundi is usually /rugoré/ \text{(both)}\]

\[\text{\[212\] Rwanda has /itéekero/ \text{n3-sg} 'kitchen' with the same root and derivation, but in a different noun class.\]
Table 38a. Group 4 Nouns with Consonant Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>plural</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>iki-</td>
<td>ikiintu thing</td>
<td>ibi-</td>
<td>ibiintu things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>igi-</td>
<td>igikóona crow</td>
<td></td>
<td>ibikóona crows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>ki-</td>
<td>kiintu thing</td>
<td>bi-</td>
<td>biintu things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gi-</td>
<td>gikóona crow</td>
<td></td>
<td>bikoona crows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>ki-</td>
<td>kirya this</td>
<td>bi-</td>
<td>birya these</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss</td>
<td>caa</td>
<td>ikiiza ca Sidá</td>
<td>vyaa</td>
<td>ibitaro vyaa mbere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Rundi)</td>
<td>the AIDS epidemic</td>
<td>(Rundi)</td>
<td>the first hospital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cyaa</td>
<td>igisebe cyaa Peetero</td>
<td>byaa</td>
<td>ibitsike byaa Peetero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Rwanda)</td>
<td>Peter's wound</td>
<td>(Rwanda)</td>
<td>Peter's eyebrows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss vn</td>
<td>có</td>
<td>gituntu co mu mahaha</td>
<td>vyó</td>
<td>ibiindi vyó kugeenzuura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss loc</td>
<td>(Rundi)</td>
<td>'tuberculosis of the lungs'</td>
<td>(Rundi)</td>
<td>other things for observing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cyó</td>
<td>igitabo cyo gusoma</td>
<td>byó</td>
<td>ibiintu byó muu nzu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Rwanda)</td>
<td>a book to read</td>
<td>(Rwanda)</td>
<td>things (found) in the house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>ku gitabo on the book</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>ku bitabo on the books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mu</td>
<td>mu gitabo in the book</td>
<td>mu</td>
<td>mu bitabo in the books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj</td>
<td>-ki-</td>
<td>ndakiguha</td>
<td>-bi-</td>
<td>kubikubaganya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-gi-</td>
<td>I'll give it to you</td>
<td></td>
<td>to disturb them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>turagisaangira</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj</td>
<td>ki-</td>
<td>igihúgu kibi</td>
<td>bi-</td>
<td>ibihúgu bibí bad countries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gi-</td>
<td>ikintu gikurú</td>
<td></td>
<td>ibiti bikuru full-grown trees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num</td>
<td>ki-</td>
<td>igitabo kimwé</td>
<td>bi-</td>
<td>ibitabo bibiri two books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj</td>
<td>ki-</td>
<td>kiraménetse</td>
<td>bi-</td>
<td>ibitabo bibi ku méezá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gi-</td>
<td>it broke</td>
<td></td>
<td>the books are on the table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>ki-</td>
<td>kikiri</td>
<td>bi-</td>
<td>bikiri they still being</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gi-</td>
<td>it should be</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel subj</td>
<td>rel obj</td>
<td></td>
<td>bi-</td>
<td>bisaanzwé that is usual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto</td>
<td>iki-</td>
<td>kiharirwa</td>
<td>ibi-</td>
<td>ibitéerasóni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>igi-</td>
<td>that is counted</td>
<td></td>
<td>those which cause disgrace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass agent</td>
<td>n'iki-</td>
<td>n'ikireenge</td>
<td>n'ibi-</td>
<td>n'ibihúgu by countries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conj</td>
<td>n'igi-</td>
<td>n'igiireenge by a foot</td>
<td>n'ibi-</td>
<td>n'ibihúgu and countries</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 38b. Group 4 Nouns with Vowel Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>plural</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>ic-</td>
<td>icúuma</td>
<td>ivy-</td>
<td>ivyúuma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>icy-</td>
<td>icyúuma</td>
<td>by-</td>
<td>ibyúuma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>c- icy-</td>
<td>cúuma</td>
<td>vy-</td>
<td>vyúuma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>icyúuma</td>
<td>by-</td>
<td>byúuma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>c- icy-</td>
<td>cáa</td>
<td>vy-</td>
<td>vyáa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cyáa</td>
<td>by-</td>
<td>byáa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss</td>
<td>c'- icy'-</td>
<td>mu gihe</td>
<td>vy'-</td>
<td>ibitágu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>at the</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>vy'biryó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>time of</td>
<td></td>
<td>right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>the</td>
<td></td>
<td>shoulders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>colonial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>period</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss vn</td>
<td></td>
<td>Does not differ from consonant forms</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss loc</td>
<td></td>
<td>because the vn (ku, gu-) and loc (mu- and ku-) prefixes always begin with a consonant, thus cyó mu, có ku, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>ku caámbu</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>ku vyaátsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mu</td>
<td>ku cyáambu</td>
<td>mu</td>
<td>ku byaátsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>on the grass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td>in the grass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj</td>
<td>-c- {Rundi}</td>
<td>twacaanditse</td>
<td>-vy-</td>
<td>navyíhoze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-cy- {Rwanda}</td>
<td>we recently wrote it</td>
<td>-by-</td>
<td>nabyíhozerere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td></td>
<td>he should be silent about it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td></td>
<td>he should be silent about it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj</td>
<td>c- {Rundi}</td>
<td>icaámbarwa</td>
<td>vy-</td>
<td>ibigaáníiro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cy- {Rwanda}</td>
<td>ciizá</td>
<td>by-</td>
<td>vyiizá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td></td>
<td>a good conversation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rwanda} good clothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num</td>
<td></td>
<td>Does not differ from consonant forms because all numeral roots start with a consonant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj</td>
<td>c- {Rundi}</td>
<td>coorohé</td>
<td>vy-</td>
<td>ntvívyná</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cy- {Rwanda}</td>
<td>it should be supple</td>
<td>by-</td>
<td>byaaraangira</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td></td>
<td>if it could be achieved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>it (always) damages</td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>c- V {Rundi}</td>
<td>cáonza</td>
<td>vy-</td>
<td>vyóonsa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cy- V {Rwanda}</td>
<td>cyóonsa</td>
<td>by-</td>
<td>byóonsa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rwanda} they breast feeding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rwanda} they breast feeding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel subj = rel obj (not different)</td>
<td>c- {Rundi}</td>
<td>cuuzúye</td>
<td>vy-</td>
<td>vyuužúye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cy- {Rwanda}</td>
<td>which is full</td>
<td>by-</td>
<td>ibiti byuumyé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rwanda} dry wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>full</td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rwanda} which are full</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rwanda} which supplement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto</td>
<td>ic- {Rundi}</td>
<td>icóompa</td>
<td>ivy-</td>
<td>ivyeérekeye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>icy- {Rwanda}</td>
<td>I wish that [lit. it would give me]</td>
<td>iby-</td>
<td>those which are related to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td></td>
<td>ibyúngaanira</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rwanda} those which supplement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass agent conj</td>
<td>n'ic- {Rundi}</td>
<td>n'icáamwa</td>
<td>n'ivy-</td>
<td>n'ivyáamwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>n'icy- {Rwanda}</td>
<td>by the fruit</td>
<td>n'iby-</td>
<td>by the fruits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td></td>
<td>{Rwanda} and knives</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.2.5. Group 5 – Bantu Classes 9 and 10

The singular and plural forms of this class are homographic and homophonic. However, the grammar surrounding either in context will clearly reveal the underlying number intended: singulars have i- or y- agreement forms while plurals have zi- or z-.

Singular:  
- in- {both} [weak] Bantu class 9 – before non-labial consonant stems
- im- {both} – before labial consonant stems
- iny- {both} – before vowels [See Table 39d]
- inz- {both} – replacing the semivowel y

Plural:  
- in-213 {both} [strong] Bantu class 10 – before non-labial consonant stems
- im- {both} – before labial consonant stems
- iny- {both} – before vowels [See Table 39d]
- inz- {both} – replacing the semivowel y

3.2.5.1. Semantic Characteristics of Group 5

This group consists of both personal and non-personal nouns. Grammarians and textbook authors have generalized that most animal names are in Group 5 (Bantu class 9). Taking the reasonably comprehensive list of animal names in the back of the Kirundi dictionary (Rodegem 1970:630–635), we can see that slightly more than half (51.5%) are indeed in Group 5. The remainder are spread across groups 2 through 8, with the biggest concentrations in Group 4 (almost 20%) and then Group 2 (11.5%).

**Figure 2. Distribution of Animal Names in Kirundi**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>n2</th>
<th>n3</th>
<th>n4</th>
<th>n5</th>
<th>n6</th>
<th>n7</th>
<th>n8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FAUNA</td>
<td>11.5</td>
<td>03.5</td>
<td>19.6</td>
<td>51.5</td>
<td>07.7</td>
<td>06.4</td>
<td>02.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Names of FAUNA (animals, insects, birds, reptiles, etc.).
  /imbarágasa – imbarágasa/ 'flea, chigger,' *Pullex penetrans*
  /imbeba – imbeba/ {both} 'mouse, rat'
  /imbogó – imbogó/ {both} 'buffalo, *Syncerus caffer*'
  /imbwá – imbwá/ {both} 'dog'
  /indá – indá/ {both} 'louse; [pl] lice'
  /imfyisi – imfyisi/ {Rundi}, /impyisi – impyisi/ {Rwanda} 'jackal, hyena'
  /ingoona – ingoona/ {both} 'crocodile, *Crocodylus niloticus*'
  /ingúha – ingúha/ {both} 'tick, parasite (that attacks cattle)' [Alt: *urugúha* n6]

213 It is this plural prefix which is irregular and weak. Agreement forms have the prefix zi-, which is regular among Bantu languages and strong. See §3.2.6 for a discussion of how iny- and inz- differ between n5 and n6.
Chapter 3: Nouns

• Designations of people implying such extremes as dignity or honor as opposed to disdain or contempt.214

• Abstract notions such as customs, qualities, faults or feelings.

• Animal or plant products, including foodstuffs.

• The HUMAN ECOSYSTEM including household implements, objects of everyday use.

214 This category includes someone with a physical affliction. Other examples include: /indyayary/ {both} 'miser; hypocrit,' /indashimy/ {both} 'ingrate,' /impumyi/ {both} 'blind person' among the verb derivations below.

215 Rwanda this is /urubuto – imbuto/ n6.
• The natural environment including several meteorological terms.

/imvúra/ {both} 'rain' [collective, no plural]
/ingwá – ingwá/ {both} 'chalk, white clay; kaolin'
/inkubá – inkubá/ {both} 'thunder'
/inyaanja – inyaanja/ {both} 'sea, ocean'
/inyényeeri – inyényeeri/ {Rundi}, /inyényeeri – inyényeeri/ {Rwanda} 'star'
/isi – amasi/ {both} n5a 'land, earth, world'
/isóoko – amasóoko/ {both} n5a 'spring; fountain; source'

• A few body parts or afflictions.

/inda – inda/ {both} 'belly, abdomen'
/indurwe – indurwe/ {both} 'bile'
/ingiingo – ingiingo/ {both} 'joint, knuckle'
/inkókorá – inkókorá/ {both} 'elbow'
/inkovú – inkovú/ {both} 'scar, gash'
/intóboro – intóboro/ {both} 'pore'
/inyoónjo – inyoónjo/ {Rwanda} 'bump, hump'
/isepfú – amasepfú/ {Rwanda} 'hiccup'
/iseséme – amaseséme/ {both} n5a 'nausea'

3.2.5.2. Derivations in Group 5

The vast majority of derivations in Group 5 come from verb stems.

• Nouns derived from verbs with -o showing the PRODUCT, INSTRUMENT, or a MEANS of doing the action (iN-∆-o) with root tonality [R].

/imbyíno/ {Rwanda} 'song; dance' < /–byína/ 'dance and sing, exult'
/imvúgo/ {both} 'language' < /–vúga/ 'speak'
/indíriimbo/ {both} 'anthem, hymn' < /–ríriimba/ 'sing'
/impéro/ {Rundi} 'finish, end' < /–héra/ 'finish, be at an end'
/indahiro/ {both} 'oath, vow' < /–rahra/ 'swear, make an oath'
/indero/ {both} 'education' < /–rema/ 'raise, bring up; educate'
/indóoto/ {both} 'dream, revelation' < /–róota/ 'dream'
/inyándiko/ {both} 'writing' < /–aandika/ 'write'

• Nouns derived from verbs with the suffix -ano (iN-∆-ano) with root tonality [R]

/impáano/ {both} 'gift (when nothing is expected in return), donation' < /–há/ 'give'
/impoongano/ {both} 'bribe; atonement, propitiation' < /–hoonga/ 'atone, make amends'
/imvaano/ {Rundi} 'origin, issue, cause, reason' < /–va/ 'leave, exit, come out of'
/indagano/ {both} 'promise, vow' < /–raga/ 'promise; bequeath, leave (e.g., in a will)'

• Nouns derived from verbs with -a (iN-∆-a) with varying tonal rules.

/intáshiimá/ {Rundi} (JN), /indáshiimá/ {Rwanda} 'ingrate' < /–ta-/'not' + /–shiima/ 'praise; thank'
[Note the use of the negative A+P]
/indwáara/ {both} 'illness, sickness' < /–rwáara/ 'be sick, feel ill, ache' [R]
/indyáarya/ {both} 'miser, skinflint; hypocrit' (one who pretends compassion) < /–ryaarya/ 'be indifferent, frosty; be a hypocrit' [R]

• Nouns derived from verbs with -a (iN-∆-a) with varying tonal rules.

/intáshiimá/ {Rundi} (JN), /indáshiimá/ {Rwanda} 'ingrate' < /–ta-/'not' + /–shiima/ 'praise; thank'
[Note the use of the negative A+P]
/indwáara/ {both} 'illness, sickness' < /–rwáara/ 'be sick, feel ill, ache' [R]
/indyáarya/ {both} 'miser, skinflint; hypocrit' (one who pretends compassion) < /–ryaarya/ 'be indifferent, frosty; be a hypocrit' [R]

216 There are several others among the derivations below, e.g., /indwáara/ {both} 'illness,' /inkóróra/ {both} 'cough,' and /imvúne/ {both} 'dislocation.'
217 Also /urugiingo – ingiingo/ {both} n6 'joint, articulation.'
218 Rundi has a homonym, /isepfú/ n3-sg, however note that both have the plural /amasépfú/.
219 Rundi has /uruvyíno – imvyíno/ n6.
220 This suffix has nothing to do with the reciprocal augment -an-.
Chapter 3: Nouns

- Nouns derived from verbs with -e (iN-∆-e) with P2 tonality.
  
  /imbabáre/ (both) 'gravely-ill person; poor or destitute person' < /-báara/ 'suffer, be hurt'
  /imbohé – imbohé/ (both) 'prisoner, (bound) captive' < /-bóha/ v-tr 'tie, bind'
  /imvuné – imvuné/ (both) 'dislocation, fracture; sprain' < /-vúna/ v-tr 'break'
  /incuúke/ (Rwanda) 'weaned baby' < /-cuúka/ 'be weaned'

- Nouns derived from perfective, causative, or factitive verbs with -yi (iN-∆-yi).
  
  /imbabázi – imbabázi/ (both) 'forgiveness, pardon, mercy' < /-bábara/ 'suffer, be hurt, be sad' [P2]
  /impumyi – impumyi/ (both) 'blind person' < /-huma/ 'be blind, become blind' [R]
  /impunzi/ (both) 'runaway, refugee, deserter' < /-huunga/ 'flee (from); run away' [R]
  /inkúrikizi – inkúrikizi/ (both) 'consequence, reaction' < /-kúrikira/ 'follow, come after' [R]

- Passive nouns derived from verbs with the passive suffix (iN-∆-w-a).
  
  /imfuúngurwa/ (Rundi) 'food, nourishment' < /-fuungura/ 'eat, have s.t. to eat;' [P2]
  /imfuúngwa/ (Rwanda) 'prisoner' < /-fuunga/ v-tr 'close, shut; [ext] lock s.o. up, imprison' [P2]
  /intumwá/ (both) 'messenger, envoy' < /-túma/ 'send' [P2, lit. 'one who is sent']

3.2.5.3. Loans in Group 5 (See 3.2.5a below)

/indeége – indeége/ (both) 'airplane' < Swahili
/indimú – indimú/ (both) 'lemon, citric fruit' < Swahili
/inguvu / (Rundi), /ingufú/ (Rwanda) 'strength, vigor; force, energy, power' < Swahili

Note: the majority of loans receive the simple i- prefix (n5a) or no prefix at all (n5b).

3.2.5.4. The Grammar of Group 5 Nouns

Apart from the class prefix and reduced form, the affixes in this table apply to this group as well as its two subgroups, n5a and n5b.

Table 39a. Group 5 Nouns with Consonant Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function</th>
<th>singular example</th>
<th>plural example</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>in- indagú prophecy</td>
<td>in- indagú prophecies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>im- imvá tomb</td>
<td>im- imvá</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>n- iyi ndagú this prophecy</td>
<td>n- izi ndagú these prophecies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>m- iyi mvá this tomb</td>
<td>m- izi mvá these tombs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>i- iryá this</td>
<td>zi- ziryá these</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss</td>
<td>ya incuti ya Peetero Peter's friend</td>
<td>zaa incuti zaa Peetero Peter's friends</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss vn</td>
<td>yó inzu yo mu mugí {Rwanda} a house in the city</td>
<td>zó inzu zó mu mugí {Rwanda} houses in the city</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss loc</td>
<td>yó inzu yo mu mugí {Rwanda} a house in the city</td>
<td>zó inzu zó mu mugí {Rwanda} houses in the city</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc</td>
<td>kuu muu kuu máana in God</td>
<td>kuu muu in regions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj</td>
<td>-yi- abayiroonka those who get it</td>
<td>-zi- kuziha to give to them</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj</td>
<td>n- inkóno yaawe ntóoyá your small pot</td>
<td>n- inkóno zaawe ntóoyá your small pots</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num</td>
<td>i- inzovu imwé one elephant</td>
<td>e- inzovu ebyiri two elephants</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj</td>
<td>i- imvúra iragüuye it is raining</td>
<td>zi- imbwa ziraryá the dogs are eating</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>i- imvúra igwá the rain falling</td>
<td>zi- inká zigaanga cows urinating</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel subj</td>
<td>i- indwaara ikóme yaawe ntóoyá one serious illness</td>
<td>zi- ingarúka zikoméye serious consequences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 3: Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>rel obj</th>
<th>i-</th>
<th>kó impumyi izá</th>
<th>that the blind man is coming</th>
<th>zi-</th>
<th>kó impumyi ziiizá</th>
<th>that the blind people are coming</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>auto</td>
<td>ii-</td>
<td>itarıyaana (Rwanda)</td>
<td>one that does not bite</td>
<td>iizi-</td>
<td>iitäryaaná (both)</td>
<td>ones that do not bite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rundi</td>
<td>iy-</td>
<td>iyizìiyìmyve (Rundi)</td>
<td>one that is expensive</td>
<td>iizi-</td>
<td>izìiìmyye (Rundi)</td>
<td>ones that are expensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass agent conj</td>
<td>n’i(i)-</td>
<td>n’inyináama by the council</td>
<td>n’i(i)-</td>
<td>n’iinkà by cows</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>n’inzhara and hunger</td>
<td></td>
<td>n’intaama and sheep</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 39b. Group 5 Nouns with Vowel Stems or /y/

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>plural</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>iny-</td>
<td>inyíbano stolen item</td>
<td>iny-</td>
<td>inyíbano fenced goods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>inz-</td>
<td>inzogá alcoholic beverage</td>
<td>inz-</td>
<td>inzogá alcoholic beverages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>ny-</td>
<td>iyi nyíbano this stolen item</td>
<td>ny-</td>
<td>izi nyíbano these fenced goods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nz-</td>
<td>iyi nzogá this beer</td>
<td>nz-</td>
<td>izi nzogá these beers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>y-</td>
<td>yáa that</td>
<td>z-</td>
<td>záa those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss</td>
<td>y’</td>
<td>inkóno y’ítaábi tobacco pipe</td>
<td>z’</td>
<td>inshutí z’amagará inseparable friends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss vn</td>
<td>y’</td>
<td>inkóno y’ítaábi tobacco pipe</td>
<td>z’</td>
<td>inshutí z’amagará inseparable friends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss loc</td>
<td>Does not differ from the consonant forms because the vn (ku-, gu-) and loc (mu- and ku-) prefixes always begin with a consonant, thus yó mu, zó ku, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>kuu nzíra by the road</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>kuu nzogá from the beers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mu</td>
<td>muu nzíra on the road</td>
<td>mu</td>
<td>muu nzogá into the beers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj</td>
<td>-y-</td>
<td>nayaanditse I wrote it</td>
<td>-z-</td>
<td>bakaziìiteera they are implanted with them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj</td>
<td>ny-</td>
<td>inyama nyinshi a lot of meat</td>
<td>ny-</td>
<td>inká nyinshi a lot of cows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nz-</td>
<td>inká nzíizá a beautiful cow</td>
<td>nz-</td>
<td>inká nzizíizá beautiful cows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num</td>
<td>Does not differ from consonant forms because all numeral roots start with a consonant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj</td>
<td>y-</td>
<td>imbwa yaasaze the dog went mad</td>
<td>z-</td>
<td>imbwa zaasaze the dogs went mad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>y-</td>
<td>indwáara yaandukira a disease being contagious</td>
<td>z-</td>
<td>indwáara zaandukira diseases being contagious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel subj (not different)</td>
<td>y-</td>
<td>inzu yuuzúye (both) a recently completed house [no special form in Rwanda]</td>
<td>z-</td>
<td>inzu zuzúye (both) recently completed houses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel obj</td>
<td>y-</td>
<td>ko indwáara yaandukira that a disease is contagious</td>
<td>z-</td>
<td>ko indwáara zaandukira that diseases are contagious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto</td>
<td>iy-</td>
<td>iyaändukira that which is contagious</td>
<td>iz-</td>
<td>izáändukira those which are contagious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass agent conj</td>
<td>n’i(i)-</td>
<td>n’inyináangamugayo by a person with integrity</td>
<td>n’i(i)-</td>
<td>n’inyinýangamugayo by people with integrity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>n’inzhara and hunger</td>
<td></td>
<td>n’intaama and sheep</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2.5a. Group 5a – No Nasal in the Prefix

The first subgroup has the simple singular prefix i- (rather than in-). Most often the plural is irregular (ama- from group 3). The following kinds of words are found in this subclass.

- Roots that begin with a nasal [m, n] or a fricative [f, s, sh, h].
  /ifí – amafí/ {both} 'fish' [irreg 5-3]
  /ifu – amafú/ {both} 'flour; powder' [irreg 5-3]
  /ihené – amahené/ {Rwanda} 'she-goat, jennie' [irreg 5-3; cf: Rundi /impené/]
  /imáana/ {both} 'God; Lord'
  /ináama – ináama or amanaáama/ {both} 'meeting'
  /inumá – inumá/ {both} 'turtle dove, pigeon,' *Columba arquatrix, C. guinea*
  /inyamáaswa – inyamáaswa/ {both} 'animal (quadruped, game)'
  /inyána – inyána/ {both} 'calf'
Many loanwords including those that do not follow the phonological rules for iN-.

- /báhashá – amabáhashá/ {both} 'envelope'
- /ibáruwá – amabáruwá/ {both} 'letter, writing; Scripture' < Swahili
- /iboombo – amaboombo/ {both} 'faucet, tap, pump-well (source of flowing water)' < Swahili
- /ikaanzu – amakaanzu/ {both} 'dress (clothing)' < Swahili
- /ikaravaáti – amakaravaáti/ {both} 'necktie, tie' < French cravate
- /ikawá – amakawá/ {Rundi}, /ikáawá/ {Rwanda} 'coffee; coffee plant' < Arab
- /imódoká – amamódoká/ {both} 'car, automobile' < English motorcar
- /inoóti – inóóti/ {both} 'bill, cash, banknote' < English, French note
- /isahá – amisahá – amasaháane/ {Rundi}, /isahaane – amasahaane/ {Rwanda} 'plate, dish' < Swahili < Arb
- /isábuné – amakáramú – amakáramú/ {Rundi}, /isahaane – amasahaane/ {Rwanda} 'pencil' < Swahili kalamu < Arb
- /isókó – amakáramú – amakáramú/ {both} 'market' < Swahili < Arb

### Table 39c. Group 5a and 5b Nouns (Consonant Stems Only)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>plural</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n5a</td>
<td>i-Ø</td>
<td>ipaataro pair of pants</td>
<td>[n3-pl] zaa</td>
<td>amapaataro pants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5b</td>
<td>i-Ø</td>
<td>kajúgujúgu helicopter</td>
<td></td>
<td>zaa kajúgujúgu helicopters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6</td>
<td>Ø-Ø</td>
<td>iyi paataro this pair of pants</td>
<td>[n3-pl] zaa</td>
<td>aya mapaataro these pants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>iyi kajúgujúgu this helicopter</td>
<td></td>
<td>izi zaa kajúgujúgu these helicopters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc</td>
<td>kw’</td>
<td>kwiisí on the earth</td>
<td>[n3-pl] ku</td>
<td>ku makaravaáti on the neckties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mw’</td>
<td>mwipaataro in the pants</td>
<td>[n3-pl] mu</td>
<td>mu mapaataro among the pants</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.2.5b. Group 5b – Singular Zero (Ø-) Prefix, Plural zaa-

This second subgroup has no prefix (Ø- ZERO) in the singular. Most often the plural is zaa-. The following kinds of words are found in this subclass. Note that several seem to have reduced prefixes from other classes, e.g., mu- n1, ru- n6, ka- or ga- n7, but the grammatical concord is strictly with group 5.

- Truncated nouns, some of which are derived from other classes.
  - /gacaáca/ {Rwanda} 'gathering of elders to settle a dispute amicably or to reconcile people, an informal system of adjudication; the place where such people gather'
  - /kajúgujúgu – zaa kajúgujúgu/ {both} 'helicopter'
  - /kameré/ {both} 'nature, natural state; character'
  - /mugiga – zaa mugiga/ {both} 'meningitis'
  - /rutásuumbwá/ {Rundi} 'the Most High'

- Geographic names (proper nouns that name places, rivers, mountains, etc.).
  - /afuriká/ {both} 'Africa' < Intl
  - /kaanzeenze/ {Rwanda} (commune in the prefecture of Kigali-Ngali in Rwanda)
  - /ngoozi/ {Rundi} (province in northern Burundi; also a city)
  - /nyamiraambo/ {Rwanda} (district in Kigali City)
  - /sabyíinyo/ {Rwanda} (volcano located in the northwest of Rwanda; lit. 'Old Man's Teeth')
• A broad range of unaffixed loanwords.
  /baánki – zaa baánki/ {both} 'bank' < French banque
  /filími – zaa filími/ {both} 'movie, film' < French film
  /gaári – zaa gaári/ {both} 'vehicle, engine' < Swahili gari
  /káaburiimbo/ {both} 'asphalt, tarmac' < Swahili
  /kömiíne/ {both} 'asphalt, tarmac' < French
  /leeta – zaa leeta/ {both} 'government' < French
  /risaánsi/ {both} 'distilled fuel (gasoline, diesel, petrol)' < French l’essence
  /raadiyó – zaa raadiyó/ {Rwanda} 'radio' < English, French, intl radio
  /saa mooýá/ {both} 'seven o’clock (7 a.m. or p.m.)' < Swahili
  /sukaári/ {both} 'sugar' < Arb

3.2.6. Group 6 – Bantu Classes 11 and 10

Singular:  
  uru- {both} [strong] Bantu class 11 – before consonant stems
  urw- {both} – before vowel stems

Plural:  
  in- {both} [strong] Bantu class 10 – before non-labial consonant stems
  im- {both} – before labial consonant stems and those beginning with /h/\(^{221}\)
  i- {both} – before roots beginning with ny-
  inz- {both} – before vowels or replacing the semivowel y

Researchers writing on this topic have said that the plural of singular uru- nouns (class 11) is the same as that of singular in- nouns (class 9), calling them all class 10.\(^{222}\) While both groups have an overlap in affixes for consonant-initial stems (in-, im-, i-, inz-), there is a clearcut difference in formation when vowel roots are involved – for group 5 the prefix is iny- whereas for group 6 it is inz-.

Table 39d. Group 5 and Group 6 Vowel Root Forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>vowel</th>
<th>root group 5 [sg / pl]</th>
<th>root / primary form group 6 [pl]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>/-aandika/ write</td>
<td>/inyandiko/ writing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>/-aanduruka/ come from [Rundi]</td>
<td>/inyanduruko/ motive, cause, origin {both}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>/-eegama/ lean</td>
<td>/inyégado/ partition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>/-eenga/ brew</td>
<td>/inyéngo/ brewing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>/-iiba/ steal</td>
<td>/inyibano/ stolen item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>/-igishia/ teach</td>
<td>/inyigilisho/ teaching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>/-oongeera/ add, &quot; increase</td>
<td>/inyonegerá/ surplus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>/-uunguka/ gain</td>
<td>/inyungú/ profit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>/-uumva/ hear</td>
<td>/inyúmvirow/ [Ru] ear-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>/inyúmvirow/ [Rw] drum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>/-umva/ hear</td>
<td>/uryúghi/ door</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>/-umva/ hear</td>
<td>/úruúzi/ river</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>/-umva/ hear</td>
<td>/inzuugí/ doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>/-umva/ hear</td>
<td>/inzuúzi/ rivers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>/-umva/ hear</td>
<td>/inzuugí/ doors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2.6.1. Semantic Characteristics of Group 6

This group encompasses mostly non-human nouns; only very few derived forms refer to humans. A number of associass meanings have been discussed or can be determined for this class.

• Among Bantu languages this group traditionally denotes long or high items.
  /urubáahó – imbáahó/ {both} 'plank, board, slate'
  /urubaambo – imaambo/ {both} 'peg, stake, large nail'
  /urubavu – imbavu/ {both} 'rib'
  /urudódo – indódo/ {both} 'wire; thread (for sewing)'
  /uruge – inge/ {both} 'bowstring'

\(^{221}\) For the change of /h/ to [p], MURMURING, see §2.5.3.

\(^{222}\) Thus our group 5 herein is treated as class 9–10 while our group 6 is treated as class 11–10.
Chapter 3: Nouns

/uruugi – inzuugi/ {both} 'door'
/urugó – ingó/ {both} 'fence, stockade; yard (fenced part of land), enclosure; coral, kraal'
/uruhindu – impindu/ {both} 'needle used for weaving (in basket-work)'
/urura – amara/ {both} 'intestine'
/urutí – intí/ {both} 'shaft (e.g. of a spear)'

- Membership of some items in this group is striking and would appear on the basis of their meaning to belong in another.223
/uruhiinja – impiinja/ {both} 'infant, newborn baby' [one might expect n1, human, or n7, diminutive]
/urúuzi – inzúuzi/ {both} 'river (major)' [one might expect n2 as is /umugezi/ 'river (minor)'

- A few items in either nature or the human ecosystem, including some that are manufactured.
/urubíbi – imbíbi/ {Rwanda} 'limit; border'
/urucaáca/ {both} 'lawn'
/uruhaánde – impaánde/ 'side, flank, part'
/urunigí – inigí/ {both} 'pearl necklace'

• Some body parts.225
/urubári – imbári/ {Rwanda} 'stinger of a bee'
/urugóhe – ingóhe/ {both} 'eyelash; eyelid'
/uruhaánga/ {both} 'forehead'
/uruhára/ {both} 'bald spot; baldness' – /uruhará/ {Rundi dialect alt}
/uruhú – impú/ {both} 'skin' [Alt: /urusáato/ {Rundi}]
/ururími – indími/ {both} 'tongue; language'
/urushí – ir amashí/ {Rundi}, /urushyí – amashyí/ {Rwanda} 'palm' (of the hand)
/urutoke – intoke/ {both}, /urutoki – intoki/ {both} 'finger'
/urutúgu – intúgu/ {Rwanda} 'shoulder'
/urwáara – inzáara/ {both} 'nail' (of the finger or toe)

• A few flora (plants) and their products. [Note: most plant names are in group 2.]
/imbágara/ {Rundi}, /imbágará/ {Rwanda} 'weeds' [Note: singular is very rare]
/urubíingo – imbíingo/ {both} 'reed'
/urubobi – imbobi/ {both} 'moss'
/urubogá – imbogá/ {both} 'leafy vegetable'
/urubúto – imbúto/ {Rwanda} 'fruit; seed'
/uruho – inzuoho/ {both} 'gourd'
/urukiindo – inkíindo/ {both} 'palm rod; switch made of palm ribs'
/urukwi – inkwi/ {both} 'firewood'

223 Some author’s remarks in this regard are downright humorous. For example, “a potpourri of renegade nouns which, according to their implications, should have been allocated to some other class” (Hands 1952:64) or “names of manufactured objects or of objects which in general indicate a certain order or uniformity that pleases the eye” (Hurel 1959:107).
224 Both dialects have an alternate in n5-sg/pl /inyényeéri/ {Rundi} and /inyényeeri/ {Rwanda}.
225 See also /urubavu/ 'rib' and /urura/ 'intestine' among {long} objects ABOVE.
226 Rundi has /imbúto – imbúto/ n5.
Chapter 3: Nouns

/urumogi/ {both} 'hemp (plant),' *Cannabis sativa,* 'marijuana, hashish'
/ururáybo – indáybo/ {Rwanda} 'flower'
/ururó – ir uburó/ {both} 'millet'
/uryúzi – inzúzi/ {both} 'gourd seed'

- A few fauna (animals, insects). [Note: most fauna are in group 5.]
/urugúha – ingúha/ {both} 'tick, parasite that attacks cattle' [Alt: /ingúha
n5]
/urukwáavu – inkwáavu/ {both} 'rabbit, hare'
/uruzípe – inzípe/ {both} 'red ant, *Dorylus wilwerthi*
/uruyúki – inzúki/ {both} 'bee'
/uruzirámire/ {both} 'python'
/urwuúmvu – inzuúmvu/ {Rwanda} 'chameleon'

3.2.6.2. Derivations in Group 6

Besides containing nouns derived from verbs as in most other classes, group 6 is similar to group 4 in that there are nouns from other groups which acquire a variety of different meanings.227

- Pejorative and augmentative meanings.228
/urugabo/ {both} 'hunk, big man, sturdily built man; [atr] brave, virile' [cf: /umugabo/ n1 'man, adult male; husband,' /ikigabo/ n4 'hulk, solidly big man; clumsy man; rebellious hunk']
/uruganza/ {both} 'big ugly hand' [cf: /ikigaanza/ n4 'hand, wrist']
/urugano/ {Rwanda} 'bamboo forest' [cf: /umugano/ n2 'scythe, pruning hook, pruning knife']
/uruuntu/ {both} 'huge thing, s.t. massive' [cf: /ikiintu/ n4 'thing,' /akaantu/ n7 'trifle, small thing']

- Groves, orchards, or plantations of trees and plants in other classes.
/urufúunzo – imfúunzo/ {both} 'papyrus marsh' [cf: /imfúunzo/ {Rundi} n5, /umufúunzo/ {Rwanda} n2 'papyrus']
/urugano/ {Rwanda} 'bamboo forest' [cf: /umugano/ 'bamboo']
/urusáavé/ {Rwanda} 'misave tree plantation' [cf: /umusáavé/ 'tree sp., *Markhamia platycalyx, M. lutea-
spathodea nilotica']
/urutooke/ {both} 'banana plantation' [cf: /igitooke/ 'bunch of bananas,' /agatooke/ 'small bunch of bananas']

- Abstract nouns derived by REDUPLICATION from nouns in other groups (see §2.5.17).
/urnuuruntuunto/ {both} 'human scent' [cf: /umuuntu/ n1 'person, human being']
/urnunwarunwa/ {Rwanda} 'indiscretion, inability to keep a confidence, being a big mouth or blabbermouth' [cf: /umunwa/ n2 'mouth']

- Nouns derived from verbs with the suffix -o form a kind of echo noun denoting an instrument used in an action or the result of performing such an action (*uru-Δ-o*).
/urubóho – imbóho/ {both} 'package < /–bóha/ 'tie, bind'
/urudódo – indódo/ {both} 'thread (for sewing) < /–dóda/ 'sew'
/urugeendo – inseendo/ {both} 'journey, trip, voyage < /–geenda/ 'go, leave, depart; move along, walk'
/urugero – ingero/ {both} 'measure, pattern, example < /–gera/ 'measure'
/urukúundo/ {both} 'love < /–kúunda/ 'love'
/ururásago/ {both} 'incision; scarification < /–rásaga/ 'incise; scarify; [ext] inject, vaccinate'
/uruririimbo/ {both} 'song, chant < /–ririimba/ 'sing'
/urusókozo/ {both} 'comb < /–sókoza/ 'comb (the hair)'
/urusyo – inso/ {both} 'grindstone; grinder < /–sya/ 'grind'
/urwáango/ {Rwanda} 'hate, hatred < /–áanga/ 'dislike, hate; reject, refuse'

---

227 Dubnova also speaks of a lexical group "the so-called nouns of segregation (i.e., 'one of many'))" (1984:40), but does not give any examples.
Chapter 3: Nouns

Nouns derived from verbs with the suffix -i (uru-I).  
/uruhigí – impigí/ [Rundi] ‘amulet, talisman’ < /–higa/ ‘show valor or bravery; bet, take a chance’ [P2]  
/urukuúmbuzi/ [Rwanda] ‘memory, remembrance’ < /–kúumbura/ ‘desire to go back, have nostalgia, be wistful.’  
/urunigí – inigí/ [both] ‘pearl necklace’ < /–niga/ ‘choke, strangle, seize one’s neck’ [P2]  
/uruugi – inzuugi/ [both] ‘door’ < /–ugara/ ‘shut, close (as a door)’ [R]  
/urusaángi/ [Rundi] ‘common property, goods possessed in common; [atr] common, general’ [P2]

Nouns derived from verbs with the suffix -e (uru-E) with P2 tonality.  
/urusaánge/ [Rwanda] ‘common property, goods possessed in common; [atr] common, general, collective’  
/uruhuúnge/ [Rundi] ‘outsiders, immigrants, refugees’ [col] < /–huunga/ ‘flee, run away’  
/urutoónde – intoónde/ [both] ‘row, line; rank, class’ < /–tóonda/ ‘line up, form a row’  
/uruvaánge/ [both] ‘conglomeration, mixture’ < /–váanga/ ‘mix’

Nouns derived from verbs with the suffix -a (uru-A).  
/urujá n’úruúza/ [Rundi] (JN), /urujyá n’úruúza/ [Rwanda] ‘comings and goings’  
/urubaánza – imaánza/ [both] ‘dispute, trial, litigation, lawsuit; custom, ritual’ < /–baanza/ ‘begin (a series of actions), commence’

Nouns with the suffix -o derived from benefactive verbs (uru-A-er/ir-o).  
/uruseengero – inseengero/ [both] ‘church (building); temple’ < /–seenga/ ‘worship’  
/urugaaniiriro – ingaaniiriro/ [Rwanda] ‘parlor, living room’ < /–gaaniira/ ‘chat together, converse’

Nouns derived from verbs (uru-A-U) {rare}.  
/urupfú/ ‘death’ < /–pfá/ ‘die’

3.2.6.3. Loans in Group 6  
/urubáahó – imbáahó/ ‘board, plank, beam, slate’ < Swahili  
/urunyáanyá – inyáanyá/ [both] ‘tomato, Lycopersicon esculentum’ < Swahili  
/urupaapuro – impaapuro/ [Rundi], /urupapuru – impapuru/ [Rwanda] ‘paper’ < French le papier

3.2.6.4. The Grammar of Group 6 Nouns

- Group 6 singular nouns can be used as ADVERBS OF MANNER.

When a short form of the singular prefix ru- is added to a noun stem from group 1, it conveys the attribute associated with that noun. Such constructions seem to be more common in Kirundi than in Kinyarwanda (which uses group 4 in this way, see §3.2.4.4).

/rugabo/ [both] ‘manfully, bravely, forcefully, gallantly’ [cf: /umugabo/ ‘man, adult male’]  
/rugoré/ [Rundi] ‘like a woman’ [cf: /umugoré/ ‘woman, adult female’]

229 Rwanda has /imbyíno – imbyíno/ n5.
230 This example brings up the possibility that some nouns are derived from the perfect or causative form of verbs (i.e., /uru-A-y-o), such as /uruufuunguuzo – imfuunguuzo/ [both] ‘key’ < /–fuunguura/ ‘open.’ Perhaps such nouns derive directly from the causative or instrumental form of the verb, e.g., /–fuunguuza/ ‘use s.t. to open s.t.’
231 Rwanda has /impigí/ n5 with the same meaning and from the same verb root.
232 Derived from the causative of /–kúumbura/ [both] ‘desire to go back, have nostalgia, be wistful.’
233 For a similar verb-noun meaning pair in English reflect on the word choker meaning ‘necklace.’
234 Some nouns appear to have this shape, but actually result from truncation (§2.5.15), e.g., /urusakú/ [both] ‘noise, din’ < /–sákuza/ ‘yell, shout, make noise’ or /urukebú/ [Rwanda] ‘stiff neck’ < /–kébuka/ ‘look back.’
Chapter 3: Nouns

/ruuntu/ [both] ‘humanely, politely’ [cf: /umuuntu/ ‘person, human being’]
/rwáana/ [Rundi] ‘childishly, like a child’ [cf: /umwáana/ ‘child, infant’ – Rwanda /cyáana/]

Table 40a. Group 6 Nouns with Consonant Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function</th>
<th>singular example</th>
<th>plural example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>uru-</td>
<td>in-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>urutoki</td>
<td>intoki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>urufuunguuzo</td>
<td>imfuunguuzo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>ru-</td>
<td>n-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rutouki</td>
<td>izi ntoki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rufuunguuzo</td>
<td>izi mfuunguuzo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>ru-</td>
<td>zi-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rúrya ruyúki</td>
<td>zírya nzúki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss</td>
<td>rwáa</td>
<td>zaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>urupfú rwáa Peetero</td>
<td>impínjaa zaa Peetero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss vn</td>
<td>rwó</td>
<td>zó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss loc</td>
<td>urufuunguuzo</td>
<td>inkwi zó gutéekeesha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rwó</td>
<td>gu-fuunguura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>ku ntúgu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mu</td>
<td>on shoulders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>i</td>
<td>muu nseengero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj</td>
<td>-ru-</td>
<td>-zi-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ndarubiika</td>
<td>ukazisya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I'm putting it aside</td>
<td>then you grind them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj</td>
<td>ru-</td>
<td>n-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>urugeendo rureerure</td>
<td>inzúúzi ndeende</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a long trip</td>
<td>long rivers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num</td>
<td>ru-</td>
<td>e-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uruyúki</td>
<td>indimi enyé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rumwé one bee</td>
<td>indimi ziné</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>it is not difficult</td>
<td>[Rundi alt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj</td>
<td>ru-</td>
<td>zi-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ntiruruhíje</td>
<td>ntiziruhíje</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they are not difficult</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>rú-</td>
<td>zi-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rúkomeye</td>
<td>zikomeye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(lawsuit) it being difficult</td>
<td>(lawsuits) they being difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel subj =</td>
<td>ru-</td>
<td>zí-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel obj</td>
<td>ruraangíza that completes</td>
<td>zíraangíza that complete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto</td>
<td>uru-</td>
<td>izi-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>urugukwiyiye the (uruhú animal skin) that befits you</td>
<td>izi- izigukwiyiye the ones (impú animal skins) that befit you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass agent</td>
<td>n’úru-</td>
<td>n'urupfú by a death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conj</td>
<td>-ru-</td>
<td>n'urukúundo and love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>m urwiíce</td>
<td>n'iinkwáavu by rabbits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you should kill it (rabbit)</td>
<td>n'iimbavu and ribs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj</td>
<td>rw-</td>
<td>nz-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uru rwuuri</td>
<td>izi nuuri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>this pasture</td>
<td>these pastures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>rw-</td>
<td>z-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rwáa that</td>
<td>záa those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num</td>
<td>Does not differ from the consonant forms because all numeral roots start with a consonant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 40b. Group 6 Nouns with Vowel Stems (See also Table 39d)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function</th>
<th>singular example</th>
<th>plural example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>urw-</td>
<td>inz-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>urwáara</td>
<td>inzáara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>urweegeo prop, ladder</td>
<td>inzéego props, ladders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>urwiibutso reminder</td>
<td>inziibutso reminders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uruwuri pasture</td>
<td>inzuuri pastures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>rw-</td>
<td>nzw-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uru rwuuri</td>
<td>izi nuuri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>this pasture</td>
<td>these pastures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>rw'V</td>
<td>z'V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>urufuunguuzo</td>
<td>inzuugi z'amazu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rw'inzu</td>
<td>the key of the house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss</td>
<td>rw'V</td>
<td>z'V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss loc</td>
<td>urufuunguuzo</td>
<td>inzuugi z'amazu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rw'inzu</td>
<td>the key of the house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>kwéego on the ladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mu</td>
<td>in the fingernail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kwáara in the fingernail</td>
<td>muu nzéego on the ladders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj</td>
<td>-rw-</td>
<td>-z-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>murwiíce</td>
<td>muzííce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you should kill it (rabbit)</td>
<td>you should kill them (locusts)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj</td>
<td>rw-</td>
<td>nz-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>urusíiká</td>
<td>intoki nzíízá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rwiízá</td>
<td>nice fingers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num</td>
<td>Does not differ from consonant forms because all numeral roots start with a consonant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 3: Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subj</th>
<th>rw-</th>
<th>rwaákize ejó</th>
<th>it healed yesterday</th>
<th>z-</th>
<th>zaákize keéra</th>
<th>they healed long ago</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>rw-</td>
<td>rwéegamye</td>
<td>(ladder) it leaning against</td>
<td>z-</td>
<td>zéegamye</td>
<td>(ladders) they leaning against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel subj =</td>
<td>rel obj</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rw-</td>
<td>urudódo rweerá</td>
<td>a white thread</td>
<td>z-</td>
<td>zaáraangwa</td>
<td>(lawsuits) that were characterized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto</td>
<td>urw-</td>
<td>urweégamye</td>
<td>the one which leans against</td>
<td>iz-</td>
<td>izéegamye</td>
<td>the ones which lean against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass agent</td>
<td>n'úrw-</td>
<td>n'urwiibutso</td>
<td>by a reminder</td>
<td>n'inz-</td>
<td>n'iinzúki</td>
<td>by bees n'iinzibutso and reminders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conj</td>
<td></td>
<td>n'urwuuri</td>
<td>also pasture</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2.7. Group 7 – Bantu Classes 12 and 13

Singular:  
aka- {both} [strong] Bantu group 12 – before voiced consonant stems  
aga- {both} – before voiceless consonant stems  
ak- {both} – before vowel stems

Plural:  
utedu- {both} {strong} Bantu group 13 – before voiced consonant stems
ute- {both} – before voiceless consonant stems
utw- {both} – before vowel stems

3.2.7.1. Semantic Characteristics of Group 7

There are just a few nouns found exclusively in this group because this is primarily a DERIVATIONAL CLASS, i.e., nouns of other classes generally acquire a DIMINUTIVE meaning when given these affixes. The following nouns do not imply any such meaning and are therefore genuine members of this group.

• A few body parts belong here, which can perhaps be perceived of as small, and which do not have counterparts in other noun groups.

• It imparts a DIMINUTIVE meaning involving something smaller in size, relationship, or degree to a correlate noun in another class; this is extremely productive, yielding hundreds of such nouns.
As we have seen in groups • Nouns derived from verbs with the suffix -

• With some nouns it can express either a positive or negative meaning. Some such connotations

• It also denotes a smaller quantity or lesser amount of what is expressed by a noun in another

class; these are often used to soften requests, e.g., Can I have a drop of water, Give me a little

money, May I have a swig of beer, etc.

• With some nouns it can express either a positive or negative meaning. Some such connotations

are fixed and others are derived from context: a pejorative meaning implying contempt or insult,
or, conversely expressing that someone is respectable or worthy of praise or that something is

quite pleasant. 235

• Nouns derived from verbs with the suffix -o (aka-Λ-ο)

• Nouns derived from verbs with the suffix -a (aga-Λ-α)

235 As we have seen in groups n4 (§3.2.4.2) and n6 (§3.2.6.2). These extremes have a parallel in colloquial English where one might use negative terms to praise something or someone, e.g., "that was a hell of a hamburger" or "so and so is hot shit." The autonome /akatáráabóneka/ (both) 'excellence, superbness; [atr] without precedent or equal' [lit.'what is not yet seen'] is probably formed on analogy with the positive implications of such nouns.
3.2.7.3. Loans in Group 7

Some loanwords in this group "sound" like they belong in this class, i.e., they begin with syllables such as [ka] or [ga] and are reinterpreted as if those sounds were a classificatory prefix. However, loans in other classes can also be used with a diminutive value.

/akabaati – utubaati/ {both} 'cabinet, cupboard, closet' < English cupboard
/akabari – utubari/ {both} 'bar (drinking place), tavern; cabaret, night club' < French cabaret
/akazi – utuzi/ {both} 'work, job, task' < Arb kazi
/akamáshiíni/ {both} 'apparatus, small machine' [cf: /imáshiíni/ n5a 'machine, engine'] < French machine
/agafaraanga – udufaraanga/ {both} 'a little money, a small sum' [cf: /ifaranga – amafaraanga/ n3 'franc; money' < French franc

3.2.7.4. The Grammar of Group 7 Nouns

Table 41a. Group 7 Nouns with Consonant Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>plural</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>aka-aga-</td>
<td>akaantu trifle, small thing</td>
<td>utu-udu-</td>
<td>utuuntu trifles, small things uduteebo small baskets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>ka-ga-</td>
<td>aka kaantu this trifle, small thing</td>
<td>tu-du-</td>
<td>tu tuuntu these trifles utu dukóókó these insects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>ka-ga-</td>
<td>kárya this</td>
<td>tu-</td>
<td>túrya these</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss</td>
<td>kaa</td>
<td>agahiinda kaa Mariyá Mary's sorrow</td>
<td>twaa</td>
<td>udhiinda twaa Mariyá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss vn</td>
<td>kó</td>
<td>agatabo kó gusoma a booklet to read</td>
<td>twó</td>
<td>udatabo twó gusoma booklets to read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss loc</td>
<td>kó</td>
<td>agatabo kó gusoma on a stool</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>ku dutebe on stools mu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc</td>
<td>ku mu</td>
<td>ku gatébe on a stool mu kanwa in the mouth</td>
<td>ku mu</td>
<td>kuturaangiza to finish them baáradasábye they asked for them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj</td>
<td>ka-ga-</td>
<td>karavúga it rings gakubagana it is naughty</td>
<td>tu-du-</td>
<td>turaarira they are crying dukubagana they are naughty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>ká-ga-</td>
<td>kánhyegejwe it being hidden gákora it functioning</td>
<td>tú-dú-</td>
<td>bádúkiikijye they encircling them dukora they functioning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel subj =</td>
<td>ka-ga-</td>
<td>karibwa that it is eaten gataangwá that it is provided</td>
<td>tu-du-</td>
<td>turibwá that they are eaten duťúiikijye that are dead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel obj</td>
<td>ka-ga-</td>
<td>karibwa that it is eaten gataangwá that it is provided</td>
<td>tu-du-</td>
<td>turibwá that they are eaten duťúiikijye that are dead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto</td>
<td>aka-aga-</td>
<td>akariwei that which is eaten</td>
<td>utu-</td>
<td>utúri the little ones that are there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass agent</td>
<td>n'aka-</td>
<td>n'áakáana by a child</td>
<td>n’útú-</td>
<td>n’uturyó duké by a little food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conj</td>
<td>n’aga-</td>
<td>n’agáakóókó and a bug</td>
<td>n’údu-</td>
<td>n’údutá and a little milk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 41b. Group 7 Nouns with Vowel Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>plural</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>ak-</td>
<td>akáana</td>
<td>utw-</td>
<td>utwáana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>k-</td>
<td>aka káana</td>
<td>tw-</td>
<td>utu twáana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>k-</td>
<td>káa that</td>
<td>tw-</td>
<td>twáa those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss</td>
<td>k'</td>
<td>akaguru k'íburyó right leg</td>
<td>tw'-</td>
<td>utwáana tw'ábagomé the small children of the rebels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss vn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss loc</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>ku káara on a short nail mu kébo in a little basket</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>ku twáara on short nails mu twébo in little baskets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj</td>
<td>-k-</td>
<td>bakuubatse they build it -tw-</td>
<td>batwuubatse they build them</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj</td>
<td>k-</td>
<td>akáana keezá a good baby tw-</td>
<td>utwáana twiizá good babies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj</td>
<td>k-</td>
<td>(agakóokó) koonoona</td>
<td>tw-</td>
<td>(udukóokó) twoonona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>k-'V</td>
<td>kíipfuza he wishing tw-'V</td>
<td>twíipfuza they wishing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel subj</td>
<td>rel obj</td>
<td>k-</td>
<td>kiitwá that is called tw-</td>
<td>twíitwá that are called</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto</td>
<td>ak-</td>
<td>akuúzye that which is full utw-</td>
<td>utwaábaaye those that became</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass agent</td>
<td>n'ak-</td>
<td>n'akáana by a small child n'akáana and a small child</td>
<td>n'út-</td>
<td>n'úutwáana by small children n'úutwáana and small children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conj</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2.8. Group 8 – Bantu Classes 14 and 6

Singular:  
- ubu- {both} [strong] Bantu group 14 – before consonant stems  
- ubw- {both} – before vowel stems  

Plural:  
- ama- {both} [weak] Bantu group 6 – before consonant stems  
- am- {both} – before vowel stems  
- ubu- {both, but rare} [strong] – before consonant stems  
- ubw- {both but rare} – before vowel stems

3.2.8.1. Semantic Characteristics of Group 8

Many of the nouns in this class are ABSTRACT or COLLECTIVE. There are also nouns specifying a variety of things ranging from products and manufactured items to diseases. Several appear to be only in this class, i.e., they are not derived from other parts of speech.

- Abstract nouns which usually have no plural forms.
  - /ubugiingo/ {Rwanda} 'life, existence; health' [cf: {Rundi} 'time, the present moment']  
  - /ubuhemú/ {both} 'treachery, betrayal; infidelity' [truncation of /–hemuka/ P2 'betray, fail to keep one’s word']  
  - /ubuté/ {both} 'indifference, negligence, laziness, slothfulness'  
  - /ubvéenge/ {both} 'mind, intelligence, wit'  
  - /ubwiira/ {both} 'haste, undue rush'  
  - /ubwóoba/ {both} 'fear, cowardice' [cf: /–óoba/ {Rwanda} 'fear, be afraid']

- Collective nouns.
  - /ubúuki – amiuki/ {both} 'honey' [also a plant product]  
  - /ubushó – amashó/ {Rundi} {JN}, /ubushyó – amashyó/ {Rwanda} 'herd (of cows)'  
  - /ubwaánwa – ubwaanwa/ {both} 'beard'  
  - /ubwaátsi/ {both} 'grass (tall sp., used especially for building); pasture, field, prairie'  
  - /ubwóoko – amóoko/ {both} 'type, sort, kind; tribe, ethnic identity'  
  - /ubwoóya/ {both} 'fur, body hair, wool' [generic or plural]
Chapter 3: Nouns

- Names of geopolitical entities (countries, kingdoms, regions).
  - /ubudaági/ [Rundi], /ubudaáge/ [Rwanda] 'Germany'
  - /ubugáandá/ [both] 'Uganda'
  - /ubugándá/ [both] 'Uganda'
  - /ubugoyi/ [Rwanda] 'the Bugoyi region of Rwanda'
  - /ubuha/ [both] 'place of the Giha people' (in eastern Tanzania)
  - /uburaayá/ [Rundi], /uburaaya/, /uburaayi/ [Rwanda] 'Europe'
  - /uburuúndi/ [Rundi] 'Tutsi region' (within Burundi)
  - /ubutuutsi/ [both] 'kingdom' [/<-ɠama>/ 'endure, go on and on;' cf: /umwaámi/ 'king']

- A few plants or plant products (i.e., objects made from them).
  - /ubuhéke/ [Rundi] 'grain' (of a cereal crop)
  - /uburábyo/ [Rwanda] 'flowers' [pl or generic, also collective]
  - /uburíri – amaríri/ [both] 'bed'
  - /uburó/ [considered plural] [both] 'millet, eleusine' (grass sp. with spikelets) [also collective]
  - /ubwáato – amáato/ [both] 'dugout canoe, boat; trough'
  - /ubwaátsi/ [both] 'grass' (tall sp., used especially for building); 'pasture, field, prairie'

- Some diseases, ailments, or afflictions.
  - /ubugaanga/ [Rwanda] 'fever' (recurrent); malaria; the flu'
  - /ubuheri/ [Rwanda] 'scabies, mange' (skin disease)
  - /ubushiita/ [both] 'smallpox'

- A few location nouns which are frozen with the preposition i.
  - /ibumosó/ [both] 'left, to the left, on the left' [cf: /ubumosó/ [Rundi] 'left' (side, direction)]
  - /iburyó/ [both] 'right, to the right, on the right'

3.2.8.2. Derivations in Group 8

There are many nouns in this group derived from other parts of speech: nouns, verbs, and adjectives. The final one is uncharacteristic of all the others which are generally ABSTRACT.

- Abstract nouns derived from nouns in other classes with the same tonality.
  - /ubucutí/ [both] 'friendship' [cf: /incutí/ n5-sg [both] 'close relative, parent; intimate friend']
  - /ubugabó/ [both] 'male genitalia; virility, manliness' [cf: /umugabó/ n1-sg [both] 'man; husband']
  - /ubukuúngu/ [both] 'wealth, prosperity' [cf: /umukuúngu/ n1-sg [both] 'rich person']
  - /ubuntuutu/ [both] 'generosity, humanitarianism, humaneness' [cf: /umuntuutu/ n1-sg [both] 'person, human']
  - /ubupfú/ [Rwanda] 'foolishness, folly' [cf: /umupfú/ n1-sg [Rwanda] 'fool, silly person']
  - /ubusóre/ [both] 'puberty, male adolescence; youth (age group); youthfulness' [cf: /umusóre/ n1-sg [both] 'young man, pubescent youth']
  - /ubwóoro/ [both] 'poverty, need' [cf: /umwóoro/ n1-sg 'poor person']

- Abstract nouns derived from ADJECTIVE ROOTS with R tonality.
  - /ububí/ [both] 'ugliness; evil, wickedness' [cf: /–bí/ [both] 'bad, evil, ugly, unattractive']
  - /ubugarí/ [both] 'width, breadth' [cf: /–gari/ [both] 'wide, broad, spacious']
  - /ubuníni/ [both] 'size, largeness, bigness' [cf: /–níni/ [both] 'big, large, huge; long; fat; thick']

---

236 Many of these roots can be found in Group 1 designating a person from the place specified (§3.2.1.1) and in Group 4 specifying the language or culture of that area (§3.2.4.1). These are not here considered derivations since all appear to have equal status. Note that some place names that appear to be reduced forms of this class are actually members of group 5b, e.g., /butáre/ [Rwanda] 'Butare' (prefecture in Rwanda).

237 See /ubudódo/ 'thread' (for sewing) under verbal nouns below.

238 The Rundi word is totally unrelated in terms of root and noun class /ishúurwé– amashúurwé/ n3 'flower.'

239 Some other illnesses derived from verbs are treated below, e.g., /ubuhumyi/ 'blindness,' /ubusazi/ 'lunacy.'

240 The noun /uburyó/ [both] has many meanings, none of which relate to a location: 'reason, cause, motive; method, way, manner, procedure; medium; opportunity, means (money, financial resources); mood, mode {ling}.'
Chapter 3: Nouns

/ubureebure/ [both] 'length; height' [cf: /–ree-re/ REDUP {both} 'long, tall, high']
/ubwiinshi/ [both] 'number, quantity, amount' [cf: /–inshi/ 'much; numerous; many, a lot (of)']
/ubwiizá/ [both] 'beauty, prettiness' [cf: /–iizá/ [both] 'good, kind; clean; neat; attractive']

• Abstract nouns derived from verbs with the suffix -e (ubu-Δ-e) with P2 tonality.
/ububabára/ [both] 'suffering' < /–báara/ [both] 'suffer, be hurt'
/ubugomá/ [both] 'rebellion, revolt' < /–goma/ [both] 'rebel, revolt, mutiny'
/ubukéné/ [both] 'poverty, need' < /–kéné/ [both] 'be poor'
/ubukiré/ [both] 'well-being' < /–kíra/ [both] 'be in good health; be saved'
/ubukóonjé/ [both] 'cold, coldness' < /–kóonjá/ [Rundi], /–kóonjá/ [Rwanda] 'be cold'
/ubusháaka/ [Rwanda] 'will' < /–shaaka/ [both] 'want, seek'
/ubushé/ [Rundi], /ubushyé/ [Rwanda] 'burn' (injury) < /–shá/ [Rundi], /–shyá/ [Rwanda] 'get burned'
/ubushúuhé/ [Rundi], /ubushuyúhe/ [Rwanda] 'heat' < /–shúuhá/ [Rundi], /–shyúuhá/ [Rwanda] 'be or become hot'
/ubutwaáre/ [both] 'chiefship, authority' < /–twáare/ [both] 'rule, govern'
/ubweénde/ [Rwanda] 'free will, volition' < /–eénde/ [both] 'take, accept'

• Abstract nouns derived from the PALATALIZED (perfect) stems of verbs with -y (ubu-Δ-yi) that keep root tonality
/ubudeshi/ 'laziness' [Rundi] < /–dehi/ [both] 'laze, be idle or lazy'
/ubuhanuuzi/ [both] 'prophecy' < /–hanuura/ [both] 'prophecy'
/ubuhumyí/ [both] 'blindness' < /–huma/ [both] 'be blind;' cf: /impunyí/ [both] 'blind person'
/ubukánni/ [Rundi] 'love, intimacy' < /–kündá/ [both] 'love;' cf: /urukündo/ [both] n6 'love'
/uburozi – amarozi/ [both] 'poison; black magic, spell' < /–roga/ [both] 'cast a spell (upon); give the evil eye (to); poison s.o.;' cf: /umurozi/ [both] n6-sg 'magician, sorcerer, witch doctor'
/ubusázi/ [both] 'folly, lunacy, madness' < /–sara/ [both] 'be mad or crazy'
/ubushóbozi/ [Rundi], /ubushobozi/ [Rwanda] 'ability, competence' < /–shóbo/ [Rundi], /–shóbo/ [Rwanda] 'be able'
/ubwaambuzi/ [both] 'robbery, banditry' < /–ambura/ [both] 'steal, disposess'

• Abstract nouns derived from the SIMPLE STEM of verbs (ubu-Δ-i) with varying tonality
/ubucuruiuzi/ [both] 'trade, commerce' [R] < /–curuuzá/ [both] 'sell merchandise, engage in retail'
/ubuhíi/ [both] 'hurt' [P2] < /–hiiga/ [both] 'hurt, go hunting'
/ubumenyi/ [both] 'skill, acquired knowledge' [R] < /–menya/ [both] 'know, recognize'
/ubuakára/ [both] 'anger' [R] < /–raakara/ [both] 'be angry'
/ubutíndé/ [both] 'bad luck, misfortune, misery; destitution' [R] < /–tiindahara/ [both] 'become very poor, get impoverished;' cf: /umutíndi/ [both] n6 'unlucky person, wretch'
/ubwaamí/ [both] 'kingdom' [P2] < /–aamá/ [both] 'endure, last forever;' cf: /umwaamí/ n6 'king'

• Nouns derived from BENEFECTIVE verbs with the suffix -o denoting the PLACE of an action (ubu-Δ-ir-o) with root tonality
/ubuhuungiro/ [both] 'refuge' < /–huunga/ [both] 'flee'
/uburéengero/ [Rundi] 'west' < /–réenga/ [both] 'set (of the sun or moon)'
/uburuuukáro/ [Rundi] 'rest area, place of rest,' [Rwanda] 'morgue' < /–ruuuká/ [both] 'rest'

• Nouns derived from simple verb stems with -o (ubu-Δ-o) with root tonality
/ubudó/ [both] 'thread' (for sewing) < /–dó/ [both] 'sew'
/ubwíugamo/ [both] 'shelter (from the rain); refuge' < /–ugamo/ 'take shelter (from the rain)'

• Nouns derived from verb stems with -a (ubu-Δ-a) with varying tonality
/ubuabaasha/ [both] 'power, ability' [P2] < /–baasha/ [both] 'can, be able to (physically do s.t.)'
/ubuhaanga/ [both] 'skill, creative ability' [P2] < /–haanga/ [Rwanda] 'introduce s.t. new, found, create'
/uburyaarya/ [both] 'hypocrisy; miserliness' [R] < /–ryaarya/ 'be indifferent, be frosty; be a hypocrit'
/ubutumwa/ [both] 'message' [P2] < /–tumwa/ [both] 'be sent;' cf: /intumwa/ n5 'envoy, messenger'

241 Some forms with this pattern follow root tonality, e.g., /ubunebwe/ [both] 'laziness' < /–nебwe/ [both] 'loaf around, be lazy;' /ubugéne/ [Rundi] 'manne, how s.t. is done' < /–géne/ [both] 'determine, propose.'
Chapter 3: Nouns

/ubwáana/ {both} 'childhood' [A] < /–aana/ 'cry, weep;' cf: /umwáana/ {both} n1-sg 'child'

- Nouns derived from nouns in other classes with the same tonality that connote some form of DEFORMITY, but only in the PLURAL.²⁴²

/ubuká/ {both} 'feeble and puny cows' [cf: /inká/ n5-sg/pl 'cow']
/ubutúgu/ {both} 'small and deformed shoulders' [cf: /igitúgu/ Rundi n4, /urutúgu/ Rwanda n6 'shoulder']
/ubwíinyo/ {both} 'deformed teeth' (e.g., buck teeth) [cf: /iryíinyo – améenyo/ {both} n3 'tooth']

3.2.8.3. Loans in Group 8

/uburéengeéti – amaréengeéti/ {both} 'blanket' < English blanket
/ubururú/ {both} 'blue (color)' < French bleu
/ubusítaáni – ubusítaáni/ Rwanda 'orchard, garden' < Swahili < Arabic bustan [see n8a BELOW]
/ubutó/ {both} 'vegetable oil' < Swahili

3.2.8.4. The Grammar of Group 8 Nouns

- There are just a few nouns in this class that have an irregular plural in ubu- or ubw- rather than ama-. These then constitute a very small subclass which is identified here as n8a.

/uburyó – uburyó/ {both} 'reason, cause, motive; method, procedure; opportunity'
/ubusítaáni – ubusítaáni/ Rwanda 'orchard' [see loans ABOVE]
/ubutumwá – ubutumwá/ {both} 'message; news; commission, mission'
/ubwaánwa – ubwaánwa/ {both} 'beard'
/ubwaátu – ubwaátu/ {both} 'dugout canoe, boat' [Alt pl: /amáato/]

- The reduced prefix (bu- or bw-) forms some ADVERBS OF MANNER (§11.3).

/buhóro/ {both} 'slowly; carefully'
/bukóokó/ {both} 'like an animal; truly animal; [atr] animalistic'
/butaambwe/ Rundi 'like a lion'
/bupyisí/ Rwanda 'like a hyena'
/bwaango/ {both} 'quickly, rapidly, hastily'

- Many TEMPORAL adverbial expressions (§11.1) are found in this class.

/búkeeye/ {both} 'the next morning, the following day, afterwards' [lit. 'it dawning']
/ejó buúndi/ {both} 'the day after tomorrow; the day before yesterday' (two days in the past or future, depending on context)
/mu bunyoni/ 'when the birds start to sing (early morning, c. 5:30 a.m.)'
/ntaa bwo/ {both} 'never'
/ubu/ {both} 'now, currently, today'
/ubuúndi/ {both} 'at another time, at some other time; sometimes'
/ubwó/ 'when; then when ...' [conj]

- Several autonomes in this class also serve an ADVERBIAL function.

/ubusáanzwe/ {both} 'usually, normally, ordinarily'
/ubutágsubiira/ {both} 'in a manner that doesn't repeat anymore'
/ubutázáagaruka/ Rwanda 'for good, not to return'

- Hands 1952:279 describes for Rwanda what may be called ECHO FORMS, i.e., with a reduced singular prefix bu- before a repetition of the root, that signify LIMITATION, i.e., only, just; it confines the meaning of the noun so qualified to its strictest sense.

/abaantu buuntu/ Rwanda 'finite men, just men' (Hands 1952:279)
/amatwi butwi²⁴³ Rwanda 'ears only' (Hands 1952:279)

²⁴² In an email (Jun 29, 2004), Juvenal Ndayiragije points out that the singular of these is in group 7 (aka-).

²⁴³ Dubnova (1984:42) says: "the prefix of this class can convey the idea of PEJORATIVE DIMINUTIVENESS." In our research, we have not seen such a connotation mentioned by any other authors.
### Table 42a. Group 8 Nouns with Consonant Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function</th>
<th>singular example</th>
<th>plural example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>ubu-</td>
<td>ama-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>md</td>
<td>bu-</td>
<td>aya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>bu-</td>
<td>a-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss</td>
<td>bwa-</td>
<td>ya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss vn</td>
<td>bwo-</td>
<td>yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc</td>
<td>ku mu</td>
<td>ku mu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj</td>
<td>-bu-</td>
<td>-ya-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj</td>
<td>bu-</td>
<td>ma-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num</td>
<td>bu-</td>
<td>a-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj</td>
<td>bu-</td>
<td>a-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>bu-</td>
<td>a-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel subj</td>
<td>bu-</td>
<td>a-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto</td>
<td>ubu-</td>
<td>a-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass agent</td>
<td>n'ubu-</td>
<td>n'amározi by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conj</td>
<td>n'ubutégetsi by</td>
<td>n'amározi and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the authority</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 42b. Group 8 Nouns with Vowel Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function</th>
<th>singular example</th>
<th>plural example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>ubw-</td>
<td>am-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel</td>
<td>bw-</td>
<td>ma-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>bw-</td>
<td>yáa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss</td>
<td>bw'</td>
<td>y'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss vn</td>
<td>Does not differ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc</td>
<td>ku mu</td>
<td>ku mu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj</td>
<td>-bw-</td>
<td>-ya-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj</td>
<td>bw-</td>
<td>ma-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num</td>
<td>Does not differ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj</td>
<td>bw-</td>
<td>y-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>bw-</td>
<td>y-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel subj</td>
<td>bw-</td>
<td>y-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

243 Jacob et al. attribute a special and quite different meaning to Rwanda /butwí/ (but as a word, not an echo form) 'very much so, in the fullest sense of the word,' e.g., /ni uumuyisiraamu butwí/ {Rwanda} 'He is an avowed Muslim.' or /asa na sé butwí/ {Rwanda} 'He looks just like his father.' (1987 #3:443) Hence, Hands translation of /amatwí butwí/ could be revised to 'very good ears, ears like no other.'
Chapter 3: Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>auto</th>
<th>ubw-</th>
<th>ubwúumye</th>
<th>that (grass) which is dry</th>
<th>ayifuuza</th>
<th>the (tribes) which want</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pass agent</td>
<td>n’úbw-</td>
<td>n’úbwóoro by poverty</td>
<td>n’ám-</td>
<td>n’ámáato by boats</td>
<td>n’ámóoko and types</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2.9. Group 9 – Bantu Classes 15 and 6

Singular:  
uku- {both} [strong] Bantu group 15 – before voiced consonant stems
ugu- {both} – before voiceless consonant stems
ukw- {both} – before vowel stems

Plural:  
am- {both} [weak] Bantu group 6 – before consonant stems
am- {both} – before vowel stems

3.2.9.1. Semantic Characteristics of Group 9

Membership in this group, i.e., nouns with the FULL PREFIX (and indeed in all subsequent groups 10-13) is very small.244 Our research has uncovered only ten such forms for n9.

- A few body parts.
  /ugutwí – amatwí/ {both} 'ear'
  /ukubóko – amabóko/ {both} 'arm'
  /ukuguru – amaguru/ {both} 'leg'
  /ukwáaha – amáaha/ {both} 'armpit'

- The names of a few calendar months as well as the word for 'month' itself.
  /ukwéezi – améezi/ {both} 'moon; month'
  /ugushyíingo/ [Rwanda] 'third month of Rwanda calendar' (corresponding to November-December)
  /ukuboza/ [Rwanda] 'fourth month of Rwanda calendar' (corresponding to December-January)
  /ukwaakira/ [Rwanda] 'second month of Rwanda calendar' (corresponding to October-November)

- A few miscellaneous nouns.
  /ukuúntuuzé/ {Rundi} 'such-and-such, some action or other, whatchamacallit (used when one can’t remember or doesn't wish to reveal the act or action)
  /ukuzimú/ {both} 'pit (underground), chasm, abyss; depths of the earth'

3.2.9.2. Derivations in Group 9 Are the Verbal Noun Subclass (9a)

There is an extremely large number of VERBAL NOUNS in this group derived directly from verbs. In their most basic form they are REDUCED, i.e., the initial vowel of the prefix is dropped (ku- instead of uku-, gu- instead of ugu-, etc.). Because they come from verbs, they are sometimes called DEVERBAL NOUNS by linguists. These serve as INFINITIVES (I like to walk, see §8.6) and as VERBAL NOUNS (Walking is my favorite exercise).245 For the student of these languages, they serve a critical function in that they indicate the primary tonality of the root.

- Verbal nouns: infinitives.
  /guhá/ {both} 'to give s.t. to s.o.; providing'
  /gukúunda/ {both} 'to love; loving'
  /gupfá/ {both} 'to die; dying'
  /kugura/ {both} 'to buy; buying'
  /kuríriimba/ {both} 'to sing; singing'

244 The following derivational subclass of verbal nouns (n9a), on the other hand, is very large.
245 In the grammar of many other languages, linguists use the term GERUND for this kind of verbal noun. However, in Rwanda and Rundi the term GERUND is reserved for a special kind of future-oriented verbal construction (§8.5.3).
The NEGATIVE INFINITIVE is marked by -ta- (before voiced consonants), -da- (before voiceless consonants), or -t- (before vowels).

Note that after the copulative ni (and the locative verb -rí), the lost u- of uku-, ugu- or ukw- is reinstated.

Some alternates of these truncated infinitives appear with the full prefix. Most seem to be fixed forms used in prayers, rituals, proverbs, and like expressions.

The verbal noun subclass (n9a) does have a large number of loanwords. Virtually any verb composed of a root that has been borrowed has its infinitive form here.

3.2.9.3. No Loans in Group 9 and above

These higher noun groups, which have such a small membership, appear to be a CLOSED SET of nouns. That is to say, they are not OPEN to borrowing. For this reason, the discussion of the remaining locative noun groups will not have a subsection on loanwords.

The verbal noun subclass (n9a) does have a large number of loanwords. Virtually any verb composed of a root that has been borrowed has its infinitive form here.

Table 43a. Group 9 Nouns with Consonant Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>plural</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefix n9</td>
<td>uku-</td>
<td>uku</td>
<td>ama-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ugu-</td>
<td>gu</td>
<td>amaguru legs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ugu</td>
<td>amatwi ears</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prefix n9a</td>
<td>ku-</td>
<td>kuryá</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gu-</td>
<td>gutáakara</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel</td>
<td>ku-</td>
<td>uku</td>
<td>aya maguru</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gu-</td>
<td>kuguru</td>
<td>aya amatwi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 3: Nouns

Table 43b. Group 9 Nouns with Vowel Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>plural</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefix $n_9$</td>
<td>$ukw-$</td>
<td>$ukwéézi$ moon, month</td>
<td>$ama-$</td>
<td>$améézi$ months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$n_9a$</td>
<td>$kw-$</td>
<td>$kwiiga$ to study, to learn</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>$kw-$</td>
<td>$uku kwéézi$ this month</td>
<td>$m-$</td>
<td>$aya meézi$ these months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>$kw-$</td>
<td>$kwáa$ that</td>
<td>$y-$</td>
<td>$yáa$ those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss</td>
<td>$kw'$</td>
<td>$ukweézi kw'iimvúra$ rainy month</td>
<td>$y'$</td>
<td>$améézi y'iic(y)i$ months of the dry season</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss vn</td>
<td>$kw$</td>
<td>$ukweézi$</td>
<td>$améézi$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss loc</td>
<td>$ku$</td>
<td>$ku kwéezi$ on the moon</td>
<td>$ku$</td>
<td>$ku méézi out of the months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$mu$</td>
<td>$mu kwéezi$ in a month</td>
<td>$mu$</td>
<td>$mu méézi among the months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc</td>
<td>$ku$</td>
<td>$ku kwéezi$ on the moon</td>
<td>$ku$</td>
<td>$ku méézi out of the months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$mu$</td>
<td>$mu kwéezi$ in a month</td>
<td>$mu$</td>
<td>$mu méézi among the months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj</td>
<td>$-kw-$</td>
<td>$arawkóoza$ he washes it</td>
<td>$-y-$</td>
<td>$arayóoza$ he washes them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj</td>
<td>$kw-$</td>
<td>$ukweézi kwéézi$ good month</td>
<td>$m-$</td>
<td>$améézi meénshi$ many months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num</td>
<td>Does not differ from consonant forms because all numeral roots start with a consonant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj</td>
<td>$kw-$</td>
<td>$kwaári it was there</td>
<td>$y-$</td>
<td>$yaápfuuye$ they had been deaf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>$kw-$</td>
<td>$kwaakomeretse$ (arm) it having been injured</td>
<td>$y-$</td>
<td>$yaakomeretse$ (arms) they having been injured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel subj = rel obj</td>
<td>$kw-$</td>
<td>$kwaáraanzwe$ that had been characterized</td>
<td>$y-$</td>
<td>$yaáraanzwe$ that were characterized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto</td>
<td>$ukw-$</td>
<td>$ukwaábonetse$ that which showed up</td>
<td>$ay-$</td>
<td>$ayaábonetse$ those which showed up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass agent conj</td>
<td>$n'ukw-$</td>
<td>$n'ukweézi$ by the moon</td>
<td>$n'am-$</td>
<td>$n'améézi$ by (its) moons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$n'ukweézi$ and the moon</td>
<td></td>
<td>$n'améézi$ and the months</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.2.10. Group 10 Locative – Bantu Class 16

Singular &:  
aha- {both} [strong] Bantu group 16 – before consonant stems

Plural:  
ah- {both} – before vowel stems (e.g., in autonomes)246

3.2.10.1. Semantic Characteristics of Group 10

This is the first of the higher noun groups that denote place or LOCATION. It has only one noun shared by Rwanda and Rundi, and a second exclusive to Rundi:

/ahaantu/ {both} 'place, location, space, area'

/ahaántuzu/ {Rundi} filler 'such-and-such a place, somewhere or other, at whatchamacallit' [used when one can't remember or doesn't wish to reveal the location; cf. /ikánaaká/ {Rwanda} n13]

3.2.10.2. Derivations in Group 10

• There are a few locative nouns formed from adjectives which maintain root tonality.

/ahabí/ {both} 'a bad place'

/ahareehare/ {both} 'a deep place'

/aható/ {both} 'a small place'

• Autonomes in this group denote a place associated with a particular action.

/ahabóna/ {both} 'a place in view' < /–bóna/ {both} 'find; acquire, obtain, get; see'

/ahasígaye/ {both} 'a place that remains' < /–sígara/ {both} 'stay (behind), remain, be left over, be in excess'

/ahítwa/ {both} 'a place which is called' < /–iítwa/ {both} 'be named, be called'

3.2.10.3. The Grammar of Group 10 Nouns

• There are a few forms with the full prefix derived from adjectives which maintain root tonality but which function ADVERBially.

/ahakurú/ {Rundi} adv 'especially, principally, in the first place'

/aháníni/ {both} adv 'mostly, principally, for the most part'

• There are several forms that have a reduced form of this class affix, ha-, which may be characterized as members of n10a, but which also behave like ADVERBS.

/haáfi/ {both} 'near, nearby, close to, soon'

/hagati/ {both} 'in the middle (of), in between, among; inside, midst, center (of); [atr] central'

/haambère/ {both} 'previously, before; of old, long ago, in olden days, in former times'

/hamwé/ {both} 'together (with reference to time or place); in one place; in common'

/haanyuma/ {both} 'after, afterwards, later, then'

/haruguru/ {both} 'above, higher up'

/haasi/ {both} 'down, on the ground; below (vertical); bottom; floor'

/ható/ {both} 'soon, a little later on (the same day); in an instant'

/heejuru/ {both} 'up, on top of, on high (vertical); on, upon' [ < ha-i-juru]

/heepfó/ {both} 'down, downwards, below, lower down, down there; behind, at the back of'

• There are also several ADVERBS OF LOCATION with the reduced affix that are formed from DEICTICS (§5).

/haákuno/ {both} 'on this side of (a body of water)'

/haákurya/ {both} 'on the other side (of a body of water, of a border); beyond, on that side of'

/háno/ {both} 'here; this place (insistence or contrast)'

/hárya/ {both} 'this, that (place vividly remembered, known by us)'

---

246 The one noun in Rwanda and two nouns in Rundi for this class are formed on consonant roots. There are no nouns strictly within this class formed on vowel roots. However, there are autonomes formed from vowel-initial verb roots, such as /ahítwa/ in the example below.
Chapter 3: Nouns

- Agreement with group 10 serves to focus upon a specific period of time, a given place, or a particular situation.
  «Ni aha ejo» {both} 'See you tomorrow'
  «Ni aha ntuye» 'This is where I live'
  «N'ah' Imana» 'It's up to God' (i.e., placing one's hope in God)

- Its most widespread usage, however, is in impersonal constructions ('There is...' or 'There are...'). These are always marked by *n10* agreement.

\[
\text{simpaázi} \quad \text{siimpáazi} \quad \text{Rwanda} \quad 'I don't know the place' < \text{si}-N-ha-':zi
\]

### Table 44a. Group 10 Nouns with Consonant Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function</th>
<th>singular example</th>
<th>plural example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>aha- ahaantu place</td>
<td>aha- ahaantu places</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>ha- aha haantu this place</td>
<td>ha- aha haantu these places</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>há- hárya haantu that place</td>
<td>há- hárya haantu those places</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss</td>
<td>haa ahaantu haa Pée téro</td>
<td>haa ahaantu haa Pée téro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss loc</td>
<td>hó ahaantu hó mu butaliyaání a place in Italy</td>
<td>hó ahaantu hó mu butaliyaání places in Italy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc</td>
<td>mu mu haantu in a place</td>
<td>mu ku ku haantu heénshi in many places</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj</td>
<td>-ha- -pa- arahári he is there</td>
<td>-ha- -pa- barahári they are there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj</td>
<td>ha- ahaantu ható a small place</td>
<td>ha- ahaantu ható small places</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num</td>
<td>ha- ahaantu hamwé one place</td>
<td>ha- ahaantu hamwé four places</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj</td>
<td>ha- haragera igihe</td>
<td>ha- har' ahaantu heénshi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>há- hátiinze later on</td>
<td>há- nsaaanje häri ahaantu heénshi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel subj</td>
<td>ha- {both} kó havuzwé that it is said</td>
<td>ha- kó habonétsé that they (the places) were just found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto</td>
<td>aha- ahasigaye that which remains</td>
<td>aha- ahasigaye those which remain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass agent conj</td>
<td>n'áha- n'áhaantu by a place</td>
<td>n'áha- n'áhaantu by places</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post</td>
<td>há- kó harihó {both} there exists murabehó! Good bye</td>
<td>hó harihó {both} there are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[247\] The original word in the reading was «haza», but Juvenal Ndayiragije has suggested a more appropriate version with the sequence marker.
Table 44b. Group 10 Nouns with Vowel Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>plural example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>[no forms attested]</td>
<td>n/a [no forms attested]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>[no forms attested]</td>
<td>n/a [no forms attested]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>h-</td>
<td>háa haantu that place</td>
<td>h- háa haantu those places</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss</td>
<td>h'</td>
<td>ahaantu h'iíntáre the place of a lion</td>
<td>h' ahaantu h'iínyaamáaswa places of wild animals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss vn</td>
<td>h'</td>
<td>ahaantu h'iíntáre the place of a lion</td>
<td>h' ahaantu h'iínyaamáaswa places of wild animals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss loc</td>
<td>Does not differ from the consonant forms because the vn (ku-, gu-) and loc (mu- and ku-) prefixes always begin with a consonant, thus hó mu, hó ku, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>ku haantu h'iíntáre to the place of a lion</td>
<td>ku mu haantu h'iíntáre to the places of wild animals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mu</td>
<td>mu haantu h'iíntáre in the place of a lion</td>
<td>mu h'iíntáre in the places of wild animals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj</td>
<td>-h-</td>
<td>arahúubaka [both] he builds there (a place)</td>
<td>-h- arahúubaka [both] he builds there (several places)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-p-</td>
<td>siimpíiga [Rwanda] I don't study there</td>
<td>-p- siimpaandika [Rwanda] I don't write in those places</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj</td>
<td>h-</td>
<td>ahaantu heezá a nice place</td>
<td>h- ahaantu heénshi many places</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num</td>
<td>Does not differ from consonant forms because all numeral roots start with a consonant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj</td>
<td>h-</td>
<td>keéra haábaaye {Rwanda} once upon a time</td>
<td>h- haábaaye there happened (those events)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>h-</td>
<td>hiíyambariye There is one just wearing</td>
<td>h- hiíyambariye There are people just wearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel subj = rel obj</td>
<td>h-</td>
<td>kó haábeereye that there took place</td>
<td>h- kó haábeereye that those took place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto</td>
<td>ah-</td>
<td>ahiítwa a place which is called</td>
<td>ah- ahiítwa places which are called</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass agent</td>
<td>n'ah-</td>
<td>n'ahuúbatswe by the place built by (the students)</td>
<td>n'ah- n'ahuúbatswe by the places built by (the students)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conj</td>
<td>hw'</td>
<td>araandika hw'íizína he is writing a name on it</td>
<td>hw' araandika hw'íamazína he is writing names on them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2.11. Group 11 – Bantu Class 17

Singular uku- {both} [strong] Bantu class 17 – before consonant stems
or Plural ukw- {both} – before vowel stems

This is a very small group inherited from Bantu, consisting of only two nouns shared by Rwanda and Rundi, and a third exclusive to Rundi. It is sometimes ignored in textbooks where authors lump these words with the verbal-noun group (n9a). However, the semantics of a VERBAL NOUN (n9a act of VERBing) as opposed to a MANNER NOUN (n11 way or manner of VERBing) clearly differ.

3.2.11.1. Semantic Characteristics of Group 11

- There are only three nouns implying manner; since each is related to another part of speech, strictly speaking, all are derivations.

/ukuuntu/ {both} ‘method, way, manner; [ext] money, financial wealth’ [cf: /kiíntu/ {both} n4 ‘thing’]
/ukuri/ {both} ‘truth, the way it is’ [cf: /-ri/ {both} v-cop-loc ‘is, are; be in, at a specific location’]
/ukugéne/ {Rundi} ‘way of doing, the how’ [cf: /-géna/ {both} v-tr ‘appoint; choose; determine, propose’]

\[248\] The final construction (postposition /hó/) is more common in Rwanda; in Rundi it is usually /kó/ [n11].
Chapter 3: Nouns

3.2.11.2. Derivations in Group 11
• The shortened or reduced prefix is used to derive ADVERBS OF MANNER
  /küübiri/ {both} 'of two kinds' /gusa/ {both} 'just, only'
  /kúundi/ {both} 'another manner or way (of a different kind)'

3.2.11.3. The Grammar of Group 11 Nouns
The preposition ku will be discussed in detail in the section on locatives; it has appeared in the loc column of all previous noun tables. Effectively, when this preposition (derived from the Bantu class 17 locative prefix) is added to a noun, the resulting phrase becomes a LOCATIVE in group 11. Because it serves as a class marker (denoting MANNER) and a preposition (denoting a PLACE at or outside), Tables 45a and 45b are revised to take these additional functions and meanings into account, i.e., PREP, POSS LOC, and POST.

Table 45a. Group 11 Nouns with Consonant Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>plural</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>uku-</td>
<td>ukuuntu method, way</td>
<td>uku-</td>
<td>ukuuntu methods, ways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ukurí truth, the way it is</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prep</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>ku kiró per kilogram</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>ku manywá at noon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kuu</td>
<td>kuu nébe on the chair</td>
<td>kuu</td>
<td>kuu nzuugi on the doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>uku kuuntu this way</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>uku kuuntu these ways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>kú-</td>
<td>kúrya kuuntu that way</td>
<td>kú-</td>
<td>kúrya kuuntu those ways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss</td>
<td>kwaa</td>
<td>ukuuntu kwaa Péetéro</td>
<td>kwaa</td>
<td>ukuuntu kwaa Péetéro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>kwaa sé to his father's place</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss loc</td>
<td>kwaa</td>
<td>ukuuntu kwaa Péetéro</td>
<td>kwaa</td>
<td>ukuuntu kwaa Péetéro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>kwaa sé to his father's place</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss vn</td>
<td>kwó</td>
<td>ukuuntu kwó kwiiiga</td>
<td>kwó</td>
<td>ukuuntu kwó kwiiiga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss loc</td>
<td></td>
<td>a method of studying</td>
<td></td>
<td>methods of studying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ukurí kwó kwiiisi</td>
<td></td>
<td>ukuuntu kwó mu baambuzi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc</td>
<td>mu</td>
<td>mu kuuntu in a manner</td>
<td>mu</td>
<td>mu kuuntu in ways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mu kuri in reality</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj</td>
<td>-ku-</td>
<td>twookuvugakó íkí {Ru}</td>
<td>-ku-</td>
<td>twookuvugakó íkí {Rundi}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>twaakuvugahó íkí {Rw}</td>
<td></td>
<td>twaakuvugahó íkí {Rwanda}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>What should we say about it?</td>
<td></td>
<td>What should we say about them?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj</td>
<td>ku-gu-</td>
<td>ukuuntu kubí bad method</td>
<td>ku-gu-</td>
<td>ukuuntu kubí bad methods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ukuuntu guké an insign-</td>
<td></td>
<td>ukuuntu guké few methods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ificant method</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num</td>
<td>ku-</td>
<td>ukuuntu kumwé one way</td>
<td>ku-</td>
<td>ukuuntu kubíri two ways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ukuuntu gatatu three ways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj</td>
<td>ku-gu-</td>
<td>ukuuntu kuri hé</td>
<td>ku-</td>
<td>ukuuntu kuri háno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Where is the method?</td>
<td></td>
<td>Here are the ways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ukurí gúcú mu züko</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Truth can pass through fire</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>kú-</td>
<td>kúbabaza it (the truth)</td>
<td>kú-</td>
<td>kúruhije they (the methods)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gú-</td>
<td>hurting</td>
<td>gú-</td>
<td>being tiring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>gúshoboka it (this way)</td>
<td></td>
<td>gúshoboka they (these ways)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>being possible</td>
<td></td>
<td>being possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel subj = rel obj</td>
<td>ku-gu-</td>
<td>ko kubabáza that it (the truth) hurts</td>
<td>ku-gu-</td>
<td>ko kuruhíje that (the ways) are tiring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ko gushobóka that it (this way) is possible</td>
<td></td>
<td>ko gushobóka that they (the ways) are possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto</td>
<td>uku-</td>
<td>ukubábaza that (truth)</td>
<td>uku-</td>
<td>ukurúhije those (ways) which are tiring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ugu-</td>
<td>which hurts</td>
<td>ugu-</td>
<td>ugushóboka those (ways) which are possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ugushóboka that (truth)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>which is possible</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 3: Nouns

Table 45b. Group 11 Nouns with Vowel Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function</th>
<th>singular example</th>
<th>plural example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>n/a [no forms attested]</td>
<td>n/a [no forms attested]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>n/a [no forms attested]</td>
<td>n/a [no forms attested]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>kw- kwáa kuuntu that way</td>
<td>kw- kwáa kuuntu those ways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss vn</td>
<td>kw' ukuuntu kw'umutégari-gori a woman's way</td>
<td>kw' ukuuntu kw'aabáana children's ways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss loc</td>
<td>n/a [no forms attested]</td>
<td>n/a [no forms attested]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc</td>
<td>woookoongeera kó ikí (Rundi) / waakoongeera hó ikí (Rwanda)</td>
<td>urakúumva (both) Do you understand them (the methods)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj</td>
<td>kw- ukuuntu kwiizá (both) a good way</td>
<td>kw- ukuuntu kwiizá (both) good ways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num</td>
<td>n/a [no forms attested]</td>
<td>n/a [no forms attested]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj</td>
<td>kw- ukuuri kwáári hé Where has the truth been?</td>
<td>kw- ukuuntu kwáári kuruhije The methods were tiring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>kw- kwááravúzwe (Rundi) kwááravúzwe (Rwanda) it (the truth) having been said</td>
<td>kw- kwáárakóreshejwe (Rundi) kwáárakóreshejwe (Rwanda) they (the methods) having being used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel subj</td>
<td>kw- ukuuri kwáámye (Rundi) as a matter of fact</td>
<td>kw- ko kwaashobotse that they (the ways) were possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel obj</td>
<td>ukw- ukwuüzuye that (truth) which is whole</td>
<td>ukw- ukwoóroshye (Rwanda) ukwoóroshe (Rundi) those (ways) which are easy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto</td>
<td>n'úkw- n'úkwiinye by that (truth) which is whole</td>
<td>n'úkw- n'úkwoóroshye (Rwanda) n'úkwoóroshe (Rundi) by those (ways) which are easy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass agent conj</td>
<td>n'úkw- n'úkwaanjye (Rwanda) n'úkwaanjye (Rundi) and my way</td>
<td>n'úkw- n'úkwaanjye (Rwanda) n'úkwaanjye (Rundi) and my ways</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The final construction (postposition /kó/) is mostly Rundi; in Rwanda it is usually /hó/ n10 (Table 44a).
Chapter 3: Nouns

3.2.12. Group 12 – Bantu Class 18

Singular: **mu-** {both} [strong] Bantu class 18 – before consonant stems

or Plural: **mw-** {both} – before vowel stems

There are no nouns that are strictly within this group. Nouns of other groups enter this classificatory system when they follow the preposition **mu**, which is derived from an old Bantu class 18 marker. There are basically two forms, **mu** before consonants and **mw** before vowels; note that these are both reduced (never have the pre-prefix). There is no formal distinction between singular and plural, nor do case forms other than the locative and the possessive ever appear. In fact, the only evidence for this as a class in Kinyarwanda and Kirundi is in the demonstrative system (see Chapter 5), which uses the affix **mu** in a strictly locative sense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 46a. Group 12 with Consonant Stems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 46b. Group 12 with Vowel Stems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2.13. Group 13 – Bantu Class 23

Singular &: **i-** {both} [weak] Bantu group 19 – before consonant stems

Plural: **y-** {both} – before vowel stems (only in possessives)\(^{250}\)

3.2.13.1. Semantic Characteristics of Group 13

The following nouns are considered members of this group based upon their generic locative meaning. Four are common to both dialects (two have alternate vowel length or differing final vowels); one is limited to Kinyarwanda.

/ímbere/ {both} ‘ahead, in front of, before; first [ordinal]; up front; inside; above (in value)’

/ímbere y’ínzu/ {both} ‘in front of the house’

/ímbere y’ishuúri/ {Rundi}, /ímbere y’ishuúri/ {Rwanda} ‘in front of the school’

/ínyma/ {both} ‘behind, the reverse, the other side; [adv] after, behind, backward, outside; afterwards, later’

/ínyma y’ínzu/ ‘behind the house’\(^{251}\)

/íbugiíbwa/ {Rwanda} ‘at a hangout, to a place one usually frequents’

/íkáanaaká/ {Rundi} (JN), /íkáanaaká/ {Rwanda} ‘at such and such a place, somewhere or other, at whatchamacallit’ [used when one can’t remember or doesn’t wish to reveal the location; Rundi: /ahaánttuüzé/ n10]

\(^{250}\) The only nouns in this class are formed on consonant roots. None to our knowledge are formed on vowel roots.

\(^{251}\) Some of these have alternative locative possessive agreement with n10, e.g., /ínyma h’ínzu/ {Rwanda} ‘the outside of the house,’ /ímbere h’ínzu/ ‘the front of the house.’
3.2.13.2. Derivations in Group 13

Locative nouns (e.g., /haasí/ 'below,' /heejuru/ 'above,' or /haanzé/ 'outside') followed by possessive constructions in y' or ya probably involve this class as a GENERIC LOCATIVE, and not n5.

/haáfí y'iintébe/ {both} 'near the chair'
/haákuno y'úurúuzíi/ {both} 'on this side of the river'
/haákurya y'úurúuzíi/ {both} 'beyond the river'
/haruguru y'ámaví/ {both} 'above the knees'
/hiíno y'úmusózi/ {both} 'on this side of the mountain'
/hiírya y'ívuuriro/ {both} 'beyond the clinic'

3.2.13.3. The Grammar of Group 13 Nouns

Nouns of other groups enter this classificatory system when they follow the preposition i, which is derived from an old Bantu class 19 marker. There is no formal distinction between singular and plural, nor do case forms other than the possessive and locative ever appear. This affix only has alternate forms (i vs. y) in its possessive and postpositional functions. Since this marker is either a single vowel or a single consonant, there is no REDUCED form. Hence, Table 47 does not have a second paradigm.

Table 47. Group 13 with Consonant and Vowel Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function</th>
<th>singular or plural example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prep</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ibumosó leftward, to the left, on the left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iruhaánde aside, on the side, to the side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>i kígáli {Rundi}, i kígali {Rwanda} in Kigali</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>i-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iyi here (near me); iríya this place here; iríiya {Rundi}, iríiya {Rwanda} over there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss [consonant]</td>
<td>ya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>inyuma ya Péetéro behind Peter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss [vowel]</td>
<td>yaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>inyuma yáanyu behind you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>inyuma y'ínzu behind the house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post [consonant]</td>
<td>-yó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>avuuyeyó she coming back from there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post [vowel]</td>
<td>-y'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yooherejey' ûmbwá {Rwanda} he sent dogs there</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Additional evidence for this class in Kinyarwanda and Kirundi is in the demonstrative system, which uses the affix i- in a generic locative sense (see Chapter 5), e.g., /ínó/ or /íryá/ 'hereabouts,' /íyo/ 'thereabouts.'

3.3. How Nouns Are Formed (Noun Derivations)

Nouns generally consist of a prefix, a root, a suffix, and a tone pattern. The tonality of nouns has been discussed in §3.1.2. The PREFIX always indicates the class membership of a noun (discussed in detail throughout §3.2). Bear in mind that, in accordance with linguistic accuracy, a ZERO PREFIX (Ø-) occurs on the subclasses of groups 1 (n1a) and 5 (n5b).

/umukúungu/ [P2rule] {both} n1 'rich person'
/ñntwaari/ [Rrule] {both} n1a 'Ntwari' (male personal name) [lit. 'the courageous one']
/umubábáro/ [Rrule] {both} n2 'grief, sorrow'
Chapter 3: Nouns

/išékuro/ [Rrule] {both} n3 'mortar (for pounding, grinding)'
/išikimenyeenso/ [Rrule] {both} n4 'sign, indication, mark'
/iši ndüürü/ [Arule+Erule] {both} n5 'cry of alarm, clamor'
/išiminisitéerí/ [Brule] {Rwanda} n5b 'ministry (of government)' < French
/išububabáre/ [P2rule] {both} n8 'suffering'

The root or stem may represent a noun, a verb, or an adjective base.

/umuu ntu/ [Rrule] {both} n1 'person, human being' < /:ntu/ {both} [Bantu noun root]
/ukuguru/ [Rrule] {both} n9-sg 'leg' < /-guru/ {both}; cf: /akaguru/ {both} n7 'small leg; part of one’s leg'
/inýongéra/ [Rundi], /inýongeera/ [Rwanda] [Arule + Erule] n5 'surplus, extra' < /-oongera/ [Rundi],
/–oongeera/ [Rwanda] v-ir 'add, increase, augment'
/ububí/ [Rrule] {both} 'ugliness, evil' < /–bí/ {both} adj-root 'bad, evil, ugly'
/abakúru/ [Rrule] [P2rule] {both} 'elders; important people, principals (of schools)' < /–kúru/ adj-root 'old, elderly' [cf:]

The suffix can be any one of the five cardinal vowels (-a, -e, -i, -o, -u), each of which conveys subtle changes in meaning and governs various tone patterns. Study the shifts in meaning among the following derivations from three different roots.

ROOT – /kór– or perfect stem – /kóz– 'work, do'
/inkór aúbús/ [Rrule+Erule+Xrule] {Rwanda} n5-cmp 'do-nothing, lazy or idle person'
/inkoré/ [P2rule] {Rwanda} 'gerundive'
/umukóz/ [Rrule] {both} 'worker, employee'

ROOT – /babar– or perfect stem – /báz– 'suffer, be hurt, have pain'
/imbabár/ [P2rule] {both} n5 'gravely-ill person; poor or destitute person'
/imbabáz/ [P2rule] {both} n5 'forgiveness, pardon'
/imbabáro/ [Rrule] n5 'pity, compassion'

ROOT – pf– < -pá 'to die'
/amapfá/ [Rrule] {both} 'famine, drought'
/igípfaamatiwi/ [Rrule + vowel lengthening] {both} n4-cmp 'deaf person'
/umupfákazi/ [Rrule + vowel lengthening] {both} n1 'widow'
/impífiír/ [P2rule] {Rwanda} n2-pl 'death, manner of dying'
/umupfú/ [Rrule] {both} n1 'dead person, cadaver, corpse'
/urupfú/ [Rrule] {both} n6 'death; mortality'

The following, then, are the most common derivational patterns in Kinyarwanda and Kirundi.

• Noun class prefix + ROOT

Although the following words end in a vowel, it is not analyzable as a suffix; rather it is part of the entire root.

/umwiwitá/ [Arule+Rrule] {both} n1-sg 'good-looker, beautiful woman, handsome man'
/abeënshi/ [Rrule] {both} n1-pl 'the majority'
/umuryaango/ [Rrule] {both} n2-sg 'family, clan, lineage, social group; organization'
/ikeyinyagú/ [Rrule] {both} n4 'honeycomb'
/inzu/ {both} n5-sg 'house, residence; building'
/ubuníni/ {both} n8-sg-abs 'size, bigness'

• Noun class prefix + ROOT + -a

/umuháanga – abaaháanga/ [P2rule] n1 'creative person, expert, specialist, scholar'
/isoonga – amasoonga/ [Rrule] {both} n3 'tip, point, endpoint, extreme'

252 If the verb /–kúra/ {both} 'grow (up), get bigger; age, get older' is considered the basis of this derivation, then the tone pattern follows the P2rule.
Chapter 3: Nouns

/impuunga/ [Rrule] {both} n5 'jackal' [lit. 'the fleeing one' < /–huunga/ {both} 'flee, run away']
/ukwíikuunda/ [Rrule] {both} n9-vn 'self-love, amor propio' < /–íikuunda/ {both} v-refl 'love oneself'

See umu-Δ-a [consonant root - Rrule, vowel root - Jrule] n1-sg (§3.2.1.2)
See umu-Δ-w-a [P2rule] n1-sg (§3.2.1.2)

See i-Δ-a or ama-Δ-a [mixed tone rules] n3 – the OBJECT or THEME of an action (§3.2.3.2)

See i-Δ-a [Rrule] n3-sg – an appropriate TIME for the action (§3.2.3.2)
See igi-Δ-a [mixed tone rules] n4-sg – derived from verbs (§3.2.4.2)
See igi-Δ-w-a [P2rule] n4-sg – derived from passive verbs (§3.2.4.2)

• Noun class prefix + ROOT + -e
See umu-Δ-e [P2rule] n1-sg (§3.2.1.2)
See igi-Δ-e [P2rule] n4-sg (§3.2.4.2)
See iN-Δ-e [P2rule] n5 (§3.2.5.2)
See uru-Δ-e [P2rule] n6 (§3.2.6.2)
See ubu-Δ-e [P2rule] n8 – abstract nouns derived from verbs (§3.2.8.2)

• Noun class prefix + ROOT + -i
See umu-Δ-i [Rrule & P2rule] n1-sg creates an agent noun expressing the DOER of an action (§3.2.1.2)
See uru-Δ-i [P2rule & Rrule] n6-sg (§3.2.6.2)

• Noun class prefix + ROOT + -yi
/umugeenzi/ [Rrule] {Rwanda} 'passenger' (R8b, R28) < /–geenda/ {both} 'go away, leave, depart'
/umuhísi/ [Rrule] {both} 'deceased person' (R17) < /–hitá/ {both} 'pass (by, over); set (of sun); end (rain)' /umusomyí [Rrule] {Rwanda} 'heavy drinker' (R4) < /–soma/ 'drink, imbibe'

See umu-Δ-yi [Rrule] n1-sg which indicates a person always associated with the action (§3.2.1.2)
See igi-Δ-yi [mixed tone rules] n4-sg (§3.2.4.2)

• Noun class 2 prefix + ROOT + -yi creates a RESULT noun
/umusuzi/ [Rrule] {both} n2 'fart' (R14) < /–sura/ 'break wind'
/umwéezi/ [Rrule] {both} n2 'moonlight' < /–éera/ 'be white, shine'

• Noun class 3 prefix + ROOT + -i creates an abstract verbal noun
/iraángí/ [P2rule] {both} n3 'color' (R18) [cf: /–raanga/ {both} 'indicate, show']
/isóni/ [Rrule] {both} 'modesty' (R17, R31, R33) [cf: /–sónera/ {both} 'esteem, have respect for, honor']

• Noun class prefix + ROOT + -o, yields a non-personal (RESULT or INSTRUMENTAL) noun
/umugono/ [Rrule] {both} n2 'snoring' < /–goná/ v-intr 'snore'
See umu-Δ-o [Rrule] n2-sg (§3.2.2.2)
See i-Δ-o or ama-Δ-o [Rrule] n3 (§3.2.3.2)
See igi-Δ-o n4-sg (§3.2.4.2)

• Noun class prefix + ROOT + -u
See umu-Δ-u [Rrule] {both} n1-sg (§3.2.1.2)
See uru-Δ-u [Rrule] {both} n6-sg (§3.2.6.2)
• Nouns formed with the associative prefix (nya-)
The (post)prefix nya- creates nouns indicating possession of, belonging to, or association with the following root. These derivations are often used in attributive functions (§6), given the small number of adjectives in Kinyarwanda and Kirundi. It comes after the class prefix, but before the root; if the following root has low tone, there is low tone on the derived word; if any of the following three syllables has high tone, -nya- will have high tone [Frule]; if the first syllable of the root (i.e., the immediately following mora) has high tone, the high tone is lost on the root [Xrule].

/umunyamabaanga/ [both] n1-sg 'confidant; [ext] secretary' [cf: /baanga/ n3-sg 'secret, secrecy']
/umunyáantégénké/ [Rwanda] n1-sg-cmp 'weakening, weak person; [atr] weak, feeble' [cf: /inter/ n5-pl-mass 'strength' + /mké/ adj-n5-pl 'few']
/umunyáabweenge/ [both] n1-sg 'wise man, intelligent person' [cf: /ubwéenge/ n8-sg 'knowledge']
/amanýákuri/ [both] n3-pl 'true words, honest talk; the truth' [cf: /ukuri/ n11-sg-obs 'truth']
/ikinyámakurú/ [both] n4-sg 'newspaper, journal, periodical' [cf: /amakurú/ n3-pl-ir 'news']
/ikinyáwóóya/ [Rundi], /ikinyáwooyá/ (Rwanda) n4-sg 'caterpillar' [cf: /bwóóya/ n8-sg 'wool, fur, body hair']
/inyámazúru/ [both] n5-sg/pl 'nasal passage; nasal sound' [linguistics] [cf: /izúru/ n3-sg 'nose,' /amazúru/ n3-pl 'nostrils']

If nya- begins a word, the syllable which follows usually receives high tone if there is a high tone within the word [Arule], otherwise low tone prevails throughout the derivation; if the immediately following syllable has high tone, that high tone will be lost [Xrule] (see also §3.2.1a.2).

/nyagasani/ [Rwanda] [low tone throughout] n1a-sg 'lord'
/nyákamwe/ [Rundi] [Frule exception], /nyakámwe/ [Rwanda] [Arule] n1a-sg 'person all alone in life (without any family), lone survivor' < /-mwé/ 'one'
/nyamínáání/ [both] [Arule + Rrule] n1a-sg (male personal name for the eighth child) < /umunaání/ 'eight'
/nyamwéeru/ [both] [Arule = Rrule] n1a-sg 'albino' < /-éera/ 'be white'
/nyabábyeeyi/ [Rwanda] [Arule + Xrule] n5b-sg 'uterus, womb' < /-byáara/

• Nouns formed from verbs can have any of the extensions, e.g., CAUSATIVE, BENEFACTIVE, RECIPROCAL, etc.

/igikórgesho/ [Rrule] [both] n4 'instrument, tool, utensil' < /-kóra/ [both] 'work' + -eesh- CAUSATIVE
/ikígwánjisho/ [Rrule] [Rundi] n4 'weapon' < /-gwáana/ [Rundi] 'fight' + -ish- CAUSATIVE
/mbárirango/ [Rrule] [both] n5b 'earsay' < /-báríra/ [both] v-ditr 'tell s.o. s.t.' + -an- RECIPROCAL
/urwánango/ [Rrule] [Rwanda] 'mutual hate' < /-danga/ [Rwanda] v-tr 'dislike, hate' + -an- RECIPROCAL
/inter/ [Arule = Rrule] n5-sg 'person who is not surpassed; [atr] unsurpassable' < /-suumba/ [both] v-tr 'surpass, exceed; excel, be over and above or greater than; dominate'
/indíshíma/ [Arule+Prule] [both] n5-sg/pl 'ingrate, ungrateful person, someone who is never content' < /-shíma/ praise; prefer; appreciate, approve of; agree with; be satisfied with; accept s.t. with pleasure'
/intium/vá/ [Arule+Prule] [Rundi] n5-sg/pl 'deaf; [fig] s.o. who will not listen or s.t. that will not do what it is supposed to;' [Rwanda] 'stubborn person (s.o. who does want to listen); [atr] disobedient, stubborn' < /-úmva/ [both] v-tr 'hear, listen'

253 Kimenyi notes that Kinyarwanda has an unexplained rightward high tone displacement on this form [Frule + Erule] (2002:288).
Chapter 3: Nouns

• Nouns can also be formed from POSTPOSITIONS.
  /imibeëréhé/ [P2rule+Erule] {Rwanda} n2-pl 'life, existence; manner of being there' < /–bá/ v-cop 'be' + /–er-/ [ben] + /–hó/ post 'there (on, off, in, above)'
  /indórerwamó/ [Arule+Erule] {Rwanda} n5-sg/pl 'mirror; eyeglasses' < /–rora/ v-intr 'observe, view' + /–er-/ [ben] + /–w-/ [passive] + /–mó/ post 'there (in that place or time)'
  /ukubahó/ [Erule] {both} n9-vn 'existence' < /–bá/ v-cop 'be' + /–hó/ post 'there (on, off, in, above)'

• Some nouns are formed by COMPOUNDING with other parts of speech
  /umugíranéezá/ [Arule + Rrule] {both} n1-sg-cmp 'benefactor, do-gooder' < /-gira/ v-tr {both} 'do (an act understood in context)' + /néezá/ adv 'well, nicely'
  /umupfáasóni/ [Rrule + vowel lengthening] {both} 'good woman' (R17) < /–pfá/ v-intr 'die' + /isóni/ n3-sg 'shame'
  /umutégarúgorí/ [Arule + Frule + Rrule] {Rwanda} n1-sg-cmp 'woman' < /–téga/ v-tr 'wear an ornament on one's head (usually of a woman who has given birth)' + /úrugorí/ n6-sg 'crown, diadem, tiara'

• Some nouns are formed by REDUPLICATION of the root or stem (see §2.5.17 for more details)
  /injúgujúgu/ {Rundi} n5-sg-redup / umujúgujúgu/ {Rwanda} n2-sg-redup 'stick used as a projectile'
  /igitíritíri/ {both} n4-sg-redup 'corncob'
  /ubushóorishóori/ {both} n8-sg-redup 'top (of a tree); peak, summit'

3.4. The Forms of the Noun

When nouns are used in sentences they have two forms: FULL (consisting of the entire prefix, discussed in the various sections of §3.2) and REDUCED.254

The full form has an initial vowel255 and the appropriate class prefix.

• It occurs on CITATION FORMS, such as when one lists a number of nouns.
  /inyama, umutsíma, imineke, imbogá/ (both) 'meat, dumplings, bananas, vegetables'

• It occurs when the noun is in INITIAL POSITION of the sentence, clause, or phrase (including the PREDICATE after a verb 'to be, ni, si, –rí).
  «Umugore wari umusomyi w'akagwa» (R4) 'A woman who was a heavy drinker…'
  «Umutumwajambo aba ari umwizigirwa» (R11) 'A spokesperson is usually trustworthy…'
  «Kanyanga… ni inzoga» (R24.1) 'Kanyanga is a liquor'

• It occurs when the noun is REVERSED from subject position.
  «I Kibungo habereye umuhango» (R8a) 'In Kibungo, a ceremony was held…'
  «Mu mugi Cap muri Afurika y'epfo habaye impanuka idasanzwe» (R8b) 'An unusual accident occurred in Cape Town, South Africa…'
  «Harakozwe ibibi vy'agahomerabunwa» (R37.4) 'Evil beyond belief has also been done.'

• It occurs when the noun is the OBJECT of a verb.
  «Umugabo yabwiye umwana wiwe» (R1) 'A man told his son.'
  «Banki nkuru y'igihugu yatangiywe gutanga inoti nshyashya z'amafaranga, 5000, 1000 na 500.» {Rwanda} 'The Central Bank has started providing brand new bills in denominations of 5000, 1000, and 500 francs. (R2)

254 Some authors speak of the noun's "losing its augment" or "Le nom perd l'augment" (e.g., Ntahokaja 1994:58).
255 This initial vowel is an ECHO of the vowel in the following syllable: umu-, aba-, imi-, ama-, iki-, ibi-, uru-, uku-, etc.
Chapter 3: Nouns

The reduced prefix usually loses its initial vowel (except for $n3$ and $n5a$), but keeps the appropriate class affix. Broadly speaking, the short form occurs after a range of grammatical or inflectional markers.

- It is found after locative prepositions (ku, mu, i, kwaa).
  - « ku ruti gu » 'on (his) shoulder' (R5)
  - « Prezida Kagame yagarutse ku kibazo » 'President Kagame revisited the problem' (R29.7)
  - « mu nam a » [both] 'in a meeting' (R9)
  - « mu mayuta y'ubuto » 'in vegetable oil' (R18)
  - /imusózi/ [Rwanda] 'on dry land'
  - « kwa muganga » [both] 'to a doctor' (R34.5)

- It comes after any demonstrative pronoun (deictic, §5).
  - « muri iyo ntara » [both] 'in that district' (R20)
  - « iryo bomba » [Rundi] 'that pump' (R23)
  - « icyo gihugu » [Rwanda] 'that country' (R10)
  - /umo muunsi/ [both] 'that day' (R29.8)
  - « umo mwavu » [both] 'that fertilizer' (R35.2)
  - « ya mbeba » [both] 'that mouse' (R27.10)

- It appears after the negatives ntaa [both] or ataa [Rundi].
  - « nta cyizere » [Rwanda] 'there was no hope' (R8.2)
  - « nta mpanuka nk'iyi » [both] 'no accident like this' (R16)
  - « nta kibi bamubona ko » [Rundi] 'there was nothing bad that they found about him' (R25.2)
  - « ata ngorane » [Rundi] 'no problem' (R33.1)
  - « ata burenganzira » [Rundi] 'has no right' (R33.4)

- Reduced forms come after the enumerative -ndi (§4.10.4).
  - « akandi gatelefone » [both] 'another telephone' (R7)
  - « nta kindi kiyago » [Rundi] 'no other (topic of) conversation' (R25.4)
  - « nta bandi bagabo » [both] 'no other witnesses' (R28.9)
  - « mu zindi ngingo » [Rwanda] 'in other joints' (R31.1)
  - « undi mubyeyi » [Rwanda] 'another parent' (R36.7)

- The shortened prefix is very common in vocative forms (see §3.6.5).
  - /bagábo/ [both] n1-pl-voc 'Oh men!'
  - /Ozuúba/ [both] n3-sg-voc 'Oh sun!' (R28.2,4)
  - /kibóondo/ [both] n4-sg-voc 'Oh infant!' (R36.2)
  - /Ømaána/ [both] n5-sg-voc 'Oh God!, Oh Lord!'

- After the derivational prefix nya-, nouns appear in their shortened form.
  - /umunyábuté/ [both] n1-sg 'lazybones, idler' <- /ubuté/ [both] n8-sg-abs 'indifference, negligence, laziness'
  - /umunyáwoooba/ [both] n1-sg 'coward, fearful person' <- /ubwóoba/ [both] n8-sg-abs 'fear, cowardice'
  - /ikinyamakurú/ [both] n4-sg 'newspaper, journal, periodical' <- /amakurú/ n3-pl-abs 'news'

- When the noun is used as a personal name it often loses its initial vowel.
  - /mugabo/ [both] n1a-sg-pn (male personal name) <- /umugabo/ [both] n1-sg 'man'
  - /mwéézi/ [both] n1a-sg-pn (male personal name) <- /umwéézi/ [both] n2-sg 'moonlight'
  - /gikeri/ [Rwanda] n1a-sg-pn (male personal name) <- /gikeri/ [Rwanda] n4-sg 'frog, toad'

- Kin terms formed from nouns often use the reduced prefix.
  - /musáaza/ [both] n1-sg-kin 'brother (said by a sister)' <- /umusáaza/ [both] n1-sg 'old man, elderly person'
  - /mukurú/ [both] n1-sg-kin 'elder sibling (brother or sister of the same sex)' <- /umukurú/ [both] n1-sg 'elder, old person, senior citizen; venerable person, respectable person; sage'
• When the noun is the second element in a compound it appears in reduced form.

/umuváandimwé/ {Rundi} n1-sg-cmp-kin 'blood relative of the same generation (close, but unspecified)'
/–va/ {both} 'come from' + /inda/ {both} n5-sg/pl 'belly, womb' + /imwé/ {both} num-n5-sg 'one'

/umucáámánza/ {both} n1-sg-cmp 'judge, magistrate' < /–cá/ {both} v-mono-tr 'cut' + /imaánza/ {both} n5-pl-ir 'disputes, litigations, lawsuits'

/ihipfáamatwí/ {both} n4-sg-cmp 'deaf person' < /–pfá/ {both} v-mono-st 'die' + /amatwí/ n9-pl 'ears'

/akaraangamuuntu/ {Rundi} n7-sg-cmp, /indaangamuuntu/ {Rwanda} n5-sg-cmp 'identification' < /–raanga/ {both} v-tr 'show, identify' + /umuuntu/ n1-sg 'person'

/uburéengaanzirá/ {both} n8-sg-cmp 'authorization, approval, consent; privilege, (exclusive) right' < /–réenga/ {both} v-tr 'cross; jump, step or walk over; exceed, overtake' + /inzira/ {both} n5-sg-i 'road, street, path, way'

3.5. Irregular Nouns

Although the vast majority of nouns follow the class system to which each belongs, there are several that (1) have some irregularity in their formation, (2) do not have a corresponding plural – (3) or singular – form, or (4) "jump" from one class to another. Note that there are recurring patterns in most instances, so that such words can be learned in smallish groups or sets.

3.5.1. Irregular in Formation

/nyirá/- /{Rwanda}, /nyené/- /{Rundi} n1a-sg, /beéne/- /{both} n1a-pl 'proprietor, master of, owner of'
[marker of proprietary nouns or male personal names]

/iryíinyo – améenyo/ {both} n3 'tooth; [pl] teeth' [archaic prefix iry- instead of simplified i-]

/iijiisho – amáaso/ {both} n3 'eye' [archaic prefix iji- instead of simplified i-; change of s > sh]

/ijaambo – amagaambo/ /{Rwanda} n3 'word' [irregular change of g > j;256 note the consistency in Rundi /amajaambo/ where the root of both singular and plural is /–jaambo/]

/ijana – amagana/ /{Rwanda} num-n3 'hundred' [irregular change of g > j; note Rundi /amajana/]

3.5.2. No Plural

Abstract or collective nouns in any class do not generally have a plural. This applies broadly to group 8 (see §3.2.8.1), but also to the following:

/umwidigemvyo/ /{Rundi} n2-sg-abs 'liberty, freedom'

/icó/ {both} n3-sg-abs 'dirt, dirtiness; stain, taint; filthiness, squalor'

/irágí/ /{Rundi} n3-sg-abs 'inheritance, heritage, legacy; custom or behavior inherited from one's ancestors'257

/igihogó/ {both} n4-sg-abs 'brown, reddish brown, russet color of livestock'

/imvúra/ /{both} n5-sg-col 'rain'

/inñoróra/ /{both} n5-sg-col 'cough, cold'

/inzara/ /{both} n5-sg-abs 'hunger, famine'

/inýóota/ /{both} n5a-sg-abs 'thirst'

/isúkaári/ /{both} n5a-sg-col 'sugar' < Arb

/urudéende/ /{Rundi} n6-sg-abs 'singular'

/ubwaátsi/ /{Rundi} n8-sg-col [both] 'grass (tall sp., used especially for building); pasture, prairie'

/ukuri/ /{both} n11 'truth'

256 This is similar to the palatal sound changes discussed in §2.5.7, but is (a) irregular and (b) limited to Kinyarwanda.

257 Rwanda /umuragé/ which derives from the same root, /–raga/ 'bequeath,' and covers the same meanings does have a plural /imiragé/, illustrating how each dialect has its own idiom.
3.5.3. No Singular

Nouns designating certain liquids are in group 3 plural (see §3.2.3.1). There are also the following found only with a plural prefix:

- /amaganyá/ {both} n3-pl 'anxiety, grief'
- /amagará/ {both} n3-pl 'strength'
- /amajaambere/ {Rundi}, /amajyaambere/ {Rwanda} n3-pl 'progress'
- /amaakira/ {Rwanda} n3-pl 'rain (of short duration)'
- /amakiiuka/ {both} n3-pl 'mid-afternoon (from about 2 to 3 p.m., when the cows leave the pasture to go to a watering place)'
- /amapfá/ {both} n3-pl-mass 'famine, drought'
- /ibirori/ {both} n4-pl 'ceremonies, (public) festivities'
- /ibitaro/ {both} n4-pl 'hospital'
- /ibyiiringiro/ {Rwanda} n4-pl-col 'hope, trust, confidence'
- /udutá/ {both} n7-pl 'a little milk'
- /utúuzi/ {both} n7-pl 'a little water'

3.5.4. Jumping of Classes

- 3-5 (Group 3 singular, but Group 5 plural)
  /isóni – isóni/ {both} n3-sg-ir 'modesty, decency; shyness, (sense of) shame; respect'
  /iyígiisha – iyígiisha/ {both} n3-sg-ir 'teaching, instruction, education; doctrine'

- 5-3 (Group 5 singular, but Group 3 plural)
  /ìbahashá – amabahashá/ {both} n5a 'envelope'
  /ibaánkí/ {Rundi} n5a, /baánkí/ {Rwanda} n5b – /amabaánkí/ {both} 'bank' < French
  /ibáruwá – amabáruwá/ {Rwanda} n5a 'letter, writing; Scripture'
  /iboombo – amaboombo/ {both} n5a 'faucet, tap, pump-well (source of flowing water)' < Swahili
  /ibutura – amabutura/ {both} n5a 'shorts' < Swahili -butula 'cut off'
  /idólaari – amadólaari/ {both} n5a 'dollar' < English / French dollar
  /ìfì – amafì/ {both} n5a 'fish'
  /ifú – amafú/ {both} n5a 'flour, powder'
  /ikaanzu – amakaanzu/ {both} n5a 'dress (clothing), robe, cassock'
  /inkurú – amakurú/ {both} n5 'news'
  /inzira – amayíra/ {both} n5 'road, path, way'
  /inzu – amazu/ {both} n5 'house, residence'
  /isábuné – amasábuné/ {Rwanda} n5a, /isábúni – amasábúni/ n5a {Rundi} 'soap' < Arabic
  /isaáke – amasaáke/ {both} n5a 'rooster, cock'
  /ishá – amashá/ {both} n5a 'gazelle'
  /ishu – amashu/ {both} n5a 'cabbage' < French
  /ishuùre – amashuùre/ {Rundi} 'school'
  /isuka – amasúka/ {both} 'pick-axe, hoe'

- 6-3 (Group 6 singular, but Group 3 plural)
  «urujya n’uruza – amajya n’amaza» {Rwanda} 'comings and goings'
  /urura – amara/ {both} 'intestine, entrail'
  /urushi – amashi/ {Rundi}, /urushyí – amashyí/ {Rwanda} 'palm, interior part of the hand (including the fingers)'

- 6-8 (Group 6 singular, but Group 8a plural)
  /uruhivú – ubuhivú/ {Rwanda} 'raffia fiber (made from the leaves and used for mats, baskets, etc.)'
  /ururo – uburó/ {both} 'millet, eleusine (grass sp. with spikelets)'
  /ururábyo – uburábyo/ {Rwanda} 'flower'
  /urwoóya – ubwoóya/ {both} 'wool, fur, body hair'
3.6. Noun Cases

Broadly speaking, case is the system that each language has for identifying the role of nouns within a sentence. Some languages (like Latin, German, Russian, or Greek) have special markers (such as suffixes) for each case. Other languages (like English or Bantu) primarily use word order to identify who is doing what to whom. However, there are also mixed systems where some cases do receive morphological marking (such as the English LOCATIVE to, from, into or POSSESSIVE 's, of). For an overview of noun cases, see §1.8.5 and Table 22.

3.6.1. Subject (Nominative\textsuperscript{258})

Linguists sometimes describe languages in terms of the typical order of parts within a sentence. Both English and Kinyarwanda-Kirundi are called SVO (subject – verb – object) languages, because within a standard sentence, the subject comes first. This is not always the case (see §16), but it is usually so. More importantly, the subject and the verb share an intimate relationship called AGREEMENT. In Bantu languages the verb has a special marker that echoes the CLASS and NUMBER of the subject.\textsuperscript{259} A full table of all such prefixes is found in the next chapter (§4.2) under SUBJECT PRONOUN AGREEMENT. The following examples illustrate the role of NOUN SUBJECTS across several noun classes.

«Nyirahakizimana a fite imyaka 38» {Rwanda} \textit{n1-sg-subj} ‘Nyirahakizimana is 38 years old’ (R34.1)
«abana b'abakobwa bgaracari bake mu mashure» {Rundi} \textit{n1-pl-subj} ‘Girls in schools are few’ (R39.2)
«umwijima ubona impyisi» {both} \textit{n2-sg-subj} ‘the darkness found a hyena’ (R28.3)
«Iyo myumbati kugira ngo ibashe kuribwa» {both} \textit{n2-pl-subj} ‘So that those cassavas can be eaten’ (R20)
«itabi riza kwamamazwa» {both} \textit{n3-sg-subj} ‘tobacco came to be popular’ (R26)
«Amabahasha azokwugururwa mu nama» {Rundi} \textit{n3-pl-subj} ‘the envelopes will be opened at the meeting’ (R9)
«igihugu gishobore gutera imbere» {both} \textit{n4-sg-subj} ‘a country should be capable of making progress’ (R29.6)
«ibivobyabwenge birimo imigabane ibiri» {Rwanda} \textit{n4-pl-subj} ‘drugs are in two categories’ (R26)
«impanuka ya bisi ihitana abantu 39» {both} \textit{n5-sg-subj} ‘the bus accident kill(ed) 39 people’ (R16)
«invama ... zamara guhindura ibara» {both} \textit{n5-pl-subj} ‘the meats have changed color’ (R18)
«Ururimi rwawe rugaba ituze» {both} \textit{n6-sg-subj} ‘Your words bestow tranquility’ (R36.6)

3.6.2. Object (Accusative\textsuperscript{260})

In English and in most Bantu languages, objects are the ”other end” of verbs (SVO), that to which the verb is directed. In Kinyarwanda-Kirundi one must distinguish between an EXTERNAL as opposed to an INTERNAL OBJECT. An object pronoun may occur on the verb\textsuperscript{261} [INTERNAL], whereas a full noun will appear in the sentence after the verb [EXTERNAL]. However, the two cannot co-occur; one cannot have the same internal and external object in a single sentence.

«umwijima ubona impyisi» {both} \textit{n5-sg-obj} ‘the darkness found a hyena’ (R28.3)
«umwijima uray ibona» {both} \textit{n5-sg-pro-obj} ‘the darkness found it’

\textsuperscript{258} NOMINATIVE is the name of the case identifying the subject of a finite or copulative verb in Latin; it has been applied broadly to the grammar of other languages.

\textsuperscript{259} Whereas in English the subject agrees with the PERSON and NUMBER of the head noun, e.g., \textit{I am going}, \textit{you are earning}, \textit{he finds a solution}, etc. Note that if -\textit{s} PLURAL does not occur on the subject, -\textit{s} marking the PRESENT TENSE will appear on the verb: \textit{the boy works}, \textit{the boys work}. Hence, -\textit{s} alternates with ZERO in English.

\textsuperscript{260} ACCUSATIVE is the name of the case identifying the direct object of a verb or some prepositions in Latin; it has been applied broadly to the grammar of other languages.

\textsuperscript{261} In such cases, the verb has the structure: SUBJ-(ASPECT)-OBJ-\textit{A}-TENSE.
Chapter 3: Nouns

Note that "umwijima ura ibona impyisi" is totally unacceptable.

When a noun is first introduced, it usually appears after the verb as an external object. In subsequent sentences, it would then appear as an internal pronoun. This is similar to English where we introduce an object into our discussion (I visited my friend John) and then refer to him, her or it with a pronoun (I invited him to a movie). A full table of all internal affixes or INFIXES is found in the next chapter under OBJECT PRONOUN AGREEMENT. The following examples illustrate the role of noun objects across several noun classes.

«Umugabo yabwiye umwana w'ira» {Rundi} n1-sg-obj 'A man told his son' (R1)  
«Impanuka ya bisi ihitana abantu 39» {both} n1-pl-obj 'The bus accident kill(ed) 39 people' (R16)  
«Ahubwo nababereye umutwaru» {both} n2-sg-obj 'instead I have become a burden for them' (R34.5)  
«Mu gikonjo Gisabo yambara imiringa ibiri y'isengà» {Rundi} n2-pl-obj 'On his wrist Gisabo wore two amulets' (R5)  
«Ururimi rwawe rugaba ituze» {Rwanda} n3-sg-obj 'Your words bestow tranquility' (R36.6)  
«Yarirukanye ibitero vy'Abarabu» {Rundi} n4-pl-obj 'He pursued the Arab troops' (R3)  
«... igihugu gishobore gutera imbere» {both} n5-sg-obj '... a country should be capable of making progress' (R29.6)  
«Banki nkuru y'igihugu yatangiye gutanga inoti nshyashya z'amafaranga» {Rwanda} n5-pl-obj 'The Central Bank started issuing brand new francs' (R2)  
«Niko gufata akandi gatelefone ka mugenzi we» {both} n7-sg-obj 'So he borrowed another cell phone from his friend.'  
«Mwezi yari umwami yagerageje kubungabunga ubumwe bw'Uburundi» {both} n8-sg-obj 'Mwezi was the king who tried to safeguard the unity of Burundi.' (R3)

Table 48. Possessive or Noun Phrase Agreement Markers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>class of head</th>
<th>part of speech</th>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>PRO or NUM</th>
<th>a vowel</th>
<th>INF or LOC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n1-sg</td>
<td>wa</td>
<td>waa</td>
<td>w'</td>
<td>wó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-pl</td>
<td>baa</td>
<td>bó</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-sg</td>
<td>wa</td>
<td>waa</td>
<td>w'</td>
<td>wó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-pl</td>
<td>ya</td>
<td>yó</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-sg</td>
<td>ryaa</td>
<td>ryó</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-pl</td>
<td>ya</td>
<td>yó</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-sg</td>
<td>caa {Rundi}</td>
<td>c'</td>
<td>có</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cyaa {Rwanda}</td>
<td>cy'</td>
<td>cyó</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-pl</td>
<td>vyaa {Rundi}</td>
<td>vy'</td>
<td>vyó</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>byaa {Rwanda}</td>
<td>by'</td>
<td>byó</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-sg</td>
<td>ya</td>
<td>yó</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-pl</td>
<td>zaa</td>
<td>zó</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-sg</td>
<td>rwa</td>
<td>rwó</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-pl</td>
<td>zaa</td>
<td>zó</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-sg</td>
<td>kaa</td>
<td>kó</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-pl</td>
<td>twaa</td>
<td>twó</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-sg</td>
<td>bwa</td>
<td>bwó</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-pl</td>
<td>ya</td>
<td>yó</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-sg</td>
<td>kwa</td>
<td>kó</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-pl</td>
<td>ya</td>
<td>yó</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10-loc</td>
<td>haa</td>
<td>hó</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11-adv</td>
<td>kwa</td>
<td>kwó</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n12-loc</td>
<td>mwaa</td>
<td>mwó</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n13-loc</td>
<td>ya</td>
<td>yó</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.6.3. Possessive or Attributive (Genitive) - Noun Phrase Agreement Markers

Unlike the subject and object cases, which are indicated by word order or context, the possessive case does have a special series of markers. These are composed of the thematic consonant for each noun class and one of three connectives, /-a/, /-aa/, and /-ó/, depending on the type of word that follows (see Table 48). If a pronoun or numeral follows, the long /aa/ will appear; if a verbal noun or locative\(^{262}\) follows, the high-toned /ó/ will appear; otherwise, the short /a/ is used on weak forms. However, if the following word begins with a vowel, both the short /a/ and long /aa/ will drop.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Possessive Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/umwiígiisha wáanyu/</td>
<td>{both} 'your teacher'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umwiígiishwa waa káne/</td>
<td>{both} 'the fourth student'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umwiígiisha w'úmugabo/</td>
<td>{both} 'a male teacher'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umwiígiisha wa yóhaáni/</td>
<td>{both} 'John's teacher'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/abíigísha baa yóhaáni/</td>
<td>{both} 'John's teachers'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umwiíshwa wa mugabo/</td>
<td>{Rundi}, /umwiíshywa wa mugabo/</td>
<td>{Rwanda} 'Mugabo's nephew'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/umugabo wó mu baantu/</td>
<td>{Rwanda} 'a witness among humans' (R28.8)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.6.3.1. The Tonality of Possessive Constructions

The tone pattern of possessives depends upon the shape of the agreement marker and whether the following word begins with a consonant or a vowel.

Possessives in -ó are the most straightforward, tonally speaking. There always is a high tone on the final /ó/ and the tonality of accompanying nouns is not influenced, each noun keeps whatever tonality it has.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Possessive Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/umuuntu wó ku karwa/</td>
<td>{Rwanda} n1-sg-poss-loc-n7sg 'a person from the little island'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/abanyaambo bó mu rwaanda/</td>
<td>{both} n1-sg-poss-loc-n6-geog 'the Nyambo people of Rwanda' (R38.11)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/abanyáigíhúgu bó mu ntáará/</td>
<td>{Rundi} n1-pl-poss-loc-n5-sg 'the citizens of the district' (R39.4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/igitúntu có mu mahahá/</td>
<td>{Rundi} n4-sg-poss-loc-n3-pl 'tuberculosis of the lungs' (R31)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/saa ziné zó mu gitóondo/</td>
<td>{Rundi} n5-pl-poss-loc-n4-sg 'ten o'clock in the morning' (R9)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/imíti y'úubwóoko bwóose/</td>
<td>{Rwanda} n2-pl-poss-n8-sg 'medicines of all kinds'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/hagatí y'úumwáaka/</td>
<td>{Rwanda} n10-loc/n13-poss-n2-sg 'the middle of the year'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

"Innocenti" /hó mu butariyaáni/ {Rwanda} 'Innocenti in Italy' (R6)

If the word which follows a possessive in -a begins with a vowel (i.e., usually a noun group marker), the -a of the agreement marker drops (indicated in writing by an apostrophe) and the remaining vowel acquires high tone [H rule].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Possessive Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/umwiígiisha w'úmugabo/</td>
<td>{both} n1-sg-poss-n1-sg 'a male teacher'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ku gitúgu c'íburyó/</td>
<td>{Rundi} n4-sg-poss-n13-loc 'on (his) right shoulder' (R5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ibikorwá by'úbutabaazi/</td>
<td>{Rwanda} n4-pl-poss-n8-sg 'rescue efforts' [lit. 'actions of rescue'] (R8)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Furthermore, if the vowel in the immediately following syllable (i.e., the next mora) has high tone, then the initial high vowel becomes long (see §2.2.2.3). This is one mechanism for allowing each of two consecutive high tones to remain (see §2.4.25).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Possessive Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/imíti y'úubwóoko bwóose/</td>
<td>{Rwanda} n2-pl-poss-n8-sg 'medicines of all kinds'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/hagatí y'úumwáaka/</td>
<td>{both} n10-loc/n13-poss-n2-sg 'the middle of the year'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the word which follows a possessive in -a begins with a consonant and if a high tone occurs anywhere within the word, the first syllable following the agreement marker will acquire a high tone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Possessive Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/umuheto wa dáatá/</td>
<td>{both} 'my father's bow'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/akáana kaa kábaáre/</td>
<td>{both} 'a small child from Kabare'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^{262}\) Usually of noun groups 10-12.
Chapter 3: Nouns

However, if the word does not have any high tone, then the entire possessive phrase will be low-toned.

/umwáana wa perezida/ {both} n1-sg-poss-n1a-sg 'the president's child'
/imití ya mugiga/ {both} n2-pl-poss-n5b-sg 'medicines for meningitis'

These observations apply to noun constructions only; possessive pronouns have different tone rules as we shall see in the next chapter.

3.6.3.2. The Meaning or Use of Possessive Constructions

The construction NOUN – AGREEMENT MARKER – NOUN is not merely used to mark possession. It connects two nouns together and can serve to mark a whole range of relationships, including attribution. Since Bantu languages have a very small number of true adjectives (see §6), the linking of two nouns can allow the second to modify or describe the first in a variety of ways discussed below. Note that each such construction involves a two-way noun class agreement, uniting the noun group of the possessor with that of the possessed.

• Possessive Relationship
The most common use of these noun phrase agreement markers is to link a POSSESSOR and a thing POSSESSED.

«umunyamabanga w’ishirahamwe» {Rundi} n1-sg-poss-n3-sg 'the secretary of the association' (R9)
«imigenzo y’ikirundi» {both} n2-pl-poss-n4-sg 'Rundi traditions' (R11)
«icyemezo cy’Innocenti» {Rwanda} n4-sg-poss-n5b-sg 'a resolution in Innocenti (Italy)' (R6)
«ibitero vy’Abarabu» {Rundi} n4-pl-poss-n1-pl 'Arab troops' (R3)
«inkomoko y’umwana» {both} n5-sg-poss-n1-sg 'the parentage of a child' (R13)
«intambara y’i Burundi» {both} n5-sg-poss-loc-n8-sg 'the war in Burundi' (R10)
«isuku y’ifi» {Rwanda} n5a-sg-poss-n5a-sg 'the cleanliness of the stingray' (R12)
«banki nkuru y’igihugu» {both} n5b-sg-poss-n4-sg 'the Central Bank' [lit. 'the major bank of the country'] (R2)
«leta y’u Burundi» {both} n5b-sg-poss-n8-sg 'the Burundi government' (R10)
«ubuyobozi bw’ishirahamwe» {Rundi} n8-sg-poss-n3-sg 'the management of the association' (R9)
/ubumwé bw’úburúndi/ {both} n8-sg-poss-n8-sg 'the unity of Burundi' (R3)
/imbere h’ínzu/ {Rwanda} n13-loc-poss-n10+n5-sg 'the front side of the house'

• Simple Apposition or Linking
Sometimes nouns are linked together in a way that appears redundant in English, but is required in Kinyarwanda or Kirundi to SPECIFY THE NOUN because such a meaning does not exist as a single word, e.g., child LINK male = boy, person LINK female = woman. In such simple apposition, the class of both the possessor and the possessed is often the same, although it can differ, as illustrated in the last example below.

«umwana w’umuhungu w’unumyambo» {both} n1-sg-poss-n1-sg-poss-n1-sg 'a Nyambo boy' (R38)
«abana b’abahungu» {both} n1-pl-poss-n1-pl 'boys' [lit. 'young male children'] (R38)
«abana b’abakobwa» {both} n1-pl-poss-n1-pl 'girls' [lit. 'female children'] (R39)
/umuuntu w’úmusáaza yambwi'ikinyarwaanda sinuumva/ {both} 'An old man spoke to me in Rwanda, but I did not understand' (Overdulve 1975:291)
/har’umuuntu w’úmugor’úsháak’umuti/ {Rwanda} 'There is a woman who is looking for medication' (Overdulve 1975:291)
«ingwara y’igítuntu» {Rundi} n5-sg-poss-n4-sg 'tuberculosis' [lit. 'the disease of tuberculosis'] (R31)
• Attribution or Modifier Describing a Noun

Very often the second noun in a possessive construction can be used ATTRIBUTIVELY to modify or describe the first, taking on a role similar to adjectives in English.

/umuuntu w’úmutúunzi/ [Rundi] n1-sg-poss-n1-sg-poss 'a wealthy person' [lit. 'a person of rich man']

« umusomyi w’akagwa » [Rwanda] n1-sg-poss-n7-sg-poss 'a heavy drinker' [lit. 'a drinker of some banana beer']

(R4)

/uriya ń’umuntu wó kuryá nó kunyá/ [both] n1-sg-poss-verb-inf 'That is a man given to eating and drinking' (Overdulve 1975:267)

« umuceri w’ipirawu » [both] n2-sg-poss-n5a-sg-poss 'rice pilaf' [lit. 'rice of pilaf'] (R18)

« ku gitugu c’uburyo » [Rundi] n4-sg-poss-n8-sg-poss 'on (his) right shoulder' (R5)

« inama y’icese » [Rundi] n5-sg-poss-n4-sg-poss 'public meeting' [lit. 'a meeting of openness'] (R9)

« Afurika y’epfo » [both] n5b-sg-poss-n13-loc-poss 'South Africa' (R8)

« urupapuro rw’umutsindo » [Rundi] n6-sg-poss-n2-sg-poss 'diploma' [lit. 'paper of success'] (R17.3)

• Partitive Genitive

Some possessive constructions are formed in such a way that the first noun is a part of what is stated by the second noun. Note how Rwanda-Rundi parallel English in this PART-WHOLE relationship.

« igipande c’impuzu » [Rundi] n4-sg-poss-n5-sg-poss 'a piece of cloth' (R5)

« impapuro z’igitabo » [both] n5-pl-poss-n4-sg-poss 'the pages of the book' (Rodegem 1970:141)

« ibisaté by’úmugaati bibiri » [Rwanda] n4-pl-poss-n2-sg-poss 'two slices of bread' (Jacob Vol.3:39)

« igicé cyaa káriindwi cy’ícyo gitabo » [Rwanda] n4-sg-poss-num-ord-poss-deic2-n4-sg-poss 'the seventh chapter of that book' (Jacob Vol.1:176)

« igicé cy’ikijuumba » [Rwanda] n4-sg-poss-n4-sg-poss 'a slice of sweet potato' (Jacob Vol.1:176)

• Material Of Which Something Is Made

Some possessive constructions indicate the MATERIAL FROM WHICH the head noun is made.

« impuzu y’igiti y’ubuyonga » [Rundi] n5-sg-poss-n4-sg-poss-n8-sg-poss 'cloth from twisted fig bark' (R5)

« akagundu k’umushatsi » [Rundi] n7-sg-poss-n2-sg-poss 'a tuft of hair' (R5)

« inzoga y’ibitoke » [both] n5-sg-poss-n4-pl-poss 'banana beer' (R15)

« akuko k’igiti » [Rwanda] n7-sg-poss-n4-sg-poss 'wooden spoon' (R18)

« inkweeto z’úruhu » [both] n5-pl-poss-n6-sg-poss 'leather shoes'

« inzu y’amabuye » [both] n5-sg-poss-n3-pl-poss 'stone house'

« inzu y’ibyatsi » [Rwanda] n5-sg-poss-n4-pl-poss 'grass house'

• Content

Some possessive constructions serve to indicate CONTENT, i.e., what the head noun contains.

/umufúko w’úmuceri/ [Rundi] (JN), /umufuka w’úmuceri/ [Rwanda] n2-sg-poss-n2-sg-poss 'a sack of rice'

/umuziinga w’ínzúki/ [both] n2-sg-poss-n6-pl-poss 'a hive of bees'

/imitibá iné y’ámasaká/ [Rwanda] n2-pl-poss-n3-pl-poss 'four silos of kaffir corn' (Jacob Vol.3:340)

« ikíro cy’umuceri » [Rwanda] n4-sg-poss-n2-sg-poss 'a kilo of rice' (R18)

« igitebo cy’ibijumba » [Rwanda] n4-sg-poss-n4-pl-poss 'a basket of yams'

« inshuro eshatu z’amazi » [Rwanda] n5-pl-poss-n3-pl-poss 'three times the water' (R18)

/inguunguru z’ámamesa/ [Rwanda] n5-pl-poss-n3-pl-poss 'barrels of palm oil' (Jacob Vol.1:405)

« itoni 12 z’imbuto ya soya » [Rundi] n5a-pl-poss-n5-sg-poss-n5b-sg-poss '12 tons of soy seeds' (R9)

263 Note that subsequent infinitives are marked by /nó/ 'and of.'
Chapter 3: Nouns

• Use or Purpose

Some possessive constructions serve to indicate the USE or PURPOSE of the head noun.

«imikino y’ijonjora» [Rwanda] n2-pl-poss-n3-sg ‘trial games’ [lit. ‘games of selection’] (R30)
«amafaranga yo gutura» [both] n3-pl-poss-v-inf ‘collection, offering (in church)’ [lit. ‘money for offering’]
«amavuta yo kwisiga» [both] n3-mass-poss-v-inf ‘body lotion’ [lit. ‘oil for smearing on oneself’]
/ikibiíndi cy’urwáagwá/ [Rwanda] n4-sg-poss-n6-sg ‘wine jug’ [lit. ‘a pitcher for banana beer or wine’]
«inzu y’ibitabo» [both] n5-sg-poss-n4-pl ‘library’ [lit. ‘house of books’]
«inzu yo gutambiramwo» [Rundi] n5-sg-poss-v-inf+post ‘nightclub’ [lit. ‘house for dancing in’] (R7)
«inkwi zo kwitekera» [both] n5-sg-poss-v-inf ‘firewood (for a stove)’ [lit. ‘wood for cooking’] (R34#4)

• Ordinal Numeral Describing A Noun

Ordinal numbers are typically linked to the head noun by a possessive marker appropriate to their noun group.

/umusózi wa kábiri/ [both] n2-sg-poss ‘the second hill’
/igicé cyaa káriindwi/ [Rwanda] n4-sg-poss ‘the seventh chapter’ (Jacob Vol.1:176)
/urupaapuro rwaa káne/ [both] n6-sg-poss ‘fourth page’ (Rodegem 1967:27)
/ukwéezi kwaa mbere/ [both] n9-sg-poss ‘January’ [lit. ‘the month of first’]
/ahaantu h-íicúmi/ [Rundi] n10-loc-poss ‘the tenth place’ (Cristini 2000:118)

• Linker of Locative or Infinitive Constructions to a Head Noun

Locative or infinitive constructions are linked to a head noun with the high-toned /-ó/ derivations.

/umuhuúngu wó mu gití/ [both] n1-sg-poss-loc-n4-sg ‘a boy in a tree’ [Overdulve 1975:267]
/abaámi bó kw’isí/ [both] n1-pl-poss-loc-n5-sg ‘kings of the world’ (Rodegem 1967:27)
/umugabo wó gufásha abarwáayi/ [both] n1-sg-poss-inf+obj ‘a man who helps the sick’ [Overdulve 1975:267]
/ibiintu byó muu nzu/ [Rwanda] n4-pl-poss-loc-n5-sg ‘things that are found in the house’ [Overdulve 1975:267], /ibiintu vyó muu nzu/ [Rundi]
«Lycée yo mw’Ijenda» [both] n5b-sg-poss-loc-pn-geog ‘the Ijenda High School’ (R17)

3.6.3.3. Nominalized Possessive Constructions

There is a special construction available that turns a possessive into a noun. It is formed by adding the thematic vowel of a noun group before the possessive marker. These are given in Table 49. As with possessive markers and other prefixes, the final vowel drops before another vowel. The same tonal rules and changes discussed in §3.6.3.1 apply.

/uwu ni uwaa mbere/ [both] n1-sg-nom-poss-n1-sg ‘That is the first (witness).’ (R28.4)
/uw’intoöre cyaa ne avamó ati …/ [Rwanda] n1-sg-nom-poss-n5-sg ‘one of the brightest (guests) announces …’ (R14)
/ab’imuhiirá/ [both] n1-pl-nom-poss-n2-loc ‘the ones at home’ (R34.3)
/niibwiiraga kó ab’imuhiiráa barí buburáare/ [Rwanda] n1-pl-nom-poss-n2-loc ‘I assumed that my family would most surely go to bed hungry.’ (R34.3)
/abiya báiirá/ [both] n3-sg-nom-poss-num-n1-pl ‘just between two’ [cf: /iýambo/ n3-sg ‘discussion’]
/iiryúmooondo risigira a kuukúnda ibikorwá/ [Rundi] n3-sg-nom-poss-n2-sg ‘yellow [lit. the one of yellow] signifies the love of work.’ (R29.6)
/iicyúumwéeru/ [Rwanda] n4-sg-nom-poss-n2-sg-time ‘week’
/iicy’iibaañze ngo twiibáätre gusoma/ [Rwanda] n4-sg-nom-poss-n3-sg ‘The most important thing is that we should make an effort to read.’ (R4)
/içókuryá – ivókuryá/ [Rundi], /icyókuryá – ibyókuryá/ [Rwanda] n4-sg-nom-poss-v-inf ‘food’ [lit. ‘something to eat’]
Chapter 3: Nouns

/ivy’ikiréé/ {Rundi}, /iby’ikiréé/ {Rwanda} n4-pl-nom-pass-n4-sg ‘those relating to the atmosphere’
/iy’inda/ {both} n2-pl-nom-pass-n5-sg ‘(promises) of the belly,’ i.e., self-interest [cf: /imihigo/ n2-pl ‘promises’]
/iz’uumwáana/ {both} n5-pl-nom-pass-n1-sg ‘those (clothes) of the child’ (Rodegem 1967:30)
/iz’ubuzima busaanzwé/ {both} n5-pl-nom-pass-n8-sg ‘(causes relating) to typical health’
/ak’imuhana kaaza imvúra ihíse/ {both} n7-sg-nom-pass-n2-sg-loc ‘better not count on others’
[/ak’imuhana/ lit. ‘that which concerns someone’s place’]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 49. Nominalized Possessive Constructions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the following word starts with a consonant and is a vowel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part of speech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class of head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10-loc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11-adv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n12-loc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n13-loc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It should be noted that the names of the days of the week (uwa gátatu ‘Wednesday’ with umuínsi n2 ‘day’ understood) and the months of the year (ukwaa gátatu ‘March’ with ukwéezi n9 ‘month’ understood) are all nominalized possessives formed with numerals (see §7.4, Table 98 – months, Table 99 – days of the week).

3.6.4. Locative

The category of locative expresses the PLACE OF AN ACTION. In English, a wide variety of prepositions locate a predicate in, at, to, into, towards, around, between, through, etc. Broadly speaking, Bantu languages have a number of ways of indicating the concept of {LOCATIVE}.265

---

264 Overdulve 1975:181 suggests that the conjunctive /ahó/ ‘rather than, instead of’ used with infinitives, e.g., /ahó kuvúga/ ‘instead of speaking,’ is a nominalized possessive, in which case it is amazingly parallel to English in place of or French au lieu de.
Chapter 3: Nouns

With specific NOUN GROUPS (n10-n13) that are locative in nature (see §3.2.10–13).
With PREPOSITIONS: i, kwaa, ku, mu {both} that precede nouns (see discussion below).
With POSTPOSITIONS: -hó {both}, -kó {both}, -mó {Rwanda}, -mwó {Rundi}, -yó {both} that are attached at the end of verbs (see §§11, Table 101, Table 102).
With verb presuffixes or AUGMENTS: -ir- or -er- {both} that incorporate a LOCATIONAL or BENEFACTIVE role (see §8.14.1).

Since only the four PREPOSITIONS are associated with nouns, they will be treated here. However, when nouns indicate placement in space or time, they are also functioning as ADVERBS (see §11.1–2) and therefore overlap with that part of speech. The bulk of our exemplification will be found in this section, but other examples can be found in later chapters, where appropriate. In discussing the role of locatives with verbs or other parts of speech, there will also be several cross-references to this present section.

The prepositions of Kinyarwanda and Kirundi have very broad spatial connotations. A more precise indication of a specific location is expressed either within the meaning of the verb or by an extended noun phrase such as a possessive construction.266

/baraja muu nzu/ {Rundi}, /barajya muu nzu/ {Rwanda} 'They are going into the house.'
/baraja kuu nzu/ {Rundi}, /barajya kuu nzu/ {Rwanda} 'They are going towards the house.'
/bari mwiivuuriro/ {both} 'They are in the clinic.' (i.e., as patients)
/bari kwiivuuriro/ {both} 'They are at the clinic.' (i.e., as visitors)
/va mu buriri/ {both} 'Get out of bed!'
/va ku buriri/ {both} 'Get away from the bed!'
/baraj' i bugáandá/ {Rundi}, /barajy' i bugáandá/ {Rwanda} 'They are going to Uganda.'
/bakor' i bugáandá/ {both} 'They work in Uganda.'
/barav' i bugáandá/ {both} 'They are coming from Uganda.'
/imbere y'inzu/ {both} 'in front of the house'
/imbere muu nzu/ {both} 'inside the house'
/mu wa kábiri/ {both} 'in the second grade'
/ku wa kábiri/ {both} 'on Tuesday'

None of the prepositions are used when a locative noun, e.g., n10, n13, or a form agreeing with n10, appears.
/turaj' aheezá/ {Rundi}, /turajy' aheezá/ {Rwanda} 'We are going to a pleasant place.' [n10]
/azooz' aha/ {Rundi}, /azaaz' aha/ {Rwanda} 'He will come to this place' [n10]
/muj' imbere/ {Rundi}, /mujy' imbere/ {Rwanda} 'Go on ahead' [n13]

Locative phrases, i.e., those which have a preposition followed by a noun, are linked to a head noun with the high-toned marker /ó/ (see §3.6.3.2).

« Abantu 24 bo ku karwa kitwa Ijwi » {Rwanda} n11-loc-n7-sg '24 people of the small island called Ijwi' (R20)
/igihe c'ísahá ziné zó mu gitóondo/ {Rundi} n12-loc-n4-sg 'at ten o'clock in the morning' (R9)

3.6.4.1. The Preposition i

The preposition i is directly related to n13. Note that it can only be used before words that begin with a consonant.267 It has a generic or basic LOCATIVE sense (as opposed to mu or ku). It is most

265 As Kimenyi (1980:33) puts it: “Locative NPs are marked by either the prepositions i, ku, mu, the suffix -ir- and/or the verb suffixes -ho or -mo.”
266 Here is how some other authors describe this phenomenon. "The meanings of the prepositions are derived from the meaning of the verb itself" (Kimenyi 1980:33). "The locatives express place (interior space or proximity), but they do not express direction; direction is expressed by verbs" (Overdulve 1975:79). "As with the other locatives, the intended notion is made clear by the context" (Hands 1952:31).
often used with geographic names (countries, cities, towns, villages, communes, etc.), which are usually in n5b or n8. However, there are a number of fixed expressions that use this construction cutting across many of the noun groups.

/i wábavyéeyi/\(^{268}\) [Rundi] n13-loc-n2-sg-poss-n1-pl 'at one's parents' place' (Rodegem 1970:552)
/i muhána/ [both] n13-loc-n2-sg 'at someone's place'
/imúsozi/ [Rwanda] n13-loc-n2-sg 'on dry land, at the shore'
/imúhirá/ [both] n13-loc-n2-sg 'at home, homewards' (R34#3)
/íkáamberé/ [Rwanda] n13-loc-n5b-sg 'in the main house, in their principle residence'
/i kíbùungo/ [both] 'in Kibungo province' (R8.1)
/i kígaanda/ [both] n13-loc-n5b-geog 'in Kiganda' (R5)
/i ruhaánde/ [both] n13-loc-n6-sg 'aside, on the side (of)'
/íkaágáa/ [Rwanda] n13-loc-n7-sg 'in a worse situation'
/íbúunyina/ [Rundi] n13-loc-n8-sg 'to the left, on the left'
/íbuunyina/ [Rundi] n13-loc-n8-sg 'at his mother's (parents') place' (R13)
/intaabara y'i buruúndi/ n5-sg-poss-n13-loc-n8-sg [both] 'the war in Burundi' (R10)
/íburyó/ [both] n13-loc-n8-sg 'on the right, to the right'
/íbútaáre/ [both] n13-loc-n8-sg 'to the chief's house' (R27.4)
/íbauámi/ [both] n13-loc-n8-sg 'at the royal court; at the supreme court' (R27.5)
/íkuzúmú/ [both] n13-loc-n9-sg 'in the depths of the earth' (R37.2)
/íhéeru/ [Rwanda] n13-loc 'elevated area, high place'
/íkweeru/ [Rwanda] n13-loc 'in the main house; at the principle residence'
/íbugiíbwa/ [Rwanda] n13-loc-neg-imm-pass 'at a hangout, to a place one usually frequents'
/íbutágeendwá/ [Rwanda] n13-loc-imm-pass 'place where one does not (dare to) go'

This association of i with geographic names is very strong and can help disambiguate possible homonyms.

/i ngoma/ [Rwanda] n13-loc-n5b-geog 'in Ngoma (commune in Butare)'
/íkuu ngoma/ [both] n11-loc-n5-sg 'during the reign (of); on (top of) a drum'

Sometimes i and mu are used interchangeably. Kimenyi points out that "[n]o generalization can be made in this instance, since its use seems to be arbitrary." (1980:34)

/mariyá ari i buruúndi/ [Rundi] (JN), /mariyá aba i buruúndi/ [Rwanda] (Kimenyi 1980:34) 'Maria is in Burundi.'
/mariyá ari mu buruúndi/ [Rundi] (JN), /mariyá aba mu buruúndi/ [Rwanda] (Kimenyi 1980:34) 'Maria is in Burundi.'
/mariyá ari i bugáandá/ [Rundi] (JN), /mariyá aba i bugáandá/ [Rwanda] (Kimenyi 1980:34) 'Maria is in Uganda.'
/mariyá ari mu bugáandá/ [Rundi] (JN), /mariyá aba mu bugáandá/ [Rwanda] (Kimenyi 1980:34) 'Maria is in Uganda.'

There are several exceptions to the i rule.\(^{269}\)

/mu rwáankéri/ [Rwanda] 'in Rwankeri' (Hands 1952:31)
/mu cíbitooke/ [Rundi] 'in Chibitoke' (Ntahokaja 1994:195)
/mu gaséényi/ [Rundi] 'in Gasenyi' (Ntahokaja 1994:194)

---

\(^{267}\) If the following word starts with a vowel, murí is used, e.g., /atuuye murí áameriká/ 'He lives in America,' /yohaání aturuka murí áangola/ 'John comes from Angola.' See Kimenyi 1980:35 and section §3.6.4.2 below.

\(^{268}\) The possessive wa here relates to /umúhirá/ n2-sg 'dwelling, domicile' (see Cristini 2000:301).

\(^{269}\) Hands offers explanations that do not always apply to similarly named places. For Rwankeri and Ruhengeri, he suggests that mu is used "because it is situated in a plain surrounded by mountains," and for Gisenyi, ku is used "because it is located on the shore of a lake." (1952:31) It is safest to just consider certain place names exceptions and memorize their locative counterparts.
Chapter 3: Nouns

We shall see in later chapters that this locative marker is also used with possessive pronouns (§4.6) to indicate a place owned by that person, e.g., /iwaánje/ {Rundi}, /iwaánjye/ {Rwanda} 'at my place,' /iwaábo/ {both} 'at their place,' and with a special class of demonstratives (see n13 entries in tables throughout §5), e.g., /inó/ {both} 'hereabouts,' /iyo/ {both} 'thereabouts.'

3.6.4.2. The Preposition mu (muu, mw', muri)

The preposition mu is directly related to group 12. It expresses INSIDENESS, an interior location in space or in time.270 It can be translated by a range of English prepositions such as in, into, inside, within, from, among, or between. Its exact sense usually depends on the meaning of the verb.

The locative mu is always followed by a reduced noun form, i.e., without the thematic vowel (also called an augment or an article).

/mu mwoobo/ {both} n12-loc-n2-sg 'inside the pit'
/mu muriro udaherá/ {Rundi}, /mu muriro udashirá/ {Rwanda} 'into eternal fire'
/mu mwáaka uhezé/ {Rundi} (R39.2), /mu mwáaka ushizé/ {Rwanda} n12-loc-n2-sg+v-rel 'last year'
/mu migeenzo y'ikiruundí/ {both} n12-loc-n2-pl+poss-n4-sg 'in Rundi traditions' (R11)
/mu miryanga/ {both} n12-loc-n2-pl 'from families' (R20)
/biciyi mu mategeko/ {both} v-part + n12-loc-n3-pl 'it being (done) under the law' (R13)
/mu gihúgu/ {both} n12-loc-n4-sg 'in the country' (R3)
/mu kanwa/ {both} n12-loc-n7-sg 'into the mouth' (R15)
/mu bushinwa/ {Rundi}, /mu bushinwá/ {Rwanda} 'to China'
/mu bwáana/ {both} n12-loc-n8-sg 'in (one’s) youth'
/mu bwaámi bwáayo/ {both} n12-loc-n8-sg 'in his (God’s) kingdom' (R17.8)
/rimwé mu kwéezi/ {Rwanda} n12-loc-n9-sg 'once a month' (R8.1)

It is also used with several place names that do not take the preposition i (see 3.6.4.1).

/mu ruheengeri/ {Rwanda} n12-loc-pn-geog 'in Ruhengeri' (Hands 1952:31)
/mu rutana/ {Rundi} n12-loc-pn-geog 'in Rutana province' (Ntahokaja 1994:195)

It has a long vowel, i.e., /muu/, before a singular or plural noun of group 5, or the plural of group 6, when the class prefix (n or m) is followed by a root beginning with a consonant. Long consonants beget long vowels (see §2.2.2.5). Although the sequence n+n, n+m, or m+m is not represented in the orthography, the preceding vowel will be lengthened.

/muu ncutí/ {both} n12-loc-n5-pl 'among friends'
/muu nzú/ {both} n12-loc-n5-sg 'in a house' (R7, R37.3)
/muu nzíra/ {both} n12-loc-n5-sg 'in the street'
/muu náama/ {both} n12-loc-n5-sg 'in the meeting' (R4, R9) [mu nnáama > muu nOáama]
/muu nkóko/ {both} n12-loc-n5-sg 'at the crow of the rooster, i.e., at dawn'

Before singular nouns of n3 or n5a, the class prefix i- is not lost, so this preposition appears as mw-, and the following vowel will be lengthened to /ii/.

/mw'iibéenderá/ {both} n12-loc-n3-sg 'in the flag' (R29.6)
/mw'iihonnyabaywóoko/ {Rundi} n12-loc-n3-sg 'in the genocide' (R29.5)
/mw'iijoro/ {both} n12-loc-n3-sg 'at night'

---

Chapter 3: Nouns

/mw'iipaataro/ {both} (R7), /mw'iipaantaro/ {both alt} (JN) n12-loc-n5a-sg 'in (his) trousers'
/mw'iitóorero/ {Rwanda} n12-loc-n3-sg 'into the church'

There are a few exceptions where some very common nouns of n3 do lose the prefix and behave like all the other noun groups. Contrast the following with the examples below in 3.6.4.3.

/mu jíisho/ {both} n12-loc-n3-sg 'in the eye'
/mu zíiko/ {both} n12-loc-n3-sg 'in the fire'
/mu zúuba/ {both} n12-loc-n3-sg 'in the sunlight'
/mu zúuru/ {both} n12-loc-n3-sg 'in the nose'

The form muri is used with some geographic names NOT in n8 (bu-), several idiomatic expressions, and always before pronouns and demonstratives.271

/murí koóngo/ n12-loc-pn-geog 'in the Congo'
«muri Malawi» {both} n12-loc-pn-geog 'in Malawi' (R30)
/muri kameré y'úmuuntu/ {both} n12-loc-n5b-sg+poss-n1-sg 'in the nature of man'
«muri Stade Amahoro y'i Kigali» {both} n12-loc-n5b-cmp-sg-poss-n13-loc-n5b-pn-geog 'in the Peace Stadium of Kigali' (R29#1)
/muri rusaánge/ {Rwanda} n12-loc-n6-sg 'in general'
«Muri Rusama 1989» {Rundi} n12-loc-n9b-sg 'in May 1989' (R17.6)

Before geographic names starting with vowels (consonant forms usually have the preposition i, as discussed in 3.6.4.1), it is pronounced mur'i, the following vowel becomes long and has tone on its first mora. Note that it is usually spelled in full, i.e., «muri».272

/mur' áaziya/ {both} n12-loc-pn-geog 'to Asia'
«muri Amerika» {both} n12-loc-pn-geog 'in America' (R26.2)
/mur' áafurika/ {both} n12-loc-pn-geog 'in Africa' (R26.2)
«Mu mugi Cap muri Afurika y'epfo» {Rwanda} n12-loc-pn-geog 'in Capetown, South Africa' (R8.2)
«muri ico gihugu» {Rundi} (R29.9), «muri icyo gihugu» {Rwanda} (R10) n12-loc+deic-n4-sg 'in that country'
/mur' íiyo ntáará/ {both} n12-loc+deic-n5-sg 'in that region' (R20)

3.6.4.3. The preposition ku (kuu, kw', k', kuri)

The preposition ku is directly related to group 11. It expresses OUTSIDENESS or PROXIMITY in space or in time.273 It can be translated by a range of English prepositions such as on, at, in, during, by, next to or over at. The exact sense usually depends on the meaning of the verb.

The locative ku is always followed by a reduced noun form, i.e., without the thematic vowel (also called an augment or an article).

/ku mutwaáre/ {both} n11-loc-n1-sg 'at the chief's'
/ku mugezi/ {both} n11-loc-n2-sg 'at the river'
/ku mugórooba/ {both} n11-loc-n2-sg 'in the evening'
/ku mururo/ {both} n11-loc-n2-sg 'by the fire'
/ku mwéézi/ {both} n11-loc-n2-sg 'in the moonlight, when the moon is full'
/ku manywá/ {both} n11-loc-n3-pl 'during the day'
/umwáana avuutsé ku kizíra/ {Rundi} n11-loc-auto-n4 'a child born from incest' (R13)

271 These will be treated in the next two chapters, e.g., /muri mweebwé/ {both} 'among you' and /muri icyi gitabo/ 'in this book.'
272 When the following vowel is an i, this orthographic convention winds up reflecting the long vowel that does appear, e.g., «muri iki gihe» = /muriiki gihe/ {both} 'at this time' (R35.1).
It is used with a few place names that do not take the preposition i (see 3.6.4.1).

It has a long vowel, i.e., /kuuu/, before a singular or plural noun of group 5, or the plural of group 6, when the class prefix (n or m) is followed by a root beginning with a consonant. Long consonants beget long vowels (see §2.2.2.5). Although the sequence n+n, n+m, or m+m is not represented in the orthography, the preceding vowel will be lengthened.

Before singular nouns of n3 or n5a, the class prefix i- is not lost, so this preposition appears as kw-, and the following vowel is lengthened to /ii/.

There are a few exceptions where some very common nouns of n3 do lose the prefix and behave like all the other noun groups. Contrast the following with the examples above in 3.6.4.2.

The form k' is used before the vowel /u/.

The form kuri is used with some geographic names NOT in n8 (bu-), several idiomatic expressions, and always before pronouns and demonstratives.274 It is pronounced kur' if another vowel follows; that vowel becomes long and has high tone on its first mora.

274 These will be treated in the next two chapters, e.g., /kurí mweebwé/ [both] 'to you' and /kurí iyi sí/ [both] 'on this earth.'
3.6.4.4. The Preposition kwaa

This preposition is limited in use to people nouns, kinship terms, and personal names (nI and nIa). It probably derives from the possessive form of nII but has a decidedly locative connotation.

/nakáangutse ndí kwaa mugaanga/ [Rwanda] nII-loc/poss-nI-sg 'I woke up in a hospital' (R34.5)
/kwaa havyaarimáana/ [Rundi], /kwaa habyarimáana/ [Rwanda] nII-loc/poss-nIa-pl 'at Habyarimana’s place'
/kwaa peetero/ [Rundi], /kwaa peetero/ [Rwanda] nII-loc/poss-nIa-pl 'at Peter's place'
/kwaa daatá/ [both] nII-loc/pos-nIa-kin 'at my father's place'
/abagoré báágiye kwíirega kwaa paatíri/ [Rundi] nII-loc/poss-nIa-sg 'when women went to confess to a priest' (R23)

3.6.5. Vocative

The VOCATIVE is used for calling, addressing, or attracting someone’s attention. While most vocatives involve people, in folktales and in poetry any animal or entity may be addressed. Nouns used vocatively are often treated as INTERJECTIONS. Indeed, they are both, just as infinitives or autonomes are truly verbs and truly nouns. They are here treated as a special case form of the noun, but will be cross-referenced in the chapter on interjections (§14).

3.6.5.1. Truncated Noun Vocatives

One form of the vocative involves shortening of the word or TRUNCATION (see §2.5.15). In most instances, it is formed by dropping the initial or thematic vowel of the full noun prefix (if any) and the final syllable of the root, moving any HIGH TONE to the final vowel (the LAST MORA) [Erule]. If there is no high tone in the word, then high tone will appear on the second mora [Vrule]. While truncation does affect the vocative of some very basic nouns, it mostly applies to PERSONAL NAMES.

HIGH TONE ON LAST MORA = Erule
/báá/ [both] nI-pl-voc 'Oh children!' < /a)báa/ (Kimenyi 1980:15)
/bagó/ [both] nI-pl-voc 'Oh women!' < /a)bagó/)
/híitíma/ [both] nIIa-pn-voc ‘Oh Hitimana!’ < /híitíma/)
/mínaá/ [both] nIIa-pon-voc ‘Oh Nyaminani!’ < /nYa)minaá/ (male personal name for the eighth child)
/nseengiyúu/ [Rwanda] nIIa-pon-voc 'Oh Nsengiyumva!' < /nseengiyúu/)

HIGH TONE ON SECOND MORA = Vrule
/máá/ [Rwanda] nIIa-pon-voc 'Oh Manzi!' < /maa/)
/musóne/ [Rwanda] nIIa-pon-voc 'Oh Musonera!' < /musone/)
/mwaámbara/ [Rwanda] nIIa-pon-voc 'Oh Mwambarangwe!' < /mwaambara/)

This section has profited much from the discussion in Bizimana 1998:117, Kímenyi 2002:109–12, and Overduulve 1975:252f. These authors, however, do not always agree among themselves, and we have done our best to reconcile the differences based on the data we have available.

As with low-toned reduced vocative nouns discussed immediately below. Examples here are drawn from Overduulve & Jacob 1998:310f.
Chapter 3: Nouns

3.6.5.2. Reduced Noun Vocatives

The other type of vocative construction involves REDUCED NOUN FORMS (§3.4). The tonality of such forms depends on four factors: ROOT TONALITY (whether the CITATION FORM of the noun is a low-tone or high-tone root), VOWEL LENGTH (whether the vowels are short or long), WORD LENGTH (how many syllables), and on what mora any original high tone falls. Altogether there are five tone rules the affect vocatives [V voc, R stet, J jump right, M move left, D reverse]. Note that only one is exclusively related to vocative constructions, all other tone patterns are found on other parts of speech.

LOW TONE ROOTS, no matter how long, have HIGH TONE ON THE SECOND MORA of the vocative form [Vrule, §2.4.7]. Forming vocatives from low toned roots is simple and straightforward.277

\[ \text{/umugäaanga/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) 'doctor'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/mugäaanga/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) n1-sg-voc 'Oh doctor!' } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/umugabo – abagabo/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) 'man, adult male'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/mugäbo/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) n1-sg-voc 'Oh man!', /bagäbo/ } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/umugéenzi – abageenzi/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) n1(a)-sg-voc 'Oh friend!', /bageenzi/ } \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) n1(a)-pl-voc 'Oh friends!' } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/umurezi/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) 'caretaker'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/murézi/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) n1-sg-voc 'Oh caretaker!' } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/umutaama/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(Rundi) 'old man'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/mutaama/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) n1-sg-voc 'Oh old man!' (Ntahokaja 1994:43) } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/abaantu/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) 'people'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/baäntu/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) n1-pl-voc 'Oh people!' } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/daatäbuja/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(Rundi) 'boss'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/daatäbuja/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{R7 (both) n1a-sg-voc 'Oh boss!' } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/nyagásani/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(Rwanda) 'lord (title of a king)'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/nyagásani/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(Rwanda) n1a-sg-voc 'Oh Lord!' (R28.10) } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/isheëngero/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(Rundi) 'shepherd'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/sheëngero/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(Rundi) n3-sg-voc 'Oh shepherd!' } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/kiköondo/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) 'baby, infant'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/kiköondo/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) n4-sg-voc 'Oh infant!' (R36.2) } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/ibireëne/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) 'feet'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/birëene/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) n4-pl-voc 'Oh feet!' } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/intaambwe/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(Rundi) 'lion'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/ntaämbwe/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(Rundi) n5-sg-voc 'Oh lion!' (R27) } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/inyoni/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) 'bird'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/nyoni/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) n5-sg-voc 'Oh bird!' (R28.5) } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/impuunzi/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) 'refugees'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/mpuunzi/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) n5-pl-voc 'Oh refugees!' (Kimenyi 2002:110) } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/urutóke/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) 'finger'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/rutóke/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) n6-sg-voc 'Oh finger!' } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/azáraruguma/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(Rwanda) 'shrub sp. (used to heal wounds)'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/azáraruguma/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{n7-sg-voc 'Oh shrub!' } \end{array} \]

With high tone roots that have long vowels, where tone is already on the second mora, or with polysyllabic words, where high tone is anywhere from the third through the final syllable, the original tone stays put [Rrule, §2.4.1 = stet]. Compound nouns with two tones tend to follow this pattern, although there are a few exceptions.

\[ \text{/abakéné/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) 'poor people'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/bakené/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) n1-pl-voc 'Oh poor people' } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/muheberëyi/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(Rwanda) 'Hebrew, Jew'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/muheberëyi/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(Rwanda) n1-sg-voc 'Oh Hebrew!' } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/muhiïndé/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(Rwanda)} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/muhiïndé/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(Rwanda) n1-sg-voc 'Oh Indian!' (Kimenyi 2002:110) } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/umu-hutú/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) 'Hutu'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/mu-hutú/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) n1-sg-voc 'Oh Hutu!' } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/umu-kiré/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) 'rich man'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/mukiré/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) n1-sg-voc 'Oh rich man!' } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/muukoôbwa – abakoôbwa/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) 'daughter'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/muukoôbwa/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) n1-sg-voc 'Oh daughter!', } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/baokoôbwa/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) n1-pl-voc 'Oh daughters!' } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/umukoôzi – abakôzi/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) 'worker'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/bakôzi/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) n1-pl-voc 'Oh workers!' } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/umutwaâre – abatwaâre/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) 'chief, ruler'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/mutwaâre/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) n1-sg-voc 'Oh sir!' (R27.4), } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/batwaâre/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) n1-pl-voc 'Oh sirs!' } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/umwiigisësha/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) 'teacher, instructor'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/mwisësha/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) n1-sg-voc 'Oh teacher!' } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{/umwaami – abaami/} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) 'king'} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{/mwaami/} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{(both) n1-sg-voc 'Oh king!' (R27.6), /baami/ (both) } \end{array} \]
\[ \text{n1-pl-voc 'Oh kings!' } \]

277 The placement of vocative tone on low-toned roots is MORaic, not SYLLABIC as implied by the statement "the vocative high tone is assigned on the second syllable of the word" (Kimenyi 2002:109).

278 Rwanda /datatubu/ winds up with the same vocative tone pattern based upon the Mrule, see §2.4.9 and below.
With many high tone roots of two or more syllables, especially where high tone appears on the first syllable of the root or on the first of a long vowel, tone will move or "jump" ONE MORA TO THE RIGHT [Jrule, §2.4.8].

There are a number of words that have high tone on the final syllable or on the third of three or more morae where the high tone moves ONE MORA TO THE LEFT [Mrule, §2.4.9].

There are a number of words that have high tone on the final syllable or on the third of three or more morae where the high tone moves ONE MORA TO THE LEFT [Mrule, §2.4.9].

There are a number of words that have high tone on the final syllable or on the third of three or more morae where the high tone moves ONE MORA TO THE LEFT [Mrule, §2.4.9].

Kimenyi (2002:110) offers an alternate interpretation of several of these forms based on their initial long vowels:

Overduivel (1975:253) gives a long and complex rule to account for a handful of words: "the morphotone is placed on the fourth mora of the interrogative substantive if the first two syllables of the word are long and if it has two high morphotones in the presence of the augment." (translation S. Harrell). The word /umwiriöongé/ /2-sg-voc 'flute' is an exception to this rule, as it has a high tone on the second mora, not the fourth.
Chapter 3: Nouns

There is a Rundi construction involving the compounding of a vocative pronoun (\textit{waa} or \textit{mwaa}) and either a truncated or reduced noun which exhibits TONE REVERSAL [Drule, §2.4.10]. If the noun has high tone, the pronoun will be low-toned; if the noun has low tone, the pronoun will be high-toned.

\[
/waa\ mwaá/ \text{ [Rundi]} pro-2sg+n1-sg-voc 'hey, kid!' \text{ [truncated, cf: /umwáana/]}
\]
\[
/waa\ muga/ \text{ [Rundi]} pro-2sg+n1-sg-voc 'Oh mister!' \text{ [truncated, cf: /umugabo/]}
\]
\[
/mwaa\ báana/ \text{ [Rundi]} pro-2pl+n1-pl-voc 'hey kids!' \text{ [reduced; cf: /abaana/]}
\]
\[
/mwaa\ baantu/ \text{ [Rundi]} pro-2pl+n1-pl-voc 'Oh people!' \text{ [reduced; cf: /abaantu/]}
\]

There is another construction where two forms of second person pronouns serve as a circumfix around a reduced noun that retains its standard accent pattern. This will be discussed in the next chapter (§4.7). The structure differs between the two dialects: Rundi uses a circumfix composed of two vocative pronouns with D tonality, while Rwanda uses a vocative pronoun and the pronoun root with R tonality. Note that if a high toned root is involved the two renditions overlap.

Rundi: $pro-voc$ [Drule] $+ n$-red $+ pro-voc$
Rwanda: $pro-voc$ $+$ $n$-red [Rrule] $+ pro-root$.

\[
/waa\ mugabo\ weé/ \text{ [Rundi]} pro-2sg-voc+n1-sg-red+pro-2sg-voc 'hey you, fellow!' \text{ (Cristini 2000:151)}
\]
\[
/waa\ mugabo\ we/ \text{ [Rwanda]} pro-2sg-voc+n1-sg-red+pro-2sg-root 'hey you, fellow!' \text{ (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:309)}
\]
\[
/waa\ mpyisi\ we/ \text{ [Rwanda]} 'hey you, hyena!' \text{ (R28.3)}
\]
\[
/mwaa\ báana\ mwe/ \text{ [Drule = Rrule]} \text{ both} pro-2pl-voc+n1-pl-red+pro-2pl 'hey you children!' \text{ (Bizimana 1998:156, Cristini 2000:151)}
\]
\[
/mwaa\ baantu\ mwe/ \text{ [Rundi]} pro-2sg-voc+n1-sg-red+pro-2sg-voc 'hey you people!' \text{ (Rodegem 1967:105)}
\]
\[
/mwaa\ bakózi\ mwe/ \text{ [Drule = Rrule]} \text{ both} pro-2pl-voc+n1-pl-red+pro-2pl 'hey you workers!' \text{ (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:309)}
\]
\[
/mwaa\ batuúrage\ mwe/ \text{ [Rwanda]} pro-2pl-voc+n1-pl-red+pro-2pl-root 'hey you neighbors!' \text{ (Overdulve 1975:254)}
\]

Finally, the interjection /\textit{mbée}/ \text{ [Rundi]} or /\textit{mbeé}/ \text{ [Rwanda]} in front of a truncated noun (which loses any high tonality) is used to get someone's attention.

\[
/mbée\ ntu/ \text{ [Rundi]} 'hey people!' \text{ (Ntahokaja 1976:32)}
\]
\[
/mbeé\ bago/ \text{ [Rwanda]} 'hey ladies!' \text{ (Overdulve 1975:253)}
\]

3.6.6. Agentive (Passive Agent)

The DOER of the action in a passive sentence, equivalent to \textit{by} in English, is marked by \textit{na} before a consonant and reduced to \textit{n} before a vowel. This same construction is homographic with conjunction-like constructions meaning \textit{and} or \textit{or}, and with comitative constructions meaning \textit{with}. Thus /\textit{n'ábagoré}/ \text{ [both]}, depending on its context, can mean: \textit{by wives}, \textit{and wives}, \textit{wives also}, and \textit{with wives}. Here we are examining its use marking the doer or agent of passive verbs.

\[
/twaábitaangarirwe\ na\ Kómaanda/ \text{ [Rwanda]} n1a-sg-agent 'we were informed about it by the Commandant' (R24)
\]
\[
/ukagaragazwa\ n'úumwíijimá/ \text{ [both]} n2-sg-agent 'and it is revealed by Darkness' (R28.10)
\]
\[
/ubwíiza\ bugaragazwa\ n'íizúuba/ \text{ [both]} n3-sg-agent 'beauty is revealed by Sun' (R28.10)
\]
\[
/rwáráangwa\ n'ámacaakubíri/ \text{ [Rundi]} n3-pl-agent 'it was characterized by ethnic divisions' (R29#4)
\]
\[
/bátabiheéewe\ uburéengaanzirá\ n'úbutégetsi/ \text{ [both]} n8-sg-agent 'without getting the authority's approval' (R8a)
\]

Each of the tables dealing with the individual noun groups earlier in this chapter had examples for this construction.
Chapter 4: Pronouns

4. PRONOUNS

Pronouns are words that stand for nouns. In both English and Rwanda-Rundi, they refer to PERSON (first, second, third) and to NUMBER (singular and plural). The discussion of person (§1.8.1) illustrated how this linguistic feature is incorporated in kinship terms (Table 16). Thus /daatá/ (both) means ‘my father’ – no element within this word refers to the first person my, it is bundled up as part of its meaning. When an English speaker refers to himself or herself, (the FIRST PERSON) he or she uses I in the singular and we in the plural. When referring to the person to whom he or she is speaking, you is used for the SECOND PERSON – there is no distinction in modern English between singular and plural.281 Similarly, in English, GENDER comes into play when the SINGULAR THIRD PERSON forms he, she, it are used, although this is lost in the PLURAL with they. In Kinyarwanda and Kirundi, GRAMMATICAL CLASS is paramount in pronoun agreement. It is difficult for a native speaker of English to imagine how one cannot express a difference between he and she, him and her, his and hers, but such gender distinctions are totally irrelevant in Bantu languages. Conversely, English cannot begin to capture the differences implied by NOUN CLASSES, which is why some understanding of grammar becomes required since there are no literal or translational equivalents that begin to grasp this fundamental element of Bantu languages.

Unlike English where pronouns differ drastically from one case to another, e.g., SUBJECT I, OBJECT me, POSSESSIVE my, or SUBJECT he, OBJECT him, POSSESSIVE his, Rwanda and Rundi use a consistent series of roots that vary little from one grammatical case to another. So while coping with the various classes may present some difficulty to the English learner, the derivation of the various case forms will be far more straightforward. Each language has areas of difficulty, but each also has areas of regularity and simplicity.

PRONOUN ROOTS (Table 50) are all of one syllable (MONOSYLLABIC). The personal forms have low tone while the class forms have high tone. They generally occur after specific grammatical markers. A short form may occur sentence initially if it is followed directly by the verb.

«Je mbona iryo bomba workoresha» [Rundi] 'As for me, I think that you should repair that faucet.' (R23)

Authors do not always write a space between the marker and the pronoun root, i.e., some write CONJUNCTIVELY «sibo» (R39.4), while others write DISJUNCTIVELY «si bo» 'it isn’t them' (R38.11).

• LOCATIVE MARKERS kuri, muri
  /kuri je/ [Rundi], /kuri jye/ [Rwanda] ‘toward me’
  /muri bo/ (both) ‘among them’ [Note: a following high tone is lost after kuri and muri; Xrule]

• COPULATIVE AFFIRMATIVE ni- [See full paradigm in Table 51.]
  /ikineezereje n i uko ../ [Rundi] 'what makes me happy is because...' (R1)
  /ni ji ye wii zize rwóose/ [Rwanda] 'It was my own fault' (R34.5)

• COPULATIVE NEGATIVE si- [See full paradigm in §9.4, Table 110.]
  «Si i ye ubacanira in dar o» [Rwanda] 'Am I not the reason they light a fire in their homes?’ (R28.2)
  «Ibiro bibiri si yvo vyotuma umuntu yerekana akarangamuntu» [Rundi] 'Two kilograms are not reason enough to make a person show an ID!' (R33.5)
  «Si uku navute» (both) ‘This is not how I was born’ (R34.2)
  «kandi nayo si bo bayituyemo bonyin e» [Rwanda] 'however, they are not the only ones who live there' (R38.11)

281 Old English maintained a distinction still reflected in religious texts: thou vs. you, thy vs. your, thine vs. yours.
282 See §1.2.2 for a discussion of CONJUNCTIVE vs. DISJUNCTIVE WRITING.
Chapter 4: Pronouns

«Abanyakirundo [Rundi] sibo bakenye ugereranije n'abanyagihugu bo mu ntara za Mugamba-Bututsi» {Rundi} 'Kirundonians are not poorer than citizens of the Mugamba and Bututsi districts' (R39.4)

- **PREDICATIVE NEGATIVE** nta- {both}, ata {Rundi} [not used in first or second person]
  /ntaa bwo/ {both} 'never; not at all' (R36.5&8, R40)
  /ata co/ {Rundi} 'that it is nothing' (R23)
  /*nta co/ {Rundi} 'nothing, not anything; there is nothing; [expr] It's nothing!' (R33.6)

The ASSOCIATIVE (na-) and COMPARATIVE (nka-) paradigms are presented in the last two sections of this chapter (§4.11 and §4.12).

### Table 50. Pronoun Roots

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FORM</th>
<th>Rundi–Rwanda</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pro-1sg</td>
<td>je</td>
<td>jye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-1pl</td>
<td>twe</td>
<td>we, us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2sg</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>you; your, thy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2pl</td>
<td>mwe</td>
<td>you, ye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n1-sg</td>
<td>wé</td>
<td>he, she; him, her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n1-pl</td>
<td>bó</td>
<td>they, them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n2-sg</td>
<td>wó</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n2-pl</td>
<td>yó</td>
<td>they; them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n3-sg</td>
<td>ryó</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n3-pl</td>
<td>yó</td>
<td>they; them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n4-sg</td>
<td>có</td>
<td>cyó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n4-pl</td>
<td>vyó</td>
<td>byó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n5-sg</td>
<td>yó</td>
<td>he, she, it; him, her, it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n5-pl</td>
<td>zó</td>
<td>they, them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n6-sg</td>
<td>rwó</td>
<td>he, she, it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n6-pl</td>
<td>zó</td>
<td>they, them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n7-sg</td>
<td>kó</td>
<td>he, she, it; him, her, it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n7-pl</td>
<td>twó</td>
<td>they; them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n8-sg</td>
<td>bwó</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n8-pl</td>
<td>yó</td>
<td>they; them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n9-sg</td>
<td>kwó / kó</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n9-pl</td>
<td>yó</td>
<td>they; them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n10-sg</td>
<td>hó</td>
<td>it (the place)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n10-pl</td>
<td></td>
<td>they (the places)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n11-sg</td>
<td>kó</td>
<td>it (the manner)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n11-pl</td>
<td></td>
<td>they (the manners)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n12-sg</td>
<td>mwó</td>
<td>mwó / mó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n12-pl</td>
<td></td>
<td>it (the place)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>they (the places)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 51. Pronoun Roots with Copulative ni

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FORM</th>
<th>Rundi–Rwanda</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pro-1sg</td>
<td>ni je</td>
<td>ni jye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-1pl</td>
<td>ni twe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2sg</td>
<td>ni wewé</td>
<td>ni wowé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2pl</td>
<td>ni mwe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n1-sg</td>
<td>ni wé</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n1-pl</td>
<td>ni bó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n2-sg</td>
<td>ni wó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n2-pl</td>
<td>ni yó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n3-sg</td>
<td>ni ryó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n3-pl</td>
<td>ni yó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n4-sg</td>
<td>ni có</td>
<td>ni cyó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n4-pl</td>
<td>ni vyó</td>
<td>ni byó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n5-sg</td>
<td>ni yó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n5-pl</td>
<td>ni zó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n6-sg</td>
<td>ni rwó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n6-pl</td>
<td>ni zó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n7-sg</td>
<td>ni kó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n7-pl</td>
<td>ni twó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n8-sg</td>
<td>ni bwó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n8-pl</td>
<td>ni yó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n9-sg</td>
<td>ni kwó</td>
<td>ni kó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n9-pl</td>
<td>ni yó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n10-sg</td>
<td>ni hó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n10-pl</td>
<td>ni hó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n11-sg</td>
<td>ni kó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n11-pl</td>
<td>ni kó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n12-sg</td>
<td>ni mwó</td>
<td>ni mwó / ni mó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n12-pl</td>
<td>ni mwó</td>
<td>ni mwó / ni mó</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.1. Emphatic or Long Form Pronouns

While the pronoun roots do not normally occur in isolation, there are derivations that can be used for contrastive emphasis. Both dialects add the suffix -wé to pronoun roots to form one set of EMPHATIC PERSONAL PRONOUNS, as for me, as for you, etc. Both also use the postpositional or enclitic suffix -hó to introduce contrast or opposition. However, Rwanda compounds -hó with the -we forms (i.e., –wéhó), whereas Rundi uses -hó as an alternate to -wé. Rundi also has a full set of emphatic forms that relate to each of the noun classes which is an ECHO or REDUPLICATED form with vowel lengthening, i.e., wé+e-wé, bó+o-bó, etc. Rwanda does not have an equivalent set.

/jywé wakwanga/ {Rwanda} pro-1sg-emph 'As for me, I hate you!' (R28.2)
«barondeye uwo batuma ijambo barabura, none batumye jewe» {Rundi} pro-1sg-emph 'They looked for someone to speak on their behalf, but they couldn't find anyone, so they sent me.' (R11)
/jehó sinduhuka/ {Rundi} pro-1sg-emph 'As for me, I never rest.' (R19)
/nahó wowé, ngukuundira .../ {Rwanda} pro-2sg-emph 'But you I like because ...' (R28.6)
/ari wowé ubwáawé wilikiunda/ {Rwanda} pro-2sg-emph 'that you're the only one who loves you' (R28.7)
/wowehó ni uguhúguura/ {Rwanda} pro-2sg-emph 'As far as you are concerned, you only need a refresher course.' (R4)
/wewé ntugeendá/ {Rundi} pro-2sg-emph 'As for you, you’re not going'
/wéewé yavúze ati/ {Rundi} pro-n1-sg-emph 'so he said' (R11)
/wéewé ntagendá/ {Rundi} pro-n1-sg-emph 'As for him, he is not going'
Table 52. Emphatic or Long Form Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUNS</th>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pro-1sg</td>
<td>jeewé</td>
<td>jyeewé</td>
<td>I myself; as for me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>jehó</td>
<td>jyeewéhó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-1pl</td>
<td>tweebwé</td>
<td>tweebwé</td>
<td>we ourselves; as for us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>twehó</td>
<td>tweebwéhó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2sg</td>
<td>wewé</td>
<td>wowé</td>
<td>you yourself; as for you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>wehó</td>
<td>wowéhó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2pl</td>
<td>mweebwé</td>
<td>mweebwé</td>
<td>you yourselves; as for you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mwehó</td>
<td>mweebwéhó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOUN CLASSES

| pro-n1-sg | wéewé     | equivalent class-specific forms are not found |
| pro-n1-pl | bóobó     | he, she; as for him, her                        |
| pro-n2-sg | wóowó     | they; as for them                               |
| pro-n3-sg | yóoyó     | it; as for it                                   |
| pro-n3-pl | yóoyó     | they; as for them                               |
| pro-n4-sg | cóocó     | it; as for it                                   |
| pro-n4-pl | vyóovyó   | he, she; it; as for him, her, it                |
| pro-n5-sg | yóoyó     | they; as for them                               |
| pro-n5-pl | zóozó     | he, she; it; as for him, her, it                |
| pro-n6-sg | rwóorwó   | they; as for them                               |
| pro-n6-pl | zóozó     | it; as for it                                   |
| pro-n7-sg | kóokó     | he, she, it; as for him, her, it                |
| pro-n7-pl | twóotwó   | they; as for them                               |
| pro-n8-sg | bwóobwó   | it; as for it                                   |
| pro-n8-pl | yóoyó     | they; as for them                               |
| pro-n9-sg | kwóokwó   | it; as for it                                   |
| pro-n9-pl | yóoyó     | they; as for them                               |
| pro-n10-loc-sg/pl | hóohó | there; as for that place as for those places |
| pro-n11-loc-sg/pl | kóokó | thus; as for that way as for those ways |
| pro-n12-loc | does not occur |                                           |
| pro-n13-loc | does not occur |                                           |

There is a special long set which is the compound of a second person deictic (§5.4) and a pronoun root (Table 53) shared by both dialects.283

/uwo wé ntageendá/ {both} deic-2+pro-emph-n1-sg 'As for that one, she is not going.'
/abo bó barataahá/ {both} deic-2+pro-emph-n1-pl 'As for those people, they will go home.'
/izo zó zirataaha/ {both} deic-2+pro-emph-n5-pl 'As for those cattle, they will return to the corral.'

283 The only author to recognize these pronouns in print to our knowledge is Hands (1952:171). We have received independent confirmation of the set in Kinyarwanda from Prof. Alexandre Kimenyi (email 16 Aug 2004) and in Kirundi from Dr. Jeanine Ntihirageza (email 15 Nov 2004) and from Prof. Juvenal Ndayiragije (email 10 Dec 2004).
### Table 53. Emphatic Deictic + Pronoun Combinations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FORM</th>
<th>Rundi - Rwanda</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pro-n1-sg</td>
<td>uwo wé</td>
<td>as for that one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n1-pl</td>
<td>abo bó</td>
<td>as for those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n2-sg</td>
<td>uwo wó</td>
<td>as for that one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n2-pl</td>
<td>iyo yó</td>
<td>as for those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n3-sg</td>
<td>iryo ryó</td>
<td>as for that one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n3-pl</td>
<td>ayo yó</td>
<td>as for those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n4-sg</td>
<td>iko có</td>
<td>iryo cyó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n4-pl</td>
<td>ivyo vyó</td>
<td>ibyo byó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n5-sg</td>
<td>iyo yó</td>
<td>as for that one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n5-pl</td>
<td>izo zó</td>
<td>as for those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n6-sg</td>
<td>urwo rwó</td>
<td>as for that one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n6-pl</td>
<td>izo zó</td>
<td>as for those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n7-sg</td>
<td>ako kó</td>
<td>as for that one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n7-pl</td>
<td>utwo twó</td>
<td>as for those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n8-sg</td>
<td>ubwo bwó</td>
<td>as for that one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n8-pl</td>
<td>ayo yó</td>
<td>as for those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n9-sg</td>
<td>ukwo kwó</td>
<td>as for that one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n9-pl</td>
<td>ayo yó</td>
<td>as for those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n10-sg</td>
<td>aho hó</td>
<td>as for that place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n10-pl</td>
<td></td>
<td>as for those places</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n11-sg</td>
<td>ukwo kwó</td>
<td>as for that way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n11-pl</td>
<td></td>
<td>as for those ways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n12</td>
<td>umwo mwó [Rwanda only]</td>
<td>as for in that area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n13</td>
<td>iyo yó</td>
<td>as for there</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.2. Subject Pronouns

As we have seen, the use of free-standing pronoun forms is the exception rather than the rule in Kirundi and Kinyarwanda; when such a form appears, it serves to highlight the subject (meaning not just he, but as for him). The usual form of expressing the subject of a sentence is with a series of SUBJECT AGREEMENT PREFIXES, which come first on the verb (except that they follow the negative nti- or hypothetical ni-, Table 101). There are at least two forms of subject marking depending on whether a consonant or vowel follows. For those noun groups having consonants subject to Dahl’s law (n4, n7, n9, see §2.5.1) there is also “consonant flip-flop,” creating a third set (see Table 54). With the negative prefix nti-, subject forms that consist of a vowel have a special set of markers and the first person singular sin- is completely different (SUPPLETIVE).284  Note that these subject markers are not limited to indicative verb forms; they occur on participial and relative verbs as well. However, there are different tone patterns for the latter constructions.

Table 54. Subject Pronoun Prefixes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUNS</th>
<th>voiced consonant</th>
<th>voiceless consonant</th>
<th>vowel</th>
<th>voiced consonant</th>
<th>voiceless consonant</th>
<th>vowel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pro-1sg</td>
<td>n-</td>
<td>m- [labial]</td>
<td>n-</td>
<td>sin- / siin-</td>
<td>sim- [labial]</td>
<td>sin-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-1pl</td>
<td>tu-</td>
<td>du-</td>
<td>tw-</td>
<td>ntitu-</td>
<td>ntidu-</td>
<td>ntitw-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2sg</td>
<td>u-</td>
<td>w-</td>
<td>ntuu-</td>
<td>ntiw-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2pl</td>
<td>mu-</td>
<td>mw-</td>
<td>ntimu-</td>
<td>ntimw-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOUNS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-sg</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>y-</td>
<td>ntaa-</td>
<td>ntaa-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-pl</td>
<td>ba-</td>
<td>b-</td>
<td>ntib-</td>
<td>ntaa-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-sg</td>
<td>i-</td>
<td>y-</td>
<td>ntiw-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-pl</td>
<td>i-</td>
<td>y-</td>
<td>ntiw-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-sg</td>
<td>ri-</td>
<td>ry-</td>
<td>ntiy-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-pl</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>y-</td>
<td>ntiy-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-sg</td>
<td>ki-</td>
<td>gi-</td>
<td>c-</td>
<td>nti-</td>
<td>nti-</td>
<td>nti-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-pl</td>
<td>bi-</td>
<td>vy- [Rundi]</td>
<td>by-</td>
<td>nti-</td>
<td>nti-</td>
<td>ntiy-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-sg</td>
<td>i-</td>
<td>y-</td>
<td>ntiy-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-pl</td>
<td>zi-</td>
<td>z-</td>
<td>ntiz-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-sg</td>
<td>ru-</td>
<td>rw-</td>
<td>ntiru-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-pl</td>
<td>zi-</td>
<td>z-</td>
<td>ntirw-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-sg</td>
<td>ka-</td>
<td>ga-</td>
<td>k-</td>
<td>nti-</td>
<td>nti-</td>
<td>nti-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-pl</td>
<td>tu-</td>
<td>du-</td>
<td>tw-</td>
<td>ntitu-</td>
<td>ntitu-</td>
<td>ntitw-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-sg</td>
<td>bu-</td>
<td>bw-</td>
<td>ntitb-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-pl</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>y-</td>
<td>ntaa-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-sg</td>
<td>ku-</td>
<td>gu-</td>
<td>kw-</td>
<td>ntit-</td>
<td>ntit-</td>
<td>ntit-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-pl</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>y-</td>
<td>ntiy-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10-loc</td>
<td>ha-</td>
<td>h-</td>
<td>ntiha-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11-adv</td>
<td>ku-</td>
<td>gu-</td>
<td>kw-</td>
<td>ntit-</td>
<td>ntit-</td>
<td>ntit-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n12-loc</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n13-loc</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

284 The vowel is long /siin-/ in Kinyarwanda if followed by a consonant /siinkuundá/ [Rwanda] but /sinkuundá/ [Rundi] ‘I do not love’ or /siinduhúuka/ [Rwanda] but /sinduhúuka/ [Rundi] ‘I do not rest;’ the vowel is long in both Kinyarwanda and Kirundi if followed by a monosyllabic root /siinzí/ [both] ‘I do not know.’
verb itself. The process involved is similar to when we use it in English for a noun like money (I found it on the floor) or meat (I cooked it with onions). The infix comes immediately before the verb stem and, in certain moods and tenses, can draw the tonality of the verb to or towards itself (see §2.4.11 and §2.4.12). There are at least two forms for marking the object depending on whether a consonant or vowel follows. For those noun groups having consonants subject to Dahl's law (\(n4, n7, n9\), see §2.5.1) there is also "consonant flip-flop," creating a third set (see Table 55).

/utubwiri/ [both] v-sub-imm+pro-1pl-obj 'you should tell us' (R28.10)
/akoboonye/ [both] v-rel-imm-perf+pro-2sg-obj 'that she sees you'
/tubamenyeeshe/ [both] v-sub-imm+pro-2pl-obj 'we should inform you' (R30.2)
/aramubwiira/ [both] v-ind-imm-dis+n1-sg-obj 'he tells him' (R23)
/ndayagututuura/ [both] v-ditr-imm+n3-pl-obj+pro-2sg-obj 'I give them to you'
/bayiguri/ [both] v-rel-imm+n5-sg-obj 'that they use it' (R39.4)
/ndahazi/ [both] v-ind-imm+n10-loc-obj 'I know it (the place)'
/ntahazi/ [both] v-ind-neg-imm+n10-loc-obj 'he doesn't know it (the place)'

In Rwanda, the second person object pronoun forms (-ku-, -ba-) have a special RAPPORT function in a conversation or story, equivalent to so, you see in English, where the speaker brings in the addressee directly into the topic.286

/narakujeendeye/ [Rundi] v-ind-pret-perf+rapport '... so, you [sg] see, I just proceeded...' (R34.4)
/narabageendeye/ [Rundi] v-ind-pret-perf+rapport '... so, you [pl] see, I just proceeded...'

---

285 Such as the affirmative immediate disjunct: /ndabizi/ [both] n4-pl-obj 'I know it' or /aramubwiira/ n1-sg-obj 'he tells him.' For the first person pronoun object (me), any high tone moves to the immediately preceding vowel: /kuumpa/ [both] v-inf+pro-1sg-obj 'to give me' or /araantinya/ [both] v-inf-aff-imm-dis+pro-1sg-obj 'he is afraid of me.' When a verb in the IMMEDIATE NEGATIVE has an object, tone optionally appears on the first syllable of the root [Trule]: /ntibadukunda/ v-ind-neg-imm+pro-1pl-obj 'they don't like us' [rw: -kiunda] or /nitbagahakeka/ v-ind-neg-imm+n7-sg-obj 'they do not carry it (the baby) on their shoulders' [rw: -heeka].

Chapter 4: Pronouns

Table 55. Object Pronoun Infixes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERSONAL PRONOUNS</th>
<th>VOICED CONSONANT</th>
<th>VOICELESS CONSONANT</th>
<th>VOWEL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pro-1-sg</td>
<td>-n-</td>
<td>-m- [after a LABIAL]</td>
<td>-ny-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-1-pl</td>
<td>-tu-</td>
<td>-du-</td>
<td>-tw-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2-sg</td>
<td>-ku-</td>
<td>-gu-</td>
<td>-kw-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2-pl</td>
<td>-ba-</td>
<td></td>
<td>-h-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUNS</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n1-sg</td>
<td>-mu-</td>
<td>-mw-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-pl</td>
<td>-ba-</td>
<td>-b-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-sg</td>
<td>-wu-</td>
<td>-w-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-pl</td>
<td>-yi-</td>
<td>-y-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-sg</td>
<td>-ri-</td>
<td>-ry-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-pl</td>
<td>-ya-</td>
<td>-y-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-sg</td>
<td>-ki-</td>
<td>-gi-</td>
<td>-c- {Rundi}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-cy- {Rwanda}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-pl</td>
<td>-bi-</td>
<td>-vy- {Rundi}</td>
<td>-by- {Rwanda}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-sg</td>
<td>-yi-</td>
<td>-y-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-pl</td>
<td>-zi-</td>
<td>-z-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-sg</td>
<td>-ru-</td>
<td>-rw-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-pl</td>
<td>-zi-</td>
<td>-z-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-sg</td>
<td>-ka-</td>
<td>-ga-</td>
<td>-k-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-pl</td>
<td>-tu-</td>
<td>-du-</td>
<td>-tw-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-sg</td>
<td>-bu-</td>
<td>-bw-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-pl</td>
<td>-ya-</td>
<td>-y-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-sg</td>
<td>-ku-</td>
<td>-gu-</td>
<td>-kw-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-pl</td>
<td>-ya-</td>
<td>-y-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10-loc</td>
<td>-ha-</td>
<td>-pa- [after a NASAL]</td>
<td>-h-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With multiple objects several infixes can cooccur. As a rule of thumb, infixes are placed in the opposite order of the object nouns they replace.\footnote{See Overdulve 1975:264.} It should be noted that examples of three or more objects that are sometimes found in textbooks are contrived. While they are grammatically possible, they are awkward to native speakers and very unlikely to occur in the "real world." For example, there are approximately 270 verbs with embedded objects in the \textit{Newspaper Reader} \citep{Nibagwire2002}, but only five verbs had two objects. None had more.

\cite{Overdulve1975} /azanira unwiigiisha igitabo/ 'He is taking a book to the teacher.' > /arakimuuzanira/ {both} n4-sg-obj+n1-sg-obj 'He is taking it to him.'

/ndatúura mamaa amairirá yaanja(y)e/ 'I am offering my mother my tears.' > /ndayamutúura/ {both} n3-pl-obj+n1-sg-obj 'I am offering them to her.'

/ímána yakúdhháaye/ {both} pro-2sg-obj+pro-1pl-obj 'God who gave you to us...' \citep{R21.4}

/ikudútuungire/ {both} pro-2sg-obj+pro-1pl-obj 'He should take care of you on our behalf.' \citep{R21.4}

/ndayigutéesh/a/ {both} n2-pl-obj+pro-2sg-obj 'I cause you to abandon them (imírimo 'tasks').' \citep{R36.2}

/ndayigukwíiza/ {both} n2-pl-obj+pro-2sg-obj 'I extend them (imíruho 'troubles') out to you.' \citep{R36.2}

The following summarizes the ORDER OF INFIXES when more than one object appears.

- The conjunctive -na- 'even, moreover' is treated as if it were an object infix and always comes first. Although this affix is reasonably common in Kinyarwanda, it is rarely used in Kirundi.

\cite{Overdulve1975} «inzara ikanaghita abantu?» {Rwanda} v-seq+conj-infix '...and hunger even kills people' \citep{R32}

/baraŋgákióra/ {Rwanda} conj-infix+n4-pl-obj '... and they do it' \citep{Overdulve1975:264}
Chapter 4: Pronouns

/umeengo n'ikiruündi kiranãmutsiinda/ {Rundi} conj-infix+n1-sg-obj 'It seems that he does not pick up the Rundi language easily.' (Rodegem 1970:272)

- The placement of the n10 locative -ha- is somewhat optional: it may come first before all other infixes, or it can follow objects in most other classes (except those designating humans).

/barahãyamũhĩngira/ {Rwanda} n10-loc-obj+n3-pl-obj+n1-sg-obj 'They cultivate it there for him.' (Overdulve 1975:264)

/nda hã yamũhiingira/ {Rwanda} n10-loc-obj+n3-pl-obj+n1-sg-obj 'They cultivate it there for him.' (Overdulve 1975:264)

/nda hã bimũšyiirira/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:156), /nda hã bimũšyiirira/ {Rwanda} n10-loc-obj+n4-pl-obj+n1-sg-obj 'I will remit it to him there.' (Cristini 2000:156)

/nda hã bimũšyiirira/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:156), /nda hã bimũšyiirira/ {Rwanda} n4-pl-obj+n10-loc-obj+n1-sg-obj 'I will remit it to him there.' (Cristini 2000:156)

/ndabí hã mũšyiirira/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:157), /ndabí hã mũšyiirira/ {Rwanda} n4-pl-obj+n10-loc-obj+n1-sg-obj 'I will remit it to him there.' (Cristini 2000:157)

/ndabí hã mũšyiirira/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:157), /ndabí hã mũšyiirira/ {Rwanda} n4-pl-obj+n10-loc-obj+n1-sg-obj 'I will remit it to him there.' (Cristini 2000:157)

/baranãbi hã mukórera/ {both} conj-infix+n4-pl-obj+n10-loc-obj+n1-sg-obj 'And they are going to do it for him there.' (Bizimana 1998:145)

• Infixes referring to humans follow those of other classes.

/nda yágu tůura/ {both} n3-pl-obj+pro-2sg-obj 'I give them (amarira 'tears') to you.' (R36.2)

/bara hámumw ūerekera/ {both} n10-loc-obj+n1-sg-obj+n1-sg-obj 'They will show him it (the place) on his behalf.' (Rodegem 1967:141)

• A first person singular object is the last of all infixes (except for the reflexive288 ). In line with the statistics cited above from the Newspaper Reader, of the 43 instances of pro-1sg-obj in Nibagwire & Zorc 2002, only one involved -n- 'me' as a second imbedded object.

/núu kuum páhó/ {Rwanda} pro-2sg-obj+pro-1sg-obj 'If he gives me to you...' (R28.8)

/arayiimuũshũriira/ {Rundi} n5-sg-obj+n1-sg-obj+pro-1sg-obj 'He will bring it to him on my behalf.' (Rodegem 1967:141)

/aranyiĩũsábira/ {Rwanda} pro-1sg-obj+refl 'He asks me for himself.' (Overdulve 1975:264)

4.4. Possessive Pronouns

Possessive pronouns present an incredibly rich and complex matrix. Besides those relating to the personal pronouns, there are all those that refer the noun of one class to that of another. All in all, there are 460 primary forms289 in the tables below. Adding to this complexity is the fact that there are many homophones.290

In structure, possessives are always composed of two elements: an appropriate noun group possessive marker (wa-, ya-, rwa-, za-, etc.) and a pronoun or noun-class stem (–nje {Rundi}, –njye {Rwanda} pro-1sg 'my,' –cu pro-1pl 'our,' –nyu pro-2pl 'your,' –bo n1-pl 'their,' etc.). One must bear in mind that possession involves both a POSSESSOR and a thing POSSESSED (see also §3.6.3.2). In the following examples, our grammatical explanation refers first to the PRONOUN ROOT and then to the POSSESSIVE MARKER, e.g., /bwáazo/ is a n5-pl pronoun (zo) possessed by a n8-sg head (bwáa). While this is the opposite of the order in which these elements appear, it is the manner in which all possessive pronouns are presented in Tables 56-59.291

---

288 The REFLEXIVE íi- is treated as the final infix by some authors. No matter what it is considered to be, it always comes immediately before the verb root, stripping it of any high tone and shortening any long initial vowel (§8.13).

289 These figures are based on the group system, where, for example, n3-pl, n8-pl, and n9-pl are identical in form. The table in Overdulve (1975;306f) has 378 forms arranged by the Meinhof noun class system.

290 There are 25 separate functions for /yáayo/, 10 each for /záayo/, /yáazo/, /wáayo/, and 5 each for /yáawo/, /yáatwo/, /yárwoo/, /yááwo/, /yááwó/, /bwáayo/ and several others.

291 This treatment may appear awkward for these short possessive pronouns, but is the only way to maintain consistency where the bulk of a word clearly belongs to a given noun group, such as /z'úwiíshe/ {both} auto-n1-sg-recent-poss-n6-pl 'of the one who killed' (R40.4). Looking at the entire word /z'úwiíshe/, one is struck that its primary analysis or group membership is to be found in n1. Similarly with the ambiguity built into the
Rundi has a special INALIENABLE POSSESSIVE construction based on n6-sg (rw-) with the sense of 'very own.' These are INVARIABLE, inflecting for person, but not for noun class. Grammars exemplify these as occurring after the copulatives ni or si, but it can be used alone. Depending on context, Rwanda uses standard or nominalized possessive pronouns, or in special circumstances the emphatic /bwiité/.

In the following tables when there are two forms within a single cell, the first is Rundi and the second is Rwanda.

possessor in a form like /yaanje/ {Rundi}, /yaanjye/ {Rwanda}, n2-pl, n3-pl, or n5-sg, there is no doubt that its root and reference point is pro-1sg 'my.'
### Table 56. Possessive Personal Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>group</th>
<th>my</th>
<th>our</th>
<th>your [sg]</th>
<th>your [pl]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n1-sg</td>
<td>waanje</td>
<td>wáacu</td>
<td>waawe</td>
<td>wáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-pl</td>
<td>baanje</td>
<td>báacu</td>
<td>baawe</td>
<td>báanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-sg</td>
<td>waanje</td>
<td>wáacu</td>
<td>waawe</td>
<td>wáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-pl</td>
<td>yaanje</td>
<td>yáacu</td>
<td>yaawe</td>
<td>yáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-sg</td>
<td>ryaanje</td>
<td>ryáacu</td>
<td>ryaawe</td>
<td>ryáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-pl</td>
<td>yaanje</td>
<td>yáacu</td>
<td>yaawe</td>
<td>yáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-sg</td>
<td>caanje</td>
<td>cáacu</td>
<td>caawe</td>
<td>cáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-pl</td>
<td>vyaanje</td>
<td>vyáacu</td>
<td>vyaaawe</td>
<td>vyáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-sg</td>
<td>yaanje</td>
<td>yáacu</td>
<td>yaawe</td>
<td>yáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-pl</td>
<td>zaanje</td>
<td>záacu</td>
<td>zaawe</td>
<td>záanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-sg</td>
<td>rwaanje</td>
<td>rwáacu</td>
<td>rwaawe</td>
<td>rwáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-pl</td>
<td>zaanje</td>
<td>záacu</td>
<td>zaawe</td>
<td>záanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-sg</td>
<td>kaanje</td>
<td>káacu</td>
<td>kaawe</td>
<td>káanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-pl</td>
<td>twaanje</td>
<td>twáacu</td>
<td>twaaawe</td>
<td>twáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-sg</td>
<td>bwaanje</td>
<td>bwáacu</td>
<td>bwaawe</td>
<td>bwáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-pl</td>
<td>yaanje</td>
<td>yáacu</td>
<td>yaawe</td>
<td>yáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-sg</td>
<td>kwaanje</td>
<td>kwáacu</td>
<td>kwawe</td>
<td>kwáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-pl</td>
<td>yaanje</td>
<td>yáacu</td>
<td>yawe</td>
<td>yáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10-sg</td>
<td>haanje</td>
<td>háacu</td>
<td>hawe</td>
<td>háanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10-pl</td>
<td>haanje</td>
<td>háacu</td>
<td>hawe</td>
<td>háanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11-sg</td>
<td>kwaanje</td>
<td>kwáacu</td>
<td>kwaawe</td>
<td>kwáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11-pl</td>
<td>kwaanje</td>
<td>kwáacu</td>
<td>kwaawe</td>
<td>kwáanyu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Table 57. Possessive Pronouns Groups 1-3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>group</th>
<th>n1-sg</th>
<th>n1-pl</th>
<th>n2-sg</th>
<th>n2-pl</th>
<th>n3-sg</th>
<th>n3-pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n1-sg</td>
<td>wíiwé</td>
<td>wáabo</td>
<td>wáawo</td>
<td>wáayo</td>
<td>wáaryo</td>
<td>wáayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-pl</td>
<td>biiwé</td>
<td>báabo</td>
<td>báawo</td>
<td>báayo</td>
<td>báaryo</td>
<td>báayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-sg</td>
<td>wíiwé</td>
<td>wáabo</td>
<td>wáawo</td>
<td>wáayo</td>
<td>wáaryo</td>
<td>wáayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-pl</td>
<td>yíiwé</td>
<td>yáabo</td>
<td>yáawo</td>
<td>yáayo</td>
<td>yáaryo</td>
<td>yáayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-sg</td>
<td>ryíiwé</td>
<td>ryáabo</td>
<td>ryáawo</td>
<td>ryáayo</td>
<td>ryáaryo</td>
<td>ryáayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-pl</td>
<td>yiíiwé</td>
<td>yáabo</td>
<td>yáawo</td>
<td>yáayo</td>
<td>yáaryo</td>
<td>yáayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-sg</td>
<td>ciíiwé</td>
<td>cáabo</td>
<td>cáawo</td>
<td>cáayo</td>
<td>cáaryo</td>
<td>cáayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-pl</td>
<td>vyíiwé</td>
<td>vyáabo</td>
<td>vyáawo</td>
<td>vyáayo</td>
<td>vyáaryo</td>
<td>vyáayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-sg</td>
<td>yiíiwé</td>
<td>yáabo</td>
<td>yáawo</td>
<td>yáayo</td>
<td>yáaryo</td>
<td>yáayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-pl</td>
<td>ziíiwé</td>
<td>záabo</td>
<td>záawo</td>
<td>záayo</td>
<td>záaryo</td>
<td>záayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-sg</td>
<td>rwiíiwé</td>
<td>rwáabo</td>
<td>rwáawo</td>
<td>rwáayo</td>
<td>rwáaryo</td>
<td>rwáayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-pl</td>
<td>ziíiwé</td>
<td>záabo</td>
<td>záawo</td>
<td>záayo</td>
<td>záaryo</td>
<td>záayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-sg</td>
<td>kíiwé</td>
<td>káabo</td>
<td>káawo</td>
<td>káayo</td>
<td>káaryo</td>
<td>káayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-pl</td>
<td>twíiwé</td>
<td>twáabo</td>
<td>twáawo</td>
<td>twáayo</td>
<td>twáaryo</td>
<td>twáayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-sg</td>
<td>bwiíiwé</td>
<td>bwáabo</td>
<td>bwáawo</td>
<td>bwáayo</td>
<td>bwáaryo</td>
<td>bwáayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-pl</td>
<td>yiíiwé</td>
<td>yáabo</td>
<td>yáawo</td>
<td>yáayo</td>
<td>yáaryo</td>
<td>yáayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-sg</td>
<td>kíiwé</td>
<td>káabo</td>
<td>káawo</td>
<td>káayo</td>
<td>káaryo</td>
<td>káayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-pl</td>
<td>yiíiwé</td>
<td>yáabo</td>
<td>yáawo</td>
<td>yáayo</td>
<td>yáaryo</td>
<td>yáayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10-sg/pl</td>
<td>hiíiwé</td>
<td>háabo</td>
<td>háawo</td>
<td>háayo</td>
<td>háaryo</td>
<td>háayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11-sg/pl</td>
<td>kííiwé</td>
<td>káabo</td>
<td>káawo</td>
<td>káayo</td>
<td>káaryo</td>
<td>káayo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 58. Possessive Pronouns Groups 4-6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>group</th>
<th>n4-sg</th>
<th>n4-pl</th>
<th>n5-sg</th>
<th>n5-pl</th>
<th>n6-sg</th>
<th>n6-pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n1-sg</td>
<td>wáaco</td>
<td>wáacyo</td>
<td>wáavyo</td>
<td>wáabyo</td>
<td>wáayo</td>
<td>wáazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-pl</td>
<td>báaco</td>
<td>báacyo</td>
<td>báavyo</td>
<td>báabyo</td>
<td>báayo</td>
<td>báazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-sg</td>
<td>wáaco</td>
<td>wáacyo</td>
<td>wáavyo</td>
<td>wáabyo</td>
<td>wáayo</td>
<td>wáazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-pl</td>
<td>yáaco</td>
<td>yáacyo</td>
<td>yáavyo</td>
<td>yáabyo</td>
<td>yáayo</td>
<td>yáazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-sg</td>
<td>ryáaco</td>
<td>ryáacyo</td>
<td>ryáavyo</td>
<td>ryáabyo</td>
<td>ryáayo</td>
<td>ryáazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-pl</td>
<td>yáaco</td>
<td>yáacyo</td>
<td>yáavyo</td>
<td>yáabyo</td>
<td>yáayo</td>
<td>yáazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-sg</td>
<td>cáaco</td>
<td>cyáacyo</td>
<td>cáavyo</td>
<td>cyáabyo</td>
<td>cáayo</td>
<td>cáazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-pl</td>
<td>vyáaco</td>
<td>byáacyo</td>
<td>vyáavyo</td>
<td>byáabyo</td>
<td>vyáayo</td>
<td>vyáazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-sg</td>
<td>yáaco</td>
<td>yáacyo</td>
<td>yáavyo</td>
<td>yáabyo</td>
<td>yáayo</td>
<td>yáazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-pl</td>
<td>záaco</td>
<td>záacyo</td>
<td>záavyo</td>
<td>záabyo</td>
<td>záayo</td>
<td>záazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-sg</td>
<td>rwáaco</td>
<td>rwáacyo</td>
<td>rwáavyo</td>
<td>rwáabyo</td>
<td>rwáayo</td>
<td>rwáazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-pl</td>
<td>záaco</td>
<td>záacyo</td>
<td>záavyo</td>
<td>záabyo</td>
<td>záayo</td>
<td>záazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-sg</td>
<td>káaco</td>
<td>káacyo</td>
<td>káavyo</td>
<td>káabyo</td>
<td>káayo</td>
<td>káazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-pl</td>
<td>twáaco</td>
<td>twáacyo</td>
<td>twáavyo</td>
<td>twáabyo</td>
<td>twáayo</td>
<td>twáazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-sg</td>
<td>bwáaco</td>
<td>bwáacyo</td>
<td>bwáavyo</td>
<td>bwáabyo</td>
<td>bwáayo</td>
<td>bwáazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-pl</td>
<td>yáaco</td>
<td>yáacyo</td>
<td>yáavyo</td>
<td>yáabyo</td>
<td>yáayo</td>
<td>yáazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-sg</td>
<td>kwáaco</td>
<td>kwáacyo</td>
<td>kwáavyo</td>
<td>kwáabyo</td>
<td>kwáayo</td>
<td>kwáazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-pl</td>
<td>yáaco</td>
<td>yáacyo</td>
<td>yáavyo</td>
<td>yáabyo</td>
<td>yáayo</td>
<td>yáazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10-sg/pl</td>
<td>háaco</td>
<td>háacyo</td>
<td>háavyo</td>
<td>háabyo</td>
<td>háayo</td>
<td>háazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11-sg/pl</td>
<td>kwáaco</td>
<td>kwáacyo</td>
<td>kwáavyo</td>
<td>kwáabyo</td>
<td>kwáayo</td>
<td>kwáazo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 4: Pronouns

Table 59. Possessive Pronouns Groups 7-11

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>group</th>
<th>n7-sg</th>
<th>n7-pl</th>
<th>n8-sg</th>
<th>n8-pl &amp; n9-pl</th>
<th>n9-sg</th>
<th>n10-loc</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n1-sg</td>
<td>wáako</td>
<td>wáatwo</td>
<td>wáabwo</td>
<td>wáayo</td>
<td>wáakwo</td>
<td>wáaho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-pl</td>
<td>báako</td>
<td>báatwo</td>
<td>báabwo</td>
<td>báayo</td>
<td>báakwo</td>
<td>báaho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-sg</td>
<td>wáako</td>
<td>wáatwo</td>
<td>wáabwo</td>
<td>wáayo</td>
<td>wáakwo</td>
<td>wáaho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-pl</td>
<td>yáako</td>
<td>yáatwo</td>
<td>yáabwo</td>
<td>yáayo</td>
<td>yáakwo</td>
<td>yáaho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-sg</td>
<td>ryáako</td>
<td>ryáatwo</td>
<td>ryáabwo</td>
<td>ryáayo</td>
<td>ryákwo</td>
<td>ryáho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-pl</td>
<td>yáako</td>
<td>yáatwo</td>
<td>yáabwo</td>
<td>yáayo</td>
<td>yáakwo</td>
<td>yáaho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-sg</td>
<td>cáako</td>
<td>cáatwo</td>
<td>cáabwo</td>
<td>cáayo</td>
<td>cáakwo</td>
<td>cáaho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-pl</td>
<td>vyáako</td>
<td>vyáatwo</td>
<td>vyáabwo</td>
<td>vyáayo</td>
<td>vyákwo</td>
<td>vyáho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-sg</td>
<td>yáako</td>
<td>yáatwo</td>
<td>yáabwo</td>
<td>yáayo</td>
<td>yáakwo</td>
<td>yáaho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-pl</td>
<td>záako</td>
<td>záatwo</td>
<td>záabwo</td>
<td>záayo</td>
<td>záakwo</td>
<td>záaho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-sg</td>
<td>rwáako</td>
<td>rwáatwo</td>
<td>rwáabwo</td>
<td>rwáayo</td>
<td>rwákwo</td>
<td>rwáho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-pl</td>
<td>záako</td>
<td>záatwo</td>
<td>záabwo</td>
<td>záayo</td>
<td>záakwo</td>
<td>záaho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-sg</td>
<td>kwáako</td>
<td>kwáatwo</td>
<td>kwáabwo</td>
<td>kwáayo</td>
<td>kwákwo</td>
<td>kwáaho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-pl</td>
<td>kwáako</td>
<td>kwáatwo</td>
<td>kwáabwo</td>
<td>kwáayo</td>
<td>kwákwo</td>
<td>kwáaho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-pl</td>
<td>yáako</td>
<td>yáatwo</td>
<td>yáabwo</td>
<td>yáayo</td>
<td>yáakwo</td>
<td>yáaho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-sg</td>
<td>kwáako</td>
<td>kwáatwo</td>
<td>kwáabwo</td>
<td>kwáayo</td>
<td>kwákwo</td>
<td>kwáaho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-pl</td>
<td>yáako</td>
<td>yáatwo</td>
<td>yáabwo</td>
<td>yáayo</td>
<td>yáakwo</td>
<td>yáaho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10-sg/pl</td>
<td>háako</td>
<td>háatwo</td>
<td>háabwo</td>
<td>háayo</td>
<td>háakwo</td>
<td>háaho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11-sg/pl</td>
<td>kwáako</td>
<td>kwáatwo</td>
<td>kwáabwo</td>
<td>kwáayo</td>
<td>kwákwo</td>
<td>kwáaho</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.4.1. Nominalized Possessive Pronouns

Just as possessive noun constructions can themselves be nominalized (§3.6.3.3), so can the possessive pronouns (compare the following with other forms in Tables 56 and 60).

/aya n’áamafaraanga yáacu/ [Rundi], /aya n’áamafaraanga yáacu/ [Rwanda] ‘this is our money’
/aya mafaraanga n’áyaácu/ [Rundi], /aya mafaraanga n’áayaácu/ [Rwanda] ‘this money is ours’

A thematic vowel appropriate to each noun group is added to a possessive pronoun, e.g.,

\[
u+{\text{waanj(y)e}} \begin{array}{l}
n1-sg, n2-sg, a+báacu n1-pl, i+yáanyu n2-pl, n3-pl, n5-sg, etc.\end{array}\]

There are also tone changes. With possessive forms that already have high tone, the tone moves one mora to the right: báacu > abaácu [A2rule, see §2.4.17]. With low tone possessive forms, two high tones are introduced, one immediately after the prefix and the other on the final syllable, i.e., the ROOT: waanj(y)e > uwáanj(y)é [Hrule (§2.4.18) + Erule (§2.4.22)].

A sampling of these are found in Table 60 representing the personal pronouns and nouns of group 1. Any of the possessive pronouns in groups 2-11 found in Tables 57-59 can be nominalized and follow the same pattern as the forms in Table 60.

\[292\] Meeussen (1959:89) maintains that there is a length and tone difference in Kirundi forms referencing the third person, i.e., /iyábo/ instead of /iyaábo/ pro-n1-pl-nom-poss-n5-sg ‘theirs.’ No other author presents such alternatives since vowel length appears to be a hallmark of possessive and nominalized possessive forms.

\[152\]
Table 60. Nominalized Possessive Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1st Person</th>
<th>2nd Person</th>
<th>3rd Person (group 1)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>singular</td>
<td>singular</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-sg</td>
<td>uwáanjé</td>
<td>uwáanjyé</td>
<td>uwáawé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uwáacu</td>
<td>uwáawé</td>
<td>uwáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uwiwé</td>
<td>uwé</td>
<td>uwaábo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-pl</td>
<td>abáanjé</td>
<td>abáanjyé</td>
<td>abáawé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>abáacu</td>
<td>abáawé</td>
<td>abáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>abiiwé</td>
<td>abé</td>
<td>abaábo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-sg</td>
<td>uwáanjé</td>
<td>uwáanjyé</td>
<td>uwáawé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uwáacu</td>
<td>uwáawé</td>
<td>uwáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uwiwé</td>
<td>uwé</td>
<td>uwaábo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-pl</td>
<td>iyáanjé</td>
<td>iyáanjyé</td>
<td>iyáawé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iyáacu</td>
<td>iyáawé</td>
<td>iyáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iyiiwé</td>
<td>iyé</td>
<td>iyábo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-sg</td>
<td>iryáanjé</td>
<td>iryáanjyé</td>
<td>iryáawé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iryáacu</td>
<td>iryáawé</td>
<td>iryáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iryiwiwé</td>
<td>iyé</td>
<td>iryábo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-pl</td>
<td>ayáanjé</td>
<td>ayáanjyé</td>
<td>ayáawé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ayaacu</td>
<td>ayáawé</td>
<td>ayáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ayiwiwé</td>
<td>ayé</td>
<td>ayaábo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-sg</td>
<td>icáanjé</td>
<td>icýáanjyé</td>
<td>icáawé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>icáacu</td>
<td>icýáawé</td>
<td>icáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iciiwé</td>
<td>icyé</td>
<td>icáábo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-pl</td>
<td>ibyáanjé</td>
<td>ibyáanjyé</td>
<td>ibyáawé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ibyáacu</td>
<td>ibyáawé</td>
<td>ibyáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ibyiwiwé</td>
<td>ibyé</td>
<td>ibyáábo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-sg</td>
<td>iyáanjé</td>
<td>iyáanjyé</td>
<td>iyáawé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iyáacu</td>
<td>iyáawé</td>
<td>iyáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iyiwiwé</td>
<td>iyé</td>
<td>iyáábo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-pl</td>
<td>izáanjé</td>
<td>izáanjyé</td>
<td>izáawé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>izáacu</td>
<td>izáawé</td>
<td>izáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iziiwé</td>
<td>izé</td>
<td>izáábo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-sg</td>
<td>urwáanjé</td>
<td>urwáanjyé</td>
<td>urwáawé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>urwáacu</td>
<td>urwáawé</td>
<td>urwáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>urwiwiwé</td>
<td>urvé</td>
<td>urwaábo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-pl</td>
<td>izáanjé</td>
<td>izáanjyé</td>
<td>izáawé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>izáacu</td>
<td>izáawé</td>
<td>izáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iziiwé</td>
<td>izé</td>
<td>izáábo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-sg</td>
<td>akáanjé</td>
<td>akáanjyé</td>
<td>akáawé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>akaacu</td>
<td>akáawé</td>
<td>akáanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>akiwiwé</td>
<td>aké</td>
<td>akaábo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-pl</td>
<td>utwaanjé</td>
<td>utwaanjyé</td>
<td>utwaawé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>utwaacu</td>
<td>utwaawé</td>
<td>utwaanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>utwiwiwé</td>
<td>utvé</td>
<td>utwaábo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-sg</td>
<td>ubwáanjé</td>
<td>ubwáanjyé</td>
<td>ubwáawé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ubwaacu</td>
<td>ubwáawé</td>
<td>ubwaanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ubwiwiwé</td>
<td>ubvé</td>
<td>ubwaábo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-pl</td>
<td>ayáanjé</td>
<td>ayáanjyé</td>
<td>ayáawé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ayaacu</td>
<td>ayáawé</td>
<td>ayaanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ayyiwiwé</td>
<td>ayé</td>
<td>ayaábo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-sg</td>
<td>ukwáanjé</td>
<td>ukwáanjyé</td>
<td>ukwáawé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ukwaacu</td>
<td>ukwáawé</td>
<td>ukwaanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ukwiwiwé</td>
<td>ukvé</td>
<td>ukwaábo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-pl</td>
<td>ayáanjé</td>
<td>ayáanjyé</td>
<td>ayáawé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ayaacu</td>
<td>ayáawé</td>
<td>ayaanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ayyiwiwé</td>
<td>ayé</td>
<td>ayaábo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10-sg/pl</td>
<td>aháanjé</td>
<td>aháanjyé</td>
<td>aháawé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ahaacu</td>
<td>aháawé</td>
<td>ahaanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ahiiwiwé</td>
<td>ahé</td>
<td>ahaábo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11-sg/pl</td>
<td>ukwáanjé</td>
<td>ukwáanjyé</td>
<td>ukwáawé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ukwaacu</td>
<td>ukwáawé</td>
<td>ukwaanyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ukwiwiwé</td>
<td>ukvé</td>
<td>ukwaábo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

293 When **ubwaa** is followed by a pronoun root, it means 'of one's own will, spontaneously, personally' (Overdulve 1975:181). This is the closest Kinyarwanda and Kirundi get to having a REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

294 When **ukwaa** is followed by a pronoun root, it means 'in the manner of' (Overdulve 1975:181).
Chapter 4: Pronouns

/siinkigira icyó maríra abáanjyé/ [Rwanda] pro-1sg-nom-poss-n1-pl 'I am no longer of any use to my family' (R34.5)

/izáanjyé ní nyínshi izáawé ní nkéeyá/ [Rwanda] pro-1sg-nom-poss-n5-pl + pro-2sg-nom-poss-n5-pl 'Mine /théné goats/ are numerous and yours are few.' (Hurel 1952:56)

/háabwa impuíndu n'aabáawé/ [both] pro-2sg-nom-poss-n1-pl-agent 'be given acclaim by your own people' (R21.2)

/nk'úukó wuumvá abazuúngu bábwiira izaábo/ [both] pro-n1-pl-nom-poss-n5-pl 'just as you hear white people talking to theirs /imbwá dogs/' (R38.1)

/ukwáanjyé/ [Rwanda] 'my way' (Overdulve 1975:181)

The equivalent of REFLEXIVE PRONOMINALIZATION self or oneself is the use of n8 (abstract) nominalized possessives with /ubwáa/ [both]

/bareenga 270/ [both] n1-pl-subj + v-ind-imm 'they exceed 270'

/abageenzi bareengá 270/ [Rwanda] n1-pl-subj + v-rel-imm 'passengers who exceed 270' (R8b)

/abaantu bareengá imiliyoóni ijana/ [Rundi] n1-pl-subj + v-rel-imm 'people who exceed 100 million' (R37.4)

/utwó aroonsé twóóse ní twó yatwáara/ [Rundi] rel-obj-pro-n7-pl 'He'd take whatever he could get.' [lit. 'Everything that he could get that is what he took.' (R25.3)

/daatá arabípfukuura agho yabítaritse/ [Rundi] rel-obj-pro-n10-loc 'My father uncovers them where he let them ripen.' (R15)

/iinezereje ni ukó nsaaanzé důhuuje/ [both] rel-obj-pro-n11-adv 'What makes me happy is that I see we agree.' (R1)

/kaándi ajé aragitaxendera ku rutúgu ukó ašaatsé/ [Rundi] rel-obj-pro-n11-adv 'So he could throw it over his shoulder as he pleased.' (R5)

/ukó bukeeyé, ukó bwiijé/ [both] rel-obj-pro-n11-time 'day and night' [lit. 'as it dawns, as it gets dark'] (R25.3)

### Table 61. Object Relative (Precessive) Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERSONAL PRONOUNS</th>
<th>BEFORE A CONSONANT</th>
<th>BEFORE A VOWEL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pro-1-sg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-1-pl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2-sg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2-pl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOUNS</td>
<td>Rundi – Rwanda</td>
<td>Rundi – Rwanda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-sg</td>
<td>uwó</td>
<td>uw'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-pl</td>
<td>abó</td>
<td>ab'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-sg</td>
<td>uwó</td>
<td>uw'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-pl</td>
<td>iyó</td>
<td>iy'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-sg</td>
<td>iryó</td>
<td>iry'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-pl</td>
<td>ayó</td>
<td>ay'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-sg</td>
<td>icó, ickyó</td>
<td>ic', icy'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-pl</td>
<td>ivyó, ibyó</td>
<td>ivy', iby'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-sg</td>
<td>iyó</td>
<td>iy'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-pl</td>
<td>izó</td>
<td>iz'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-sg</td>
<td>urwó</td>
<td>urw'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-pl</td>
<td>izó</td>
<td>iz'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-sg</td>
<td>akó</td>
<td>ak'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-pl</td>
<td>utwó</td>
<td>utw'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-sg</td>
<td>ubwó</td>
<td>ubw'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-pl</td>
<td>ayó</td>
<td>ay'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-sg</td>
<td>ukó / ukwó</td>
<td>ukw'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-pl</td>
<td>ayó</td>
<td>ay'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10-loc</td>
<td>ahó</td>
<td>ahw'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11-adv</td>
<td>ukó</td>
<td>uk'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n12-loc</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n13-loc</td>
<td>iyó</td>
<td>iy'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 4.6. Locative Pronouns

Possessive pronouns of n\(^2\)\(^{296}\) can be marked by the n13 locative (i-) yielding a special set of locative expressions, e.g., i+waanj(y)é. Tone changes for the pronominal forms including n1 for the third person are identical to those discussed for nominalized possessives (§4.4.1). With possessive forms that already have high tone, the tone moves one mora to the right: wáacu > iwaácu [A2rule, see §2.4.17]. With low tone possessive forms, two high tones are introduced, one immediately after the prefix and the other on the final syllable, i.e., the ROOT: waanj(y)é > iwáaanj(y)é [Hrule (§2.4.18) + Erule (§2.4.22)]. In Rwanda these forms are generally limited to pronouns and humans or animate creatures which can be thought of as /imuhirá/ 'at home.' However, Rundi has a different paradigm in all groups above n1: there is no long penult vowel and high tone falls on the final syllable (i.e., the pronoun root).\(^{297}\)

/iwaácu/ {both} pro-1pl-poss-n2-sg+n13-loc 'at our place' (R15)
/iwaácu duhora túgana ibitooke/ [Rundi] 'At home, we always mash bananas.' (R15)

\(^{296}\) Agreeing with /umuhirá/ {Rundi only} n2-sg 'dwelling, domicile, home,' which also occurs in reduced form in the locative expression /imuhirá/ {both} n13-loc-n2-sg 'home, at home, homewards.'

\(^{297}\) Cristini (2000:301) gives examples illustrating the length and tone difference in Kirundi forms in groups above n1, i.e., /iwayó/ instead of /iwaayó/ pro-n5-sg-poss-n2-sg+n13-loc 'in his den' (intáre 'lion'). In an email (9 Dec 2004), Prof. Ndayiragije confirms these and even /iwbó/ as an alternate for n1-pl. The Rundi forms in Table 62 are drawn from Cristini, except for the two marked with a dagger (†).
Chapter 4: Pronouns

/iwé/ {both} pro-3sg-poss-n2-sg+n13-loc 'at his, her place' (R14)

/umutwaáre yakóreeshe je igitáramo iwé/ {Rwanda} 'A chief threw a party at his palace.' (R14)

/iwaányu/ {both} pro-2pl-poss-n2-sg+n13-loc 'at your place' (R28.7)

/ukáva iwaányu mw’ijíuru ngo uzanywe nó kunyíiraatahó/ {Rwanda} 'And you come from your place in the sky just to pretend you are better than me!' (R28.7)

/iwábo/ {both} pro-3pl-poss-n2-sg+n13-loc 'at their place, in their home' (R13)

/nyina aba ýaapfáakaye cáanké ýaahukaanye agasubira iwaábo/ {Rundi} 'The mother is either widowed or divorced, and has gone back to her family.' (R13)

/intáre iri iwáyo/ {Rundi} pro-n5-sg-poss-n2-sg+n13-loc 'The lion is in his den.' (Cristini 2000:301);

/intáre iri iwáyo/ {Rwanda}

/ubwáato buri iwabwó/ {Rundi} pro-n8-sg-poss-n2-sg+n13-loc 'The canoe is in its dock.' (Cristini 2000:301)

/ubushíishi buri iwabwó/ {Rwanda}

Table 62. Locative Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pronoun</th>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
<th>English equivalents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1sg</td>
<td>iwáanjé</td>
<td>iwáanjyé</td>
<td>at my place, in my home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1pl</td>
<td>iwaácu</td>
<td></td>
<td>at home, at our place, in our home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2sg</td>
<td>iwáawé</td>
<td></td>
<td>at your place, in your home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2pl</td>
<td>iwaányu</td>
<td></td>
<td>at your place, in your home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3sg = n1-sg</td>
<td>iwe</td>
<td></td>
<td>at his, her place; in his, her home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3pl = n1-pl</td>
<td>iwaábo</td>
<td>iwaábo</td>
<td>at their place, in their home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-sg</td>
<td>(do not occur)</td>
<td>n/a (members of n2 are never human)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-pl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-sg</td>
<td>(do not occur; members of n3 are never human)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-pl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-sg</td>
<td>iwaáco</td>
<td>iwaácyo</td>
<td>at his, her place; in his, her area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-pl</td>
<td>iwaávyó</td>
<td>iwaábyo</td>
<td>at their place; in their area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-sg</td>
<td>iwayó</td>
<td>iwaáyó</td>
<td>at his, her place; in his, her den</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-pl</td>
<td>iwaázo</td>
<td>iwaázo</td>
<td>at their place; in their den</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-sg</td>
<td>iwarwó</td>
<td>iwaárwo</td>
<td>at his, her place; in his, her home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-pl</td>
<td>iwaázo</td>
<td></td>
<td>at their place; in their home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-sg</td>
<td>† iwaáko</td>
<td>iwaáko</td>
<td>at his, her place; in his, her home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-pl</td>
<td>† iwaátwo</td>
<td></td>
<td>at their place; in their home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-sg/pl</td>
<td>iwaábwó</td>
<td>iwaábwó</td>
<td>at his, her, its place; in their area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-sg/pl</td>
<td>(do not occur)</td>
<td>n/a (members of n9 are never human)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10-loc</td>
<td>(does not occur)</td>
<td>n/a (members of n10 are never human)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11-adv</td>
<td>(does not occur)</td>
<td>n/a (members of n11 are never human)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.7. Vocative Pronouns

Pronouns used to call someone are limited to the SECOND PERSON (you) and come in pairs (SINGULAR and PLURAL). In most instances these forms are used together with either a reduced noun (following root tonality) or a vocative noun (following the tonalities described in §3.6.5.2); a few are used alone. Rundi has a greater variety of such vocative pronouns than does Rwanda.

One pair shared by Kinyarwanda and Kirundi is formed with the interjection /yeé/ followed by the second person pronoun root, i.e., /yeéwe/ and /yeémwe/, generally equivalent to English 'hey you!' These forms may be used alone or may be followed by a vocative noun.

/yeéwe/ {both} pro-2sg-voc 'hey you!'

/yeéwe, haguruka tugeendé/ {both} 'hey you, get up and let's go!' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:311)

/yeémwe/ {both} pro-2pl-voc 'hey you all!'
Kirundi alone has alternate forms of the latter without the y-, /eéwe/ pro-2sg-voc and /eémwe/ pro-2pl-voc, which are also used with vocative nouns.

/eéwe ga mwáana, itoonde/ {Rundi} pro-2sg-voc + n1-sg-voc 'hey you, child, be quiet!' (Cristini 2000:151)
/eéwe mugéenzi/ {Rundi} pro-2sg-voc + n1-sg-voc 'hey you, friend!' (Rodegem 1967:105)
/eémwe bagábo, mukóre/ {Rundi} pro-2pl-voc + n1-pl-voc 'hey, you guys, you should work' (Cristini 2000:151)

Two Kirundi forms exhibit vocative TONE REVERSAL, they have a long low vowel /waa, mwaaw/ if followed by a reduced high tone noun and a final high vowel /waá, mwaá/ if followed by a reduced low tone noun.

/umutwaáre ati vuga naáwe waá ntaambwe/ {Rundi} 'The chief said, "OK, lion, you talk (now)!" (R27.4)
/urizwa n'iiki ga waa mwá/ {Rundi} 'Hey you, child, why are you crying?' (Ntahokaja 1994:89)
/mutiinya iki ga mwáa bá/ {Rundi} 'Hey you, children, what are you afraid of?' (Ntahokaja 1994:89)
/mbeéga mwaá bagabo ni ibikí/ {Rundi} 'Hey, guys, what's up?' (R27.8)

Although Kinyarwanda does not have these forms, it does share with Kirundi a circumfix-like vocative construction /waa ... we/ and /mwaaw ... mwe/. However, the Rwanda forms do not exhibit any tonal changes and are used with reduced nouns maintaining root tonality, whereas the Rundi forms continue to have vocative tone reversal and are used with a vocative noun.

/cyo waa mpyisí we ntuúbeere/ {Rwanda} 'hey you, hyena, be impartial!' (R28#3)
/waa mugabo we/ {Rwanda} 'hey you, fellow!' (Overdulve 1975:253); /waá mugabo we/ {Rundi}
/mwaá baantu mwe/ {Rundi} 'Hey you, people!' (Rodegem 1967:105); /mwaaw baantu mwe/ {Rwanda}
/mwaa bahíinzi mwe/ {Rwanda} 'hey you workers!' (Overdulve 1975:253); /mwaaw bahíinzi mwe/ {Rundi}
/mwaa biígiisha mwe nímwiinjíre/ 'hey you teachers, you should come in' {both} (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:309)
/mwaa banyéeshuúri mwe mwiiga néezá/ {Rwanda} 'Hey you students, study hard!' (Overdulve 1975:254)
/mwaa bití mwe nzaabatema mbabaáze/ {Rwanda} 'Hey you trees, I will cut you and carve you' (Bizimana 1998:190)

Kinyarwanda alone has a construction where a vocative noun is followed by the pronoun root that has an additional high tone final vowel, /weé/ pro-2sg-voc and /mweé/ pro-2pl-voc.

/peétero weé/ 'Hey, Peter' {Rwanda} (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:309)
/bagábo mweé/ 'Hey, you guys' {Rwanda} (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:309)

4.8. Indefinite Constructions

There are no true indefinite pronouns in Kinyarwanda or Kirundi, but there are forms that carry the sense of English INDEFINITES formed from any-, some-, -one, or -ever, as in anything, anywhere, anyone, someone, something, somewhere, whatever, whichever, whoever, wherever, so-and-so, such-and-such, etc. These concepts are translated by three different constructions.

Firstly the numeral root -mwé can be used pronominally in the sense of a or an in the singular, some or several in the plural. In Rundi it is usually reduplicated, i.e., /-mweé -mwé/, having vowel lengthening on the first part with high tone on the first and final morae. See Table 63.

/bamwé bavuga kó / {both} pro-indef-n1-pl 'Some (people) say that ...'
/nkúukó bamwé babíizí/ {both} pro-indef-n1-pl '...as some people are aware.' (R26.1)
Chapter 4: Pronouns

/táraabiye ku bümiga abáana b'ábayápaání babáen bavukána/ {Rundi} pro-indef-1-pl-redup 'Looking at the infirmity some Japanese children are born with...' (R37.4)
/babáen bavukána / {Rundi} pro-indef-1-pl-redup 'Some are working, others are lazy.' (Cristini 2000:137)
/usaanga hárimó imihigo itandaakanye, imwé igániisha ku majayambere rusaángé/ {Rwanda} pro-indef-1-pl You notice the promises are different, some aiming at general progress.' (R32)
/bimwé mu bitabo byáanaiki / {Rundi} pro-indef-1-pl-redup 'Some of the books that preceded this one.' (Bizimana 1998:4)
/inká zimwéezimwé ziravyibushe/ {Rundi} pro-indef-1-pl-redup 'Some cows are fat.' (Rodegem 1970:270)
/uburó hambwéebumwé buréeze/ {Rundi} pro-indef-1-pl-redup 'Some millet fields are ready to harvest.' (Rodegem 1970:270)

Table 63. Indefinite Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indefinite</th>
<th>Rwanda &amp; Rundi</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n1-sg</td>
<td>umwé</td>
<td>some (person)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-pl</td>
<td>bamwé</td>
<td>some (people)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-sg</td>
<td>umwé</td>
<td>some (day)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-pl</td>
<td>imwé</td>
<td>some (days)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-sg</td>
<td>rimwé</td>
<td>some (word)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-pl</td>
<td>amwé</td>
<td>some (words)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-sg</td>
<td>kimwé</td>
<td>some (thing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-pl</td>
<td>bimwé</td>
<td>some (things)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-sg</td>
<td>imwé</td>
<td>some (cow)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-pl</td>
<td>zimwé</td>
<td>some (cows)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-sg</td>
<td>rumwé</td>
<td>some (enclosure)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-pl</td>
<td>zimwé</td>
<td>some (enclosures)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-sg</td>
<td>kamwé</td>
<td>some (infant)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-pl</td>
<td>tumwé</td>
<td>some (infants)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-sg/pl</td>
<td>bumwé</td>
<td>some (canoe)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-pl</td>
<td>amwé</td>
<td>some (canoes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-sg</td>
<td>kumwé</td>
<td>some (arm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-pl</td>
<td>amwé</td>
<td>some (arms)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10-loc</td>
<td>hamwé</td>
<td>some (place, places)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11-adv</td>
<td>kumwé</td>
<td>some (way, manner)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n12-loc</td>
<td>(does not occur)</td>
<td>(does not occur)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n13-loc</td>
<td>(does not occur)</td>
<td>(does not occur)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Secondly, a OBJECT RELATIVE PRONOUN (see §4.5 and Table 61) can be used with a verb in the relative mood and a corresponding ENUMERATIVE PRONOUN root -se (§4.10.3 and Table 66) to express -ever.

«mumufashe ku co azogomba co» {Rundi} indef-1-pl-pro 'Help her in whatever she wants.' (Cox 1970:44)
/íyó wakóze vvóóse ni yiizá/ {Rundi} indef-1-pl-pro 'Whatever you did is good.' (Cristini 2000:130); íbyó wakóze byóóse ni yiizá/ {Rwanda} 'Wherever he went, there was no other topic of conversation except Bitama.' (R25.4)
/ahó yacá hóóse ntåa kíyaago atári bitaama/ {Rundi} indef-10-loc-pro 'Wherever he went, there was no other topic of conversation except Bitama.' (R25.4)
/akayisaanga ahó arihó hóóse/ {both} indef-10-loc-pro '... and he can find it anywhere.' (R33.1)
/akayisaanga ahó arihó hóóse/ {both} indef-10-loc-pro '... and he can find it anywhere.' (R33.1)
/nzoobikora ukó nshobóra kwóóse/ {Rundi} indef-11-loc-adv 'I'll do it the very best I can.' [lit. 'however I am able.'] (Cox 1970:44); /nzoobikora ukó nshobóre kóóse/ {Rwanda} 'However (large) their number is...'; /ukó baanganá kwóóse/ {JN} {Rundi}
Thirdly, there are a series of INDEFINITE NOUNS used when the speaker has either forgotten a word (or a name), or would rather not reveal it.

/ntuuzá/ [Rwanda] n1a-sg-indef 'so and so, what's his / her name' (used when one has forgotten the name)
/naaká/ [both] n1a-sg-indef 'so-and-so, whoever' (used to hide the identity of the person)
/kaanaaká/ [both] n1a-sg-masc-indef 'so-and-so, whoever, such a one, someone like that' (used to hide the identity of the man)
/seénaaká/ [Rwanda] n1a-sg-masc-indef 'some man or other' (name not mentioned) [indefinite masculine reference]; [Rundi] n1a-sg-masc 'father of the family, the man of the house'
/intúuzá/ [Rwanda] n13-loc-indef 'at what's its place, somewhere or other' (the name escapes me) [used when one has forgotten the location]

4.9. Distributive Pronouns

There is no common distributive pronoun shared by Kinyarwanda and Kirundi. Each language translates this concept differently. Rwanda has the low-toned invariable form /buri/ 'each, every' which precedes a reduced noun of any group.298
/ejó muzáazé buri wéese yíitwaaje amafaraanga ijana/ {Rwanda} pro-dist + n1-sg-red 'you should come tomorrow, each and everyone having 100 francs' (Jacob 1984:144)
/buri muuntu/ [Rwanda] pro-dist + n1-sg-red 'each man'
«buri mugoré bakamugenera bakurikije umubare w'abana be» {Rwanda} pro-dist + n1-sg-red 'and a portion is reserved for each wife based upon the number of her children' (R38.3)
/buri mwáaka ugoomba gutáanga umusoro/ [Rwanda] pro-dist + n2-sg-red 'each year you have to pay tax' (DRJ1:144)
«abasaza bagahurira aho ngaho buri muúnsi bakahaganirira» {Rwanda} pro-dist + n2-sg-red 'and the elders meet there every day and converse' (R40.2)
/muri buri shuíri/ [Rwanda] pro-dist + n3-sg-red 'in each school'
/buri gihe/ [Rwanda] pro-dist + n4-sg-red 'each moment'
/buri nzu/ [Rwanda] pro-dist + n5-sg 'each house'
/kuri buri rugó/ [Rwanda] pro-dist + n6-sg-red 'near each enclosure'

Kirundi expresses this concept with the reduplicated numeral /-mwée -mwé/, having vowel lengthening on the first part, e.g., /umwúumwé/. Note that this form is both homographic and homophonic with the adverbial /umwúumwé/ {both} 'one-by-one' and the indefinite pronoun (§4.8).
/umwúumwe akeneye abaándi/ {Rundi} pro-dist-n1-sg-redup 'Each person needs someone else.'
(Rodegem 1970:270)
/muhe akajuumpu kamwéekamwé/ {Rundi} pro-dist-n7-sg-redup 'Give him a small yam each time.'
(Rodegem 1970:270)

4.10. Enumerative Pronouns

There are several pronouns that share semantic features with numbers (§7) in that they imply some form of enumeration (alone = one, both = two, all), but which are inflected as pronouns.

4.10.1. Singulative -'nyéne {Rundi}, -'nyiné {Rwanda} 'Alone, Only'

There is an enumerative pronoun that covers the sense of English 'alone, only, by oneself, no one else,' which some linguists call a SINGULATIVE pronoun. Each dialect has a different, but related paradigm formed from a reduced pronoun root, which has vowel-lengthening, and the respective singulative root. Rundi uses /-’nyéne/ with high tone immediately after the prefix and high tone on
the first syllable of the root, while Rwanda uses /-\-'nyiné/ with high tone immediately after the prefix and on the final syllable of the root. It may be used alone; if it does cooccur with a noun, the noun will precede it.

Table 64. Singulative Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>agreement</th>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
<th>English senses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pro-1sg</td>
<td>jéenyéne</td>
<td>jyéenyiné</td>
<td>I alone, only me, by myself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-1pl</td>
<td>tweenyéne</td>
<td>tweenyiné</td>
<td>we alone, only us, by ourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2sg</td>
<td>wéenyéne</td>
<td>wéenyiné</td>
<td>you alone, only you, by yourself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2pl</td>
<td>mwéenyéne</td>
<td>mwéenyiné</td>
<td>you alone, only you, by yourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-sg</td>
<td>wéenyéne</td>
<td>wéenyiné</td>
<td>he, she alone; only him, her; by himself, herself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-pl</td>
<td>bóonyéne</td>
<td>bóonyiné</td>
<td>they alone, only them, by themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-sg</td>
<td>wóonyéne</td>
<td>wóonyiné</td>
<td>it alone, only it, by itself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-pl</td>
<td>yóonyéne</td>
<td>yóonyiné</td>
<td>they alone, only them, by themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-sg</td>
<td>ryóonyéne</td>
<td>ryóonyiné</td>
<td>it alone, only it, by itself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-pl</td>
<td>yóonyéne</td>
<td>yóonyiné</td>
<td>they alone, only them, by themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-sg</td>
<td>cóonyéne</td>
<td>cyóonyiné</td>
<td>it alone, only it, by itself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-pl</td>
<td>vyóonyéne</td>
<td>byóonyiné</td>
<td>they alone, only them, by themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-sg</td>
<td>yóonyéne</td>
<td>yóonyiné</td>
<td>he, she, it alone; only him, her, it; by himself, herself, itself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-pl</td>
<td>zóonyéne</td>
<td>zóonyiné</td>
<td>they alone, only them, by themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-sg</td>
<td>rwóonyéne</td>
<td>rwóonyiné</td>
<td>it alone, only it, by itself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-pl</td>
<td>zóonyéne</td>
<td>zóonyiné</td>
<td>they alone, only them, by themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-sg</td>
<td>kóonyéne</td>
<td>kóonyiné</td>
<td>it alone, only it, by itself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-pl</td>
<td>twóonyéne</td>
<td>twóonyiné</td>
<td>they alone, only them, by themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-sg</td>
<td>bwóonyéne</td>
<td>bwóonyiné</td>
<td>it alone, only it, by itself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-pl</td>
<td>yóonyéne</td>
<td>yóonyiné</td>
<td>they alone, only them, by themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-sg</td>
<td>kóonyéne</td>
<td>kóonyiné / kwóonyiné</td>
<td>it alone, only it, by itself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-pl</td>
<td>yóonyéne</td>
<td>yóonyiné</td>
<td>they alone, only them, by themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10</td>
<td>hóonyéne</td>
<td>hóonyiné</td>
<td>that (situation) alone, only that place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11</td>
<td>kóonyéne</td>
<td>kóonyiné</td>
<td>that manner alone; only that place</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textit{/siingeendá jvéenyiné/} [Rwanda] \textit{pro-1sg-enum-sing} 'I will not go alone.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:246)  
\textit{/ndi jéenyéne/} [Rundi] \textit{pro-1sg-enum-sing} 'I am by myself.' or 'I am alone.' (Rodegem 1970:296); \textit{/ndi jvéenyiné/} [Rwanda] (Overdulve 1975:204)  
\textit{/umugoré waawe wéenyéne amaze kunyerera kané kuri iryo boomba/} [Rundi] \textit{pro-enum-sing-n1-sg} 'your wife, herself, has already slipped at that pump four times.' (R23)  
\textit{/si bó bayituuyemó bóonyiné/} [Rwanda] \textit{pro-enum-sing-n1-pl} 'They are not the only ones who live there.' (R38.11)  
\textit{/kuki mwasizé inzu yóonyiné/} [Rwanda] 'Why did you leave the house by itself?'} (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:247)  
\textit{/zana ibibiííndi byóonyiné/} [Rwanda] \textit{pro-enum-sing-n4-pl} 'Bring only the pitchers!' (Overdulve 1975:204)  
\textit{«ingwano ya mbere n'íya kabiri z'isi yose zonyene gusa zahitanye abantu barenga imiliyoni ijana»} [Rundi] \textit{pro-enum-sing-n5-pl} 'World Wars I and II alone killed more than a hundred million people.' (R37.4)

\textsuperscript{299} This form differs tonally from Rundi /nyéne/ and Rwanda /nyíne/ which is an INVARIABLE ADVERB with the meaning 'same, precisely, really, the very...'
Chapter 4: Pronouns

Textbooks take great pains to distinguish this SINGULATIVE PRONOUN from -sa which is a LIMITING ENUMERATIVE ADJECTIVE (see §6.3) because of their overlap in meaning with English alone or French seul(les). The differences are subtle and the problem is more apparent if translating from English or a European language to Rwanda-Rundi rather than vice versa. Firstly, there is the grammatical difference in inflection: /wéenyéne/ {Rundi} and /wéenyiné/ {Rwanda} are n1-sg PRONOUNS vs. /musa/ [both] which is n1-sg ADJECTIVE; compare Tables 64 and 83. Secondly, -sa forms are used with less frequency. Thirdly, -nyene / -nyine stresses singularity or separation and tends to be OBJECTIVE, whereas -sa is exclusive (excluding all others) and tends to be SUBJECTIVE. Thus, if someone has a visitor and offers just water /amáazi yóonyéne/ {Rundi}, /amáazi yóonyiné/ {Rwanda}, the statement is interpreted objectively, i.e., as a fact, whereas if one states /amáazi masa/ [both] it has overtones, i.e., a soft drink or tea should have been served.

4.10.2. Dual -mpi {Rundi}, -mbi {Rwanda} 'Both'

There is an enumerative pronoun that covers the sense of English 'both, two of,' expressing a DUAL meaning. Each dialect has a different, but related paradigm formed from the pronoun root with vowel lengthening (Table 50) and the respective dual root. Rundi uses /-mpi/ with high tone on the first and second morae of the derivation, while Rwanda uses /-mbí/ with high tone immediately after the prefix (i.e., on the first mora) and on the root /mbí/. Note that it is only used with forms that are semantically plural.

Table 65. Dual Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>agreement</th>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
<th>English senses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pro-1pl</td>
<td>twéémpi</td>
<td>twéembí</td>
<td>both of us, the two of us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2pl</td>
<td>mwéémpi</td>
<td>mwéembí</td>
<td>both of you, the two of you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-pl</td>
<td>bóómpi</td>
<td>bóombí</td>
<td>both of them, the two of them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-pl</td>
<td>yóómpi</td>
<td>yóombí</td>
<td>both of them, the two of them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-pl</td>
<td>yóómpi</td>
<td>yóombí</td>
<td>both of them, the two of them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-pl</td>
<td>vyóómpi</td>
<td>byóombí</td>
<td>both of them, the two of them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-pl</td>
<td>zóómpi</td>
<td>zóombí</td>
<td>both of them, the two of them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-pl</td>
<td>zóómpi</td>
<td>zóombí</td>
<td>both of them, the two of them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-pl</td>
<td>twóómpi</td>
<td>twóombí</td>
<td>both of them, the two of them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-abs</td>
<td>bwóómpi</td>
<td>bwóombí</td>
<td>both of them, the two of them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-pl</td>
<td>yóómpi</td>
<td>yóombí</td>
<td>both of them, the two of them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-pl</td>
<td>yóómpi</td>
<td>yóombí</td>
<td>both of them, the two of them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10-pl</td>
<td>hóómpi</td>
<td>hóombí</td>
<td>both of those places</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11-adv</td>
<td>kóómpi</td>
<td>kóombí</td>
<td>both ways, the two ways</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

300 See, for example, Hurel 1959:46 and Overdulve 1975:204f. The latter gives these two examples: /aba nababoonye bóonyiné/ [Rwanda] 'I found them alone.' (i.e., there were no others) /aba ni bó mbonyé basa/ [Rwand] 'These are the only ones I found.'

301 Only the adverbial form /gusa/ [both] appeared in the Newspaper Reader, none of the class agreement forms, whereas for Rundi there was /wéenyéne/ n1-sg and /zoonyéne/ n5-pl and Rwanda had /bóonyiné/ n1-pl.
4.10.3. Total -se {both} 'All, Each, Every'

This set covers the ranges of English 'all, each, every, the whole of,' expressing TOTALITY or WHOLENESS. If it occurs with a noun, it will follow that noun. Note the difference in meaning when used with a singular as opposed to a plural noun:

« bariye inka yöse » {both} pro-enum-n5-sg 'They ate the whole cow.'
« bariye inka yöse » {both} pro-enum-n5-pl 'They ate all of the cows.'
« yanyoye inzoga yöse » {both} pro-enum-n5-sg 'He drank all the beer.'

/ahaantu höóse/ {Rundi}, /ahaantu höóse/ {Rwanda} pro-enum-n10-sg 'the whole place, the entire area'

/ahaantu höóse/ {Rundi}, /ahaantu höóse/ {Rwanda} pro-enum-n10-pl 'everywhere, all places'

This set is formed from the pronoun root with vowel lengthening and /-se/. The derivation receives a high tone on the first mora in Rwanda and on both the first and second morae in Rundi.

/nkóramútima kuri tвеése/ {Rundi} pro-1pl-enum 'beloved among all of us' (R21.4)
« kugira ngo umwe umwe wese abone ko ikibazo c’indero y’abitageme arí riwíwe » {Rundi} pro-dist-nl-sg-redup + pro-enum-nl-sg 'so that girls' education be each and everyone's concern.' (R39.5)
/ntuuzí kó abaantu bőóse bakwaánga/ {Rwanda} pro-enum-n1-pl 'Don't you know that everyone hates you?' (R28.1)

/haárió hántumiwe abaantu höóse/ {Rundi} pro-enum-n1-pl 'Everybody was invited.' (R29.3)

/abábá mu mihíingo yöóse yö kwíisi/ {Rundi} pro-enum-n2-pl '... those who live in every corner of the world.' (R29.3)

/azáakuriínde amákúba yöóse/ {Rwanda} pro-enum-n3-pl 'May he protect you against every misfortune!' (R36.10)

/ibyo nibýó leeta zóóse zirwaanyá/ {Rwanda} pro-enum-n5-pl 'Those are the ones that all governments oppose.' (R26.1)

/utwó aroonse twooóse ni twó yatwaáara/ {Rundi} pro-enum-n7-pl 'He'd take everything he could get.' (R25.3)

/ubupfáasóni bwooóse bumuva kó/ {Rundi} pro-enum-n8-sg 'He lost all his integrity.' (R25.4)

/bitama yarákuundwa höóse/ {Rundi} pro-enum-n10-loc 'Bitama was loved everywhere.' (R25.1)

/nibwó rikwiiríye höóse rigera nó múri afuriká/ {Rwanda} pro-enum-n10-loc 'Thereafter it spread everywhere, including to Africa.' (R26.2)

Table 66. Pronouns Expressing Totality (-se 'All')

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agreement</th>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pro-1pl</td>
<td>tweése</td>
<td>tweése</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2pl</td>
<td>mwéése</td>
<td>mwéése</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-sg</td>
<td>wéése</td>
<td>wéése</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-pl</td>
<td>bóóse</td>
<td>bóóse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-sg</td>
<td>wóóse</td>
<td>wóóse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-pl</td>
<td>yöóse</td>
<td>yöóse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-sg</td>
<td>ryóóse</td>
<td>ryóóse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-pl</td>
<td>yöóse</td>
<td>yöóse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-sg</td>
<td>cóóse</td>
<td>cóóse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-pl</td>
<td>vyóóse</td>
<td>byóóse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-sg</td>
<td>yöóse</td>
<td>yöóse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-pl</td>
<td>zóóse</td>
<td>zóóse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-sg</td>
<td>rwóóse</td>
<td>rwóóse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-pl</td>
<td>zóóse</td>
<td>zóóse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-sg</td>
<td>kóóse</td>
<td>kóóse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-pl</td>
<td>twóóse</td>
<td>twóóse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-sg</td>
<td>bwóóse</td>
<td>bwóóse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

162
4.10.4. 'Another' of the Same vs. Different Kind (-ndi)

There are actually four sets of pronouns with the root /-ndí/. They differ in FORM (full vs. reduced), in WORD ORDER (preceding or following the noun), and in TONALITY (high tone on the first mora /wúundi/, high tone on the second mora after the prefix /uwuúndidi/, high tone on the final vowel /undí/, or low tone throughout /wuundidi/). The meaning differences of each of these ranges from subtle (another of the same kind vs. another of a different kind) to highly contrastive (like no other). No grammar of either language has described all four sets, but collectively such coverage is available in the literature.

4.10.4.1. High Tone on the Second Mora after the Prefix (Mrule)

The first set usually comes before the noun it modifies and refers to another of the same kind. Although it has the full noun prefix, after prepositions, negatives, and like expressions it can occur in a reduced form. Regardless, it always has high tone on the second vowel after the prefix; the high tone of the root /-ndí/ has moved one mora to the left (Mrule, §2.4.9).

```
/uwuúndidi nawé ngo/ [Rundi] atr-n1-sg '...and another person says...' (R19)
/nagiye ku uwuúndi mugabo/ [both] atr-n1-sg 'I went to live with another man.' (Cristini 2000:134)
/geenda waangé abo bagabo, uguhé abáándi/ [Rwanda] atr-n1-pl 'Go, reject those witnesses!, he should give you others.' (R28.8)
/abaándi bááhe/ [Rwanda] atr-n1-pl-loc 'Who else?' (Kimenyi 2002:51)
/navúukanye amaguru abiri nk'abáándi/ [Rwanda] atr-n1-pl-sim 'I was born with two legs like other people.' (R34.2)
/inká z'uwuúndi muryaango/ [both] atr-n2-sg-pos 'another family's cows' (R40.5)
/twaájabutse rwáa rúuzi iminwe mu viíndi/ [Rundi] atr-n2-pl-loc 'We crossed the river hand-in-hand.' [lit. 'hands in others'] (Cristini 2000:134)
/ishuúri ryaaawe riritu ayaáándi/ [Rwanda] atr-n3-pl 'Your teaching is greater than all others.' (R36.7)
/ikííndi gitéeé isóni/ [both] atr-n4-sg 'another humiliating thing...' (R33.3)
/ntaa kiííndi kiyaaago/ [Rundi] atr-n4-sg-red 'No other topic of conversation...' (R25.4)
/n'íbiííndi/ [both] atr-n4-pl-conf '...and other things' [lit. '...and other things'] (R24, R37, R39.3, R40.6)
/izííndi nazó zikaba zááraróonse urukiingo/ [Rundi] atr-n5-pl-sim '...and others (indwáara 'diseases') have obtained vaccine.' (R37.3)
/bakaba inyamáaswa mu ziííndi/ [Rwanda] atr-n5-pl-loc '...and they become beasts among other beasts.' (R28.10)
/ku ziííndi nyényeéri/ [Rundi] atr-n6-pl-loc 'on other planets' (R37.2)
/akááándi gatelefoóne/ [both] atr-n7-sg 'another cell phone' (R7)
/n'útuúndidi dupfuuyé náabí/ [both] atr-n7-pl-conf 'and other paltry items' (R19)
/ejó buúndidi/ [both] atr-n8-adv-time-cmp 'the day before yesterday; the day after tomorrow' [lit. 'the other day']
/ahaándi/ [both] atr-n10-loc 'elsewhere' (R8, R31)
/ntaa kuúndi/ [both] atr-n11-adv-red 'There is no other way.' (R34.3)
```
Table 67. Pronouns Expressing 'Other' and 'Another'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AGREEMENT</th>
<th>Set 1 Mrule</th>
<th>Set 2 Arule</th>
<th>Set 3 Rrule</th>
<th>Set 4 Lrule</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n1-sg</td>
<td>uwuúndi</td>
<td>wúundi</td>
<td>wuundí, undí</td>
<td>wuundi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-pl</td>
<td>abaándi</td>
<td>báandi</td>
<td>baandí</td>
<td>baandi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-sg</td>
<td>uwuúndi</td>
<td>wúundi</td>
<td>wuundí, undí</td>
<td>wuundi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-pl</td>
<td>iyíndi</td>
<td>yiíndi</td>
<td>yiíndi, indí</td>
<td>yiíndi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-sg</td>
<td>iriíndi</td>
<td>riíndi</td>
<td>riíndi</td>
<td>riíndi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-pl</td>
<td>ayaándi</td>
<td>yáandi</td>
<td>yaandí, andí</td>
<td>yaandi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-sg</td>
<td>ikiíndi</td>
<td>kiíndi</td>
<td>kiíndi</td>
<td>kiíndi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-pl</td>
<td>ibiíndi</td>
<td>biíndi</td>
<td>biíndí</td>
<td>biíndi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-sg</td>
<td>iyíndi</td>
<td>yiíndi</td>
<td>yiíndi, indí</td>
<td>yiíndi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-pl</td>
<td>iziíndi</td>
<td>ziíndi</td>
<td>ziíndi</td>
<td>ziíndi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-sg</td>
<td>uruúndi</td>
<td>rúundi</td>
<td>ruundí</td>
<td>ruundi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-pl</td>
<td>iziíndi</td>
<td>ziíndi</td>
<td>ziíndi</td>
<td>ziíndi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-sg</td>
<td>akaándi</td>
<td>káandi</td>
<td>kaandi</td>
<td>kaandi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-pl</td>
<td>utuúndi</td>
<td>tuúndi</td>
<td>tuundí</td>
<td>tuundi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-sg</td>
<td>ubuúndi</td>
<td>buuúndi</td>
<td>buundí</td>
<td>buundi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-pl</td>
<td>ayaándi</td>
<td>yáandi</td>
<td>yaandí, andí</td>
<td>yaandi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-sg</td>
<td>ukuúndi</td>
<td>kuúndi</td>
<td>kuundí</td>
<td>kuundi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-pl</td>
<td>ayaándi</td>
<td>yáandi</td>
<td>yaandí, andí</td>
<td>yaandi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10-sg/pl</td>
<td>ahaándi</td>
<td>háandi</td>
<td>haandí</td>
<td>haandi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11-sg/pl</td>
<td>ukuúndi</td>
<td>kúundi</td>
<td>kuundí</td>
<td>kuundi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.10.4.2. High Tone on the First Mora (Arule)

The second set usually comes after the noun it modifies and refers to another of a different kind. It is always in a reduced form (i.e., without the article or thematic vowel) and has high tone on the first of two identical vowels; the high tone of the root /-ndí/ is lost and appears on the first vowel after the prefix (Arule, §2.4.16).

/umuuntu wúundi/ {both} atr-n1-sg 'another person' (R34.2)
/abaáhe báandi/ {Rwanda} atr-n1-pl 'Who else?' (Kimenyi 2002:51)
/ntaa mwaavu wúundi ukíbonetse/ {Rundi} atr-n2-sg 'No more (no other kind of) fertilizer is available.' (R35.5)
/abaantu báandi/ {both} atr-n1-pl 'other people' (Kimenyi 2002:50)
/babiri báandi/ {Rwanda} atr-n1-pl 'two more [lit. 'two other (people)']' (Jacob Vol. 2 1987:383)
/uwa gátatu wúundi/ {Rwanda} atr-n2-sg 'next Wednesday' (Jacob Vol. 2 1987:383; cf.: /wuundi wa gátatu/)
/ijana riíndi/ {Rwanda} atr-n3-sg 'a hundred more (cows)' (Jacob Vol. 2 1987:383)
/ibikí bíindi/ {Rwanda} atr-n4-sg 'What else?' (Jacob Vol. 2 1987:383)

Sets 1 and 2 can be used together contrastively to express something else, i.e., someone or something quite different from the usual.

/ni uwuúndi wúundi/ {Rwanda} atr-n1-sg 'He/she is something else.' (Kimenyi 2002:50)
/ni abaándi báandi/ {Rwanda} atr-n1-pl 'They are something else.' (Kimenyi 2002:50)
/ni ikiíndi kiíndi/ {Rwanda} atr-n4-sg 'It is something else.' (Kimenyi 2002:50)
/ukuúndi kúundi/ {both} atr-n11-adv 'some other way, in another manner' (Cristini 2000:134)
4.10.4.3. High Tone on the Final Mora (Rrule)

The third set is often treated as the short form, which would then be limited to \(n_1\)-sg, \(n_2\)-sg, \(n_2\)-pl, \(n_3\)-pl, and \(n_5\)-sg (see Overdulve 1975:202). However, based on the final high tone (Rrule), there are consonant-initial forms found in all noun classes (see Table 67).

/utubwiire uúrusha undí akamaro/ {Rwanda} atr-n1-sg 'You should tell us who is more important.' (R28.10)
/sínaakuunganya undí mubyéeyi/ {Rwanda} atr-n1-sg 'I would not consider any other parent your equal.' (R36.7)
/undí mugabo yaaje/ {Rwanda} atr-n1-sg 'Another man has come.' (Jacob Vol. 2 1987:383)
/atr-n2-pl 'others aiming to selfishness' (R32)

Sets 3 is commonly used with the second person past deictics (§5.5) to refer to assumed or common knowledge, e.g., the one in question.

/wáa wuundi/ {both} deic-2-past+atr-cmp-n1-sg 'that guy, the person in question' (Cristini 2000:134, Overdulve 1975:203)
/báa baandi/ {both} deic-2-past+atr-cmp-n1-pl 'those people, the subjects in question' (Cristini 2000:134)
/báa baandi baagiiye hé/ {both} deic-2-past+atr-cmp-n1-pl 'those people (we were discussing) where have they gone recently?' (Jacob Vol. 2 1987:383)
/yáa yaandi/ {Rwanda} deic-2-past+atr-cmp-n3-pl 'those evil spells (amoóshya) we talked bout' (Jacob Vol. 3 1987:524)
/eáa kiindi/ {Rundi} deic-2-past+atr-cmp-n4-sg 'the business at hand, that matter (about which we have spoken)' (Cristini 2000:134); /cyáa kiindi/ {Rwanda}
/vyáa biindi/ {Rwanda} deic-2-past+atr-cmp-n4-pl 'our affairs, the matters (of which we spoke)' (Cristini 2000:134); /byáa biindi/ {Rwanda}
/záa zyindi/ {both} deic-2-past+atr-cmp-n5-pl 'those (inyíbano 'stolen items') of which we spoke' (Overdulve 1975:203)
/bwáa buundi/ {both} deic-2-past+atr-cmp-n8-time 'then, at the moment in question' (Cristini 2000:295, Overdulve 1975:271)
/kwáa kuundi/ {both} deic-2-past+atr-cmp-n11-adv 'the aforementioned, as already said' (R27.8)

Sets 2 and 3 can also be used together to denote someone or something considered extraordinary or bizarre.

/uzi kó uri uundi wúundi! umuntu uzi indimi z'ámahaánga kaándi utáarazíize/ {Rwanda} atr-cmp-n1-sg 'Do you know that you are extraordinary! A person who knows foreign languages even though you didn't study them!' (Jacob Vol. 2 1987:383)
/uyu mwáana ni uundi wúundi iyó bamuhaáye amavúta yó kwíisiiga arayárya/ atr-cmp-n1-sg 'This child is bizarre, when they give him body lotion he eats it!' (Jacob Vol. 2 1987:383)

4.10.4.4. Low Tone throughout

The fourth set is low-toned throughout and tends to impart new information. It is used in certain fixed expressions, with numerals, following the adverbial marker na- 'a lot,' or followed by some question words. The only grammarians to discuss this set do so for Kinyarwanda. It is not clear if there are analogous constructions in Kirundi.

/mugabo na wuundi/ {Rwanda} atr-n1-sg 'a (rich or powerful) person like no other' (Jacob Vol. 2 1987:383)
/nka wuundi wúuhe?/ {Rwanda} atr-n1-sg 'Like who else?' (Jacob Vol. 2 1987:383)
/baandi babiri/ {Rwanda} atr-n1-pl 'two others' (Jacob Vol. 2 1987:383)
/wuundi wa gátatu/ {Rwanda} atr-n2-sg 'any following Wednesday' (Jacob Vol. 2 1987:383)
/inyáaka na viindi/ {Rwanda} atr-n2-pl 'years and years, for a very long time' (Jacob Vol. 2 1987:383, Kimenyi 2002:50)
/ziindi ijana/ {Rwanda} atr-n5-pl 'a hundred others (cows)' (Jacob Vol. 2 1987:383)
4.11. Similative (Adverbial) Pronouns

There is a set of pronouns formed from the similitive prefix nka- 'like' and a pronoun root (see Table 68). Note that the personal pronoun forms have a long vowel with high tone on the second mora (Mrule), whereas the various class forms have a short vowel and high tone on the root (Rrule).

Table 68. Similative Pronouns (nka-)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERSONAL PRONOUNS</th>
<th>RUNDI – RWANDA</th>
<th>ENGLISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pro-1sg</td>
<td>nkaánje</td>
<td>like me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-1pl</td>
<td>nkaátwe</td>
<td>like us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2sg</td>
<td>nkaáwe</td>
<td>like you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2pl</td>
<td>nkaámwe</td>
<td>like you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-3sg</td>
<td>nkawé</td>
<td>like him, her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-3pl</td>
<td>nkabó, nkabóobó</td>
<td>like them, like those people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-4sg</td>
<td>nkacó nkacyó</td>
<td>like him, her, it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-4pl</td>
<td>nkavyó nkabyó</td>
<td>like them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-5sg</td>
<td>nkayó</td>
<td>like him, her, it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-5pl</td>
<td>nkazó</td>
<td>like them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-6sg</td>
<td>nkarwó</td>
<td>like him, her, it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-6pl</td>
<td>nkazó</td>
<td>like them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-7sg</td>
<td>nkakó</td>
<td>like him, her, it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-7pl</td>
<td>nkatzó</td>
<td>like them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-8sg</td>
<td>nkabwó</td>
<td>like it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-8pl</td>
<td>nkayó</td>
<td>like them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-9sg</td>
<td>nkakwó / kó</td>
<td>like it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-9pl</td>
<td>nkayó</td>
<td>like them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-10sg</td>
<td>nkakó</td>
<td>like there (the place, time, situation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-10pl</td>
<td>nkakó</td>
<td>like there (the places, times, situations)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-11sg</td>
<td>nkakó</td>
<td>like it (the truth or manner)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-11pl</td>
<td>nkakó</td>
<td>like them (the ways or means)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-12sg</td>
<td>nkamwó nkamwó / nkamó</td>
<td>like there (in the place)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-12pl</td>
<td>nkamwó nkamwó / nkamó</td>
<td>like there (in the places)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.12. Conjunctive Pronouns

The conjunctive or associative na- (sometimes considered a preposition) is prefixed to pronoun roots meaning 'and,' 'also,' or 'too.' With the personal pronouns there is a long vowel with high tone on the second mora (Mrule), while with the various noun class forms the vowel is short and high tone appears on the root (Rrule).

Table 69. Conjunctive Pronouns (na-)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERSONAL PRONOUNS</th>
<th>RUNDI – RWANDA</th>
<th>ENGLISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pro-1sg</td>
<td>naánje</td>
<td>naánjye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-1pl</td>
<td>naátwe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2sg</td>
<td>naáwe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2pl</td>
<td>naámwe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOUNS</td>
<td>RUNDI – RWANDA</td>
<td>ENGLISH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n1-sg</td>
<td>nawé</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n1-pl</td>
<td>nabó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n2-sg</td>
<td>nawó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n2-pl</td>
<td>nayó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n3-sg</td>
<td>naryó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n3-pl</td>
<td>nayó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n4-sg</td>
<td>nacó</td>
<td>nacyó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n4-pl</td>
<td>navyó</td>
<td>nabyó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n5-sg</td>
<td>nayó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n5-pl</td>
<td>nazó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n6-sg</td>
<td>narwó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n6-pl</td>
<td>nazó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n7-sg</td>
<td>nakó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n7-pl</td>
<td>natwó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n8-sg</td>
<td>nabwó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n8-pl</td>
<td>nayó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n9-sg</td>
<td>nakwó / nakó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n9-pl</td>
<td>nayó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n10-sg</td>
<td>nahó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n10-pl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n11-sg</td>
<td>nakó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n11-pl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n12-sg</td>
<td>namwó</td>
<td>namwó / namó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n12-pl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

/umwáana aramúsubiza ati: naánje sinayikuunze/ [Rundi] pro-1sg-conj 'The child responded: "me neither - I didn't like it.' (R1)

/umutwaáre ati vuga naáwe wa ntaámwe/ [Rundi] pro-2sg-conj 'The chief said: "OK, lion, you talk now."' (R27.4)

/umwiijimá uti cyo naáwe nyoni dukize/ [Rwanda] pro-2sg-conj 'Darkness said: "hey you too bird, settle our dispute".' (R28.5)

/iyumviririze naámwe inkurú ya bitaama/ [Rundi] pro-2pl-conj 'Just listen you all to the story about Bitama.' (R25.1)

/uuwúndi nawé ngo/ [Rundi] pro-n1-sg-conj 'and another person says...' (R19)

/ari nawé witiiriwe uburozi bubá mu itaábi/ [both] pro-n1-sg-conj 'It is him also after whom the active ingredient in tobacco was named.' (R26.2)

/abáana bakuzé nabó nyéne baramúfasha/ [Rundi] pro-n1-pl-conj 'The older children they also help him.' (R15)
Chapter 4: Pronouns

/abo bagoré usaanga nabó báambaye incabari/ {Rwanda} pro-nl-pl-conj 'You’ll notice that these women also wear tattered clothes.' (R38.5)

/mu gihe baazí nahó kó bateeyé bátaroonsé uwo mwaavu nawó ataa mwiímbu
bazóoroonka/ {Rundi} pro-n2-sg-conj 'Yet they also know that if they plant without getting that fertilizer too, they won’t get a rich harvest.' (R35.2)

/itééra ry'impeéshi naryó rikaba ryáari rígeze/ {Rundi} pro-n3-sg-conj 'with the dry-season planting time about to arrive' (R35.1)

/hari igifátira mu mabará arí nacó caandúkira/ {Rundi} pro-n4-sg-conj 'There is one that attacks the lungs and it is also contagious.' (R31.1)

/ushyiramó soósi tómáté nayó ukayireka igashya/ {Rwanda} pro-n5-sg-conj 'You put in the tomato sauce and let it cook.' (R18)

/kaándi nayó si bo bayituúyemó bóonyiné/ {Rwanda} pro-n5-sg-conj '... and they are not the only ones who live there (in the Mpanga sector).' (R38.11)

/iziíndi nazó zikaba zááraróonse urukiingo/ {Rundi} pro-n5-pl-conj '... and others (indváara 'diseases') have obtained vaccine.' (R37.3)

«mu 1987 naho gushika mu 1989 yari mw’ishure ry’abamenyeshamakuru» {Rundi} pro-n10-loc-conj '... and from 1987 to 1989 she was in the school of journalism.' (R17.5)
5. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS (DEICTICS)

Demonstratives (or demonstrative pronouns) are a special class of words that locate an item or event in SPACE or in TIME. Linguists also refer to them as DEICTICS. As with personal pronouns they include the category of PERSON (first, second, third), NUMBER (singular and plural), and CLASS. However, they also refer to the STATUS OF THE INFORMATION under discussion (in linguistic terms, they have a discourse or pragmatic function). Consider the following English example.

So here I am standing in line at the bank for over half an hour and this guy cuts in front of me.

While here and this normally refer to something visible and near the speaker, e.g., this is my wife, here is your share of the money, it can also refer to something the speaker has experienced, even if it is in the past and therefore not at all visible to the listener. Such a way of talking brings the listener right into the situation. The status of such information may be recent (brand new news), previously known, or long known (old news).

Demonstratives are the only part of speech where the upper locative classes ($n10$-$n13$) are clearly distinguished. In terms of their form, deictics generally consist of two elements, a PREFIX and a STEM. The prefix agrees with the class and number of the head noun, while the stem indicates location (an actual place, a locus in time, or status in discourse) along five parameters, not all of which may apply all the time.

- **PERSON** (which is best understood in terms of POSITION)
  1 first person: this/here – oriented to the speaker (near me, near us),
  2 second person: that/there – oriented to the addressee or person being spoken to (near you),
  3 third person: that/yonder – oriented to another (located by him, her, it, them)
- **LOCUS** (place, position, location)
  nearby, close
  midway, not far
  far, distant, out-of-sight
- **TIME or TEMPORAL REFERENCE**
  imperfective (currently or always applies)
  recent (newly imparted information)
  perfective or distant past (long-known information, old news)
- **CONTEXT** (presupposition, discourse, pragmatics)
  known (general or presumed common knowledge)
  unknown (new information for the listener)
  affective (contrastive, emotive, emphatic)
- **TONE PATTERN**
  1 (high tone on the first vowel following the first consonant, yielding WEAK vs. STRONG patterns)
  F (high tone on the affix)
  L (low tone throughout)
  P2 (high tone on the second mora of the root)
  R (fixed root tonality)

Table 70. Overview of Kirundi and Kinyarwanda Demonstrative Roots

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>structure</th>
<th>tone pattern</th>
<th>person</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>locus</th>
<th>time reference</th>
<th>implication / presupposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>V+C+V</td>
<td>L 1</td>
<td>iyi</td>
<td>n5-sg</td>
<td>near</td>
<td>current</td>
<td>this (here, near me)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cl-'no</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>inó</td>
<td></td>
<td>near</td>
<td>current</td>
<td>this (insistence or contrast)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cl-'rya</td>
<td>1 1+2</td>
<td>irýá</td>
<td>near</td>
<td>recent past</td>
<td>this (near us or vividly remembered)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V+C-o</td>
<td>L 2</td>
<td>iyo</td>
<td></td>
<td>not far</td>
<td>recent past</td>
<td>that (near you, just mentioned)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CC-áa</td>
<td>R 2</td>
<td>yáa</td>
<td></td>
<td>not far</td>
<td>past</td>
<td>that (you remember, long known)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cl-riiya</td>
<td>F+P2 [Rundi]</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>iriiya</td>
<td>far</td>
<td>any</td>
<td>that (yonder, distant)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 [Rwanda]</td>
<td></td>
<td>iriiya</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 5: Demonstrative Pronouns (Deictics)

Throughout this chapter, the demonstratives will be presented in full sets, based upon their positional or temporal reference. Besides the base forms, predicative or presentative demonstratives derived with ng\textsubscript{V} will be given.\footnote{See our discussion in§2.2.2.2 on the long vowels in these presentatives, and the corresponding footnote on the treatment of the prefix by other authors, e.g., as ngo- (Overdulve 1975:248) or as nga- (Jacob et al. 1987:392 and Ntahokaja 1994:96f).} Note throughout that the neutral word order is for the demonstrative to precede the noun; a noun following a demonstrative is in its reduced form, e.g., /\textit{iyi nzu}/ {both} 'this house.'


The first position demonstrative pronouns refer to a person or an item close to the speaker. Their form involves the class vowel (V), the thematic consonant (C) particular to each noun class, and an echo vowel (V, identical to the first or class vowel).

\begin{flushleft}
/\textit{aríko nje} uy\textit{u wii\textsubscript{kómaanga mu gitúuza}/ [Rwanda] deic-1-n1-sg 'But as for me, \textit{this one} who beats myself on the breast...' (R32)
/mur \textit{áaba} bagabo umukurú \textit{ni ndé}/ [Rundi] deic-1-n1-pl 'Among \textit{these} people who is the leader?' (Cristini 2000:128)
/ni\textit{insomá iki gitabo nzaakubwiira ibirímó}/ [Rwanda] deic-1-n4-sg 'If I read \textit{this} book, I would tell you (its) content.'
/\textit{ibishóbora} gushika \textit{ni} \textit{ibi}/ [Rundi] deic-1-n4-pl 'Those that can happen are \textit{these}.' (R13)
/\textit{iyi} mpanuka idasaanzwé ngo yaaba yáratéewe na.../ [Rwanda] deic-1-n5-sg 'This unusual accident, it is believed, may have been caused by ...' (R16)
/\textit{nti\textsubscript{uu}s\textsubscript{i}ndira} \textit{aha}/ {both} deic-1-n10-loc 'You will not defeat me \textit{here}.' (R28.9)
/\textit{si} uku \textit{návúutse}/ {both} deic-1-n11-adv 'I was not born \textit{like this}.' (R34.2)
\end{flushleft}

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
noun & singular & plural \\
\hline
\textbf{group} & \textbf{this (here, nearby)} & \textbf{these (here, nearby)} \\
\hline
n1 & uy\textit{u} [both] & aba \\
& uy\textit{u} [Rundi alt] & \\
\hline
n2 & uy\textit{u} & iy\textit{i} \\
\hline
n3 & i\textit{ri} & aya \\
\hline
n4 & i\textit{ki} & i\textit{bi} \\
\hline
n5 & iy\textit{i} & iz\textit{i} \\
\hline
n6 & uru & iz\textit{i} \\
\hline
n7 & aka & utu \\
\hline
n8 & ubu & aya \\
\hline
n9 & uku & aya \\
\hline
n10 & aha & \\
\hline
n11 & uku & \\
\hline
n12 & umu [Rwanda only] & \\
\hline
n13 & iy\textit{i} & \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\caption{Deictics Oriented to the First Person}
\end{table}
The next set includes PREDICATIVE or PRESENTATIVE forms that consist of an archaic Bantu prefix ngV- where the vowel of the prefix is identical to the thematic vowel of the basic demonstrative. The coalescence of the two vowels yields a long vowel and high tone is introduced on the final vowel of each derivation. If these forms are not the first word of a sentence, high tone also appears on the first mora [Nrule] as exemplified in Table 73.

Table 72. Predicative Deictics Oriented to the First Person

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>group</td>
<td>this one here (near me); here he (she, it) is!</td>
<td>these ones here (near me)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1</td>
<td>nguuyú</td>
<td>ngaabá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2</td>
<td>nguuyú</td>
<td>ngiivi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3</td>
<td>ngiiri</td>
<td>ngaayá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4</td>
<td>ngiikí</td>
<td>ngiibí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5</td>
<td>ngiiví</td>
<td>ngiiizí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6</td>
<td>nguurú</td>
<td>ngiiizí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7</td>
<td>ngaaká</td>
<td>nguutú</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8</td>
<td>nguubú</td>
<td>ngaayá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9</td>
<td>nguukú</td>
<td>ngaayá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10</td>
<td>ngaahá here is the place!</td>
<td>ngaahá here are the places!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-11</td>
<td>nguukú this is the way</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-12</td>
<td>nguumú {Rwanda only} right here</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following set is a compound of the basic demonstrative and a corresponding predicative form. Note that the first vowel of the predicative receives an additional high tone [Nrule].

Table 73. Double Predicative Deictics Oriented to the First Person

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>group</td>
<td>this very one here (near me), he himself</td>
<td>these very ones here (near me)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1</td>
<td>uyu nguuyú</td>
<td>aba ngaabá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2</td>
<td>uyu nguuyú</td>
<td>iyi ngiiyi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3</td>
<td>iki ngiiri</td>
<td>aya ngaayá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4</td>
<td>iki ngiikí</td>
<td>ibi ngiibí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5</td>
<td>iyi ngiiví</td>
<td>izi ngiiizí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6</td>
<td>uru nguurú</td>
<td>izi ngiiizí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7</td>
<td>aka ngaaká</td>
<td>utu nguutú</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8</td>
<td>ubu nguubú right away</td>
<td>aya ngaayá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9</td>
<td>uku nguukú</td>
<td>aya ngaayá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10</td>
<td>aha ngaahá at this very place; right here</td>
<td>aha ngaahá at these very places</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11</td>
<td>uku nguukú in this very way</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n12</td>
<td>umu nguumú {Rwanda only}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 5: Demonstrative Pronouns (Deictics)

5.2. Form 2 – First Person Affective (-no)

The second set of demonstratives is formed from the -root -no with high tone on the first vowel to follow a consonant [1rule].\(^{304}\) Like Form 1, they refer to a person or item close to the speaker,\(^{305}\) but have an AFFECTIVE DISCOURSE FUNCTION. They imply some form of contrast or exclamation on the part of the speaker, such as: emphasis, admiration, surprise, astonishment, or disapproval.

\(/\text{únó} \text{ mugoré}/ \{\text{both}\} \text{ deic-1-excl-n1-sg 'What a woman!' (expressing admiration)}\
\langle\text{abahinga barongera bakavuga yuko gushika unó musi...} \rangle \{\text{Rundi} \} \text{ deic-1-excl-n2-sg 'Moreover experts say that until today ...'} (R37.5)

\(/\text{báno baantu n'icyáago}/ \{\text{Rwanda} \} \text{ deic-1-excl-n1-pl 'These people are bad news!' (Hands 1952:305)}
\langle\text{ndaryá kíno kijuumba} \rangle \{\text{Rwanda} \} \text{ deic-1-excl-n4-sg 'I will eat this sweet potato.' (Overdulve 1975:174)}
\langle\text{biriya byaáragaze, nahó bíno biracyáari byiizá} \rangle \{\text{Rwanda} \} \text{ deic-1-excl-n4-pl 'Those (foodstuffs) got spoiled, but these are still good.' (Hands 1952:305)}

\(/\text{zíno nká ni ibyáago}/ \{\text{Rwanda} \} \ 'These cows are irritating.' (Hurel 1952:31)
\langle\text{ndi háno}/ \{\text{both}\} \text{ deic-1-excl-n10-loc 'Here I am!' (R7)}\

Table 74. Affective Deictics Oriented to the First Person

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>group</td>
<td>this [contrast, emotive, affective]</td>
<td>these [contrast, emotive, affective]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1</td>
<td>unó</td>
<td>báno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2</td>
<td>unó</td>
<td>inó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3</td>
<td>ríno</td>
<td>anó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4</td>
<td>kíno</td>
<td>bíno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5</td>
<td>inó</td>
<td>zíno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6</td>
<td>rúno</td>
<td>zíno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7</td>
<td>káno</td>
<td>túno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8</td>
<td>búno</td>
<td>anó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9</td>
<td>kúno</td>
<td>anó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10</td>
<td>háno</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11</td>
<td>kúno</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n12</td>
<td>múno [Rwanda only]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n13</td>
<td>inó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There is no full paradigm of special predicative forms. However note the following:

\('/\text{nguunó}/ \{\text{both}\} \text{ deic-1-excl-pred-n1-sg 'Here he / she is!' (Cristini 2000:129)}\
\langle\text{ngaabáno}/ \{\text{both}\} \text{ deic-1-excl-pred-n1-pl 'Those (people) there (in my opinion).'} (Jacob #2:392)
\langle\text{ngwiinó}/ \{\text{both}\} v-imp+deic-1-excl-pred-n13-loc 'Come here!' Alt: /\text{ngo háno}/ (Cristini 2000:240)

\(^{304}\) Strong forms (those that begin with a consonant) have accent on the class prefix; weak forms (those that begin with a vowel) have accent on the root.

\(^{305}\) Kimenyi states: "There are two types of demonstratives in the language, temporal and spatial. Four types of spatial demonstratives are found: ... the third is marked by -no and refers to something that is near both the speaker and hearer" (1980:8). Among the data we have, the sense of these -no forms refers to something near the speaker (first person), but spoken of emotively, i.e., with insistence or contrast. We relegate the -rya forms to involving the first and second person. The quasi imperative /\text{ngwiinó}/ \{both\} 'Come here!' illustrates the first person emotive as opposed to any first plus second person temporal connotation of this root. This is also borne out in the treatment of most other authors. "This group also indicates nearby objects, but in exclamatory sentences to show surprise, astonishment, or disapproval." (Hurel 1959:30f) "The Pronominal prefix + no. The uses of this form: 1. To indicate contrast. ... 2. To indicate objects which are nearby, when a certain amount of emotion is implied, i.e., in phrases of exclamation, interrogation, disapproval, or disgust." (Hands 1952:305) "[T]he type 3 demonstrative indicates a nearby object with emphasis and to the exclusion of other objects; it sometimes has a pejorative connotation." (Overdulve 1975:174, translation S. Harrell) "Pronouns with the stem -no also mean 'this' (i.e., being near). Besides they are used to convey amazement at a person or event." (Dubnova 1984:48)
5.3. Form 3 – First and Second Person (-rya)\(^{306}\)

This third set of demonstratives is formed from the root -\textit{rya} with high tone on the first vowel to follow a consonant \([1\text{rule}].\) There is always a double implication: in terms of \textit{person}, BOTH SPEAKER AND HEARER are involved, and in terms of \textit{time}, the reference is always PAST. The person or item in question is well-known, has already been mentioned, or should be vividly remembered. While this deictic implies the past, the verb or the sentence can be in any tense.

\begin{verbatim}
/uwaánduza ní \\textit{uryá} aki̱gwaâyé atiiwúña/ \{Rundi\} \textit{deic-1+2-n1-sg} 'The person who contaminates others is that one who is sick with it but does not seek treatment.' (R31.3)
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
/\textit{uryá} mugabo yavuze náábi/ \{Rwanda\} \textit{deic-1+2-n1-sg} 'That man (just mentioned) spoke poorly.'
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
(Overdulve 1975:174)
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
/\textit{uryá} mugoré ní umwáarimúkazi wáácu/ \{both\} \textit{deic-1+2-n1-sg} 'That woman (whom you saw) is our teacher.' (Dubnova 1984:49)
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
/mugëenzi\(^{307}\) waaw' \textit{uryá} naboonye muri kumwé/ \{Rwanda\} \textit{deic-1+2-n1-sg} 'That companion of yours I saw with you.' (Hands 1952:306)
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
/biibye \textit{rírya} iigaáre/ \{Rwanda\} \textit{deic-1+2-n3-sg} 'Someone stole that bike (just mentioned).' (Overdulve 1975:174)
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
«Nubgo wibgira kw ar' impwishi, \textit{burya} arabizi cyane!» \{Rwanda\} \textit{adv = deic-1+2-n8-sg} 'Although you think him forgetful, \textit{in fact} he knows it well!' (Hands 1952:306 – no translation provided)
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
/\textit{hárya} haantu barahatsiratsije/ \{Rwanda\} 'That place (you remember it, we took leave of each other there) they have completely demolished it.' (Hands 1952:306)
\end{verbatim}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 75. Deictics Oriented to the First and Second Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There is no full paradigm of special predicative forms\(^{308}\). However note the following PRESENTATIVES based upon -\textit{rya} that have appeared in the literature:

\begin{verbatim}
'/\textit{nguuryá}/ \{Rundi\} \textit{deic-1+2-pred-n1-sg} 'this, that very person (vividly remembered, known by us); There he, she is!' (Ntahokaja 1994:96f, Cristini 2000:129, Rodegem 1967:24)
\end{verbatim}


\(^{307}\) Hands 1952:306 suggests there is a grammatical distinction between -\textit{rya} and -\textit{aa} forms based upon consonant-initial nouns of group \textit{n1}. "As the demonstrative '\textit{aa} of memory' can never follow its noun, a noun which lacks an initial vowel takes -\textit{rya} where -\textit{aa} would have been indicated normally."

\(^{308}\) Ntahokaja 1994:97 does give a full paradigm of his "Type III" forms. Other authors do not. If these forms occur, they are most likely in the first group (\textit{n1-sg} and \textit{n1-pl}) and in the locative (\textit{n10}); appearance in any of the other groups would be very rare and of extremely low text frequency.
5.4. Form 4 – Second Person (-VCo) 309

This fourth set of demonstratives refers to something or someone that is near the listener (SECOND PERSON): that/those (near you, already mentioned). It is formed from the class vowel (V) and the thematic consonant (C) particular to each noun class and the final root vowel -o. It can be used spatially to refer to something close to the addressee (i.e., physically close to you) or anaphorically to refer to someone or something about which one has just spoken (i.e., already mentioned). In this latter sense, it can sometimes be translated by English such.

/haragera igihe **uyo** mupáatíri baámenyeereye ageendá/ {Rundi} deic-2-n1-sg 'The time came when that priest whom they were accustomed to had to leave.' (R23)

/ubwiiré **uwo** mugabo/ deic-2-n1-sg {both} 'You should tell that man...' (Overdulve 1975:171)

/iyó myuumbati kugira ngo ibaashé kuriibwa/ {both} deic-2-n2-pl '... those cassavas, to be edible' (R20)

/je m bona **iryo** boomba wóorikóreesha/ {Rundi} deic-2-n3-sg 'As for me, I think you should repair that pump.' (R23)

« Yongera ho amagambo make mu Kidage, **avyo** magambo yashekeje bagenzi be. » {Rwanda} deic-2-n3-pl 'He added a few words in German, these (just mentioned) words made his friends laugh.' (Dubnova 1984:49)

/nasómye **iyó** gitabo/ {Rwanda} deic-2-n4-sg 'I read this book.' (Overdulve 1975:171)

/iyó náama yategetse ibikí n'ibikí/ {both} deic-2-n5-sg '... what sort of things that meeting commanded.' (R4)

/usahaan utwáaye **iyó** biisi yanáníwe kuyigumiisha mu muaánda/ {Rwanda} deic-2-n5-sg 'The driver of that bus did not succeed in keeping it on the road.' (R16)

« Mu kirere haciyé indege iri mwó umuryango wa Antoni, **iyo** ndege irajya muli Africa, umuryango w'i**iyó** ndege ni muto. » {Rwanda} deic-2-n5-sg 'In the sky there flew a plane in which Antony’s family was. This plane is flying over Africa, the door of this plane is narrow.' (Hands 1952:124; example also in Dubnova 1984:49)

/ntaa bwo waángomwe urwo rukünudo/ {Rwanda} deic-2-n6-sg 'You have never deprived me of such love' (R36.8)

/ntaabwo **izó** maáníza zaábaga zikoméye/ {Rwanda} deic-2-n6-pl 'Such disputes were never serious.' (R40.5)

/abakurú muri **ako** karéeré baátubwiiye kó .../ {both} deic-2-n7-sg 'The elders in that region told us that...' (R38.9)

/ahaaantu abasaáza biiciára kuri **utwo** twáátsi/ {both} deic-2-n7-pl '... a place on that grass where old men sit.' (R40.2)

/ubwo bwóoko bw'ímyuumbati irurá bugira ingáruká zikoméye/ {both} deic-2-n8-sg 'Such a type of bitter cassava has disastrous consequences.' (R20)

Table 76. Deictics Oriented to the Second Person

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>group</td>
<td>that (near you, already mentioned); There he (she, it) is!</td>
<td>those (near you, already mentioned); There they are!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1</td>
<td>uwo {Rundi alt}</td>
<td>abo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2</td>
<td>uwo</td>
<td>iyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3</td>
<td>iyo</td>
<td>ayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4</td>
<td>ico {Rundi}, icyo {Rwanda}</td>
<td>ivyo {Rundi}, ibyo {Rwanda}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5</td>
<td>iyo</td>
<td>izo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6</td>
<td>urwo</td>
<td>izo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7</td>
<td>ayo</td>
<td>utwo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8</td>
<td>ubwo</td>
<td>ayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9</td>
<td>ukwo</td>
<td>ayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10</td>
<td>aho</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11</td>
<td>uko</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n12</td>
<td>umwo {Rwanda only}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n13</td>
<td>iyo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There is a special set of EMPHATIC FORMS (as for that/those) that are a combination of these deictics plus the full set of class pronoun roots. See §4.1 for examples and Table 53 for the full paradigm.

All grammarians agree that there is a full paradigm of presentative or predicative forms for this deictic type.

Table 77. Predicative Deictics Oriented to the Second Person

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>group</td>
<td>that (near you, already mentioned); There he (she, it) is!</td>
<td>those (near you, already mentioned); There they are!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1</td>
<td>nguuwó {Rundi alt}</td>
<td>ngaabó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2</td>
<td>nguuwó</td>
<td>ngiiyó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3</td>
<td>ngiirýó</td>
<td>ngaayó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4</td>
<td>ngiicó {Rundi}</td>
<td>ngiivyó {Rundi}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ngiicyó {Rwanda}</td>
<td>ngiibyó {Rwanda}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5</td>
<td>ngiivyó</td>
<td>ngiizó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6</td>
<td>nguuruwó</td>
<td>ngiizó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7</td>
<td>ngaakó</td>
<td>nguutwó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8</td>
<td>nguubwó 'that one there (near you); there it is!; {Rundi} same to you!' [returning a greeting]</td>
<td>ngaayó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9</td>
<td>nguukwó</td>
<td>ngaayó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10</td>
<td>ngaahó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11</td>
<td>nguukó 'There it is! (in a different position), It is like that! (manner)'</td>
<td>ngaayó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nguukwó (Jacob et al. Vol #2 1987:395)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n12</td>
<td>nguumwó {Rwanda only}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n13</td>
<td>ngiivyó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 78. Double Predicative Deictics Oriented to the Second Person

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>group</td>
<td>that one here (near you), there he (she, it) is!</td>
<td>those very ones there (near you) there they are!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1</td>
<td>uwo ngúuwó</td>
<td>abo ngáабó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2</td>
<td>uwo ngúuwó</td>
<td>iyo ngiiyó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3</td>
<td>iyo ngiiryó</td>
<td>ayo ngáayó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4</td>
<td>iyo ngiicyó [Rundi]</td>
<td>ivyo ngiicyó [Rundi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>icyo ngiicyó [Rwanda]</td>
<td>ibyo ngiicyó [Rwanda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5</td>
<td>iyo ngiiyó</td>
<td>izo ngíizó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6</td>
<td>urwo ngúurwó</td>
<td>izo ngíizó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7</td>
<td>ako ngáakó</td>
<td>utwo ngúutwó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8</td>
<td>ubwo ngúubwó</td>
<td>ayo ngáayó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9</td>
<td>ukwo nguukwó</td>
<td>ayo ngáayó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10</td>
<td>abo ngáaabó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11</td>
<td>uko ngüukó</td>
<td>'just like that!'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n12</td>
<td>umwo nguumwó [Rwanda only]</td>
<td>'just inside there!'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n13</td>
<td>iyo ngiiyó</td>
<td>'just there!'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.5. Form 5 – Second Person Past (-aa)

This fifth set of demonstratives is formed from the THEMATIC CONSONANT of each respective noun class and the root -aa with high tone on the first mora of a long vowel [Rrule]. There is always a double implication: in terms of person, the SECOND PERSON (you) is involved, and in terms of time, the reference is always PAST. The person or item had been introduced or is previously known by the person being spoken to (e.g., you remember). It may often be translated into English as the aforementioned. While this deictic implies the past, the verb or the sentence can be in any tense.

/\wáa mutumwá ava haasí/ [Rundi] deic-2-past-n1-sg 'That (aforementioned) messenger stood up.' (R11)
/\báa bagoré bari mu náama/ [both] deic-2-past-n1-pl 'Those women (you remember) are in a meeting.'
/\wáa mutí wamufashije/ [both] deic-2-past-n2-sg 'That medicine (being discussed) helped him.'
/\yáa tara ryaaménetse/ [both] deic-2-past-n3-sg 'That lamp (you know about) broke (recently).'
«nitonze nazabona cyáa gitabo» [Rwanda] deic-2-past-n4-sg 'If I have time, I will look for that (known to us) book.' (Dubnova 1984:49)
/byáa biintu naguháaye wabishyize hé?/ [Rwanda] deic-2-past-n4-pl 'Where did you put those objects that I gave you?' (Overdulve 1975:172)
/báshitse, yáa imbeba iti/ [both] deic-2-past-n5-pl 'When they arrived, that mouse said ...' (R27.9)
/\záa nkwi zaashíze/ [both] deic-2-past-n6-pl 'Those pieces of firewood got finished.'
/umugabo umwé batwaará mu minwe/ [Rundi] deic-2-past-n7-sg 'A man was robbed of his cell phone.' [lit. 'of that phone they carry in their hands'] (R7)
/narákugeendeye reeró twáa dutí ndadushiinguuza/ [Rwanda] deic-2-past-n7-pl 'I just went on and pulled up those sticks.' (R34.4)
/bwáa bugiingo buzirá indwáara/ [Rwanda] deic-2-past-n8-sg 'that life free from disease' (R36.4)
/bháa haantu haári hákoonje/ [both] deic-2-past-n10-loc 'That place was cold.'


311 Dubnova’s translation should more faithfully be rendered as ‘that book (you asked me about).’ Her treatment of /cyáa/ to include both the first and second person is more accurately that of /kiíya/ (§5.3).
Chapter 5: Demonstrative Pronouns (Deictics)

Review §4.10.4.3 where the use of this deictic set and the pronoun -ndí ‘other’ is discussed.

/bikore kwáa kuundí/ [both] deic-2-past-n11-adv 'do it AS BEFORE [lit. ‘that same way’]

Table 79. Deictics Oriented to the Second Person Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun group</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>that (you remember)</td>
<td>those (you remember)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1</td>
<td>wáa</td>
<td>báa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2</td>
<td>wáa</td>
<td>yáa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3</td>
<td>ryáa</td>
<td>yáa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4</td>
<td>cía {Rundi}</td>
<td>vyáa {Rundi}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cyáa {Rwanda}</td>
<td>byáa {Rwanda}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5</td>
<td>yáa</td>
<td>záa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6</td>
<td>rwáa</td>
<td>záa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7</td>
<td>káa</td>
<td>twáa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8</td>
<td>bwáa</td>
<td>yáa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9</td>
<td>kwáa</td>
<td>yáa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10</td>
<td>háa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11</td>
<td>kwáa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n12</td>
<td>mwáa {Rwanda only}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n13</td>
<td>yáa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are no presentative or predicative forms for this deictic set.

5.6. Form 6 – Third Person (-riiya)312

This sixth set of demonstratives is formed from the root /-riiya/ with high tone on the second mora of the root [P2rule] and also on strong (consonant-initial) prefixes [1rule]. There are different tone patterns on the weak (vowel-initial) forms: Rundi has high tone on the prefix and maintains the tonality on the second mora of the root [Frule + P2rule], whereas Rwanda has high tone on the first post-consonantal vowel [1rule]. The referent is always in the THIRD PERSON, or, more strictly, not close to either the first person (I, we) or the second (you). It need not be distant or out-of-sight.

«uriya mukobwa uri mu yindi mpfuruka y’icyumba ni inshuti yanjye.» {Rwanda} deic-3-n1-sg 'That girl in the corner of the room is my friend.' (Dubnova 1984:48)

/uriya mwaána ararizwa n’iikí/ {Rundi}, /uriya mwaána ararizwa n’iikí/ deic-3-n1-pl 'Why is that child crying?'

/abaantu nka háriíya/ {both} deic-3-n1-pl 'people like those' (R16)

/ngaabáriiya/ {both} deic-3-pred-n1-pl 'There they are!' (Ntahokaja 1976:10)

/pfuundikira ariiya matá/ {Rwanda} deic-3-n3-pl 'Cover that milk!'

/ziriíya nyamáaswa zíriísha/ {both} deic-3-n5-pl 'Those wild animals are feeding.'

/túriíya twáana turarira/ {both} deic-3-n7-pl 'Those children are crying.'

/haákurya háriíya haábeereye impanuka idasaanzwé/ {both} deic-3-n10-loc 'There has been an unusual accident over there.'

/byáa bitabo núubíizana ubishyíre múriíya/ {Rwanda} deic-3-n12-loc 'When you bring those books you should put them in there.'

/uzosubíra iiriíya ryáari/ {Rundi}, /uzasubíra iiriíya ryáari/ {Rwanda} deic-3-n13-loc 'When are you going back there?'

### Table 80. Deictics Oriented to the Third Person

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun group</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>that (far, yonder)</td>
<td>those (far, yonder)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1</td>
<td>úriiya [Rundi]</td>
<td>báriiya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uríiya [Rwanda]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2</td>
<td>úriiya [Rundi]</td>
<td>íriiya [Rundi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uríiya [Rwanda]</td>
<td>íriiya [Rwanda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3</td>
<td>ríriiya</td>
<td>áriiya [Rundi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>aríiya [Rwanda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4</td>
<td>kíriiya</td>
<td>bíriiya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5</td>
<td>íriiya [Rundi]</td>
<td>zíriiya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>íriiya [Rwanda]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6</td>
<td>rúriiya</td>
<td>zíriiya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7</td>
<td>káriiya</td>
<td>túriiya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8</td>
<td>búriiya</td>
<td>áriiya [Rundi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>aríiya [Rwanda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9</td>
<td>kúriiya</td>
<td>áriiya [Rundi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>aríiya [Rwanda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10</td>
<td>háriiya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11</td>
<td>kúriiya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n12</td>
<td>múriiya [Rwanda only]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n13</td>
<td>íriiya [Rundi]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>íriiya [Rwanda]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 81. Predicative Deictics Oriented to the Third Person

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun group</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>that one (far, yonder)</td>
<td>those (far, yonder)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1</td>
<td>nguuriiya [Rundi]</td>
<td>ngaabáriiya [both]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nguuriiya [Rwanda]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2</td>
<td>nguuriiya [Rundi]</td>
<td>ngiiriya [Rundi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nguuriiya [Rwanda]</td>
<td>ngiiriya [Rwanda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3</td>
<td>ngiiriíriiya [both]</td>
<td>ngaariiya [Rundi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ngaariiya [Rwanda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4</td>
<td>ngiiíriiya [both]</td>
<td>ngiibíriiya [both]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5</td>
<td>ngiiíriiya [Rundi]</td>
<td>ngiizíriiya [both]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ngiiíriiya [Rwanda]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6</td>
<td>nguuruúriiya [both]</td>
<td>ngiizíriiya [both]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7</td>
<td>ngaakáriiya [both]</td>
<td>nguutúriiya [both]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8</td>
<td>nguubúriiya [both]</td>
<td>ngaariiya [Rundi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ngaariiya [Rwanda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9</td>
<td>nguukúriiya [both]</td>
<td>ngaariiya [Rundi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ngaariiya [Rwanda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10</td>
<td>ngaaháriiya [both]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11</td>
<td>ngaahúriiya [both]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n12</td>
<td>nguumúriiya [Rwanda only]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n13</td>
<td>ngííriiya [Rundi]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ngííriiya [Rwanda]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.7. Form 7 – Invariable Anaphoric Deictic (nyaa) {Rundi only}

Kirundi has a unique demonstrative (nyaa) which is invariable for noun class. It is strictly ANAPHORIC, i.e., it refers to someone or something that has already been discussed, and is most often translated by English the aforementioned, or simply that. Cristini (2000:125) exemplifies (but does not translate or describe) two forms: high-toned /nyáa/ which appears to precede singular nouns and low-toned /nyaa/ which seems to precede plural nouns. This novel interpretation is not supported in examples provided by other Rundi grammarians (see remarks below), but does apply in the three examples from our Reader where two singular nouns are marked with high-toned /nyáa/ and a sole mass noun (equated here as semantically equivalent to plurals) has low-toned /nyaa/.

\[\text{nyáa} \text{ mugabo aba ikijurí} / \text{Rundi} \] deic-invar+n1-sg 'That man became foolish.' (R27.3)
\[\text{nyáa} \text{ muuntu} / \text{Rundi} \] deic-invar+n1-sg 'the aforementioned person' (Cristini 2000:125)
\[\text{nyaa} \text{ baantu} / \text{Rundi} \] deic-invar+n1-pl 'the aforementioned people' (Cristini 2000:125)
\[\text{nyáa} \text{ muhoro} / \text{Rundi} \] deic-invar+n2-sg 'the aforementioned machete' (Cristini 2000:125)
\[\text{nyaa} \text{ muúnsi} / \text{Rundi} \] deic-invar+n2-sg 'that day' (Ntahokaja 1994:96) [low-toned singular]
\[\text{nyaa} \text{ mutí} / \text{Rundi} \] deic-invar+n2-sg 'that medicine' (Ntahokaja 1994:96) [low-toned singular]
\[\text{nyaa} \text{ mumáandá} / \text{Rundi} \] deic-invar+n2-sg 'that fig tree' (Ntahokaja 1994:96) [low-toned singular]
\[\text{nyaa} \text{ gishurúshuru} / \text{Rundi} \] deic-invar+n4-sg 'that fern' (Ntahokaja 1994:96) [low-toned singular]
\[\text{nyaa} \text{ biintu} / \text{Rundi} \] deic-invar+n4-pl 'the aforementioned things' (Cristini 2000:125)
\[\text{bugiingo} \text{ nyáa ntaambwe igiiyé kuryá wáa mugabo} / \text{Rundi} \] deic-invar+n5-sg 'When that lion was about to eat that man ...' (R27.8)
\[\text{nyáa} \text{ nká} / \text{Rundi} \] deic-invar+n5-sg 'the aforementioned cow' (Cristini 2000:125)
\[\text{aríko} \text{ nyaa sukaári ntitúyibone ku masokó} / \text{Rundi} \] deic-invar+n5b-mass '... yet we could not find that sugar in the marketplace' (R33.2)
\[\text{mugábo nyáa gakwáavu kaári kábiizi vyóóse} / \text{Rundi} \] deic-invar+n7-sg '... but that small rabbit (of ours) knew it very well' (Rodegem 1967:24 /nyaa/, Cristini 2000:127 /nyáa/)
\[\text{ashítze heejuru ya nyáa kabáandé} / \text{Rundi} \] deic-invar+n7-sg 'When he arrived at the upper part of that valley ...' (Rodegem 1967:24)
\[\text{nyáa} \text{ bwáato} / \text{Rundi} \] deic-invar+n8-sg 'the aforementioned canoe' (Cristini 2000:125)
\[\text{nyaa} \text{ máato} / \text{Rundi} \] deic-invar+n8-pl 'the aforementioned canoes' (Cristini 2000:125)
\[\text{nyaa} \text{ haantu} / \text{Rundi} \] deic-invar+n10-loc 'that aforementioned place' (Cristini 2000:125)
\[\text{nyaa} \text{ haantu} / \text{Rundi} \] deic-invar+n10-loc 'those aforementioned places' (Cristini 2000:125)
Chapter 5: Demonstrative Pronouns (Deictics)

5.8. The Tonality of Inflected Demonstratives

All vowel-initial demonstratives when they appear in agentive, possessive, conjunctive, or simulative forms have their initial vowel lengthened with high tone on the second mora.313

/ˈbakaziimbwa caane naábo badaándaza/ [Rundi] deic-2-n1-pl-agent '... and they are severely overcharged by those merchants.' (R35.4)

/ɪgišéekúru cyábo banyaambo/ [Rwanda] deic-2-n1-pl-poss 'the ancestral homeland of these Nyambo people' (R38.9)

/p'iiryo bára ní ryiizá/ [both] deic-2-n3-sg-conj 'That color is also nice.'

/na háno iwaácu nyéne ibára nkiíryo rikaba ryáaraháguuye/ [Rundi] deic-2-n3-sg-sim 'Such a disgrace has occurred precisely here at home.' (R37.4)

/mu buyobozi bwiíryo shírahámwe/ [Rundi] deic-2-n3-sg-poss 'to the administration of that organization' (R9)

/nkaáya marirá/ [both] deic-1-n3-pl-sim 'like these tears'

/i ki niíki/ [both] deic-1-n4-sg-conj 'such and such' (R32)

/uretse niíbyo ntaa kiintu kigukuúnda waampáhó umugabo/ [Rwanda] deic-2-n4-pl-conj 'Besides that you can’t give me anyone that likes you as a witness.' (R28.2)

/niímbá minísitíri wíibi niíbí nzaakora íbi/ [Rwanda] deic-1-n4-pl-poss + deic-1-n4-pl-conj 'If I become Minister of such and such, I will do this.' (R32)

/umukurú wiíyo ntaará yar’áabíízi/ [both] deic-2-n5-sg-poss 'The leader of that district knew all about it.' (R23)

/ntaa mpanuka nkiíyi yari íbürüutse kubá/ [both] deic-1-n5-sg-sim 'No accident such as this, has happened.' (R9)

/ntúukageenze nk’iriíya ndaángaare/ [Rwanda] deic-3-n5-sg-sim 'Don’t behave like that negligent person!' (Bizimana 1998:197)

/nuúbu/ [both] deic-1-n8-sg-adv-time 'and even now' (R33.5, R37.4, R39.2)

/naáha/ [both] deic-1-n10-loc-conj 'here also' (Ntahokaja 1976:33, Kimenyi 2002:140)

/nkaáha/ [both] deic-1-n10-loc-sim 'like here' (Kimenyi 2002:140)

/bikore nk’uúku/ [both] deic-1-n11-adv-sim 'Do it like this!'

Note that this does not apply to Form 5 (§5.5) because these demonstratives start with a consonant.

/ahó yoogizé nka wáá mwaámi/ [Rundi] deic-2-past-n1-sg-adv-time 'instead of acting like that king' (R27.8)

313 Kimenyi (2002:140) points out that this vowel lengthening and accompanying tone pattern affects personal pronouns, demonstratives, complementizers, and adverbs, most of which have the shape VCV, including VCCV. Thus: /ńkaátwe/ 'like us,' /ńaámwe/ 'with you,' /ńaáha/ 'here also,' /ńkuúbu/ 'like now,' and /ńeépfo/ 'below also.'
6. ADJECTIVES & OTHER DESCRIPTIVES

Bantu languages have only a few words that can be described as PURE ADJECTIVES. There are, however, numerous ways that a noun can receive appropriate qualifying or descriptive information, which involve several different forms of grammatical marking or agreement: an adjective, a noun phrase, an attributive verb, a relative verb, and a predicative.

6.1. The True Adjective Class

Adjectives as such are very rare in Kinyarwanda and Kirundi. To be an adjective, the root must get inflected with a set of affixes that are virtually identical to reduced noun forms (Table 83). The following table (Table 82) presents all the adjective roots known to occur in either dialect.

Table 82. Adjective Roots in Kinyarwanda and Kirundi

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>root</th>
<th>dialect</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>–aango</td>
<td>Rundi</td>
<td>light, clear (liquid); diluted, weak, watered-down (drink)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–aangu</td>
<td>Rundi</td>
<td>diluted, weak (drink)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–aangu'</td>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>dishonest, unfaithful; feeble, weak, insufficient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–bí</td>
<td>both</td>
<td>bad, evil, ugly, unattractive (expresses negative qualities or general disapproval)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–bísi</td>
<td>both</td>
<td>unripe, green; raw, uncooked (in its natural state); newly-laid (egg), unheated (milk); wet, damp (cloth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–eeraanda</td>
<td>both</td>
<td>holy, sacred, saintly [Rwanda: –taagatifú]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–gari</td>
<td>both</td>
<td>wide, broad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–gúfi</td>
<td>Rundi</td>
<td>short, low; small, tiny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–gufi</td>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>short, low; small, tiny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–gúfiiyá</td>
<td>Rundi</td>
<td>very short, really low; very small, tiny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–gúfiiyá</td>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>very short, really low; tiny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–iínshi</td>
<td>both</td>
<td>much, numerous; many, a lot (of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–iizá</td>
<td>both</td>
<td>good, kind; clean, neat; attractive, beautiful, handsome; in working order (expresses positive qualities or general approval)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–ké</td>
<td>both</td>
<td>little, small (in amount); insignificant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–kéenyá</td>
<td>Rundi</td>
<td>very few, really small (in amount)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–kéenyi</td>
<td>Rundi</td>
<td>few, very small (in amount)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–kéeyá</td>
<td>both</td>
<td>very few, really small {Rundi}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–kéeyi</td>
<td>Rundi</td>
<td>few, little, small (in amount); insignificant {Rwanda}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–kí</td>
<td>both</td>
<td>what?; which?; what kind of? [seeks further information, e.g., s.t. not heard or understood; also indicates ignorance, surprise, or bewilderment]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–kurú</td>
<td>both</td>
<td>old, elderly; senior, superior; better; big, important</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–naaká</td>
<td>Rundi</td>
<td>certain (indefinite), such-and-such</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–nini</td>
<td>both</td>
<td>big, large, huge; long; fat; great; thick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–niniinyá</td>
<td>Rundi</td>
<td>big, large</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–niniyá</td>
<td>Rundi</td>
<td>big, large</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

315 For example, Overduylve says there are only 17 true adjectives in Kinyarwanda (1975:44,217). In Table 82, thirty roots are identified as either {Rwanda} or {both}.
316 Following Dixon 1982, these cover five of seven universal parameters of VALUE (–bí, –iizá), DIMENSION (–gari, –nini), PHYSICAL PROPERTY (–bísi, –rec–re), HUMAN PROPENSITY (–óoro, –taagatifú, –zima, –zuungu), AGE (–kurú, –tó). Neither SPEED nor COLOR are represented among Rwanda and Rundi adjective roots. However, three other parameters are represented: QUANTITY (–iínshi, –ké, –sa, also called ENUMERATIVES), INTERROGATION (–kí), and INDEFINITENESS (–naaká) {Rundi}.
### Chapter 6: Adjectives & Other Descriptives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective(s)</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–niniiyá</td>
<td>tiny, very small, minuscule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>–novú</td>
<td>concentrated, dense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–núnuuyá</td>
<td>tiny, very small, minuscule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–nzigiinyá</td>
<td>tiny, very small, minuscule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–nzigririnyá</td>
<td>tiny, very small, minuscule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>–nziinyá</td>
<td>both tiny, minute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–nzwíinyá</td>
<td>both tiny, minute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–nzúunyá</td>
<td>very small, tiny, microscopic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–nzúguunyá</td>
<td>tiny, very small, minuscule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–nzúgurunyá</td>
<td>tiny, very small, minuscule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–nzíinyá</td>
<td>both tiny, minute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–nzíiyá</td>
<td>Rundi very small, tiny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–nzúguunyá</td>
<td>Rundi very small, tiny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–nzúgurunyá</td>
<td>Rundi very small, tiny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–nzíinyá</td>
<td>both tiny, minute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–nzíiyá</td>
<td>Rundi very small, tiny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–nzwíinyá</td>
<td>Rundi very small, tiny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–óoro</td>
<td>both poor, impoverished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–ree–re</td>
<td>both long, tall, high [reduplicated root]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rundi</td>
<td>–ruúndi</td>
<td>Rundi, native or original to Burundi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–sa</td>
<td>both only, alone, single</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–shá</td>
<td>new</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–shyá</td>
<td>Rundi very small, tiny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–taagatíífú</td>
<td>Rundi very small, tiny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–taraga</td>
<td>alive, healthy, normal; fresh; raw; unfermented</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rundi</td>
<td>–tiindi</td>
<td>unlucky, unfortunate; impoverished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–tó</td>
<td>small, little; junior, young; inferior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–tóóto [redup]</td>
<td>small, little; junior, young; inferior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–tóonyá</td>
<td>small, little, thin; [ext] mediocre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–tóoyá</td>
<td>small, little, thin; young, junior; inferior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–tóoyí</td>
<td>Rundi small, little, thin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–zima</td>
<td>both healthy, well; alive; whole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>–zuúngu</td>
<td>both European, White- (like a white person)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adjectives follow and agree with the nouns they modify using prefixes specific to each noun class (Table 83). Adjectives that agree with pronouns agree in CLASS and NUMBER, but not in PERSON.

/kokó uri mwiizá/ [Rundi], /kókó uri mwiizá/ [Rwanda] adj-n1-sg 'You are truly good.' (R36.1)
/jeevé musa/ [Rundi], /jyewé musa/ [Rwanda] adj-enum-n1-sg 'I alone, only me.'
/tweewé basa/ [both] adj-enum-n1-pl 'we alone, only us'
/abarimyi béénsi/ [Rundi] (R35.2), /abahíinzi béénsi/ [Rwanda] adj-enum-n1-pl 'many farmers'
/ubitëeka ku muriró mucëkë/ [both] adj-n2-sg 'You cook them on low heat.' (R18)
/imiháända mibi/ [both] adj-n2-pl 'bad roads' (Overdulve 1975:55)
/mwiiëénderá rišhaääshë/ [Rundi] adj-n3-sg 'on the new flag' (R29.6)
/amáásó mëëzë/ [both] adj-n3-pl 'beautiful eyes' (R28.5)
/igihe kírekíre/ [both] adj-n4-sg-redup 'a long time' (R38.2)
/icatsí kibísi nácó ni umwiiëëero abanyarwanda bakkwiïyë/ [Rundi] adj-n4-sg 'Also, green is for the hope that Rwandan people need.' (R29.6)
/inýama mbişë/ [both] adj-n5-sg 'raw meat' (Overdulve 1975:74)
/inkúrikizi mbi/ [both] adj-n5-pl 'the negative effects' (R37.4)
/urugero rwiizá/ [both] adj-n6-sg 'a good example' (R36.5)
/imáánza ntóoyá/ [both] adj-n6-pl 'minor disputes' (R40.4)
/akaánya gató/ [both] adj-n7-sg 'a little while' (R18)
/uri ubwëëëëne bëkë/ [both] adj-enum-n8-sg 'You are stupid!' [lit. 'little intelligence'] (R27.3)
/ntíwiwimvu kwiikuza kúbë/ [both] adj-n9-sg 'Don't you listen to bad boasting!' (R28.5)
/heëënsi mu ntáári ya kirundo/ [both] adj-enum-n10-loc 'in many parts of Kirundo Province' (R39.3)

\[1\] The change to /ee/ here is the result of VOWEL COALESCENCE (review §2.5.11), the a of the prefix ma- fuses with the initial i of the root /-iiizá/. These affixes can be found in the third column of Table 83.
Table 83. Adjective Agreement Affixes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Consonant Root</th>
<th>Vowel Root</th>
<th>Before i- (–iínshi)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n1-sg</td>
<td>mu–</td>
<td>mw–</td>
<td>(–mwiizá)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-pl</td>
<td>ba–</td>
<td>(does not occur)</td>
<td>be– (beénshi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-sg</td>
<td>mu–</td>
<td>mw–</td>
<td>(–mwiinshi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-pl</td>
<td>mi–</td>
<td>my–</td>
<td>(–myiínshi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-sg</td>
<td>ri–</td>
<td>ry–</td>
<td>(–ryiínshi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-pl</td>
<td>ma–</td>
<td>(does not occur)</td>
<td>me– (meénshi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-sg</td>
<td>ki–</td>
<td>gi–</td>
<td>c– (–ciínshi) [Rundi], cy– (–cyiínshi) [Rwanda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-pl</td>
<td>bi–</td>
<td>yy–</td>
<td>(–vyiínshi) [Rundi], by– (–byiínshi) [Rwanda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-pl</td>
<td>n– [generally]</td>
<td>(does not occur)</td>
<td>nz– (–nziizá)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-pl</td>
<td>m– [before labials]</td>
<td>(does not occur)</td>
<td>ny– (–nyiínshi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-sg</td>
<td>ka–</td>
<td>ga–</td>
<td>(does not occur)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-pl</td>
<td>tu–</td>
<td>du–</td>
<td>tw– (–twiínshi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-sg</td>
<td>bu–</td>
<td>bw–</td>
<td>(–bwiínshi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-pl</td>
<td>ma–</td>
<td>(does not occur)</td>
<td>me– (meénshi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-sg</td>
<td>ku–</td>
<td>gu–</td>
<td>kw– (–kwiiínshi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-pl</td>
<td>ma–</td>
<td>(does not occur)</td>
<td>me– (meénshi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10-sg/pl</td>
<td>ha–</td>
<td>(does not occur)</td>
<td>he– (–heénshi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11-adv</td>
<td>ku–</td>
<td>kw–</td>
<td>(–kwiiínshi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n12</td>
<td>(does not occur)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n13</td>
<td>(does not occur)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The essential difference between an adjective and a noun is that an adjective never has the article or pre-prefix. If and when the pre-prefix is added, the adjective serves as a noun (Table 84).³¹⁸

Table 84. Adjectives Serving as Nouns

| /umwiizá/ [both] n1-sg-adj | 'beautiful woman, handsome man; kind or virtuous person' |
| /abató/ [both] n1-pl-adj | 'little people, young people' |
| /abeénshi/ [both] n1-pl-adj-enum | 'most (of them), the majority (of the people)' (R29.3) |
| /ikibi/ [both] n4-sg-adj | 'bad thing; sin, evil; indecent or improper behavior' (R25) |
| /ibibi/ [both] n4-pl-adj | 'bad things, evils' (R37.4) |
| /ivyíizá/ [Rundi], /ibyíizá/ [Rwanda] n4-pl-adj | 'good things, the good ones' (R36.3, R37.1) |
| /ivyínshi/ [Rundi], /ibyiínshi/ [Rwanda] n4-pl-adj | 'most (of), the majority (of things)' |
| /inéezá/ [both] n5a-sg-adj | 'goodness, the good; generosity; good deed' (R36.9) |
| /ububí/ [both] n8-sg-adj | 'ugliness; evil, badness, wickedness' |
| /ubugarí/ [both] n8-sg-adj | 'width, breadth' |
| /ubuníni/ [both] n8-sg-adj | 'size, largeness, bigness' |
| /ubureebure/ [both] n8-sg-abs-redup | 'length; height' |
| /ubuzima/ [both] n8-sg-adj | 'life, (good) health; maintenance' (R16, R21, R34.0, R38) |
| /ubwiínshi/ [both] n8-sg-adj | 'number, amount' |
| /ubwiizá/ [both] n8-sg-adj | 'beauty, prettiness; affability; glory' (R28.10) |

³¹⁸ It may be tempting to compare these nominalized adjectives to autonomes. However, autonomes (1) are exclusively derived from verb roots and (2) have high tone immediately following the prefix [Arule]. Nominalized adjectives keep the tonality of the root [Rrule] so that low-toned roots have low-toned derivations /ubureebure/ 'length' or /ubuzima/ 'life;' low-toned verb roots have high-toned autonomous /ahasábá/ 'those who ask' < /–saba/ 'ask,' /abagíra/ 'those who have' < /–gira/ 'have.' Nouns derived from vowel-initial adjective roots /–iizá/ also have high tone after the prefix, while preserving root tonality, thus: /umwiizá/, /abéézá/, /ivyíizá/, /ibyíizá/, and /inéezá/ [Arule + Rrule], /abeénshi/, /ubwiínshi/, /ivyínshi/ [Rundi], /ibyiínshi/ [Rwanda] [Rrule].
6.2. The Attributive Use of a Noun

In many cases, a noun is used attributively, such as when /umuntu w'úmukuúngu/ {both} means 'a rich man.' One of the functions of possessive or noun phrase agreement markers (Table 48) is to allow a noun to modify another noun (consult §3.6.3.2 for additional examples).

/umugabo w'ámahóro/ {both} n1-sg-atr/poss-n3-pl 'a peaceful man' (Overdulve 1975:217)
/umugaré w'líhoóho/ [Rwanda] n1-sg-atr/poss-n3-sg 'a gorgeous woman' (Jacob #1 1984:537)
/icúmu ry'íntoóre/ [both] n3-sg-atr/poss-n5-sg 'an exquisite spear' (Cristini 2000:77)
/uruhíinja rw'úmukoóbwa/ [both] n6-sg-atr/poss-n1-sg 'a female baby' (Overdulve 1975:217)

There is a special construction with the associative noun prefix (nya-, see §3.3) based upon the names of countries, regions, and other geographic areas. There are explicit noun forms within group 1 to designate people and in group 4 to designate the language and culture of those people:

/umunyaameeriká/ {Rundi}, /umunyaameriká/ {Rwanda} n1-sg 'American'
/umunyarwaanda/ [both] n1-sg 'Rwandan (person)', /abanyarwaanda/ [both] n1-pl 'Rwandan people'
/ikinyarwaanda/ [both] n4-sg 'Rwandan language and culture'

However, these forms are also used attributively with other noun classes in a construction where they are followed by an agreeing POSSESSIVE MARKER and then an ECHO NOUN in the same class as the head noun.

/abaantu b'ábanyarwaanda/ [both] n1-pl-poss-cmp 'Rwandan people' (Overdulve 1975:217)
/icúmu ry'írinyarwaanda/ [both] n3-sg-poss-cmp 'a Rwandan spear' (Overdulve 1975:217)
/amasúka y'ámanyarwaanda/ [both] n3-pl-poss-cmp 'Rwandan hoes' (LN)

Both dialects use the prefix /nyaa-/ in an attributive function. Before pronoun roots, the forms are identical (except for spelling differences, e.g., /nyaacó/ {Rundi} and /nyaacyó/ {Rwanda}).

/umutí nyaawó/ [both] pro-real-n2-sg 'a specific remedy'
/urukúundo nyaarwó/ [both] pro-real-n6-sg 'true love'

In Kinyarwanda, it appears between a noun and an ECHO ROOT to indicate genuineness.

/umwáana nyaamwáana/ [Rwanda] n1-sg-real-n1-sg 'a child worthy of the name' (Jacob et al. #2:430; Overdulve 1975:218)
/umugaanga nyaamugaanga/ [Rwanda] n1-sg-real-n1-sg 'a true doctor' (Overdulve 1975:218)

/inká nyaanká/ [Rwanda] n5-sg-real-n5-sg 'the best cow in the herd' (Bizimana 1998:166)

In both dialects, it appears with a shortened vowel before some adjective roots to intensify the meaning of the adjective.

/intéeko nyamwiínshi/ [Rwanda] 'a very large crowd' (Jacob et al. #2:430)
/uri mwiizá nyamwiízá/ [Rundi] 'you are absolutely perfect!' (Cristini 2000:81)

Not all textbooks are correct in identifying adjectives. Hurel (1959:28), Ntahokaja (1976:7), and Cristini (2000:73) claim that /–kuúngu/ 'rich, wealthy' is an adjective root, perhaps because its meaning is parallel with adjectives in English or French. However, all known derivations are nouns, not adjectives; that is, they have the preprefix in their basic form.

/umukuúngu/ [both] n1 'rich person' (Jacob et al. #2:299, Rodegem 1970:247)
/ubukúúngu/ [both] n8 'wealth, riches' (Jacob et al. #2:299, Rodegem 1970:247)
/inkuúngu/ [Rundi] n5 'wealthy person' (Rodegem 1970:247)

319 Note that high tone on the fourth syllable does not carry over to -nya-.
Chapter 6: Adjectives & Other Descriptives

/igikuúngu/ {Rundi} n4 'extremely wealthy person' (Rodegem 1970:247)

COLOR TERMS are traditionally adjectives in most languages, but in Kinyarwanda and Kirundi they are mostly derived from STATIVE VERBS,\(^{321}\) with the exception of the adjective root /-bísi/ 'unripe, raw, green,' which can have a secondary meaning as a color term (see example in §6.1 above). They are expressed by verbs in the RELATIVE MOOD (see §6.4 below) or by NOUNS USED ATTRIBUTIVELY, as in the following examples:

/\(\)uyu muuntu ni \(\)umweéra/ {both} n1-sg-atr 'This person is innocent.'
/\(\)ubwó muruuzí yahíindutse imituku/ {Rwanda} n2-pl-atr 'Since you see they (his eyes) became red.'
/R28.5/ < /-tukura/ {both} 'redden'
/\(\)ibára ry'úburú/ {both} n8-sg-atr 'the blue color' (R29.6)
/\(\)iry'úmuhoondo naryó risigúura gukúunda ibikorwá kugira bashiké kwiiteerambere/ {Rundi} n2-sg-nom-poss-n3-sg 'The yellow is to signify the love of work that they (need) to achieve progress.' (R29.6)

6.3. Qualifying Demonstratives (Deictics)

The entire system of demonstrative or deictic pronouns can be used to modify or qualify a noun (see examples throughout §5 and the forms in Tables 71, 74–76, 79–80).

/usíiya muuntu/ {both} deic-3-n1-sg 'that man'
/uwo muunsí mukurú/ {both} deic-2-n2-sg 'this important day' (R29.8)
/muri \(\)i ki gihe/ {both} deic-1-n4-sg 'at this time'

6.4. Relative Verbs Used to Qualify Nouns

Verbs inflected in the relative are often used attributively and are best translated by adjectives in English. More detailed discussion and exemplification can be found in §8.3.

/amáazi ashuushé/ {Rundi} v-rel-imm-perf-n3-pl, /amáazi ashyūushye/ {Rwanda} v-rel-subj-imm-perf-n3-pl 'hot water' [lit. 'water which is hot']
/\(\)Nk'ibara ritukura bavuga ko risigura amaraso y'abahutu bapfuye barwanira ukwikukira/ {Rwanda} v-rel-imm-n3-sg 'Like the color red which they said symbolizes the blood of Hutus who died fighting for independence.' (R29.5)
/igikóona ciirábura/ {Rundi} v-rel-imm-impf-n4-sg 'a black crow' [lit. 'a crow that is black']
/igikorwá gikoméye/ {both} v-rel-imm-perf-n4-sg 'important work' (Cristini 2000:78)
/impanuka idasaanzwé/ {both} v-rel-neg-imm-pass-perf-n5-sg 'an unusual accident' (R8b, R16)

6.5. Attributive Verbs with –ek– or –ik–

Verbs with the attributive or stative suffixes –ek– or –ik– are yet another descriptive device; see §8.14.5.

/amáazi ashyúushye/ {Rwanda} v-rel-subj-imm-perf-n3-pl 'hot water'
/\(\)Nk'ibara ritukura bavuga ko risigura amaraso y'abahutu bapfuye barwanira ukwikukira/ {Rwanda} v-rel-imm-n3-sg 'Like the color red which they said symbolizes the blood of Hutus who died fighting for independence.' (R29.5)
/amáazi ashuushé/ {Rundi} v-rel-imm-perf-n3-pl, /amáazi ashyúushye/ {Rwanda} v-rel-subj-imm-perf-n3-pl 'hot water' [lit. 'water which is hot']

321 Such as: /-ééra/ {both} v-st 'whiten, be or become white,' /-iirabura/ {both} v-st {both} 'blacken, be black, become dark-colored,' /-tukura/ {both} v-st {both} 'redden, be or become red.'
6.6. Expressing Degrees of Comparison

Not only is the number of adjectives extremely small, there is no adjective-like mechanism to inflect them for degree as there is in English with the suffixes –er (COMPARATIVE) and –est (SUPERLATIVE). Comparison is expressed by verbs (see below). However, Kirundi has three suffixes\(^\text{322}\) that mark an INTENSIVE DEGREE: –nyá, –yá, and –yí ‘very.’\(^\text{323}\) While Kinyarwanda has comparable forms with –yá, they are alternates to the simple root and do not imply any intensification.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>–gúfi</td>
<td>–gúfiyá</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td></td>
<td>very short</td>
<td>–gúfiyá short</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–ké</td>
<td>–kéeyá</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td></td>
<td>very few</td>
<td>–kéeyá few</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–nini</td>
<td>–niniyá</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td></td>
<td>very big</td>
<td>–niniyá small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>’nzi</td>
<td>–nziyá</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td></td>
<td>very small, tiny</td>
<td>–nziyá tiny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–tó</td>
<td>–tóoyá</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td></td>
<td>very small</td>
<td>–tóoyá little</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Intensification in Rwanda is accomplished by the adverb /cyane/. Rundi also uses /caane/ as an alternate to the intensive suffixes or as a means of intensifying any other adjectival construction.\(^\text{324}\) While this is linguistically an INTENSIVE CONSTRUCTION, in certain contexts an English rendition in the comparative or superlative may be appropriate.\(^\text{325}\)

\(/\text{daatábu}kwe\ \text{ni munini cyane}/\ {\text{Rwanda}}, /\text{daatábu}kwe\ \text{ni muniniyá}/\ {\text{Rwanda}}\) adj-n1-sg-intens 'My father-in-law is very big.'

\(/\text{ibiró biké caane}/\ {\text{Rundi}}\) adj-n4-pl-intens 'fewer kilos' (R35.4) [Eng comparative]

\(/\text{u}w\text{’}n\text{t}o\text{o}r\text{é cyane avamó ati}/\ {\text{Rwanda}}\) n1-sg-nom poss-n5-sg = atr-intens 'The brightest person said ...

\(/\text{akíri mutó cyane}/\ {\text{Rwanda}}\) adj-n1-sg-intens '... while he is still very young.' (R38.1)

\(/\text{izo maánza zaábaga arí ntóoyá cyane}/\ {\text{Rwanda}}\) adv-n6-pl 'Those disputes were quite minor.'

Three verb roots are commonly found in expressing the equivalent of comparative and superlative constructions in English.\(^\text{327}\) The indented examples illustrate this phenomenon. Note that using an active verb tends to indicate a COMPARISON OF SUPERIORITY, while using the passive expresses a COMPARISON OF INFERIORITY.

\(/\text{rúta}/\ {\text{both}}\ 'exceed, surpass, be more than, be better than'

\(/\text{uraanduta}/\ {\text{both}}\ pro-2sg-subj + active + pro-1sg-obj 'you are better than me' (R28.2)

\(/\text{ishuri ryawe riruta ayandi}/\ {\text{Rwanda}}\) n3-sg-subj + active 'Your school is better than (all) others'

\(/\text{amajambo meénshi arutwa na rimwe}/\ {\text{Rundi}}\) n3-pl-subj + passive 'Many words are worse than one' [lit. 'many words are surpassed by one'] (Cristini 2000:81)

\(/\text{ibi biti biruta biriya}/\ {\text{both}}\ n4-pl-subj + active 'these trees are taller than those [lit. 'these trees overtake those']' (Overdule 1975:223)

---

\(^{322}\) These are exemplified in Rodegem 1967:16 and Cristini 2000:76.

\(^{323}\) The colon indicates that this suffix causes the previous vowel to become long; high tone is put on the first and final syllable of the derived root. Rundi also has /kéenyi/ 'very few,' which seems to be a blend of –nyá and –yí.

\(^{324}\) This is, strictly speaking, an adverbial construction. Such constructions, e.g., with /rwóose/ 'absolutely' or /nka/ 'like,' will be treated in the chapter on adverbs (§11).

\(^{325}\) Thus Dubnova 1984:45 glosses «Umwana wanjye ni mwiza cyane» [Rwanda] as a superlative, 'My child is the most beautiful.' It could also simply mean 'My child is very beautiful.'

\(^{326}\) Thanks to Jeanine Ntihirageza for confirming this Rundi alternation.

\(^{327}\) See Cristini 2000:81f for Kirundi, and Overdule 1975:222 or Dubnova 1984:45 for Kinyarwanda.
Chapter 6: Adjectives & Other Descriptives

/biriya biti birutwa n’iibi/ [both] n4-pl-subj + passive 'those trees are smaller than these [lit. 'those trees are overtaken by these'] (Overdulve 1975:224)

«urugo rw’urwanjwe runutu urwango» [Rwanda] n6-sg-subj + active 'A house of folly is better than hatred.' (Dubnova 1984:45)

/rusha/ (both) 'surpass, exceed, excel, possess more of X than another, be better than'

/Yohaána arusha Dawídi ubwéenge/ [both] n1-sg-subj + active 'John is more intelligent than David.' [lit. 'John surpasses David in intelligence.'](Overdulve 1975:223)

/ndamúkuunda kurusha yohaána/ [both] v-inf 'I like him more than John.' (Overdulve 1975:224)

/Suumba/ [both] 'surpass, exceed; excel, be over and above or greater than; dominate'

/imirazí isuumba guhuma/ [Rundi] n2-sg-subj + active 'Cross-eyes are better than being blind.' (Cristini 2000:81)

/imáana isuumba byóose/ [Rwanda] n5-sg-subj + active 'God is the greatest.' [lit. 'God surpasses everything.'] (Overdulve 1975:223)

Sometimes a simple copulative construction with /ni/ can express the comparative or superlative:

/uwu mukoóbwa ní mwiizá caane/ [Rundi], /uyu mukoóbwa ní mwiizá cyana/ [Rwanda] 'This young girl is the nicest.' (Overdulve 1975:224)

/iyi nká ní yó nzíiza/ [both] n5-sg-cop 'This cow is the most beautiful.' [lit. 'This cow it is the beautiful one.'](Overdulve 1975:224)

/háa haandí ní hó haáfi cyaane/ [Rwanda] n10-loc-cop 'The other place is even closer.' (Overdulve 1975:224)

As Overdulve 1975:223 points out, there are other ways of making some form of COMPARISON, such as EQUALITY (of length, height, number, price, strength, character, etc.), RESEMBLANCE, or SIMILARITY. Verbs such as the following can be so used. Note that the examples drawn from various sources illustrate a broad range of comparisons, none of which involve adjectives:

/-hwáana/ [both] 'be equal, equivalent; have the same dimensions; be of the same character'

/aba bahuúngu bóombi barahwáanye/ [Rwanda] n1-pl-subj 'These two boys have the same character.' (Overdulve 1975:223)

/-mera nka/ [both] 'find oneself in such a state; be alike (in character), resemble (metaphysically)'

/-ngana/ [both] 'be the same size, be equal or equivalent; be so many'

/ubwo kurí iyi sí hari uwó tuuanganýa amarushwá/ [Rundi] pro-1pl-subj 'Is there anyone on this earth with whom we can really compare in misfortune?' (R19)

«uwo mwavu w’ikizungu wa ngana n’itoni hafi igihumbi» [Rundi] n2-sg-subj 'That fertilizer was nearly equal to one thousand tons.' (R35.4)

«Igiciro cashinzwe na Leta cangana amafaranga amajana abiri ku kilo» [Rundi] n4-sg-subj 'The price established by the government was 200 francs per kilo.' (R35.2)

/zana ibuye riinganá n’íigi/ [Rwanda] n3-sg-subj 'Bring a rock the size of an egg!' (Overdulve 1975:223)

/-reesha/ [Rundi], /–reeshya/ [Rwanda] 'be of equal stature (physically, in length, height, or size; socially, in status or wealth)'

/biriya biti birareesha/ [Rwanda] n4-pl-subj 'Those trees are of equal height.' (Overdulve 1975:223)

/-riinganirá/ [both] 'be of equal length, of the same level, of the same size, of the same distance; be lined up, in order, arranged, balanced'

«mu imikino ibiri amakipe ye garanya yejye» [Rwanda] n3-pl-subj 'In two games, the teams were even.' (R30.2)

/-sa/ 'resemble; appear as such; be about, be approximately'

/usa n’iritéenga/ [both] pro-2sg-subj 'You are as beautiful as the sunset!' (Rodegem 1970:385, Jacob 1987 #3:1)

328 Dubnova translates this example as 'House of poverty is better than (house) of hatred.'

329 Rwanda has an invariable attributive derived from this root, /mahwaané/ 'identical,' e.g., /utu tubiindi ni mahwaané/ [Rwanda] 'these little jars are identical' (Bizimana 1998:231).
/asa na sé/ [both] n1-sg-subj 'He looks like his father.' (Rodegem 1970:385, Jacob et al. #3:1, Cristini 2000:240)

/gusa n’áayó kw’iteke/ [both] v-inf 'to be very beautiful' [lit. 'be like that (water) on a taro leaf'] (Rodegem 1970:385)

«Kanyanga ni inzoga ikarishye isa n'amazi» [Rwanda] n5-sg-subj 'Kanyanga is a strong liquor which looks like water.' (R24.1)
7. Numerals (Number Systems) & Enumeration

Numbers or numerals are not, technically-speaking, a single part of speech because some are INFLECTED with special affixes while others are INVARIABLE. However, they belong together on logical or semantic grounds.330 Numerals are compounded in a special way and they also have their own rules when REDUPLICATED, a unique instance where an affix itself can receive high tone (see §2.5.17).

7.1. Cardinal Numbers

In both Kinyarwanda and Kirundi, numbers come in two forms: inflected and invariable. In Rwanda, the first seven have a SPECIAL INFLECTION FOR CLASS AND NUMBER, in Rundi it is the first six. Numbers above seven in Rwanda and above six in Rundi are INVARIABLE.

Table 86. Inflection of Numbers from One through Seven

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
<th>palatalized forms [n5-pl/n6-pl]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>one</td>
<td>-mwé</td>
<td>ebyiri {Rwanda}</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two</td>
<td>-biri</td>
<td>evyiri {Rundi}</td>
<td>zibiri {Rundi alt}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three</td>
<td>-tatu</td>
<td>eshatu {both};</td>
<td>zitatu {Rundi alt}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>four</td>
<td>-né</td>
<td>enyé {both};</td>
<td>zine {Rundi alt}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>five</td>
<td>-taanu</td>
<td>eshaanu {both};</td>
<td>zitaanu {Rundi alt}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>six</td>
<td>-taandátu</td>
<td>esheeshátu {both};</td>
<td>zitaandátu {Rundi alt}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seven</td>
<td>indwi [invar]</td>
<td>-riindwi</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Numerals follow the nouns they modify.

/ibitabo bing biri ku méezá/ {both} 'Four books are on the table.' (Overdulve 1975:105)
«bagurisha uwo mwavu ku mafaranga amajana a ne n’itanu ku kilo» {Rundi} 'They sold that fertilizer for 450 per kilo.' (R35.2)

The numerical affixes (see Table 87) differ from other agreement sets, such as subject agreement (Table 54 in §4.2) or adjective agreement prefixes (Table 83 in §6.1), by losing any nasal from the prefix (umu- > u-, ana- > a-, iN- > i-) and by having a special palatalized form in n5-pl and n6-pl (Bantu class 10). The latter agreement is unique to numbers, consisting of e- and a sound change (PALATALIZATION, see §2.5.7) usually affecting the first consonant of the root.

In all other instances \([n1-pl, n3-sg, n4-sg, n4-pl, n6-sg, n7-sg, n7-pl, n8-sg, n9-sg, \text{and } n10-loc]\) concord is homographic with that of adjective and subject agreement.

**Table 87. Numeral Prefixes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Marker</th>
<th>Numeral prefix</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n1-sg</td>
<td>umu-</td>
<td>u-</td>
<td>/umwáámi umwé/ {both} 'one king'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-pl</td>
<td>aba-</td>
<td>ba-</td>
<td>/baáámi babiri/ {both} 'two kings'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-sg</td>
<td>umu-</td>
<td>u-</td>
<td>/umuúnsi umwé/ {both} 'one day'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>/umuúsi umwé/ {Rundi}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-pl</td>
<td>i-</td>
<td>i-</td>
<td>/imirínga ibiri/ {both} 'two bracelets'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-sg</td>
<td>i-</td>
<td>ri-</td>
<td>/ijaambo rimwé/ {both} 'one word'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-pl</td>
<td>ama-</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>/améézi ataanu/ {both} 'five months'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-sg</td>
<td>iki-</td>
<td>ki-</td>
<td>/igitabo kimwé/ {both} 'one book'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-pl</td>
<td>ibi-</td>
<td>bi-</td>
<td>/ibitabo bitatu/ {both} 'three books'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-sg</td>
<td>iN-</td>
<td>i-</td>
<td>/ántébe imwé/ 'one chair'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-pl</td>
<td>iN-</td>
<td>eCC- {both}</td>
<td>/incúro ebyiri/ {Rwanda} 'two times'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>zi- {Rundi}</td>
<td>/incúro evyiri/ {Rundi}'two times'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>/incúro zábiri/ {Rundi} 'two times'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-sg</td>
<td>uru-</td>
<td>ru-</td>
<td>/urutoke rumwé/ {both} 'one finger'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-pl</td>
<td>iN-</td>
<td>eCC- {both}</td>
<td>/impaánté esheeshátu/ {both} 'six sides'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>zi- {Rundi}</td>
<td>/impaánté zitaandátu/ {Rundi} 'six sides'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-sg</td>
<td>aka-</td>
<td>ka-</td>
<td>/ákáana kamwé/ 'one small child'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-pl</td>
<td>utu-</td>
<td>tu-</td>
<td>/útwaántá tubiri/ {both} 'two babies'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-sg</td>
<td>ubu-</td>
<td>bu-</td>
<td>/ubwáato bumwé/ {both} 'one boat'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-pl</td>
<td>ama-</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>/amóoko ataanu/ {both} 'five types'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>/amáato aríndwi/ {Rwanda} 'seven boats'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Note: /amáato indiú/ {Rundi} 'seven boats'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-sg</td>
<td>uku-</td>
<td>ku-</td>
<td>/ugutwí kumwé/ {both} 'one ear'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-pl</td>
<td>ama-</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>/amatwi abiri/ {both} 'two ears'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10-sg</td>
<td>aha-</td>
<td>ha-</td>
<td>/ahaantú hamwé/ {both} 'one place'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10-pl</td>
<td>aha-</td>
<td>ha-</td>
<td>/ahaantú hané/ {both} 'four places'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n11-adv</td>
<td>uku-</td>
<td>gu-</td>
<td>/ukuuntu kubiri/ 'two methods'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In counting from 1 through 10, there is considerable overlap between the two dialects. A range of inflected forms are used (Table 88) few of which are actually cardinals: /rimwé/ \{both\} 'once' is ADVERBIAL, /kabiri/ \{both\} 'second' through /gataandátu/ \{both\} 'sixth' and /kariindwi/ \{Rwanda\} 'seventh' are ORDINALS. From '7' through '10' Rundi uses REDUCED CARDINALS, while from '8' through '10' Rwanda uses FULL CARDINALS.

**Table 88. Counting from One through Ten\(^{331}\)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>counting</th>
<th>root</th>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>one</td>
<td>-mwé</td>
<td>rimwe</td>
<td>rimwé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two</td>
<td>-biri</td>
<td>kabiri</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three</td>
<td>-tatu</td>
<td>gatatu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>four</td>
<td>-né</td>
<td>kané</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>five</td>
<td>-taanu</td>
<td>gataanu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^{331}\) See Overdulve 1975:122 and 1998:94 for Kinyarwanda. To our knowledge, no author has discussed how one counts in Kirundi (see Bagéin 1951, Rodegem 1967, Ntahokaja 1976 and 1994, and Cristini 2000). We are grateful to Dr. Jeanine Ntihirageza and Prof. Juvenal Ndayiragije for helping complete the Kirundi forms in this table.
Chapter 7: Numerals (Number Systems) & Enumeration

The numbers from eight to ten have full nominal forms, i.e., with an initial vowel (see Table 89). However, in Kinyarwanda when these numerals modify nouns, they can lose the initial vowel. The reduced form for 'nine' shows a tone movement one mora to the right [Jrule], i.e. /icyeénda/ > /cyeeanda/. Even when modifying another form of any class, Kirundi keeps the full form.

Table 89. Numbers from Eight through Ten (Uninflected)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>number</th>
<th>full form</th>
<th>Rundi example</th>
<th>Rwanda example</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>umunaáni</td>
<td>abaantu umunaáni</td>
<td>abaantu munaáni</td>
<td>eight people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ibiintu umunaáni</td>
<td>ibiintu munaáni</td>
<td>eight things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>iceénda</td>
<td>abaantu iceénda</td>
<td>abaantu cyeendá</td>
<td>nine people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>amafaraanga iceénda</td>
<td>amafaraanga cyeendá</td>
<td>nine francs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>icúmi</td>
<td>imihoro icúmi</td>
<td>imihoro cúmi</td>
<td>ten machetes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ibitabo icúmi</td>
<td>ibitabo cúmi</td>
<td>ten books</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the numbers from ten to ninenteen (Table 90), Kirundi has /icúmi na/ while Kinyarwanda has the reduced /cúmi na/, both of which are then followed by a numeral agreeing with the CLASS of the head noun, but deriving its GRAMMATICAL NUMBER from the numeral itself (i.e., derivations with –mwé are SINGULAR, –biri and above are PLURAL). In both dialects, if the class affix begins with a consonant, the prefix receives high tone [Hrule after na]; in Kinyarwanda if the class affix begins with a vowel, high tone is on the first syllable of the root, e.g., /n'uumwé/ or /n'eesháat/, whereas in Kirundi, high tone is on the second mora of the lengthened prefix, e.g., /n'índwi/. The higher compounds in both Kirundi (17-19) and Kinyarwanda (18-19) are INVARIBLE.

Table 90. Numbers from Eleven through Nineteen (as Roots)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>number</th>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>icúmi na 'num-mwe'</td>
<td>cúmi na num-mwé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cúmi n'limwé [n5/n6-pl]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>icúmi na 'num-biri'</td>
<td>cúmi na num-'biri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cúmi n'eebiyiri [n5/n6-pl]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>icúmi na 'num-tatu'</td>
<td>cúmi na num-'tatu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cúmi n'eesháatú [n5/n6-pl]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>icúmi na 'num-ne'</td>
<td>cúmi na num-'ne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cúmi n'eenyé [n5/n6-pl]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>icúmi na 'num-taanu'</td>
<td>cúmi na num-'taanu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cúmi n'eesháanu [n5/n6-pl]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>icúmi na 'num-taandáatu'</td>
<td>cúmi na num-'taandáatu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cúmi n'eeshéesháatú [n5/n6-pl]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>icúmi n'índwi</td>
<td>cúmi na num-'riindwi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cúmi n'indwi [n5/n6-pl]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>icúmi n'úmunaáni</td>
<td>cúmi n'úmunaáni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>icúmi n'íceénda</td>
<td>cúmi n'icyeénda</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 7: Numerals (Number Systems) & Enumeration

For the numbers from twenty through twenty-nine (Table 91), Kirundi has the base /mërongw'ibiri/332 lit. 'two rows,' while Kinyarwanda has the base /makúmyaabíri/333 lit. 'two tens.' As with the numbers from 11-19, both of these are then followed by the conjunction /na/ and a numeral agreeing with the CLASS of the head noun, but deriving its GRAMMATICAL NUMBER from the numeral itself (i.e., derivations with –mwe are SINGULAR, –biri and above are PLURAL). In both dialects, if the class affix begins with a consonant, the prefix receives high tone [Hrule after na]; in Kinyarwanda if the class affix begins with a vowel, that vowel is lengthened but high tone is on the first syllable of the root, e.g., /n'uúmwe/ or /n'eesháatu/, whereas in Kirundi, high tone is on the second mora of the lengthened prefix, e.g., /n'uúmwe/, but on the first of a short prefix, e.g., /n'indwi/. Agreement with n5-pl and n6-pl parallels forms presented in Table 90. The higher compounds in both Kirundi (27-29) and Kinyarwanda (28-29) are INVARIABLE.

Table 91. Numbers from Twenty through Twenty-Nine (in Group 1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>number</th>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>mërongw'ibiri</td>
<td>makúmyaabíri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>mërongw'ibiri n'uúmwe</td>
<td>makúmyaabíri n'uúmwe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>mërongw'ibiri na bábirí</td>
<td>makúmyaabíri na bábirí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>mërongw'ibiri na bátaatu</td>
<td>makúmyaabíri na bátaatu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>mërongw'ibiri na báne</td>
<td>makúmyaabíri na báne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>mërongw'ibiri na bátaanu</td>
<td>makúmyaabíri na bátaanu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>mërongw'ibiri na bátaandátu</td>
<td>makúmyaabíri na bátaandátu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

332 Cf: /umuroongo – imiroongo/ (both) n2 'line, row, queue, file, list, alignment,' with shift of final -o to w.
333 Cf: /icúmi – amacúmi/ (both) n3 'unit of ten,' which has an archaic plural /amakúmi/. The number twenty is formed from makúmi + abíri, with shift of final -i to y, lengthening of the numeral prefix vowel, and high tone addition, thus /makúmy-aa-bíri/.
To form the numerals thirty through ninety (Table 92), the reduced plural of /umuroongo/ is used in both dialects, spelled «mirongo», but pronounced /mirongw-/. Bases from thirty through sixty are identical, but seventy through ninety differ between the two dialects. The tens series agrees grammatically with /mirongw/ /n2-pl, whereas the unit numbers (31, 42, 53, etc.) agree with the head noun and are formed in the same way as they are for the teens and twenties (see Tables 90-91 and associated examples).

Table 92. Numbers from Thirty through Ninety

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>number</th>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>miroongw'itatu</td>
<td>miroongw'itatu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>miroongw'iné</td>
<td>miroongw'iné</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>miroongw'itaanu</td>
<td>miroongw'itaanu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>miroongw'itaandátu</td>
<td>miroongw'itaandátu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>miroongw'indwi</td>
<td>miroongw'iriindwi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>miroongw'umunaáni</td>
<td>miroongw'umunaáni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>miroongw'iceénda</td>
<td>miroongw'urweénda</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

334 Most of these Kinyarwanda examples either come from or are derived from Overdulve & Jacob 1998:110.
Chapter 7: Numerals (Number Systems) & Enumeration

The word for hundred is /ijana/ n3 in both dialects, with a plural form /amajana/ in Rundi and a reduced form of /amagana/ in Rwanda (Table 93). The same rules as described above apply to the ONES unit numbers. Note that these high numbers are formed starting with the highest and then in decreasing units: HUNDREDS + TENS + ONES.

Table 93. Numbers in the Hundreds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>number</th>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>ijana</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>amajana abiri</td>
<td>magan' abiri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>amajana atatu</td>
<td>magan’ atatu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>amajana ané</td>
<td>magan’ ané</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>amajana ataanu</td>
<td>magan' ataanu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 7: Numerals (Number Systems) & Enumeration

The word for thousand is /igihuumbi/ n4 in both dialects, with the standard plural /ibihuumbi/ in both. The same rules as above apply to the hundreds and the unit numbers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>number</th>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>igihuumbi (kimwé)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>ibihuumbi bibiri</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3,000</td>
<td>ibihuumbi bitatu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4,000</td>
<td>ibihuumbi biné</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5,000</td>
<td>ibihuumbi bitaanu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6,000</td>
<td>ibihuumbi bitaandátu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7,000</td>
<td>ibihuumbi indwi</td>
<td>ibihuumbi biriindwi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8,000</td>
<td>ibihuumbi umunaáni</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9,000</td>
<td>ibihuumbi iceénda</td>
<td>ibihuumbi cyeénda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>ibihuumbi icúmi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The word for thousand is /igihuumbi/ n4 in both dialects, with the standard plural /ibihuumbi/ in both. The same rules as above apply to the hundreds and the unit numbers.
Numbers naming units from ten thousand and up are either coinages or loanwords.

/inzovu/ [Rwanda NIGU] *num-n5-sg* 'ten thousand' [cf: */inzovu/ {both} *n5-sg/pl* 'elephant']

/umuliyóóni/ [Rundi] *num-n2-sg, /miliyóóni/ [Rwanda] *num-n5b* 'million' < French *million*

/agahumbi* [Rwanda NIGU] *num-n5-sg* 'myriad (a very high number); one hundred thousand; million' [cf: */igihumbi/ *num-n4-sg* {both} *'thousand'*/

/umuliyáráári/ [Rundi] *num-n2-sg, /miliyáráári/ [Rwanda] *num-n5b* 'billion' < French *milliard*

/urukwáávu/ [Rwanda NIGU] *num-n6-sg* 'billion' [cf: */urukwáávu/ {both} *n6-sg* 'hare, rabbit']

### 7.2. Ordinal Numerals

ORDINALS are a special form of numerals that set items in numerical order or as a series, such as *first, second, third*. As we saw in Table 88, they form the basis of counting out numbers. In Kinyarwanda and Kirundi they are marked with a class-appropriate POSSESSIVE AGREEMENT MARKER (§3.6.3 and Table 48). As in English, the ordinal replacing *one* (i.e., *first*) is SUPPLETIVE, the form */–mbere*/ bears no relationship whatsoever to the root */–mwé/. However, in higher compounds (*11th, 21st, 51st*), *first* is expressed by invariable */rimwe*/ {Rundi}, */rimwé*/ {Rwanda} or inflected forms */n'uúmwe*/ {Rundi}, */n'uumwé*/ {Rwanda}. There is an ANTONYM or opposite counterpart */–nyuma/ *last* that forms part of this set.336 As with the inflected cardinals (Table 86), two through six in Kirundi and two through seven in Kinyarwanda have a special high-toned ORDINAL PREFIX, *ká–* or *gá–*, which precedes the numeral root.337 These are illustrated for ten noun groups in Table 95.

#### Table 95. Ordinal Numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First</td>
<td>n1-sg</td>
<td>waa mbere</td>
<td>baa mbere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>n1-pl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last</td>
<td>n1-sg</td>
<td>waa nyuma</td>
<td>baa nyuma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>n1-pl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st cmp number</td>
<td>n1 (any)</td>
<td>n'uúmwe</td>
<td>n'uumwé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>rimwe</td>
<td>rimwé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>n2-sg</td>
<td>wa kábiri</td>
<td>ya kábiri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>n2-pl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>n3-sg</td>
<td>ryaa gátaatu</td>
<td>ya gátaatu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>n3-pl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4th</td>
<td>n4-sg</td>
<td>caa káne</td>
<td>cyaa káne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>n4-pl</td>
<td>ryaa káne</td>
<td>byaa káne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5th</td>
<td>n5-sg</td>
<td>ya gátaanu</td>
<td>zaa gátaanu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>n5-pl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6th</td>
<td>n6-sg</td>
<td>rwaa gátaandátu</td>
<td>zaa gátaandátu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>n6-pl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7th</td>
<td>n7-sg</td>
<td>k'índwi</td>
<td>kaa káriíndwi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>n7-pl</td>
<td>tw'índwi</td>
<td>twaa káriíndwi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8th</td>
<td>n8-sg</td>
<td>bw'úmunaání</td>
<td>bwaá múnaání</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>n8-pl</td>
<td>y'úmunaání</td>
<td>ya múnaání</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 7: Numerals (Number Systems) & Enumeration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>9th</th>
<th>n9-sg</th>
<th>kw’icéénda</th>
<th>kwa cyéénda</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>n9-pl</td>
<td>y’icéénda</td>
<td>ya cyéénda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10th</td>
<td>n10</td>
<td>h’icúmi</td>
<td>haa cúmi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11th</td>
<td>n1</td>
<td>wa miroongw’ibi ri na rimwe</td>
<td>wa makúmyaabíri n’uumwé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(any)</td>
<td>w’icúmi na rimwe</td>
<td>waa cúmi na rimwe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21st</td>
<td>n1-sg</td>
<td>caa miroongw’iné na kábiri</td>
<td>wa miroongw’ibi ri n’uumwé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>wa miroongw’ibi ri n’uumwé</td>
<td>wa makúmyaabíri na rimwé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42nd</td>
<td>n4-sg</td>
<td>w’ijana na rimwe</td>
<td>w’ijana na rimwé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101st</td>
<td>n1-sg</td>
<td>w’ijana na rimwe</td>
<td>w’ijana n’uumwé</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

«Bazoyikura ku musi ugira gatatu» {Rundi} ‘They will take it out on the third day.’ (R15)

/umwáana w’iicúmi na rimwe ~ n’uumwé yiitwa misáago/ {Rundi} ‘The eleventh child is called Misago.’ (Cristini 2000:119)

/umutumwá w’iicúmi na kábiri ~ bábi ri/ {Rundi} num-ord-n2-sg (Cristini 2000:118), /iintumwá ya cúmi na kábiri ~ bábi ri/ {Rwanda} num-ord-n5-sg ‘the twelfth apostle’

/mu mwáaka w’iicúmi n’iitaanu/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:118), /nu mwáaka wa cú mi na gátaanu/ {Rwanda} ‘in the fifteenth year’

/igitabu caa miroongw’iitaanu na kábiri ~ na bábi ri/ {Rundi} ‘the fifty-second book’ (Cristini 2000:119)

«umutí wa mirongo itandatu n’iitaanu ~ itandatu na gátaanu» {Rwanda} ‘the sixty-fifth remedy’ (Hurel 1959:43)

/uruhú rw’iijana na rúmwe/ {Rwanda} ‘the hundred first hide’ (Hurel 1959:43, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:119)

One can also count by ordinals, as illustrated in Table 96. Contrast this with Table 88.

Table 96. Counting by Ordinals from One through Ten

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>last</td>
<td>ubwaa nyuma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first</td>
<td>ubwaa mbere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>second</td>
<td>ubwaa kábi ri</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>third</td>
<td>ubwaa gátatu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fourth</td>
<td>ubwaa kané</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fifth</td>
<td>ubwaa gátaanu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sixth</td>
<td>ubwaa gátaandátu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seventh</td>
<td>ubw’índwi</td>
<td>ubwaa káriindwi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eighth</td>
<td>ubw’úmunáani</td>
<td>ubwaa múnaáni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ninth</td>
<td>ubw’icéénda</td>
<td>ubwaa cyéénda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tenth</td>
<td>ubw’iicúmi</td>
<td>ubwaa cúmi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We are deeply grateful to Jeanine Ntihirageza for providing us with this full table in an email dated May 2, 2005. Cristini 2000:121 provides some of these forms; however, Rwanda authors provide very sparse data and no paradigms (consult Overdulve 1975:181,271 and Overdulve & Jacob 1998:339).
7.3. Adverbial Use of Numbers

Ordinals and other inflected numerals can be used adverbially, as in the following examples. Note in particular the many meanings and functions of /-mwé/, e.g., 'at once,' 'the same,' 'together.'

«ubwa mbere na mbere abana b'abahungu» {both} 'primarily for boys' (R39.4)
/rimwé mu kwéezi/ {both} 'once a month' (R8a)
/bageceker a rimwé/ {both} 'They grow silent at once.' (R14)
/bimwé bisonéka/ {both} 'in an obvious way' (R17.7)
/ni kimwé/ {both} 'It's all the same.'

«bakongera bagakora hamwe» {both} 'Moreover they worked together.' (R17.8)
/turvúgira hamwé/ {both} 'We are speaking simultaneously.'

«umugore wawe we nyene muri iyi ndwi amaze kunyerera kane kuri iryo bomba!» {Rundi}
'Your very own wife has already slipped at that pump four times just this week!' (R23)

The nominalized possessive of *n8 /ubwaa* followed by an ordinal (see Table 96) indicates a temporal order.339

/ubwaa mbere/ {both} 'the first time' /ubwaa nyuma/ {both} 'for the last time'
/ubwaa kábiri/ {both} 'for the second time'

7.4. Units of Time

MONTHS OF THE YEAR are expressed in two ways, with numerals and by archaic words that originally characterized lunar months or subseasons. In Kirundi, all are inflected as a subclass of *n9* (agreeing with /ukwéezi/), whereas in Kinyarwanda, only three are in *n9*, the rest are in group 5b.

Table 97. The Traditional Names of the Calendar Months

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>months / sequence</th>
<th>Rundi lunar calendar</th>
<th>Rwanda traditional calendar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>September / 1st</td>
<td>/nyakaânga/ n9b</td>
<td>/nzéri/ n5b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>October / 2nd</td>
<td>/gitugútu/ n9b</td>
<td>/ukwaakira/ n9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>November / 3rd</td>
<td>/munyoonyó/ n9b</td>
<td>/ugushyíingo/ n9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>December / 4th</td>
<td>/kigarama/ n9b</td>
<td>/ukuboza/ n9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>January / 5th</td>
<td>/nzéro/ n9b</td>
<td>/mutaráma/ n5b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>February / 6th</td>
<td>/nyamagoma/ or /ruhuhúma/ n9b</td>
<td>/gashyáantáre/ n5b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March / 7th</td>
<td>/ntwaranté/, /rwirábara/ or /rubunugubuungu/ n9b</td>
<td>/weepurwe/ n5b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April / 8th</td>
<td>/ndamukiza/ or /kabozá/ n9b</td>
<td>/matá/ n5b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May / 9th</td>
<td>/rusaamá/ n9b</td>
<td>/gicuráasi/ n5b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>June / 10th</td>
<td>/kiyuumpu/ or /ruheéshi/ n9b</td>
<td>/kaména/ n5b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>July / 11th</td>
<td>/mukákaro/ n9b</td>
<td>/nyakáanga/ n5b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>August / 12th</td>
<td>/myandagaró/ n9b</td>
<td>/kaanamá/ n5b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Since these forms are so different, the Rundi and Rwanda communities can effectively communicate when they specify months using a possessive construction based upon the word for month /ukwéezi/ linked to an ORDINAL NUMERAL (Table 98). There are short forms, with /ukwéezi/ understood, and long forms, with it spoken in full.

Table 98. Numerical Names of the Calendar Months

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>month</th>
<th>short form</th>
<th>long form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>January</td>
<td>/ukwaa mbere/ (both)</td>
<td>/ukwéezi kwa mbere/ (both)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>February</td>
<td>/ukwaa kábiri/ (both)</td>
<td>/ukwéezi kwa kábiri/ (both)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March</td>
<td>/ukwaa gátatu/ (both)</td>
<td>/ukwéezi kwa gátatu/ (both)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April</td>
<td>/ukwaa káne/ (both)</td>
<td>/ukwéezi kwa káne/ (both)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May</td>
<td>/ukwaa gátaanu/ (both)</td>
<td>/ukwéezi kwa gátaanu/ (both)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>June</td>
<td>/ukwaa gátaandátu/ (both)</td>
<td>/ukwéezi kwa gátaandátu/ (both)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>July</td>
<td>/ukw'indwi/ (Rundi)</td>
<td>/ukwéezi kwa ndwi/ (Rundi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>August</td>
<td>/ukw'ümunaáni/ (Rundi)</td>
<td>/ukwéezi kwa munaáni/ (Rundi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September</td>
<td>/ukw'iceénda/ (Rundi)</td>
<td>/ukwéezi kwa ceénda/ (Rundi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>October</td>
<td>/ukw'ícúmí/ (Rundi)</td>
<td>/ukwéezi kwa cúmí/ (Rundi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>November</td>
<td>/ukw'ícúmí na rímwe/ (Rundi)</td>
<td>/ukwéezi kwa rímwe/ (Rundi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>December</td>
<td>/ukw'ícúmí na kábiri/ (Rundi)</td>
<td>/ukwéezi kwa kábiri/ (Rundi)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To indicate the month the locative mu is used with the short form of the nominalized possessive.

/mu kwaa gátatu/ (both) 'in March'
/mu kwaa gátaandátu/ (both) 'in June'

The NAMES OF THE DAYS are formed with a possessive construction based upon the word for day /umuúnsi/ (both), /umuúsi/ (Rundi) linked to an ORDINAL NUMERAL (Table 99). Rwanda generally prefers the short forms, with /umuúnsi/ understood, whereas Rundi prefers long forms, with the alternate /umuúsi/ spoken in full. Note that days are reckoned with Monday starting the week, i.e., the first day. The form for Sunday in Kinyarwanda is a -(icy)- nominalized possessive form of n2 (umw-) with the base /-éera/ 'be white;' it also means week, which is expressed in Kirundi by a form homographic with the numeral seven/indwi/.

Table 99. Days of the Week

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>days</th>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monday</td>
<td>/umuúsi waa mbere/</td>
<td>/uwaa mbere/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuesday</td>
<td>/umuúsi wa kábiri/</td>
<td>/uwa kábiri/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wednesday</td>
<td>/umuúsi wa gátatu/</td>
<td>/uwa gátatu/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thursday</td>
<td>/umuúsi wa káne/</td>
<td>/uwa káne/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friday</td>
<td>/umuúsi wa gátaanu/</td>
<td>/uwa gátaanu/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturday</td>
<td>/umuúsi wa gátaandátu/</td>
<td>/uwa gátaandátu/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunday</td>
<td>/umuúsi w'íimaana/</td>
<td>/icyúumweeru/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

340 The only forms that "sound" similar designate completely different months: Rundi /nyakaánga/ 'September' and Rwanda /nyakáanga/ 'July.'
In contrast to the months (marked with *mu*, above), the days are marked the locative *ku* followed by the short form of the nominalized possessive.

*/ku waa mbere/ {both} 'Monday, i.e., on Monday'
*/ku wa kábiri/ {both} 'on Tuesday'
*/ku w'íimáana/ {Rundi} 'on Sunday'
*/ku cyúumwéeru/ {Rwanda} 'on Sunday' [Contrast: /*mu cyúumwéeru/ {Rwanda} 'during the week']

The HOURS OF THE DAY (Table 100) are delimited by a loanword 341/ *isáahá/ {Rundi}, /*ísáahá/ {Rwanda} *n5a* reduced to /saa/ {both}. According to the culture of both communities, the first hour of the day is 7:00 a.m. and of the night 7:00 p.m.

### Table 100. Hours of the Day (from Swahili) 342

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>time</th>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:00</td>
<td>saa mooyá</td>
<td>saa moóya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:00</td>
<td>saa mbirí</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:00</td>
<td>saa tatú</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:00</td>
<td>saa yiné</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:00</td>
<td>saa taánu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:00</td>
<td>saa sitá</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:00</td>
<td>saa sabá</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:00</td>
<td>saa munaání</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:00</td>
<td>saa ceénda</td>
<td>saa cyendá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:00</td>
<td>saa kumi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:00</td>
<td>saa kumi n'iimwe</td>
<td>saa kumí n'iimwé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:00</td>
<td>saa kumi na zíbiri</td>
<td>saa kumí n'eebyíri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Full calendar dates are indicated by an enormous string of numbers specifying day, date, month, and year. 343 The date itself may optionally be preceded by the noun /ítáríki/ *n5a-sg-ir*, /amatárikí/ *n3-pl* 'date, day (of the month),' which is ultimately from Arabic, but has been borrowed from Swahili. Alternatively, Rundi uses its native term /ígenekerezo/ *n3-sg ‘date.’

*/ku wa káne ítáríki ya mákumyaabíri na káriindwi muri weewurwe ( ~ y’úkwaa gátatu) mu mwaka wa ‘íghuhumbi kimwe na magan’urweénda na mirongo w’ítandatú n’ícyeénda ísáahá cúmi/’ {Rwanda} 'Thursday, March 27, 1969, at 4:00 p.m.' (Overdulve 1975:129)

«*ku ya mbere ukwa cumi n’abiri igihumbi kimwe magana cyenda mirongo cyenda n’ununani/’ {Rwanda} 'December 1, 1998’ (R2)

«*tariki ya mbere y’ukwezi kwa munani igihumbi kimwe magana cyenda mirongo cyenda/’ {Rwanda} 'August 1, 1990' (R6)

«*ígenekerezo rya cumi na rimwe Nyakanga ibihumbi bibiri/’ {Rundi} '11 July 2000' (R9)

«*kw’ígenekerezo rya kabiri Mukakaro igihumbi kimwe amajana icenda na mirongo itandatu na gatanu/’ {Rundi} '2 July 1965’ (R17)

«*kuva mu mwaka w’íghuhumbi kimwe amajana icenda mirongo indwi n’ununani gushika mu gihumbi kimwe amajana icenda mirongo umunani na gatanu/’ {Rundi} 'from 1978 until 1985’ (R17)

---

341 Ultimately from Arabic, but via Swahili. Most of the numbers are Swahili (*moya*, *mbiri*, *yine*, *sita*, *kumi*).
343 Besides the examples cited below, the following additional Kirundi date sequences appeared in the Reader (Nibagwire & Zorc 2002) and can be heard on the recordings: 1852 and 1908 (R3), 1971, 1986, 1987, and May 1989 (R17).
7.5. Enumeratives

The following words overlap with numbers in terms of their meaning, but are discussed elsewhere in this book. Consult the discussion of each in the cross-referenced sections.

/-hé/ 'which?' (of two or several possibilities) – See discussion in interrogatives (§13.5)

/-iínshi/ {both} 'much, numerous; many, a lot (of)' – See Tables 82 and 83 in §6.1.

Note that this root can be nominalized (Table 84) with the meaning 'the majority of'

/abeéns/i baagiiye/ {both} 'The majority of the people have left.'

/íbyiínshi byaagiiye/ {Rwanda} 'Most of the things have fallen.'

/-kéeyá/ {Rwanda} 'few, little, small (in amount); insignificant'; {Rundi} [intensive] 'very few, really small'

– See Tables 82 and 85 in §6.1.

/-mpi/ {Rundi}, /-mbi/ {Rwanda} 'both, the two of' [dual] – See Table 65 and discussion in §4.10.2.

/-mwé/ {both} 'a, an [singular]; some, several' [plural indefinite] – See Table 63, and discussion in §4.8.

/-ndí/ {both} 'another of the same vs. different kind' – See Table 67 and discussion in §4.10.4.1–4.

/-nyéne/ {Rundi}, /-nyine/ {Rwanda} 'alone, only' [singulative] – See Table 64 and discussion in §4.10.1.

/-sa/ {both} 'only, alone, single' – See Table 82 in §6.1 and contrastive discussion in §4.10.1.

/-se/ {both} 'all, each, every' – See Table 66 and discussion in §4.10.3.
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

8. VERB CONJUGATIONS

The verb in Rwanda and Rundi, as in other Bantu languages, is the most complicated of all its grammatical structures. Any verb can have up to TEN LAYERS or word parts (e.g., preinitial, prefix, preverb, infix, root, augment, suffix, postposition, see Table 101). Linguists call this layering MORPHOLOGY.

Table 101. Order of Affixes (Morphology) in the Verb Complex

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pre-prefix</th>
<th>prefix</th>
<th>post prf</th>
<th>feature</th>
<th>preverb</th>
<th>infix</th>
<th>root</th>
<th>augment</th>
<th>suffix</th>
<th>post</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>preinitial negative inde-</td>
<td>negative</td>
<td>condition or conse-</td>
<td>tense or</td>
<td>obj</td>
<td>HIGH vs.</td>
<td>causative</td>
<td>aspect</td>
<td>loc</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nti- not inde-</td>
<td>dependent</td>
<td>quence</td>
<td>root</td>
<td>-Δ-</td>
<td>LOW tone</td>
<td>benefactive</td>
<td>impf</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-</td>
<td>-da-</td>
<td>-ra-</td>
<td>-ga-</td>
<td>-ka-</td>
<td>-aa-</td>
<td>-oo-</td>
<td>-m-</td>
<td>-ag-a-</td>
<td>-ye-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uu-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ba-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 101 continued...

However, besides the actual forms (morphs) that mark a verb category in one way or another, there is a GRAMMATICAL LEVEL determined strictly by TONE PATTERN and/or CONTEXT. Mood, for example, can only be determined by contextual and tonal clues. As illustrated in Table 10 and discussed in §1.2.1, if one encounters the spelling «basoma» out of context, it is impossible to know how to pronounce it, since its mood could be indicative, participial, or relative and its tense could be immediate, recent, preterit (or even conditional in Rwanda). Altogether, the GRAMMATICAL FRAMEWORK of the Rwanda-Rundi verbal system has ELEVEN categories or dimensions. These are outlined in Table 102 and will be treated in summary form in this first section.

Table 102. Grammar of the Rwanda-Rundi Verb

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category (Dimension) – Grammar</th>
<th>Realizations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 – logical value</td>
<td>affirmative, negative, hypothetical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 – mood</td>
<td>indicative, participial, relative, autonome, infinitive, imperative, jussive, hortative, and optative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 – pragmatic feature (or taxis)</td>
<td>sequential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 – Tense or time relations</td>
<td>immediate, recent, preterit, future, conditional, persistent, inceptive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 – Government or linkage</td>
<td>disjoint, conjoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 – Reflection (or version)</td>
<td>conjunctive, reflexive, objective</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

344 For example, /nti-ba-ki-mu-vug-ir-a-kó/ Rundi 'They no longer speak in his presence.' (Rodegem 1967:43) or /nti-ba-ki-mu-vur-ir-a-yó/ Rwanda 'They no longer treat him there.' Each have eight morphological layers. Kimenyi 1980:7 presents two examples with eleven layers, one of which is /ba-t-aan-shyir-i-ye-mo/ 'who did not even put them there for me.' As with multiple objects (§4.3), so many layers are unusual. Six were the maximum encountered in our Reader: /n-da-yá-gu-túur-a/ [both] 'I give them to you' (R36.2), /y-a-kú-du-háa-ye/ Rundi '... who gave you to us' (R21.4)

Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

| 7 – Tone class and phonetics of root | high vs. low tone; consonant vs. vowel-initial stems |
| 8 – Valence or Quality | benefactive, causative, reciprocal, attributive, reversionary, repetitive, frequentative |
| 9 – Voice | active, passive |
| 10 – Aspect | imperfective, perfective, subjunctive, gerundive |
| 11 – Postpositions | location, proximity, existence, word order reversal |

1 LOGICAL VALUE (nature of the assertion)

AFFIRMATIVE Ø- or UNMARKED

/mbaasha/ {both} 'I can.'

NEGATIVE /nti- initial prefix in main or independent clauses; contrast - /ta-, postprefix in subordinate clauses

/ntibabaasha/ {both} 'They cannot.' – /simbaasha/ {Rundi}, /siimbaasha/ {Rwanda} 'I cannot.'

HYPOTHETICAL /ni- 'if' followed by an object relative construction, immediate in Rwanda and recent in Rundi

/ni nabaasha/ {Rundi}, /niimbaasha/ {Rwanda} 'If I can.'

2 MOOD (identified on the basis of context, tone pattern, clause type, negative marking, and special affixes)

INDICATIVE is used in main clauses to make assertions or ask questions

/baragaruka/ {both} 'They're going to return.'

PARTICIPIAL dependent verb forms governed by conjunctions, the copulative auxiliaries - /bá and - /rí, and several auxiliary verbs, or used in temporal clauses; universally marked by HIGH TONE on the first vowel after the first consonant.

/ndakéeka bágaruka/ {both} 'I suppose they will return.'

RELATIVE dependent verb forms governed by conjunctions or used to modify nouns; Rwanda has a special SUBJECT RELATIVE form for /ni-sg/ [1rule]; both dialects have parallel object relative forms most of which are marked with HIGH TONE on the second syllable of the root [Prule] if there is no object pronoun.

/umwáana ugáruka/ {Rwanda} 'a child who is going to return' [subject relative]; Note: {Rundi}

/umwáana agarúka/ which serves identically as object {both} and subject relative {Rundi only}

/yambwiiye kó bagarúka/ {both} 'He told me that they are going to return.' [object relative]

AUTONOME verbs that serve as nouns; marked by full noun prefixes except for special forms in group 1

/singular /uú-/ {both}, /uwu-/ {Rundi}, /u- {Rwanda}

/úkóra/ {both}, /uwukóra/ {Rundi}, /ukóra/ {Rwanda} 'one who works'

/abágaruka/ {both} 'those who are going to return'

INFINITIVE shows the tone class of the verb and is a derivational category, i.e., the verb serves as a noun of Group 9a, /gu-, kw-

/kugaruka/ {both} v-intr 'to return' [low tone root]

/gusúbira/ {both} v-intr 'to go back (to some place where one has been before)' [high tone root]

IMPERATIVE forms used in commands with ZERO subject marking; affirmative only, there is no negative imperative

/garuka/ {both} 'Come back!'

JUSSIVE /S-ii-∆-a/ {Rwanda only} used to express negative wishes

/biigáruka/ {Rwanda} 'May they not return!'

346 Scholars have not been in agreement on the number of moods. Hurel discusses five: indicative, subjunctive, conditional, imperative, and infinitive (1959:61). Dubnova distinguishes four: the indicative, the conditional-subjunctive, the imperative, and the optative-inductive (1984:57f). Stevick includes four in his Dimension 2: indicative, participial, relative, and autonomous (1965:xxvi–xxx); later (ixv) he mentions three that fall outside his framework: subjunctive, infinitive, and imperative. In his overview of Kirundi, Bennett states: "Rundi has a complex system of verbal inflection marking four tenses, two aspects, and six moods." (Garry and Rubino 2001:603) In the same volume in his overview of Kinyarwanda, Kimenyi mentions five tenses and three aspects, but neglects mood altogether. (Garry and Rubino 2001:386) Note that while SUBJUNCTIVE is considered a MOOD in many languages, we treat it as an ASPECT (precisely because it is a suffix like - /a or - /ye) in Kirundi and Kinyarwanda.

347 Called conjunctif (CONJUNCTIVE) in French grammars. The term PARTICIPIAL is used by Stevick in his description of Kirundi (1965:xxviii) and is widespread in the grammatical description of many other Bantu languages.
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

/mwiinkúbita/ [Rwanda] 'Don’t hit me!'

SPECIAL -ra- (different from disjoint -ra-) used in wishes or encouragement: HORTATIVE IMMEDIATE /S-ra-Δ-e/ [both], /S-ra-Δ-a/ [Rundi] 'please do VERB,' HORTATIVE FUTURE /S-ra-zoo-Δ-a/ [Rundi], /S-ra-Δ-zaa-a-e/ [Rwand] 'please will VERB,' OPTATIVE /S-ra-ka-Δ-a/ [both] 'may VERB'

/barazooza/ [Rundi], /urazaaze/ [Rwand] 'Come when you want.' [lit. ’You should come in the future.’]
/murakaroota néezá/ [both] 'May you have beautiful dreams!' /baragatsiinda/ [both] 'May they win!'

3 PRAGMATIC FEATURE (-ka-, -ga-, -k-, a special marker designating an action as a SEQUENCE of another action or a series of actions, either subsecutive or consecutive).

« Ngo iyo (Raie) ishaka kujugunya imyanda cyangwa ibiribwa bishobora kuyangiza irasama cyane igasohora igifu cyayo maze ikakigaragura mu mazi ikacyoza neza nyuma ikongera ikakimirta. » [Rwand] 'Reportedly, when it (the stringray) wants to eject waste or harmful food, it opens its mouth wide,' puts out its stomach, swishes it all around in the water, washes it out well, and then swallows it again.' (R12)

/Vyose bimaze gutungana, baraberera, bakapfundikira, bagashira inkono iruhande y'iziko canke ku rusenge./ [Rundi] 'After all this is done, they add the yeast, cover the pots up, and place them on the side of the hearth or on a rack.' (R15)

4 Tense or time relations

IMMEDIATE or TODAY TENSE -O- (i.e., unmarked if conjoint) or -ra- (if disjoint) referring to habitual actions or permanent states, the present, the immediate past, the immediate future, or the narrative.

/bakora mu gitóondo/ [both] 'They work in the morning.'
/barakóra/ [both] 'They work.'

RECENT PAST /-a/- completed anytime earlier today.

/yakoranaga néezá n'abaándi/ [Rwand] 'She worked well with others.'
/yakoranana néezá n'abaándi/ [Rundi] 'She worked well with others.' (R17.7)

PRETERIT /-á/- completed anytime before today; always marked by high tone on the second mora of the verb [2rule]

/yakóranaga néezá n'abaándi/ [Rwand] 'She worked well with others.'
/yakóranana néezá n'abaándi/ [Rundi] 'She worked well with others.'

FUTURE /-zoo/- [Rundi], /-zaa/- [Rwand] action is proposed to be completed (but not immediately)

/azookora/ [Rundi], /azaakora/ [Rwand] 'He will work.'

CONDITIONAL /-oo/- [Rundi], /-aa/- [Rwand] action would or might be done

twoovuga iki/ [Rundi], /twaaavuga iki/ [Rwand] 'What would we say?'

PERSISTIVE /-racáa/- [Rundi], /-racyáa/- [Rwand], /-ki/-, /-gi/- [both], /-e/- [Rundi], /-cy/- [Rwand] action is still going on

/baracáakóra/ [Rundi], /baracyáakóra/ [Rwand] 'They are still working.'

INCEPTIVE /-ríaa/- [Rundi] yet, already VERB; [neg][both] action is not yet completed

/barakóra/ [Rundi only] 'Are they already working?'
/n'tibaráakóra/ [both] 'They are not yet working.'

348 As Coupez 1980:391 points out, there is a homorganic prefix -ka- (degré modifié) that occurs in combination with other affixes, e.g., -raka- [both], -áaká- [both] or -óoká- [Rwand] OPTATIVE, -kazoo- or -zóoka- [Rundi], -kaaza- [Rwand] FUTURE. We take both of these to be part of this PRAGMATIC FEATURE of the verb.

349 Also called degré in French grammars (e.g., Coupez 1980:398 or Overdulve 1975:61,240).

350 Once a narrative has been set in the past tense, an immediate or present tense verb can be used on subsequent verbs. This NARRATIVE TENSE is described in Overdulve 1975:153–54 and Coupez 1980:390; examples abound throughout Nibagwire & Zorc 2002. In Kinyarwanda it has a unique negative indicative form (see §8.1.9 #037) which uses the negative nti-, a prefix homorganic with the recent past -a-, and the suffix -a (not -aga).

351 French grammars use the term récent, whereas Stevick calls this the HODIERNAL TENSE (1965:xxx), based upon the Latin word for 'today' (hodie).

352 French grammars use the term prétérit, whereas Stevick calls this the HESTERNAL TENSE (1965:xxx), based upon the Germanic word for 'yesterday' (cf: German gestern, English yester-).
5 Government or linkage\textsuperscript{353}

DISJOINT\textsuperscript{354} or independent -\textipa{ra}- [Rule] when the verb ends a clause (e.g., there is no following object or other complement), or with a following object where it has a FOCUS or PRAGMATIC HIGHLIGHTING function.

/\textipa{aravuga ati}/ [both] 'He says...' [followed by an exact quote, which is not a grammatical object]

/\textipa{birageenda no kuu maana}/ [both] 'And so they went to God.' [narrative] (R28.10)

CONJOINT\textsuperscript{355} or dependent unmarked -Ø [Rule] when the verb is followed by an object or other word to which it is closely tied.

/\textipa{avuga ko}/ [both] 'He says that ...' [followed by an indirect quote]

For this distinction to be maintained or established, there must be a TONAL DIFFERENCE in the verb. It is not simply a grammatical matter, i.e., if the verb ends a clause or sentence (DISJOINT) or if an object or other complement follows (CONJOINT). For example, no NEGATIVE CONSTRUCTION ever distinguishes conjoint from disjoint tonally even if verbs may or may not be followed by complements.

6 Reflection (Note leftward tone change when any of these markers are present in the indicative.)

CONJUNCTIVE -\textipa{na} - 'also, even, still'

/\textipa{baranabikora}/ [both] 'They still do it.' (Overdulve 1975:264)

OBJECT noun class agreement form (see Table 55)

/\textipa{baranabikora}/ [both] 'They still do it.' (Overdulve 1975:264)

REFLEXIVE -\textipa{i/-} showing that the subject acts upon itself

/\textipa{biibonera}/ [both] 'They should just get for themselves.' (R22) < /\textipa{-iibonera}/ 'get s.t. for oneself'

/(\textipa{kó}) arí wowé ubwáawé wiikúunda/ [both] '... that you are the only one who loves yourself.' (R28.7)

7 Tone and Phonological Class of Root Verb

HIGH – the presence of a high tone on the first vowel of a verb root

/-\textipa{bára}/ [both] v-tr 'tell (what one has seen or heard), report'

/-\textipa{biriimba}/ [both] v-tr 'sing'

/-\textipa{sána}/ [both] v-tr 'repair, fix s.t. up'

LOW – the absence of high tone on the corresponding forms of other verbs

/-\textipa{bara}/ [both] v-tr 'count, enumerate, compute'

/-\textipa{kuruura}/ [both] v-tr 'drag (along a very heavy thing), draw, pull behind oneself'

/-\textipa{sa na}/ [both] v-cmp-ir 'resemble, look like'

CONSONANT-INITIAL – a root that begins with a consonant

/-\textipa{bábara}/ [both] v-st 'suffer, be hurt'

/-\textipa{kúbuura}/ [both] v-tr 'sweep, clean'

VOWEL-INITIAL – a root that begins with a vowel (has special affixes, e.g., +\textipa{kw}-, and tone shifts)

/-\textipa{aabira}/ [both] v-intr 'bellow, roar, yell'

/-\textipa{eegeera}/ [both] v-tr 'approach, draw near to'

/-\textipa{iibuka}/ [both] v-tr 'remember, recall'

/-\textipa{óonka}/ [both] v-intr 'nurse, suckle'

/-\textipa{iiubaha}/ [both] v-tr 'respect, honor'

8 Valence, Condition or Quality (several AUGMENTS or DERIVATIONAL SUFFIXES)

CAUSATIVE /-\textipa{iish}-, -\textipa{eesh}-, -\textipa{y}/ make someone or something do an action; turns an intransitive verb into a transitive one

/-\textipa{kóreesha}/ [both] v-caus 'employ, utilize' < /\textipa{-kóra}/ v-tr 'work'

/-\textipa{ígíisha}/ [both] v-caus 'teach, instruct' < /\textipa{-íiga}/ v-tr 'learn, study'

\textsuperscript{353} French grammars use the terms jointure (Coupez 1980:398) or suite (Overdulve 1975:61); Stevick (1965:xxxv) calls it linkage.

\textsuperscript{354} French grammars use the term disjoint (Coupez 1980:398, Overdulve 1975:61); Stevick (1965:xxxv) and Kimenyi (2002:190) both use the term disjoint.

\textsuperscript{355} French grammars use the term conjoint (Coupez 1980:398, Overdulve 1975:61); Stevick (1965:xxxv) and Kimenyi (2002:190) both use the term conjunct.
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

/_kíza/_ {both} v-caus 'cure, heal' < /-_kíra/_ v-st 'heal, get better'
/_menyeeshas/_ {both} v-caus 'notify, inform' < /-_menyas/_ v-tr 'know, recognize'
/_goza/_ {both} v-tr 'wash, rinse' < /-_goaga/_ v-intr 'immerse, be in water; bathe'
/_ruhiisha/_ {both} v-caus 'fatigue, tire out' < /-_ruhá/_ v-inch 'get tired'
/_vúza/_ {both} v-caus 'have someone speak; make s.t. sound' < /-_vúga/_ v-tr 'speak, make a sound'

BENEFACTIVE\(^\text{356}\) /-ir-, -er-, -erer/- do s.t. for someone; can turn a transitive verb into a ditransitive one
/éémerera/_ {both} v-ben 'promise, guarantee; authorize, give one's consent to someone' < /-_émera/_ v-tr 'agree, consent, admit'
/kóra/_ {both} v-ben 'serve, work for someone, do s.t. for someone' < /-_kóra/_ v-tr 'work'
/rriríra/_ {both} v-ben 'shed tears over someone, weep for, mourn' < /-_rríra/_ v-intr 'cry, weep'
/úubakára/_ {both} v-ben 'build s.t. for someone' < /-_úubaka/_ v-tr 'build, construct'

RECIPROCAL /-án/- indicates an action done mutually
/bónana/_ {both} v-recip 'see one another; meet, have a meeting' < /-_bóna/_ v-tr 'find, obtain, see'
/éerekana/_ {both} v-recip 'show (s.t. to one another); make someone see' < /-_éereka/_ v-ditr 'show s.t. to someone'
/pfáana/_ {both} v-recip 'die with, die together' < /-_pfá/_ v-st 'die'
/túkana/_ {both} v-recip 'insult one another' < /-_túka/_ v-tr 'insult'

ATTRIBUTIVE /-ek-, -ik-, -k/- allows a verb to serve as a descriptive (§6.5)
/bóneka/_ {both} v-atr 'appear, be visible; be easy to find' < /-_bóna/_ v-tr 'find, obtain, see'
/gayika/_ {both} v-atr 'be describable, contemptible' < /-_gaya/_ v-tr 'despise, scorn'
/guríka/_ {both} v-atr 'sell (well)' < /-_gura/_ v-tr 'buy, purchase'
/méneka/_ {both} v-atr 'get broken, be shattered; be breakable' < /-_ména/_ v-tr 'break, shatter'
/úumvikaana/_ {both} v-atr 'be clear, comprehensible' < /-_úumva/_ v-tr 'hear, listen'

REVERSIVE /-ur-, -or/- creates a transitive verb with an opposite meaning from its root form
/aágura/_ {both} v-rev-tr 'stretch, widen, enlarge' < /-_áaga/_ v-st 'be narrow'
/bóórooka/_ {both} v-rev-tr 'untie; release, set free' < /-_bóha/_ v-tr 'tie, bind'
/éegura/_ {both} v-rev-tr 'seize (an object laying down); make straight (what was leaning); decide s.t. for oneself' < /-_éega/_ [Rwanda] v-intr 'bend (under a heavy weight), lean over;' cf: /-_éega/_ [Rundi] 'belong to; depend upon'
/óomora/_ {both} v-rev-tr 'detach gently, peel off, remove' < /-_óoma/_ v-intr 'adhere, stick to' (JN)

REVERSIVE STATIVE /-uk-, -ok/- creates an intransitive or static verb with an opposite meaning from its root form
/aáguka/_ {both} v-rev-st 'become enlarged; be vast, spacious' < /-_áaga/_ v-st 'be narrow'
/bóóooka/_ {both} v-rev-st 'come untied, get undone (knot)' < /-_bóha/_ v-tr 'tie, bind'
/óoomoka/_ {both} v-rev-st 'come off easily, come untied' < /-_óoma/_ v-intr 'adhere, stick to' (JN)
/hishuukana/_ {both} v-rev-st 'be revealed, get disclosed' < /-_hisha/_ v-tr 'hide, conceal'

DURATIVE /-iriz-, -erez/- indicates that the action is done persistently, repeatedly, or over a prolonged time
/geenzereza/_ {both} v-prolong 'present oneself (in a certain light) to someone else; behave (in a certain way) towards someone' < /-_geenza/_ v-tr 'make someone go or walk; drive (vehicle); conduct oneself; treat, behave towards'
/gumiriza/_ {both} v-prolong 'continue s.t. indefinitely; cling to, hold fast to' < /-_guma/_ v-intr 'stay'
/héereza/_ {both} v-ditr-prolong 'give away, hand s.t. to someone' < /-_há/_ v-ditr 'give s.t. to someone'
/sabiriza/_ {both} v-prolong 'beg (without stop), ask for s.t. repeatedly; live like a beggar' < /-_saba/_ v-ditr 'ask s.o. for s.t., request; pray; beg'

9 Voice

ACTIVE /-0/- (i.e., unmarked) when the subject precedes the object
/barabaanza bagaáeeka iyo myuumbati/_ {both} 'First of all they cook these cassavas.'

PASSIVE (pre-final suffix-w-) when the object is put into initial position
/iyo myuumbati ... irabaanza igááeekwá/_ {both} 'These cassavas are first of all cooked.' (R20)

\(^{356}\) Usually called an APPLICATIVE (French *applicatif*) verb derivation (e.g., Cristini 2000:257).
10 Aspect (marked by three different suffixes)

Aspect is a way of viewing an action (e.g., whether it is ongoing or completed); it has nothing to do with tense or time. In the discussion of the various tenses, we shall see that aspect markers offer special nuances, e.g., hypothetical if conditional imperfective, but unreal if conditional perfective.

IMPERFECTIVE marked by the suffix -a indicating that an action is in progress (without regard to its being complete); in the recent and the preterit tenses Rwandan has the expanded suffix -aga

/bageenda/ [both] 'They go.'
/barageenda/ [both] 'They are going.'

PERFECTIVE marked by the suffix -ye (with numerous palatal sound changes, see §2.5.7) indicating that a state is regarded as currently relevant or that an action is complete

/baageenze/ [both] 'They walked.' (i.e., all day long)
/barashoonje/ [both] 'They are hungry.'

SUBJUNCTIVE marked by the suffix -e indicating that an action ought to occur; this suffix also marks a HORTATIVE construction (the circumfix S-ra-∆-e in §8.9) and GERUNDIVE auxiliary construction (S-ri bu-∆-e in §8.5.3)

/bageende/ [both] 'They should go.'

11 Locational Postpositions

There are four postpositions that serve as substitutes for locative expressions which are understood in context. Each of them always has a high tone [Erule]. See §11.2.3 for additional treatment of these postpositions.

Group 10 hó [both] 'there (on, off, in, above)'

«Iyo watetse inyama nyinshi ukurahoro izo uri buteke ukwazo» [Rwanda] 'If you cooked a lot of meat, take some out of there which you will cook separately.' (R18)

«Ibyo nibyo Leta zose zirwanya zigashvirahoro namatengeko yo guhana ababikoresha.» [Rwanda] 'These are (the drugs) that all governments oppose by establishing [lit. 'putting in'] laws to punish the people who use them.' (R26.1)

/akabishiraho/ [Rundi] '... and then he put them there.' (Cristini 2000:150)

«Hariho abayironka bagaca bayinyeza» [Rundi] 'There are those who get it and hide it right away.' (R33.6)

Group 11 kó [mostly Rundi] 'there' [Note that Rwanda uses hó to replace ku phrases]

«nta kibi bamubona ko» [Rundi] (R25.2), «nta kibi bamubonaga ho» 'There was nothing bad that they found about him.'

/washyize ibyókurya ku méézá? yee, nabishyize hó/ [Rwanda] 'Did you place the food on the table? Yes, I placed it there.' (Overdulve 1975:214)

/isóoko ikigongwe giturukakó/ [Rundi] 'the source from which mercy originates' (Cristini 2000:150)

Group 12 mwó [Rundi], mó [Rwanda] 'there (inside that place or in that time)'

«Mu gicapo ... hakaba harimwo umuhoro n'agafuni» [Rundi] 'In the emblem there used to be therein a pruning knife and a small worn-out hoe.' (R29.5)

/Mw'ibendera rishasha harimwo ibara ry'ubururu/ [Rundi] 'On the new flag there is the color blue.' (R29.6)

/Usanga harimwo imihigo itandukanye/ [Rwanda] 'You notice therein the promises are different.' (R32)

Group 13 yó [both] 'there' (general or vague location)

«ya mbeba iravyarira yo» [Rundi] 'The mouse produced offspring there.' (R27.10)

«bashyingirayo» [Rwanda] 'They marry their children off there.' (R38.9)

A student of these languages will have to rethink his or her understanding of tense or time relationships. Setting an action in the PAST can be expressed three ways: by the IMMEDIATE (if it just occurred or if the first sentence in a story has already set the time in the past), by the RECENT (if it happened earlier the same day), or by the PRETERIT (if it happened before today).

/murasomye/ [both] [Rrule] v-ind-aff-imm-perf-dis 'You just read.'
/mwaasomye/ [both] [Rrule] v-ind-aff-recent-perf-dis 'You read recently.'
/mwaarasómye/ [both] [2rule+Trule] v-ind-aff-pret-perf-dis 'You read formerly.'

207
Similarly, a FUTURE event can have four renditions: 357 by the IMMEDIATE with -ra- (if it is just about to happen), by a GERUND construction (if it may occur throughout the entire day), by the FUTURE -zoo- {Rundi} or -zaa- {Rwanda} (if it is a remote or unspecified future event), and by an AUXILIARY verb construction with -zaa (if the action is intended or obligatory).

/parageenda/ {both} v-imm 'they are going to leave'
/pari bugeendë/ {both} 'they will leave'
/bazoogeenda/ {Rundi}, /bazaageenda/ {Rwanda} 'they will leave (eventually)'
/parazzaa kugeenda/ {both} 'they will end up going'

The importance of no marking (the linguistic concept of ZERO or Ø) is critical with regard to the grammar of verbs. The AFFIRMATIVE has no marker and contrasts with the NEGATIVE having nti- or -ta-. The INDICATIVE can be unmarked tonally, while all other moods have some form of tonal signature. The IMMEDIATE is unmarked, while all remaining tenses have special prefixes. The CONJOINT has no marker, while the DISJOINT has -ra-. The ACTIVE voice is unmarked, while the PASSIVE has the suffix -w-.

Because of the complexity of the verb system, some authors highlight grammatically-determined criteria (Table 102), e.g., Overdulve's conjoin – with a complement vs. disjoint – without a complement (1975:61,96f), while others concentrate on morphologically-determined criteria (Table 101), e.g., Kimenyi's -Ø- vs. -ra- (1980:212ff). Tonality too can be critical in determining whether or not the phenomenon of government or linkage obtains in a particular tense and mood combination. In order to arrive at "the truth," all criteria must be examined in order to understand the richness and complexity of the Kinyarwanda-Kirundi verb system and to determine which phenomenon best explains a given situation. This is exemplified in Table 103.

Table 103. Criteria Determining Government (Conjoint vs. Disjoint)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CRITERION</th>
<th>CONJOINT</th>
<th>DISJOINT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MORPHOLOGY</td>
<td>-Ø-</td>
<td>-ra-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRAMMAR</td>
<td>+ complement (object, adverb, or clause)</td>
<td>- complement (usually, but not obligatory)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TONALITY</td>
<td>always low tone [Lrule]</td>
<td>follows root tonality [Rrule]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The presence of one of more object infixes can seriously affect tone placement on the verb (§2.4.11–12), but this will depend on the basic tonality of the mood and tense combination. There is a standard progression such that a verb with the Rrule with no objects will have the O+L rule (tone on object and loss of root tonality) if there is one object infix, the O+R rule {Rwanda} or O+T rule {Rundi} if there are two objects, the O+O+L rule if there are three objects, and so on. These object-oriented tonal patterns are outlined in Table 104.

Table 104. Tonality of Verbs Having Object Infixes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>simple verb</th>
<th>1 object</th>
<th>2 objects</th>
<th>3 objects</th>
<th>4 objects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>O+L</td>
<td>O+R {Rwanda}</td>
<td>O+O+L</td>
<td>O+O+R {Rwanda}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>O2+L</td>
<td>O2+L</td>
<td>O2+L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F+P</td>
<td>F+P2</td>
<td>F+O2+L</td>
<td>F+O2+L</td>
<td>F+O2+L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F+R {Rwanda}</td>
<td>F+O {Rwanda}</td>
<td>F+O2+L</td>
<td>F+O2+L</td>
<td>F+O2+L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F+T {Rundi}</td>
<td>F+T {Rundi}</td>
<td>F+O2+L</td>
<td>F+O2+L</td>
<td>F+O2+L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N+P</td>
<td>N+P2</td>
<td>N+O2+L</td>
<td>N+O2+L</td>
<td>N+O2+L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

357 With regard to a basic verb form. If auxiliary verb inflections with –bá or with –rí are taken into consideration (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:321–3) then there are at least seven more ways to express a future event.
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

8.1. Indicative

The indicative is the mood of main or independent clauses. It is used in making assertions or asking questions. The conjoint is characterized by low tone $[L\text{rule}, \text{i.e., loss of high tone from high tone roots}]$, whereas the disjoint is characterized by keeping the tonality of the root $[R\text{rule}]$. In order to maintain consistency throughout this section, each verb paradigm will be discussed in the following order: MOOD – VALUE – TENSE – ASPECT – LINKAGE, e.g., indicative affirmative immediate perfective disjoint or autonome negative preterit perfective (linkage does not apply to autonomes).

8.1.1. Indicative Immediate

The immediate tense is more inclusive than the present tense of English and other Indo-European languages. Besides an ONGOING or CURRENT action, it can designate one that has just been accomplished (IMMEDIATE PAST) or one that is just about to occur (IMMEDIATE FUTURE). The immediate is often used in a NARRATIVE tense once the time frame has been introduced (e.g., the first sentence may have a verb in the past, but all others within the same time period can then be in the immediate). Finally, it can delimit a HABITUAL action or some TIMELESS TRUTH (as in a proverb). Note that the unmarked (-Ø-) conjoint forms must always be followed by some complement, whereas the -ra- forms may occur alone or before an object (in which case they serve a FOCUS or HIGHLIGHTING function). The following contrastive examples from Overdulve are excellent.


\[\text{TONE PATTERN: } L S-Ø-∆-a \text{ (both)}\]

\[\text{naanga abiíkuza/ } \{\text{Rwanda}\} \text{ 'I hate those who praise themselves.' (R28.2)}\]

\[\text{abaantu bii ba zána inkómooko y’ítaábi/ } \{\text{both}\} \text{ 'People wonder about the origin of tobacco.' (R26.2)}\]

\[\text{atoozwa guhiiga akíri múto/ } \{\text{both}\} \text{ 'He is accustomed to hunting while he is still young.' (R38.1)}\]

\[\text{abaári aho bacecekera rimwé/ } \{\text{both}\} \text{ 'The ones who were there grew silent at once.' (R14)}\]

\[\text{mukuunda abantu/ } \{\text{both}\} \text{ 'You love people.' (Cristini 2000:164)}\]

\[\text{niiga gusoma/ } \{\text{both}\} \text{ 'I learn reading.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:44)}\]

\[\text{waandika ibitabo?/ } \{\text{both}\} \text{ 'Do you write books?' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:44)}\]

+ one object

\[\text{TONE PATTERN: } L S-Ø-obj-∆-a \text{ (both)}\]

\[\text{ubhitéeka ku muriro muké/ } \{\text{both}\} \text{ 'You cook them on low heat.' (R18)}\]

\[\text{yaboonye nihiíira agtega umutégo/ } \{\text{both}\} \text{ 'He saw me simply passing by and trapped me.' (R27.5)}\]

\[\text{358 See Kimenyi 1980:217 for a brief discussion of FOCUS. Overdulve 1975:96 simply portrays such a construction as having "a special meaning with a complement." It generally asserts the factuality of an action, i.e., the TRUTH VALUE of a statement.}\]


\[\text{360 All abbreviations can be found in the frontmatter. L S-Ø-∆-a means that the resulting verb will be low toned, i.e., it will lose any high tone (L) and will consist of a subject marker (S), no tense prefix (Ø), the verb root (∆) and the imperfective suffix (-a).}\]
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

/bayeenga bákoreesheje urwáagwá/ {Rwanda} 'They brew it using banana beer.' (R24.1)
/ampeemba néezá/ {Rwanda} 'He pays me well.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:130)

002 indicative affirmative immediate perfective conjoint
TONE PATTERN:
L S-Ø-∆-ye {both}
/basigaye uwó mu nyoni/ {both} 'There remains one from birds.' (R28.3)
/nsaanze duhúuje/ (both) 'I see we agree.' (R1)
/ugiive hé?/ (both) 'Where are you going?' (Overdulve 1975:97)

+ one object
TONE PATTERN:
L S-Ø-obj-∆-ye {both}
/tugutuuye amabóko/ (both) 'We offer you our arms.' (R21.4)
/ibyo uvuzé uhitewe n'iki?/ (Rwanda) 'What makes you say that?' (R28.2)
/mbáseezeeyehó/ (Rwanda) 'I say goodbye to you all.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:353)

003 indicative affirmative immediate imperfective disjoint
TONE PATTERN:
R S-ra-∆-a (both)
R S-r-∆-a [vowel root] (both)
/ndakúunda/ (both) 'I love.' (Cristini 2000:33) [Note the change of /r/ to /d/ after /n/.
/baarondeye uwó batumá ijaambo barabúra/ (Rundi) 'They looked for someone to speak on their behalf but they couldn't find anyone.' (R11)
/ikinyomá kirahinyuka/ (Rundi) 'The lie gets discovered.' (R25.3)
/naamuhánagataye araaza/ (Rwanda) 'I called him and he came.' [narrative] (Overdulve 1975:153)
/kiráziya/ (Rwanda) 'It is forbidden.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:352)
/abagabo barakóra mu mirímá/ (both) 'The men are now working in the fields.' (Overdulve 1975:94)
/araandika/ (both) 'He is writing.' (Cristini 2000:195, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:34)
/báriiga/ (both) 'They are studying.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:34)

+ one object
TONE PATTERN:
O+L S-ra-obj-∆-a (both)
/ndámúkūunda/ (both) 'I love him.' (Cristini 2000:156)
/araánkuunda/ (both) 'He loves me.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:130)
/araánvemera/ (both) 'He believes me.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:130)
/ikinyarwanda baracyúumva/ (Rwanda) 'They understand Kinyarwanda.' (R38.10)
/baragishira/ (Rundi) 'They'll put it back.' (Cristini 2000:156)
/baramúfasha/ (both) 'They help him.' (R15)
/báarashítse barábaakíira/ (Rundi) 'They arrived and they were welcomed.' (R11)
/yampaaye igitabo ndagíso ma/ (Rwanda) 'He gave me a book and I read it.' [narrative] (Overdulve 1975:153)

361 The postposition here is sufficient to make this verb conjoint (as evidenced by the lack of -ra-).
362 Kimenyi (2002:172f) calls this the IMPERFECTIVE PRESENT, and notes that it is the same as the NEAR FUTURE TENSE ("any time after the moment of speaking until the beginning of the next day"). In the following item, he equates these with the COMPLEMENTLESS HABITUAL (Ibid:173).
+ two objects

TONE PATTERNS:

O+T S-ra-obj-obj-Δ-a {Rundi}
O+R S-ra-obj-obj-Δ-a {Rwanda}
O+J S-ra-obj-obj-Δ-a [vowel root] {both}

/arabitrurungikira/ {Rundi} 'He is sending it to us.' (Cristini 2000:188)
/imirimoyo yaawe ndayigtéesha/ {both} 'I made you abandon (them) your tasks.' (R36.2)
/barahimuñizanira/ {Rundi} 'They are bringing it to him.' (Cristini 2000:157, Rodegem 1967:141f) [long vowel draws tone]
/ndamukweekeka/ {both} 'I'm going to show him to you' (Cristini 2000:157, LN)

+ three objects

TONE PATTERNS:

O+O+L S-ra-obj-obj-obj-Δ-a {both}
/ndáhámúmúshirá/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:156), /ndáhámúmúshyirá/ {Rwanda} (LN) 'I will put them there for him.'
/barahámúmúkóreka/ {both} 'They are going to do it for him there.' (Bizimana 1998:145)
/barahámúmúweekeka/ {both} 'They will show that place to him on his behalf.' (Cristini 2000:157)

004 indicative affirmative immediate perfective disjoint\(^{363}\)


TONE PATTERN:

R S-ra-Δ-ye {both}
R S-r-Δ-ye [vowel root] {both}
/ndizi/ {both} 'I just studied.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:44)
/mu kuryáama baragerekeranye/ {both} 'In going to bed, they are overcrowded.' (R9)
/biragayitse/ {both} 'It is despicable.' (R30.2)
/buriye/ {both} 'It is getting dark.' (JN, Bizimana 1998:329, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:344)

+ one object

TONE PATTERN:

O+L S-ra-obj-Δ-ye {both}
/abagabo waampaáye ndáabáanze/ {Rwanda} 'The witnesses you gave me I reject (them).' (R28.9)
/baratáboonye/ {both} 'They see us.' (Cristini 2000:157)

+ two objects

TONE PATTERNS:

O+T S-ra-obj-obj-Δ-ye {Rundi}
O+R S-ra-obj-obj-Δ-ye {Rwanda}
/arabágháháaye/\(^{364}\) {both} 'He entrusts them to you.' (Cristini 2000:156)
/baraziharánna/ {Rundi} 'They accompany them (their cows) there.' (Cristini 2000:157)

005 indicative negative immediate imperfective


TONE PATTERN:

N+P nti-S-Δ-a {both}
/ntibashobóra kugira aho bajyá/ {Rwanda} 'They cannot go anywhere.' (R8a)
/ntiwevmú kwikuzu kubi/ {Rwand} 'Don't you listen you lousy braggart!' (R28.5)
/uúsaba ntivihúuta/ {both} 'The one who asks does not rush.'

---

\(^{363}\) Kimenyi (2002:173) calls this the COMPLEMENTLESS PERFECTIVE PRESENT.

\(^{364}\) Since /-háaye/ has high tone, the application of the T rule {Rundi} and R rule {Rwanda} yields a homonym.
+ one object
TONE PATTERN:
   N+T nti-S-obj-∆-a {both}
/ntuungsindira aha/ [both] 'You will not defeat me here.' (R28.9)
/singítaka bimwé bisaanzwé/ [both] 'I don't praise you as usual.' (R36.1)
/ntibadushíaka/ [Rwanda] 'They are not looking for us.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:131)
/ntibatwúumva/ [both] 'They do not listen to us.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:131)
/ntitubahámagara/ [Rundi] 'We are not summoning them.' (Cristini 2000:189)

+ two objects
TONE PATTERN:
   N+O2+L nti-S-obj-obj- ∆-a {both}
/ntihabímbi bíwírä/ [both] 'They don't tell it to him.' (Cristini 2000:189, Rodegem 1967:57)
/ntihabímurírimbíisha/ [Rwanda] 'They don't make him sing it.' (Kimenyi 2002:241)

006 indicative negative immediate perfective
TONE PATTERN:
   N+P nti-S-∆-ye {both}
/ntibwoorróshye kumenya umubaré w'ábanyaambo/ [Rwanda] 'It is not easy to know the Nyambo population.' (R38.11)
/imaánya záacu ntíziruhíje/ [both] 'Our quarrel is not difficult.' (R28.5)
/uriíya ntíakozé/ [Rwanda] 'That one does not work.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:50)
/ntidukubúuye/ [Rundi] 'We are not sweeping.' (Cristini 2000:174)

8.1.2. Indicative Recent
The recent tense generally indicates an action that has been completed on the same day of speaking about it. In the imperfective, it can indicate a conditional action. It can also refer to a habitual event in the recent past. The tense marker is always low toned. The tense marker is short /a/ in weak inflections (those that start with a semivowel) and long /aa/ in strong inflections (those that start with a consonant). Note that while Kirundi has the simple imperfective suffix –a, Kinyarwanda has –aga.

007 indicative affirmative recent imperfective conjoint
TONE PATTERNS:
   L S-aa-∆-a [weak] {Rundi}
   L S-aa-∆-a [strong] {Rundi}
   L S-Ø-∆-a [vowel root] {Rundi}
   L S-a-∆-aga [weak] {Rwanda}
   L S-aa-∆-aga [strong] {Rwanda}
   L S-Ø-∆-aga [vowel root] {Rwanda}
/yakorana néezá n'ábaándi/ [Rundi] 'She worked well with others.' (R17.7) [habitual recent past]
/wakoraga iki mu gitóondo/ [Rwanda] 'What were you doing this morning?' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:158)
/mwaakuunda abaantu/ [Rundi] 'You would love people.' (Cristini 2000:165)
/mwaandikaga ibáruwá/ [Rwanda] 'You were writing a letter.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:158)
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

008 indicative affirmative recent perfective conjoint

TONE PATTERNS:
- L S-a-Δ-ye [weak] {both}
- L S-aa-Δ-ye [strong] {both}
- L S-Ø-Δ-ye [vowel root] {both}

/iyo náama yategetse ibiki n'íibiki/ {Rwanda} 'What was the point of the meeting?' (R4)
/asanga haafashwe buguuanye bw'intaambwe/ {Rundi} 'He discovered that an enormous lion was recently caught.' (R27.2)
/uyu mugabo yaboony e níihitira antega umutégo/ 'This man saw me simply passing by and trapped me.' (R27.5)
/twiibutse/ {both} 'We remembered.' (Cristini 2000:62, LN)

+ one object
TONE PATTERNS:
- L S-a-obj-Δ-ye [weak] {both}
- L S-aa-obj-Δ-ye [strong] {both}

/umwíijima waheenze ubwéenge/ {Rwanda} 'Darkness tricked you.' (R28.8)
/namubonye agéenda/ {both} 'I (recently) saw him walking.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:190)

009 indicative affirmative recent imperfective disjoint

TONE PATTERNS:
- R S-aa-Δ-a {Rundi}
- J S-Ø-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rundi}
- R S-aa-Δ-aga {Rwanda}
- J S-Ø-Δ-aga [vowel root] {Rwanda}

/naakúunda/ {Rundi} 'I have loved.' (Cristini 2000:165)
/waakóra/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:191), /waakóraga/ {Rwanda} (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:158) 'You were working (recently).'
/twaakóra/ {Rundi} 'We worked.' (Cristini 2000:191)
/biíriiniimbiishaga/ {Rwanda} 'They were making themselves sing.' (Kimenyi 2002:249)

010 indicative affirmative recent perfective disjoint

TONE PATTERNS:
- R S-aa-Δ-ye [strong] {both}
- J S-Ø-Δ-ye [vowel root] {both}

/waakóze/ {both} 'You worked (recently).' (Cristini 2000:191, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:122)
/baaje/ {both} 'They came.' (Cristini 2000:240)
/biíze/ {both} 'They studied (this morning).' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:123)
/mwiíriwe/ {both} 'Good evening!' (Overdulve 1975:215)
/biitabaaye/ {both} 'They defended themselves.' (Kimenyi 2002:199)

+ one object
TONE PATTERNS:
- O+L S-aa-obj-Δ-ye {both}

/umuriro n’uumwóotsi vyaa miínsi yóóse vyaántujije/ {Rundi} 'The fire and smoke each and every day drove me crazy.' (R19)

Kimenyi (2002:172) calls this the COMPLEMENTLESS RECENT PAST. He also identifies the change in tone pattern "when the verb stem starts with a vowel..., the lexical high tone appears on the coda." This is our Jrule.
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

+ two objects

TONE PATTERNS:

\[ O_2 + L \text{S-aa-obj-} \Delta \text{-ye} \{ \text{both} \} \]

/naayavihaaye/ \{ both \} 'I recently gave them (bones) to it (the dog).'</(Overdulve & Jacob 1998:327)

/wé yaakimúhaaye/ \{ both \} 'He gave it to him (recently).'</(Cristini 2000:158)

011 indicative negative recent imperfective


TONE PATTERNS:

\[ N+L \text{nti-S-} \Delta \text{-a [weak] \{ Rundi \}} \]
\[ N+L \text{nti-S-aa-} \Delta \text{-a [strong] \{ Rundi \}} \]
\[ N+L \text{nti-S-} \Delta \text{-a-aga [weak] \{ Rwanda \}} \]
\[ N+L \text{nti-S-aa-} \Delta \text{-a-aga [strong] \{ Rwanda \}} \]

/ntiwakubuura/ \{ Rundi \} 'You did not sweep.' (Rodegem 1967:56f)

/búrya sinahingaga/ \{ Rwanda \} 'In fact I was not plowing.' (Bizimana 1998:271)

/ntitwaakoraga mu mudugódu/ \{ Rwanda \} 'We were not working in the city (today).'</(Overdulve 1975:178)

012 indicative negative recent perfective


TONE PATTERNS:

\[ N+L \text{nti-S-} \Delta \text{-ye [weak] \} \]
\[ N+L \text{nti-S-aa-} \Delta \text{-ye [strong] \} \]
\[ N+L \text{nti-S-} \Delta \text{-ye [vowel root] \} \]

/sinaburaaye/ \{ both \} 'I didn't go to bed hungry.' (Rodegem 1967:56f)

/ntitwaakubuye/ \{ both \} 'We did not sweep.' (Rodegem 1967:56f)

/ntitwuubatse/ \{ both \} 'We did not build.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:124)

+ one object

TONE PATTERNS:

\[ N+L \text{nti-S-obj-} \Delta \text{-ye [weak] \} \]
\[ N+L \text{nti-S-aa-obj-} \Delta \text{-ye [strong] \} \]

/bulletin yaawe sinayishiime na gato/ \{ both \} 'I was not pleased at all with (it) your report card.'
\{ R1 \}

/naánje sinay ikunze/ \{ both \} 'Me neither, I didn't like it.' \{ R1 \}

/sinakubwiye kó ntaa mukuünzi ugorá/ \{ both \} 'Didn't I tell you that you don't have any friends?'
\{ R28.7 \}

/umugórooba wóose sinamuboonye/ \{ both \} 'I didn't see him for the entire evening.' (Bizimana 1998:298)

+ two objects

TONE PATTERNS:

\[ N+L \text{nti-S-obj-obj-} \Delta \text{-ye [weak] \} \]
\[ N+L \text{nti-S-aa-obj-obj-} \Delta \text{-ye [strong] \} \]

/sinahamusaanze/ \{ both \} 'I did not find him there.' (Ntahokaja 1994:116)

8.1.3. Indicative Preterit

The preterit tense generally indicates an action that has been completed previous to the day of speaking. It therefore refers to any action from yesterday through the distant past. The tense marker always involves a high tone on the second mora and has one of the most distinctive tonal signatures in all moods in both languages. There is a short /a/ in weak inflections (those that start with a
semivowel) and long /aa/ in strong inflections (those that start with a consonant). Note that while Kirundi has the simple imperfective suffix -a, Kinyarwanda has -aga.

013 indicative affirmative preterit imperfective conjoint
TONE PATTERNS:
2+X S-a-Δ-a [weak] {Rundi}
2+X S-aá-Δ-a [strong] {Rundi}
2+X S-a-Δ-aga [weak] {Rwanda}
2+X S-aá-Δ-aga [strong] {Rwanda}
/niibwiiraga kó ab’imuhirá barí buburáare/ {Rwanda} 'I assumed that my family would go to bed hungry.' (R34.3)
/ku gitúgu c’íburyó baáshoororoka imihivú/ {Rundi} 'On the right shoulder there tumbled down raffia fibers.' (R5)
/twaákoranaga/ {Rwanda} 'We have worked.' (Overdulve 1975:310)
+ one object
TONE PATTERNS:
2+L S-a-obj-Δ-a [weak] {Rundi}
2+L S-aá-obj-Δ-a [strong] {Rundi}
2+L S-a-obj-Δ-aga [weak] {Rwanda}
2+L S-aá-obj-Δ-aga [strong] {Rwanda}
/abaantu bóóse baámuvgua néezá/ {Rundi} 'Everybody spoke well of him.' (R25)

014 indicative affirmative preterit perfective conjoint
TONE PATTERNS:
2+X S-a-Δ-ye [weak] {both}
2+X S-aá-Δ-ye [strong] {both}
/umutwaáre yakóreesheje igitáramo iwé/ {Rwanda} 'A chief threw a party at his palace.' (R14)
/impanuka ya biisí yoóretse imbagá/ {Rwanda} 'A bus accident killed many.' (R16)
/baásaanze uwo yari yáakiivye arí umunyéeshuúre/ {Rundi} 'They found out that the one who stole it was a student.' (R7)
/yatúmiye abanyarwaanda kuri vilaáje urugwiiro/ {both} 'He invited Rwandans to Urugwiro village.' (R29.8)
/twaákoze néezá/ {both} 'We have worked well.' (cf: Overdulve 1975:136)
+ one object
TONE PATTERNS:
2+L S-a-obj-Δ-ye [weak]
2+L S-aá-obj-Δ-ye [strong]
/umugabo umwé baámuviye káa gateleóone batwaará mu minwe/ {Rundi} 'A man (he) was robbed of his cell phone.' (R7)

015 indicative affirmative preterit imperfective disjoint
TONE PATTERNS:
2+X S-a-rá-Δ-a [weak] {Rundi}
2+T S-aá-ra-Δ-a [strong] {Rundi}
2+X S-a-rá-Δ-aga [weak] {Rwanda}
2+T S-aá-ra-Δ-aga [strong] {Rwanda}
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

/Bitaama ыва́куундура/ [Rundi] 'Bitama was loved.' (R25.2)
/ejó mu iishuúri нáра́сомага/ [Rwanda] 'Yesterday I was reading in the classroom.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:218)

016 indicative affirmative preterit perfective disjoint

TONIC PATTERNS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2+X S-a-rá-Δ-ye [weak] {both}</td>
<td>TONE PATTERNS:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2+T S-aá-ra-Δ-ye [strong] {both}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2+L S-a-r-Δ-ye [weak vowel root] {both}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2+L S-aá-r-Δ-ye [strong vowel root] {both}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

/нáра́ко́зе/ [both] 'I have worked.' (Cristini 2000:191, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:139)
/и́бэенде́ра н’indiríimbo ihayáгиза уруа́nda vyáара́инду́ве/ [Rundi] 'The Rwandan flag and national anthem have been changed.' (R29.0)
/ubuzima bwáabo бwaара́инду́тсе/ [both] 'Their life has changed.' (R34, JN)
/báара́козве ибийи vy’агахомерабу́нва/ [Rundi] 'Evil beyond belief has been done.' (R37.4)
/baáра́табаа́йе/ [Rwanda] 'They defended.' (Kimenyi 2002:200)
/náра́ндитсе/ [both] 'I have written.' (Cristini 2000:196, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:139)
/twaа́рууба́тсе/ [both] 'We built (formerly).' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:139)

+ one object

TONIC PATTERNS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2+R S-a-r-obj-Δ-ye [weak] {both}</td>
<td>TONE PATTERNS:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2+T S-aá-ra-obj-Δ-ye [strong] {both}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

/baáра́бисáйне/ [both] 'They asked for it.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:326)
/игиаáсу cyáара́гнутурикáньяе/ [Rwanda] 'I was injured by a mine.' (R34.2)
/náра́риву́зе/ [both] 'I said it.' (Rodegem 1967:46)
/káара́ханýу́зе/ [both] 'It had its time there.' [lit. 'It passed along there.'] (Bizimana 1998:329, JN)

+ two or three objects

TONIC PATTERNS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2+O2+L S-aá-ra-obj-obj-obj-Δ-ye</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

/bаáра́бими́уса́йне/ [both] 'They asked for it on his behalf.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:326)
/bаáра́бабими́уса́йне/ [both] 'They asked for it there on his behalf.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:326)

017 indicative negative preterit imperfective

TONIC PATTERNS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N+2 nti-S-a-Δ-a [weak] {Rundi}</td>
<td>TONE PATTERNS:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N+2 nti-S-aá-Δ-a [strong] {Rundi}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N+2 nti-S-О-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rundi}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N+2 nti-S-a-Δ-agá [weak] {Rwanda}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N+2 nti-S-aá-Δ-agá [strong] {Rwanda}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N+2 nti-S-О-Δ-agá [vowel root] {Rwanda}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

/mу́р-и́ко kirííngo аба́руунди нтибаа́рима са́ане/ [Rundi] 'During that period, Rundi people did not farm a lot.' (Cristini 2000:174)
/sиа́сомага/ [Rwanda] 'I did not read.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:158)
/ntiwaáнди́ка/ [Rundi], /ntiwaáндика́га/ [Rwanda] (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:158) 'You did not write.'
018 indicative negative preterit perfective
TONE PATTERNS:
- N+2 nti-S-a-Δ-ye [weak] {both}
- N+2 nti-S-aa-Δ-ye [strong] {both}
- N+2 nti-S-Ø-Δ-ye [vowel root] {both}

N+2 nti-S-a-Δ-ye [weak] {both} 'Prepared for burial, you did not die.' (R21.2)
N+2 nti-S-aa-Δ-ye [strong] {both} 'I did not realize what happened next.' (R35.4)
N+2 nti-S-Ø-Δ-ye [vowel root] {both} 'We did not sweep.' (Cristini 2000:174)
N+2 nti-S-Ø-Δ-ye [vowel root] {Rundi} 'They did not work.' (Cristini 2000:191, Overdulve 1975:137)
N+2 nti-S-a-Δ-ye [weak] {both} 'You did not write.' (Cristini 2000:196)

8.1.4. Indicative Conditional

The conditional is a tense in these languages, not a mood, expressing some hypothetical condition or eventuality. It can often be translated by should or would. Kimenyi (2002:177) outlines the differences between two kinds of conditionals: the PROTASIS (the if clause) and the APODOSIS (the then clause). Similarly Overdulve (1975:241f,310f) discusses a CONDITIONING MOOD (mode conditionnant) different from the conditional tense or degree. In both instances, these represent the interplay of a RELATIVE CONDITIONAL if clause (§8.3.4) followed by an INDICATIVE CONDITIONAL then clause. Imperfective forms express an actual possibility realizable on the same day of speaking, while perfective forms express an unfulfilled possibility or unrealized event.

019 indicative affirmative conditional imperfective conjoint
TONE PATTERNS:
- L S-oo-Δ-a {Rundi}
- L S-oo+kw-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rundi}
- L S-aa-Δ-a {Rwanda}
- L S-aa+kw-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rwanda}
L S-aa+kw-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rwanda} 'We should make every effort to eat well.' (R31.5)
L S-aa-Δ-a [Rwanda] 'They should be concerned about the sick person.' (R31)
L S-aa-Δ-a [Rwanda] 'When it is done, then they are immersed in water.' (R20)
L S-oo-Δ-a [Rwandi] 'You should learn Rwanda.' (Overdulve 1975:240)

+ one object
TONE PATTERNS:
- L S-oo-obj-Δ-a {Rundi}
- L S-aa-obj-Δ-a {Rwanda}

Rwanda: ‘What should we say about the century that we take leave of?’ (R37)
Rundi: ‘You should ask that at the administration of that association.’ (R9)

217
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

020 indicative affirmative conditional perfective conjoint
TONE PATTERNS:

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{L S-oo-\(\Delta\)-ye} & \quad \{\text{Rundi}\} \\
\text{L S-aa-\(\Delta\)-ye} & \quad \{\text{Rwanda}\}
\end{align*} \]

/\textit{noobaaye umubéeshi}/ \{Rundi\} 'I would be a liar.' (Cristini 2000:165, Rodegem 1967:44f)
/\textit{twaakoranye néezá}/ \{Rwanda\} 'We would work well together.' (Overdulve 1975:310)
/\textit{mbóonye amafaraanga naaguze igaáre}/ \{Rwanda\} 'If I get money, I would buy a bicycle.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:298)

021 indicative affirmative conditional imperfective disjoint
TONE PATTERNS:

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{R S-oo-\(\Delta\)-a} & \quad \{\text{Rundi}\} \\
\text{R S-oo+kw-\(\Delta\)-a} & \quad \{\text{vowel root}\} \{\text{Rundi}\} \\
\text{R S-aa-\(\Delta\)-a} & \quad \{\text{Rwanda}\} \\
\text{R S-aa+kw-\(\Delta\)-a} & \quad \{\text{vowel root}\} \{\text{Rwanda}\}
\end{align*} \]

/t\textit{woookwiibuka}/ \{Rundi\} 'We might remember.' (Cristini 2000:63)
/b\textit{ookwaandika}/ \{Rundi\} 'They might write.' (Cristini 2000:196)
/b\textit{aaririimba}/ \{Rwanda\} 'They would sing.' (Kimenyi 2002:177)
/b\textit{aakwóogosha}/ \{Rwanda\} 'They would shave.' (Kimenyi 2002:177)

+ one object
TONE PATTERNS:

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{R S-oo-obj-\(\Delta\)-a} & \quad \{\text{Rundi}\} \\
\text{R S-aa-obj-\(\Delta\)-a} & \quad \{\text{Rwanda}\}
\end{align*} \]

/b\textit{ábiizi baabjívuga}/ \{Rwanda\} 'If they knew it, they would say it.' (Bizimana 1998:205)
«\textit{Ivyo mudasobanukiwe, mwobibaza mu buyobozi bw'iryo shirahamwe}» \{Rundi\} 'For whatever you do not understand, you should contact the administration of the association about it.' (R9)

+ two objects
TONE PATTERNS:

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{O S-oo-obj-obj-\(\Delta\)-a} & \quad \{\text{Rundi}\} \\
\text{O S-aa-obj-obj-\(\Delta\)-a} & \quad \{\text{Rwanda}\}
\end{align*} \]

/w\textit{aagirá amafaraanga waayamámpa}/ \{Rwanda\} 'If you had money, would you give it to me?' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:301)
/a\textit{ri byó ushaaká naabigúhá}/ \{Rwanda\} 'If this what you want, I would give it to you.' (Bizimana 1998:235)
/b\textit{aabimákóorera}/ \{Rwanda\} 'They would do it for him.'

022 indicative affirmative conditional perfective disjoint
TONE PATTERNS:

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{R S-oo-\(\Delta\)-ye} & \quad \{\text{Rundi}\} \\
\text{R S-aa-\(\Delta\)-ye} & \quad \{\text{Rwanda}\}
\end{align*} \]

/t\textit{wookúbuuye}/ \{Rundi\} 'We would sweep.' (Cristini 2000:165)
/i\textit{yááába mváakoraga néezá, mvwaahéembwe}/ \{Rwanda\} 'If you worked well, you would have been paid.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:298)

\footnote{Kimenyi (2002:177) calls this the \textit{COMPLEMENTLESS PRESENT IRREALIS CONDITIONAL}.}
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

+ one object
TONE PATTERNS:
R S-oo-obj-Δ-ye {Rundi}
R S-aa-obj-Δ-ye {Rwanda}

/iyyo vyóóse noobhriinne/ {Rundi} 'All those things I can bear (them).' (R19)
/ikinjana tiiiikeybaanuye tiiook ivugakó iki/ {Rundi} 'What can we say about the century that we take leave of?' (R37)
/dúshihuuse inka baadufashe/ {Rwanda} 'If we stole cows, they would arrest us.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:298)

023 indicative negative conditional imperfective
TONE PATTERNS:
N+L nti-S-oo-Δ-a {Rundi}
N+L nti-S-oo+kw-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rundi}
N+L nti-S-aa-Δ-a {Rwanda}
N+L nti-S-aa+kw-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rwanda}

/ngira ubushyuyuhe imbého ntiyaaza/ {Rwanda} 'I was warm and unaffected by the cold.' (R36.2)
/vyooobiha ntiyooobura/ {Rundi} 'They might taste bad, but they should not be lacking.' (Rodegem 1967:56f)

/sinaavuga kó ari umuuntu wóundi byaáturutsehó/ {Rwanda} 'I cannot say that it is someone's else's fault.' (R34.2)

/sinaa mu ha amafaraanga yaanjye/ {Rwanda} 'I would not give him my money.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:294)

+ one object
TONE PATTERNS:
N+L nti-S-oo-obj-Δ-a {Rundi}
N+L nti-S-aa-obj-Δ-a [Rwanda]

/sinaakunganya undi mubyeéyi/ {Rwanda} 'I would not consider you equal to any other parent.' (R36.7)

/sinaamuha amafaraanga yaanjye/ {Rwanda} 'I would not give him my money.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:294)

+ three objects
TONE PATTERNS:
N+L nti-S-oo-obj-obj-Δ-a {Rundi}
N+L nti-S-aa-obj-obj-Δ-a [Rwanda]

/sinoohabimuheera/ {Rundi} (Ntahokaja 1994:116), /sinaabimuheera/ {Rwanda} (LN) 'I would not give them to him there.'

024 indicative negative conditional perfective
TONE PATTERNS:
N+L nti-S-oo-Δ-ye {Rundi}
N+L nti-S-oo+kw-Δ-ye [vowel root] {Rundi}
N+L nti-S-aa-Δ-ye {Rwanda}
N+L nti-S-aa+kw-Δ-ye [vowel root] {Rwanda}

/ntitwookubuuye/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:174), /ntitwaakubuuye/ (LN) 'We would not have swept.'
/ntiyootweenze abagufí/ {Rundi} 'He should not laugh at short people.' (Rodegem 1967:56)

/ntiyaasetse abagufí/ {Rwanda} 'He should not laugh at short people.' (LN)
8.1.5. Indicative Future

This tense is ANTICIPATORY and implies that an action will occur tomorrow or later. There is no tonally-marked conjoint/disjoint distinction.

025 indicative affirmative future


TONE PATTERNS:

L S-zoo-Δ-a {Rundi}
L S-zoo+kw-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rundi}
L S-zaa-Δ-a {Rwanda}
L S-z-Δ-a [vowel root] {both}

/nzaandika/ [both] [vowel root] 'I will write.' (Cristini 2000:158, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:108)
/nzaakora ibi/ {Rwanda} (R32), /nzookora ibi/ {Rundi} (cf: Cristini 2000:192) 'I will do this.'
/nzaakurikiza isuku yaawe/ {Rwanda} 'I will emulate your cleanliness.' (R36.6)
/amabáhashá azookwuguruurwa muu náama y’iceése/ {Rundi} 'The envelopes will be opened in a public meeting.' (R9)

+ one or more objects

TONE PATTERNS:

L S-zoo-obj-Δ-a {Rundi}
L S-zaa-obj-Δ-a {Rwanda}

/nzaakuraata ukó bigukwíte/ {Rwanda} 'I will praise you as you deserve.' (R36.3)
/bazoo ykuura ku muusi ugíra gatatu/ {Rundi} 'They will take it out on the third day.' (R15)
/nzaagushima/ {Rwanda} 'I will praise you.' (R36.3)
/azoomwiha/ {Rundi} 'He will rob him.' (Cristini 2000:158)
/nzaayaguha/ {Rwanda} 'I will give it (the money) to you.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:296)
/uzoobimumbaririra/ {Rundi} 'You will tell it to him on my behalf.' (Cristini 2000:157)

026 indicative negative future


TONE PATTERNS:

N+F+T nti-S-zóo-Δ-a {Rundi}
N+F+T nti-S-zóo-kw-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rundi}
N+F+R nti-S-záa-Δ-a {Rwanda}
N+F+R nti-S-z-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rwanda}

/ntihazóobúra uwuühavnikira/ {Rundi} 'Someone is quite likely to get hurt there.' (R23)
/ntiuzóobúura/ {Rundi} 'We will not sweep.' (Cristini 2000:174)
/sinzógoruka/ {Rundi} 'I will not come back.' (Ntahokaja 1994:187)
/ntzáaryá/ {Rwanda} 'He will not eat.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:109)
/sinzókwaandika/ {Rundi} 'I will not write.' (Cristini 2000:196)
/sinzáandika/ {Rwanda} 'I will not write.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:109)
/ntibazúubaka/ {Rwanda} 'They will not build.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:109)

+ one object

TONE PATTERNS:

F+T nti-S-zóo-obj-Δ-a {Rundi}
F+R nti-S-záa-obj-Δ-a {Rwanda}

367 The "today" future is expressed by the immediate with -ra- (§8.1.1).
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

/sinzóohitàanga/ [Rundi] 'I will not offer it.' (Rodegem 1967:56)
sinzáabakúrikira/ [Rwanda] 'I will not follow them.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:131)
/ntíbazzáamwéemera/ [Rwanda] 'They will not believe him.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:131)
sinzáamusabá isábuné/ [Rwanda] 'I will not ask him for soap.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:131)

8.1.6. Indicative Conditional Future {Rwanda only}

This tense and affix combination is only found in Kinyarwanda and refers to a conditional action at least one day in the future. There is no tonally-marked conjoint/disjoint distinction.

027 indicative affirmative conditional future imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
L S-aa-záa-A-a {Rwanda only}
L S-aa-z-á-a [vowel root] {Rwanda only}

/mbóonye isúka naazaahiinga/ [Rwanda] 'If I had a hoe, I would cultivate.' (Bizimana 1998:276)
/twaazaakira/ [Rwanda] 'We would be better off.' (Overdulve 1975:246, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:300)
/baaziiga/ [Rwanda] 'They would study.' (Overdulve 1975:241, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:300)
/twaazáakóra néétzá twaazaatsiinda/ [Rwanda] 'If we were to work well, we would succeed.' (Overdulve 1975:242, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:301)

028 indicative affirmative conditional future perfective
TONE PATTERN:
L S-aa-záa-A-ye {Rwanda only}
L S-aa-z-á-ye [vowel root] {Rwanda only}

/mbáaye umugabo naazaahiinze ibigóori/ [Rwanda] 'If I had the means [lit. 'If I were a man'], I would cultivate corn.' (Bizimana 1998:276)

029 indicative negative conditional future imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
L nti-S-aa-záa-A-a {Rwanda only}
L nti-S-aa-z-á-a [vowel root] {Rwanda only}

/nkíraruangíye inká nziízá ntiwaazaavigúra/ [Rwanda] 'If I notified you about a good cow, would you not buy it?' (Bizimana 1998:277) [object does not affect tonality]
/tutaagirá ináama ntiwaazaatsiinda/ [Rwanda] 'If we did not have advice, we would not succeed?' (Overdulve 1975:242)

030 indicative negative conditional future perfective
TONE PATTERN:
L nti-S-aa-záa-A-ye {Rwanda only}

/waankümże ntiwaazaampaaye inká/ [Rwanda] 'If you loved me, wouldn't you give me a cow?' (Bizimana 1998:277) [object does not affect tonality]
8.1.7. Indicative Persistive

This tense denotes that an action is still in progress. There is no tonally-marked conjoint/disjoint distinction.

031 indicative affirmative persistive imperfective


TONE PATTERNS:

F+R S-racá-Δ-a [Rundi]
F+R S-rac-Δ-a [vowel root] [Rundi]
F+R S-racyá-Δ-a [Rwanda]
F+R S-racy-Δ-a [vowel root] [Rwanda]

/ndacáandika/ [Rundi] (Cristini 2000:196), /ndacyáandika/ [Rwanda] (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:220) 'I am still writing.'

/aracáakóra/ [Rundi] (Cristini 2000:192), /uracyákóra/ [Rwanda] (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:220) 'You are still working.'

/barácéeméza yúkó ata mashuúre y’ábiígeme/ [Rundi] 'They still maintain that there should be no school for girls.' (R39.3, JN)


/aracáakóra ubudatuzá/ [Rundi] 'He is still sick.' (Cristini 2000:166)

/turacyákóra/ [Rwanda] 'We are still awake.' (Bizimana 1998:263)

+ one object

TONE PATTERNS:

F+R S-racá-obj-Δ-a [Rundi]
F+R S-racyá-obj-Δ-a [Rwand 200]

/ndacyáakiiga (ikinyarwaanda)/ [Rwanda] 'I am still learning it.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:221)

032 indicative affirmative persistive perfective


TONE PATTERNS:

F+R S-racá-Δ-ye [Rundi]
F+R S-rac-Δ-ye [vowel root] [Rundi]
F+R S-racyá-Δ-ye [Rwanda]
F+R S-racy-Δ-ye [vowel root] [Rwanda]

/aracáarwáaye/ [Rundi] 'He is still sick.' (Cristini 2000:166)

/turacyáakanuye/ [Rwanda] 'We are still awake.' (Bizimana 1998:263)

+ one object

TONE PATTERNS:

F+R S-racá-obj-Δ-ye [Rundi]
F+R S-racyá-obj-Δ-ye [Rwanda]

/ikibázo c’isúkaári kiracáatugooye/ [Rundi] 'The sugar problem is still difficult for us.' (R33.1)

Kimenyi (2002:179) calls this the STILL TENSE and suggests that the morph /-racyáa/- is complex, being derived from "the focus marker -ra-, the tense marker -ki- and another tense -a- (thus -ra-ki-a) since its negative counterpart 'not anymore' tense is marked by -ki-.
033 indicative negative persistive imperfective
TONE PATTERNS:
N+L nti-S-ki-Δ-a [voiced consonant] {both}
N+L nti-S-gi-Δ-a [voiceless consonant] {both}
N+L nti-S-c-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rundi}
N+L nti-S-cy-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rwanda}
/síncándika/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:196), /síncýandika/ {Rwanda} (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:222) 'I do not write anymore.'
/síنيkírýa icyó maríra abáanjýé/ {Rwanda} 'I am no longer useful to my family.' (R34.5)
/ntúgikóra/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:192), /ntúugikóra/ {Rwanda} (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:222) 'You do not work anymore.'
/abágaabo ntíbagiíhínga/ {Rwanda} 'The men no longer plow.' (Overdulve 1975:191)
/ntíbagiíhínga/ {Rwanda} 'They don’t defend themselves anymore.' (Kimenyi 2002:198)
/abaábiiranye ntíbagishóhora gutáana/ {Rundi} 'Those who are married can no longer get separated.' (Cristini 2000:174, Rodegem 1967:56)
«ubúryo ifí yítwa Raíe yíshuKúr mu ndá ntíbukírí ibanga» {Rwanda} 'How the fish called 'Ray' cleans its stomach is no longer a secret.' (R12)

+ one object
TONE PATTERNS:
N+L nti-S-ki-obj-Δ-a [voiced consonant] {both}
N+L nti-S-gi-obj-Δ-a [voiceless consonant] {both}
/ntítúkíbígura/ {both} 'We no longer buy them.' (Bizimana 1998:263)

034 indicative negative persistive perfective
TONE PATTERNS:
N+L nti-S-ki-Δ-ye [voiced consonant] {both}
N+L nti-S-gi-Δ-ye [voiceless consonant] {both}
N+L nti-S-c-Δ-ye [vowel root] {Rundi}
N+L nti-S-cy-Δ-ye [vowel root] {Rwanda}
/sínkírwaye/ {Rundi} 'I am not sick anymore.' (Cristini 2000:174)
/ntáakíbóna/ {both} 'He does not see anymore.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:349)

8.1.8. Indicative Inceptive
This tense has two distinct meanings in English, already in the affirmative and not yet in the negative. Although Rodegem (1967:44–47) and Cristini (2000:166) suggest otherwise, the identical tonality of their examples establishes that there is no tonally-marked conjoint/disjoint distinction. There is also no imperfective/perfective distinction. Although Rundi maintains this construction in both the affirmative (already) and negative (yet), Rwanda only allows it in negative constructions. If a negative marker such as /ntaa bwo/ 'never' heads the clause, then the equivalent of an affirmative form does occur in Rwanda.

035 indicative affirmative inceptive
See: Cristini 2000:166, Rodegem 1967:44f – conjoint

369 Kimenyi (2002:184) calls this the MAIN CLAUSE 'NOT ANYMORE' TENSE. Later (Ibid.:198) he shows that this lowered finite verb pattern applies to reflexives.

370 Kimenyi (2002:179) calls this the 'NOT YET' TENSE.
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

See: Overdulve 1975:310 – with negative head no conjoint/disjoint distinction.

TONE PATTERN:
F+R S-ráa-Δ-a {both}
/uráatáangura gukóra/ [Rundi] 'Have you already begun to work?' (Cristini 2000:166, Rodegem 1967:44)
/uráakóra/ [Rundi] 'Have you already started working?' (Cristini 2000:166, Rodegem 1967:46)
/uráakúbuura urugó/ [Rundi] 'Have we already swept the yard?'
/ntaa bwo turáakórana/ [both] 'We have never worked together.' (cf: Overdulve 1975:310)

036 indicative negative inceptive {both}

TONÉ PATTERNS:
N+F+R nti-S-ráa-Δ-a {both}
N+F+R nti-S-Δ-o-Δ-a [vowel root] {both}
/ntituráabariira/ {both} 'We haven’t sewn yet.' (Cristini 2000:174)
/ikiruúndi ntikiráandikwa nk'úukó kivugwá/ {both} 'Rundi is not yet written the way it is spoken.'
(Ntahokaja. n.d.:ii)
/ntaráamenya gusoma/ {both} 'He does not know how to read yet.'

+ one object

TONÉ PATTERNS:
N+F+R nti-S-ráa-obj-Δ-a {both}
/muri rusaánge ntibaráa byíitabiira/ [Rwanda] 'In general they do not yet comply with it.' (R38.6)
/sindáa byúumva/ [Rwanda] 'I don't understand it yet.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:343)

8.1.9. Indicative Narrative

Affirmative narrative constructions are covered by the IMMEDIATE tense (see §8.1.1). However, Rwanda has a special construction in the negative. Note that no conjunction is used in such constructions.

037 indicative negative narrative

TONÉ PATTERNS:
N+L nti-S-a-Δ-a
N+L nti-S-Ø-Δ-a [vowel root]
/umuuntu w’úmusáaza yambwiiy’ ikinyarwaanda sinuumva/ {both} 'An old man told me something in Rwanda ... but I didn’t understand.' (Overdulve 1975:291 #118, JN)
/peetero ntiyamenya icévó yeézu amubwiíye/ {Rwanda} 'And Peter did not know what Jesus told him.' (Bizimana 1998:242)

+ one object

TONÉ PATTERN:
N+L nti-S-a-obj-Δ-a
/nagiiye i waábo sinamubona/ {both} 'I went to his place but didn't find him there.' (Overdulve 1975:154. JN)

371 Overdulve 1975:310 gives an indicative affirmative narrative form /twaakorana/ that is not discussed anywhere else, whereas in the discussion of the narrative (Op.cit.:153) the immediate disjoint form /turakórana/ is presented. In the same table he has an identical relative narrative form /twaakorana/; the following table disallows any corresponding relative negative narrative form.

372 Overdulve 1975:311 cites /ntituwakórana/ for the negative narrative which reflects the Prule rather than the Lrule stated (la suppression du morphotonème lexical du radical) and applied in previous examples (Op.cit.:154).
8.2. Participial

The participial is the mood of dependent or subordinate clauses, literally translated with -ing. It is used in temporal clauses implying when or as soon as, after certain head verbs involving cognition (e.g., –saanga 'find that,' –róota 'dream that') plus a number of auxiliary verbs (see §10.2.1 and Table 115), and always after the copulative auxiliaries –rí, –bá that show that an action is out of the main time line (see §10.3). The primary tonality of the participial is the 1RULE (high tone on the first vowel after the first consonant). The conjoint/disjoint distinction is maintained idiosyncratically in some tenses. Rwanda has it in the recent, the future, the conditional, and the conditional future, while Rundi only has it in the recent and the preterit.

8.2.1. Participial Immediate

The highest frequency use of the participial is in the immediate tense. Neither dialect distinguishes conjoint from disjoint in this tense. Since high tone always falls on the first vowel to follow the first consonant in the affirmative, the presence of one or more objects will not affect tonality.

038 participial affirmative immediate imperfective


**TONE PATTERN:**

1+L S-Δ-a {both}

/násaanže ɗuíuíje/ {both} 'I find that we agree.' (R1)

/yaři ſuũbatse/ {both} 'She was married.' (R17.8)

/ubígabura bísíyũushye/ {Rwanda} 'You serve them hot.' (R18)

/ibitũíŋwa yaři atũũnze/ {both} 'The livestock which he had owned ...' (R25.2)

/ni aho haantu babá bávuga/ {both} 'It is that place that they are usually referring to.' (R40.2)

/baabóra bíyamyama bátevye/ {Rundi} 'They used to go to bed late.' (Ntahokaja 1976:29)

+ one object

**TONE PATTERN:**

1+L S-obj-Δ-a {both}

/baba bábbíonna/ {both} 'They usually see it.' (R15)

/umukuru ſiũyo ntáárá yaří ɡábiți/ {both} 'The leader of that region knew about it.' (R23)

/harihó abayíroonka bagaça bávinygeza/ {Rundi} 'There are those who get it and hide it right away.' (R33.6)

039 participial affirmative immediate perfective


**TONE PATTERN:**

1+L S-Δ-ye {both}

/báyeenga bákoreeshe urwáagwá/ {both} 'They brew it using banana beer.' (R24.1, JN)

/iño abá yaaraafiše ibá yápuuyue ubusá/ {both} 'The ones that he has taken up to that point have been in vain.' (R31.4, JN)

+ one object

**TONE PATTERN:**

1+L S-obj-Δ-ye {both}

/ihibaáambeće ntuundyá ngútabaave/ {Rundi} 'Oh no! Don't eat me after I helped you out!' (R27.4, JN)
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

040 participial negative immediate imperfective
TONETR PATTERNS:
1+P S-ta-Δ-a
1+P S-t-Δ-a [vowel root]
/kubéera iki nuúbu isúkaári igumá itábonéka/ (Rundi) 'Why does sugar continue to be unavailable?'
(R33.5)
/uwaánduza ni uryá aigwaáye atíivúuza/ [Rundi] 'The one who contaminates is someone who is ill but does not seek treatment.' (R31.3)

+ one object
TONETR PATTERNS:
1+P2 S-ta-obj-Δ-a
/ntákubwiíra/ [both] 'Didn't I tell you!' (R28.4)
/bátag isóma/ [both] 'They not reading it ...' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:189)

041 participial negative immediate perfective
TONETR PATTERNS:
1+P S-ta-Δ-ye
1+P S-t-Δ-ye [vowel verb]
/níibá útányuzvye cyo tujë kureeba ikidúkiraanura/ [Rwanda] 'If you are not satisfied, let's go look for a way to settle our dispute.' (R28.2)
/ítábaanjé gutúungaanywa/ [both] 'They having not first been treated ...' (R20)
/ntaa ndwi yahéra adáshooyé mwó kimwé/ (Rundi) 'There wasn't a week that went by that he didn't sell one of them.' (R25.2)
/harí núubwó bateekéra hamwé bátavaangúuye ingó/ [both] 'There are times they cook (and eat) together without splitting up into families.' (R38.3)
/yaaje ageenda atányooyé kuu nzogá/ [both] 'He came and left without drinking any beer.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:191)

+ one object
TONETR PATTERNS:
1+P S-ta-obj-Δ-ye
1+P S-t-obj-Δ-ye [vowel root]
/ubiteeka ku muriro muké utá pfuúndikiye/ [both] 'Cook uncovered on low heat.' (R18)
/ntibashobóra kugira ahó bajyá báta biheérewe uburéengaanzirá/ [Rwanda] 'They cannot go anywhere without permission.' [lit. 'they not being given it'] (R8a)

8.2.2. Participial Recent

Both dialects maintain a conjoint/disjoint distinction in the recent participial, the conjoint loses root tonality and the disjoint maintains it.

042 participial affirmative recent imperfective conjoint
TONETR PATTERNS:
1+L S-a-Δ-a [Rundi]
1+L S-a-Δ-aga [Rwanda]
/yasaanze nóteera agipfuúndiíye/ [Rwanda] 'He came while I was ironing.' (Bizimana 1998:270)
/twaákorana nééza/ [Rundi] (JN), /twaákoranaga nééza/ [Rwanda] (cf: Overdulve 1975:310) 'We having recently worked well together ...

226
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

043 participial affirmative recent perfective conjoint
TONET PATTERN:
1+L S-áá-Δ-ye {both}
/ndets n’ikubókó kwákameretse cyaane/ {Rwanda} ... and even the arm was seriously injured.'
(R34.5)
/ivyó bitigiri vyaári vyáamanutse caane/ {Rundi} 'Those figures had dramatically decreased.' (R39.2)
/umwáana abá yáyutse ku bavééyi báabíriranye bícílíyé mu mátegeko/ {Rundi} 'A child who
was born to parents who were legally married ....' (R13, JN)

044 participial affirmative recent imperfective disjoint
TONET PATTERN:
1+R S-áá-Δ-a {Rundi}
1+R S-áá-Δ-aga {Rwanda}
/náakúbuura/ [Rundi] 'I having just swept ...' (Cristini 2000:167)
/twaakóranaga/ {Rwanda} 'We having worked together ...' (Overdulve 1975:310)
/twaasaanze báakóraga/ {Rwanda} 'We noticed that they were working (today).' (Overdulve 1975:178)

045 participial affirmative recent perfective disjoint
TONET PATTERN:
1+R S-áá-Δ-ye {both}
1+X S-Ø-Δ-ye {vowel root} {both}
/kukó abayínywa arí bo usaangá báatémaguranye/ {both} '... because those who drink it are the
ones you find have hacked each other up.' (R24.4, JN)
/nyina aba víapfákayé/ {both} 'The mother has been widowed.' (R13)
/imiísure vágagurutse/ {both} 'The mousebirds having just flown off ...' (Cristini 2000:167)
/twaari bwaapfé/ {Rundi} 'We were about to die.' (Ntahokaja 1976:29)
/nsaanga inká ziizituye/ {both} 'I found the cows got untied.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:273)
/bóogoshe/ {both} 'They having just shaved ...' (Kimenyi 2002:175)
/mwáanditse/ {both} 'You having just written ...' (Cristini 2000:197)

046 participial negative recent imperfective
TONET PATTERN:
1+L S-ta-a-Δ-a {Rundi}
1+L S-ta-a-Δ-aga {Rwanda}
/waboonye tútaabohaga?/ [Rwanda] 'Didn't you see us knitting?' (Bizimana 1998:271)
/nzi atáahora asíiba/ [Rundi] 'I know that he was not often absent.' (Cristini 2000:176)
/wasaanze tútaakubuuye inzu/ {both} 'You found that we did not sweep the house.' (Bizimana 1998:271)

047 participial negative recent perfective
TONET PATTERN:
1+L S-ta-a-Δ-ye {both}
/níibá utáasaze waasíinze/ {both} 'If you are not crazy, you are drunk!' (Jacob #2 1986:396, JN)
/tútaakoranye/ {Rwanda} 'We having just worked together ...' (Overdulve 1975:311)
/ntáakubuuye/ {Rundi} 'I not having swept ...' (Cristini 2000:177)

Kimenyi (2002:174) calls this the COMPLEMENTLESS PARTICIPIAL RECENT PAST.

227
8.2.3. Participial Preterit

Rwanda has no tonally-marked conjoint/disjoint distinction in the participial preterit, however Rundi does maintain a difference.

048 participial affirmative preterit imperfective conjoint
TONE PATTERN:

1+L S-á-Δ-a [weak] {Rundi}
1+2+L S-áá-Δ-a [strong] {Rundi}
2+L S-Ø-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rundi}

/nákubuura urugó/ {Rundi} 'I having swept the yard ...' (JN; cf: Cristini 2000:168)
/yákora/ {Rundi} 'He having worked ...' (Cristini 2000:193)
/twáábariira impuúzu/ {Rundi} 'We having sewn clothes ...' (Cristini 2000:168)

049 participial affirmative preterit perfective conjoint
See: Cristini 2000:168,193,194; no conjoint form in Rwanda.
TONE PATTERN:

1+L S-á-Δ-ye [weak] {Rundi}
1+2+L S-áá-Δ-ye [strong] {Rundi}
2+L S-Ø-Δ-ye [vowel root] {Rundi}

/nákoze/ {Rundi} 'I having worked ...' (Cristini 2000:193)
/twáákoze umurimo/ {Rundi} 'We having done the work ...' (cf: Cristini 2000:193)
/yaánditse/ {Rundi} 'He having written ...' (Cristini 2000:196)
/baánditse/ {Rundi} 'They having written ...' (Cristini 2000:196)

050 participial affirmative preterit imperfective disjoint
TONE PATTERN:

1+T S-á-RA-Δ-agá {Rwanda}
1+2+T S-áá-RA-Δ-agá [strong] {Rundi}
1+T S-á-RA-Δ-a [weak vowel root] {Rundi}
1+2+T S-áá-RA-Δ-a [strong vowel root] {Rundi}

/twáárabáriira/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:168), /twáárabáriiraga/ {Rwanda} 'We having sewn ...'
/bááragsómā/ {Rundi}, /bááragsómaga/ {Rwanda} 'They having read ...
/báárarwáaraga/ {Rwanda} 'They having been sick ...' (Bizimana 1998:272)
/twaásaanze báarakóraga/ {Rwanda} 'We noticed that they were working (yesterday).' (Overdulve 1975:179)

+ one object
TONE PATTERN:

1+T S-á-RA-Δ-agá {Rwanda}
1+2+T S-áá-RA-Δ-agá [strong] {Rundi}

/iyó ntakugirá riba ryáaraampúhuye/ {Rwanda} 'If I did not have you, he would have finished me off.'
(R28.5)

+ two objects
TONE PATTERN:

1+O2+L S-á-RA-Δ-agá

/nárázihábariirira/ {Rundi} 'I having sewn them (dresses) for them' (Cristini 2000:168)

374 Cristini erroneously cites this as /nákubuura urugó/ (2000:168), but weak forms clearly are low-toned apart from the one high tone of the preterit. This is borne out by his own examples: /nákora/ 'I having worked' (Ibid:193) for the imperfective, /naánditse/ 'I having written' (Ibid:196) for the perfective. Our thanks to Juvenal Ndayiragije for this astute correction.
051 participial affirmative preterit perfective disjoint

TONE PATTERN:
1+T S-ään-ää-Ą-ye [strong] {Rwanda}
1+2+T S-ään-ää-Ą-ye [strong] {Rundi}
1+L S-ään-ään-Ą-ye [weak vowel root] {both}
1+2+L S-ään-ään-Ą-ye [strong vowel root] {Rundi}
1+L S-ään-ään-Ą-ye [strong vowel root] {Rwanda}

/abeënsi bahaba bááryuye mu Buruündi/ {Rundi} 'Most (of them) had come from Burundi.' (R29.3)
/iyó abá járafáshe iba jápfúuye ubusá/ {Rundi} 'Those (medicines) he has taken have been in vain.' (R31.4, JN)
/ziindyé zikaba jáárarónse urukíinge/ {Rundi} '... and others have obtained vaccine.' (R37.3)
/báaróogóshe/ {Rwanda} 'They having shaven ...' (Kimenyi 2002:201)
/báaróóbuuye/ {Rundi} 'We having swept before today ...' (JN, Stevick 1965:12)
/niibwíiraga kó cyaabá cyáarfíübe/ {Rwanda} 'I assumed that it should have deactivated' (R34.3)
/báaróókoze/ {Rundi} (cf: Cristini 2000:198), /báaróókoze/ {Rwanda} (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:190) 'We having worked ...'
/báaróósoymye/ {Rundi} (JN), /báaróósoymye/ {Rwanda} (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:190) 'We having read.
/báaratóbaaye/ {Rundi} (JN), /báaratóbaaye/ {Rwanda} 'They having defended ...' (Kimenyi 2002:200)
/biinyarwaanda cyáári cyáararárólwe/ {Rwanda} 'Kinyarwanda had been dedicated ...' (Bizimana 1998:3)
/iyí mpanuka idasaanzwé ngo yaaba jááraftíe n'ámaferi yacíitse/ {Rwanda} 'This unusual accident, it is believed, may have been caused by defective brakes.' (R16)
/ýáraanditése/ {Rundi} 'He having had written ...' (Cristini 2000:197)
/báaratábaaye/ {Randa} 'They having defended ...' (Kimenyi 2002:201)

052 participial negative preterit imperfective

TONE PATTERN:
1+2+L S-tä-ää-Ą-a {Rundi}
1+2+L S-tä-ään-Ą-aga {Rwanda}
/tútaákóra/ {Rundi} 'We having not worked ...' (Cristini 2000:193)
/tútaákóranaga/ {Rwanda} 'We having not worked together ...' (Overdulve 1975:311)

053 participial negative preterit perfective

TONE PATTERN:
1+2+L S-tä-ää-Ą-ye {both}
1+T S-tä-a-ra-Ą-ye {Rwanda alt}
/ntaa wúsóroma atáárimye/ {Rundi} 'There is no one who reaps having not plowed.'
/tútaákóze/ {both} 'We having not worked ...' (Cristini 2000:193, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:190)
/tútaásoymye/ {both} 'We having not read ...' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:190)
/tútaarásómye/ {Rwanda} 'We having not read ...' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:190)
/tútaákoranye/ {Rwanda} 'We having not worked together ...' (Overdulve 1975:311)

375 Juvenal Ndayiragije (pc) marked /twáárasómye/ "|both|." Given the tonal carryover in Rwanda (discussed by Kimenyi 2002:passim), the phonetic rendition (pronunciation) of Rwanda would indeed be identical to that of Rundi, i.e., /twáárasómye/.

376 Juvenal Ndayiragije (pc) again marked /báaratóbaaye/ "|both|." Given the tonal carryover in Rwanda (discussed by Kimenyi 2002:passim), the phonetic rendition (pronunciation) of Rwanda would indeed be identical to that of Rundi, i.e., /báaratóbaaye/. See the brief discussion and footnote in §2.2 about double long vowels in Rundi.
8.2.4. Participial Conditional

As was mentioned concerning the indicative conditional, the conditional is a tense in Kinyarwanda and Kirundi, not a mood, expressing some eventuality (in the imperfective it is akin to English *should*) or an unrealized event (in the perfective it is akin to English *would have*).

054 participial affirmative conditional imperfective conjoint


**TONE PATTERN:**

1+L S-óo-Δ-a  {Rundi}  
1+L S-óo+kw-Δ-a  {vowel root}  {Rundi}  
1+L S-áa-Δ-a  {Rwanda}  
1+L S-áa+kw-Δ-a  {vowel root}  {Rwanda}  

/nyuma bakaba báakomeza kóonka/  {Rwanda}  'Afterwards, they *should continue* to be breastfed.' (R6)  
/asaanga báahĩinga umurimá/  {Rwanda}  'He finds that they *would plow* the field.' (Overdulve 1975:241, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:294)  
/ubona vyóokunnda güte/  {Rundi}  'In your opinion, how *would this be possible?*' (Cristini 2000:168, Rodegem 1967:48)

+ one object

**TONE PATTERN:**

1+L S-óo-obj-Δ-a  {Rundi}  
1+L S-áa-obj-Δ-a  {Rwanda}  

/ji mbona iryo boomba wóo ri koreesha.../  {Rundi}  'I really think you *should repair* (it) that pump...' (JN, R23)

055 participial affirmative conditional perfective conjoint


**TONE PATTERN:**

1+L S-óo-Δ-ye  {Rundi}  
1+L S-óo+kw-Δ-ye  {vowel root}  {Rundi}  
1+L S-aa-Δ-ye  {Rwanda}  
1+L S-áa+kw-Δ-ye  {vowel root}  {Rwanda}  

/bóovyuze iki mu máaso yiwié/  {Rundi}  'What *could they say* in his presence?' (Rodegem 1967:48)  
/twookoranye néezá/  {Rundi}  (JN), /twáakoranye néezá/  {Rwanda}  (Overdulve 1975:310)  'We *would have worked* well together.'

056 participial affirmative conditional imperfective disjoint

See: Overdulve 1975:310; no disjoint in Rundi.

**TONE PATTERN:**

1+R S-áa-Δ-a  {Rwanda only}  
/twáakórana/  {Rwanda}  'We should work together.' (Overdulve 1975:310)

057 participial affirmative conditional perfective disjoint

See: Overdulve 1975:310

**TONE PATTERN:**

1+R S-áa-Δ-ye  {Rwanda}  
/twáakóranye/  {Rwanda}  'We could work together.' (Overdulve 1975:310)

+ one object

**TONE PATTERN:**

1+R S-aa-obj-Δ-ye  {Rwanda}  
/bába báadufáshe/  {Rwanda}  'They would have been arresting us.' (Overdulve 1975:245)

230
058 participial negative conditional imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
1+L S-t-oo-Δ-a {Rundi}
1+L S-t-aa-Δ-a {Rwanda}

/njye nuúmvaga igisaásu kitaakorana n'ímvúra/ [Rwanda] 'I thought that a mine cannot work in the rain.' (R34.3)
/tútaakorana/ [Rwanda] 'We should not work together.’ (Overdulve 1975:311)
/nsaanze hátoogeenda/ [Rundi] 'I think that they shouldn’t go.' (Cristini 2000:177, Rodegem 1967:58)

+ one object
TONE PATTERN:
1+L S-t-oo-obj-Δ-a {Rundi}
1+L S-t-aa-obj-Δ-a {Rwanda}

/kúri jeewé mbona ivyo ntóo yeemera/ [Rundi] 'To my way of thinking, I would not accept that.'
(Ntahokaja 1994:194)

059 participial negative conditional perfective
See: Overdulve 1975:311; no Rundi examples or patterns given in Overdulve or Rodegem.377
TONE PATTERN:
1+L S-t-aa-Δ-ye {Rwanda}
/tútaakoranye/ [Rwanda] 'We not being able to work together ...' (Overdulve 1975:311)

8.2.5. Participial Future

Although Rwanda maintains a distinction between conjoint and disjoint, Rundi only uses the equivalent of the disjoint forms.

060 participial affirmative future conjoint
TONE PATTERN:
1+L S-zaa-Δ-a {Rwanda}
/túzaasoma igitabo/ [Rwanda] 'When we will read the book …' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:190)
/túzaakora akazi/ [Rwanda] 'When we will do the work …' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:190)

061 participial affirmative future disjoint
TONE PATTERN:
1+T S-zoo-Δ-a {Rundi}
1+T+J S-z-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rundi}
1+T S-zoo+kw-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rundi alt}
1+R S-zaa-Δ-a {Rwanda}
1+X S-z-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rwanda}
/umuúsí baraayé házoogeenda/ [Rundi] 'The day before their departure'…'
/túzaakórana/ [Rwanda] 'We will work together (and) …' (Overdulve 1975:310)
/bázaaárimba/ [Rwanda] 'When they will sing …' (Kimenyi 2002:176)
/bázoogosha/ [Rundi] (JN), /bázoogosha/ [Rwanda] (Kimenyi 2002:176) 'When they will shave …'
/bázoókwaándika/ [Rundi] (Cristini 2000:198), /bázaándika/ [Rundi], /bázaandika/ [Rwanda] (LN)
'When they will write …'

377 Presumably, if the pattern exists in Kirundi it would be 1+L S-t-oo-Δ-ye.
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

062 participial negative future
TONE PATTERN:
1+F+R S-ta-zóo-Δ-a {Rundi}
1+F+R S-ta-záa-Δ-a {Rwanda}
/nkeeka bátázóozá vubahá {Rundi} 'I think that they won't come soon.' (Cristini 2000:177)
/tútazákorana/ {Rwanda} '... we not going to work together.' (Overdulve 1975:311)

8.2.6. Participial Conditional Future {Rwanda only}
Only Kinyarwanda has conditional future forms. In the participial mood only imperfective forms are found, perfective forms are not used.

063 participial affirmative conditional future conjoint
TONE PATTERN:
1+L S-áa-záa-Δ-a {Rwanda only}
/usáanze náazaahiinga ibijuumba waambwíira/ {Rwanda} 'If you think that I should cultivate sweet potatoes, you should tell me.' (Bizimana 1998:276)
/twáazaakorana/ {Rwanda} 'We might be working together.' (Overdulve 1975:310)

064 participial affirmative conditional future disjoint
TONE PATTERN:
1+F+R S-áa-záa-Δ-a {Rwanda only}
/usáanze náazaahiinga waambwíira/ {Rwanda} 'If you think that I should cultivate, you should tell me.' (Bizimana 1998:276)

065 participial negative conditional future
TONE PATTERN:
1+L S-ta-záa-Δ-a
/usáanze bátazaakora waabahágarikira/ {Rwanda} 'If you find that they will not work, you should watch them.' (Bizimana 1998:277)
/tútazákorana/ {Rwanda} 'We might not be working.' (Overdulve 1975:311)

8.2.7. Participial Persistive
There is no tonally-marked conjoint/disjoint distinction. Because tonality falls exclusively on the first vowel to follow a consonant, the presence of one or more objects will not make any tonal difference.

066 participial affirmative persistive imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
1+L S-kí-Δ-a [voiced consonant] {both}
1+L S-gí-Δ-a [voiceless consonant] {both}
1+L S-c-Δ-a [vowel verb] {Rundi}
1+L S-cy-Δ-a [vowel verb] {Rwanda}
/inkúrikizi mbi ziívyo bibómbe zikaba ziciibonekeza/ {Rundi} 'The negative effects of these bombs are still attracting notice.' (R37.4)
/bítaama ntiyarí agíca ahabóna/ {Rundi} 'Bitama could no longer be seen anywhere.' (R25.3)
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

/bágitweenga/ [both] ‘By the time he finished talking), they were still laughing.’ (R11)
/kuya bákivuuka/ [both] ‘from their birth’ (R6)
/ntaabá acáanduza/ [Rundi] ‘He is not infectious anymore’ (R31.3)

067 participial affirmative persistive perfective
See: Overdulve 1975:310, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:220; no Rundi examples or patterns given in Cristini or Rodegem. \(^{378}\)
TONE PATTERN:
1+L S-ki-Δ-ye [voiced consonant] {Rwanda or both}
1+L S-gi-Δ-ye [voiceless consonant] {Rwanda or both}
1+L S-cy-Δ-ye [vowel verb] {Rwanda}
/ntítuba tükikoranye/ [Rwanda] ‘We could no longer work together.’ (cf: Overdulve 1975:310)

068 participial negative persistive imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
1+L S-ta-ki-Δ-a [voiced consonant] {both}
1+L S-ta-gi-Δ-a [voiceless consonant] {both}
1+L S-ta-c-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rundi}
1+L S-ta-cy-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rwanda}
/baagiiye bátakivuga/ [both] ‘They left without talking anymore.’ (Cristini 2000:177, Rodegem 1967:58)
/tútákikorana/ [both] ‘We not working together anymore ...’ (JN, Overdulve 1975:311)

069 participial negative persistive perfective
TONE PATTERN:
1+L S-ta-ki-Δ-ye [voiced consonant] {both}
1+L S-ta-gi-Δ-ye [voiceless consonant] {both}
/numva bátakivuze/ [Rundi] ‘No doubt they won’t say anything anymore.’ (Rodegem 1967:58)
/atákirwaaye náaruhúuke néezá/ [both] ‘He not being sick anymore, he should rest well.’ (cf: Cristini 2000:177)
/bátagiteetse/ [both] ‘They not cooking anymore ...’ (JN, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:222)

8.2.8. Participial Inceptive
Neither dialect maintains a conjoint/disjoint nor any imperfective/perfective distinction. Although Rundi maintains this construction in both the affirmative (already) and negative (yet), Rwanda only allows it in the negative.

070 participial affirmative inceptive
TONE PATTERN:
1+R S-raa-Δ-a {Rundi only}
/izúuba ntiribá riraakomerá/ [Rundi] ‘The sun is usually not strong yet.’ (Cristini 2000:168)

\(^{378}\) Presumably, if this construction existed, it would be the same as that for Rwanda, except for vowel verbs were the pattern in Rundi would be 1+L S-c-Δ-ye.
071 participial negative inceptive


TONE PATTERN:

1+F+R S-tá-ráa-Δ-a [consonant root strong prefix] {both}
1+F+R S-tá-ráa-Δ-a [consonant root weak prefix] {Rwanda}
1+R S-tá-raa-Δ-a [consonant root weak prefix] {Rundi}
1+F+R S-tá-r’-Δ-a [strong or weak vowel root] {Rwand}
1+P2 S-tá-r’-Δ-a [strong vowel root] {Rundi}
1+R S-tá-r’-Δ-a [weak vowel root] {Rundi}

/ntáraavúga urámenya yúukó .../ {Rundi} 'Before I speak, you'd better know that ...' (JN)
/igihe mvuutsé ntáráareeba/ {Rwand} 'When I was born, I still couldn't see.' (JN)
/ntáráasonza/ {Rwand} 'He not being hungry yet ...' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:224)
/ntáraahaga/ {Rundi} 'He not getting full yet ...' (Cristini 2000:177)
/itáráabáagwa naryaga ikí .../ {Rwand} 'It not being slaughtered yet, what was I eating?' [proverb]
/ntáraandika/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:198), /ntáraandika/ {Rwand} (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:224) 'I having not yet written ...'
/bátaráaríriimba/ {both} 'Before they sang ...' [lit. 'They having not yet sung ....'] (JN)
/bátaroógosha/ {Rundi} (JN), /batáróogosha/ {Rwand} (Kimenyi 2002:180) '... them having not shaved yet.'
/tútarúubaka/ {Rundi} (JN), /títarúubaka/ {Rwand} (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:224) '... us having not yet built.'

+ one object
TONE PATTERN:

1+F+R S-ta-ráa-obj-Δ-a

/narii ntáráabibóna/ {Rwand} 'I haven't seen that yet.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:350)
/wari uútáráab_yumva/ {Rwand} 'You haven't heard about it yet.'(Overdulve & Jacob 1998:350)

8.3. Relative

The relative is the mood of dependent or subordinate clauses that broadly translate as who, which, or that in English. Verbs that follow any of the relative pronouns (§4.5 and Table 61) and many conjunctions (§12.2.1 and Tables 123–4) are in the relative. No tonally-marked conjoint/disjoint distinction obtains. The primary tonality of the relative is the PRULE (high tone on the second syllable of the root).

Kinyarwanda has a special but limited SUBJECT RELATIVE verb form which agrees with the subject of the sentence (/uhágarariye/ he who represents) as opposed to a verb agreeing with an object (/ahágarariye/ the country which he represents). Because of this distinction, some authors establish OBJECT RELATIVE as opposed to a SUBJECT RELATIVE constructions. The primary tonality of this subject relative is the 1RULE, similar to the participial. The most significant and consistent difference is the treatment of n1-sg, which is always u- in subject relatives, w- before a vowel, and a- in object relatives, y- before a vowel (see Table 105). This conjugation is limited in two ways: it only occurs after three vowel-initial prefixes (u- n1-sg, n2-sg, l- n2-pl, n5-sg, a- n3-pl, n8-pl, n9-pl)\(^{379}\) and the 1RULE is not maintained in all tenses (the recent and the preterit subject relative overlap tonally with the standard or object relative conjugations). Similar to our treatment of linkage (§8 #5 above), we will only recognize this distinction when it is maintained grammatically and tonally. The fact that the grammatical head of a relative verb is its subject or object will never

---

\(^{379}\) With consonant-initial prefixes, even in Kinyarwanda, the tonality of subject-relative constructions follows that for object relative constructions [PRule]. Therefore, /bahagárariye/ is ambiguous for '(they) who represent' and '(the country) which they represent.'
matter in Kirundi and will only be significant in Rwanda if the subject is group 1 singular or the prefix of the verb is a vowel. Otherwise, in Kinyarwanda as always in Kirundi, the term RELATIVE will refer to all OBJECT RELATIVE constructions in both languages and to consonant-initial subject relative constructions in Kinyarwanda.

SUBJECT RELATIVE DISTINGUISHED
/umwáana ukúbita/ [1rule] [Rwanda] 'The child who hits...' (Overdulve 1975:158)
/ugéenda/ [1rule] [Rwanda] 'He who goes ...'
/utáráasoonza/ [1+F+R] 'He who is not yet hungry ...' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:224)

SUBJECT RELATIVE NOT DISTINGUISHED

OBJECT RELATIVE
/umwáana akubíta/ [Prule] [both] ' ... the child whom he hits.' (Overdulve 1975:158)
/abagabo umuhuúngu ahámágara/ [Prule] [both] ' ... the men whom the boy calls.' (Overdulve 1975:157)
/ibijuumba hateeká/ [Rwanda] ' ... the sweet potatoes that they cook.' (Overdulve 1975:158)

Table 105. Subject vs. Object Relative in Kinyarwanda

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject relative</th>
<th>tone</th>
<th>object relative</th>
<th>tone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>umuuntu 'person' n1-sg understood</td>
<td>umuuntu 'person' n1-sg understood</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IMMEDIATE AFFIRMATIVE & NEGATIVE (§8.3.1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>wasábága 'the person who was asking'</th>
<th>P</th>
<th>yaasábága 'the person whom he was asking'</th>
<th>P</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>utáásabága 'the person who did not ask'</td>
<td>1+L</td>
<td>atáásabága 'the person whom he did not ask'</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wasábyé 'the person who just asked'</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>yaasábyé 'the person whom he asked'</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utáásabyé 'the person who did not just ask'</td>
<td>1+L</td>
<td>atáásabyé 'the person whom he didn't ask'</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RECENT AFFIRMATIVE & NEGATIVE (§8.3.2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>wasábága 'the person who has asked'</th>
<th>2+L</th>
<th>yaasábága 'the person whom he has asked'</th>
<th>2+L</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>utáásabága 'the person who had not asked'</td>
<td>2+L</td>
<td>atáásabága 'the person whom he had not asked'</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utáárasabága [-ra- form]</td>
<td>2+L</td>
<td>atáásabága 'the person whom he had not asked'</td>
<td>2+L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PRETERIT AFFIRMATIVE & NEGATIVE (§8.3.3)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>wasábyé 'the person who had asked'</th>
<th>2+L</th>
<th>yaasábyé 'the person whom he had asked'</th>
<th>2+L</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>utáásabyé 'the person who had not asked'</td>
<td>2+L</td>
<td>atáásabyé 'the person whom he had not asked'</td>
<td>2+L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utáárasábyé [-ra- form]</td>
<td>2+L</td>
<td>atáásabyé 'the person whom he had not asked'</td>
<td>2+L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CONDITIONAL AFFIRMATIVE & NEGATIVE (§8.3.4)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>waasábá 'the p. who might ask'</th>
<th>P</th>
<th>yaasábá 'the p. whom he may ask'</th>
<th>P</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>utáásabá 'the person who might not ask'</td>
<td>1+L</td>
<td>atáásabá 'the person whom he may not ask'</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waasábyé 'the person who would ask'</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>yaasábyé 'the p. whom he would ask'</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utáásabyé 'the person who would not ask'</td>
<td>1+L</td>
<td>atáásabyé 'the person whom he would not ask'</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FUTURE AFFIRMATIVE & NEGATIVE (§8.3.5)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>uzáásaba 'the p. who will ask'</th>
<th>F+R</th>
<th>azáásaba 'the p. whom he will ask'</th>
<th>F+R</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>utázáásaba 'the person who will not ask'</td>
<td>1+F+R</td>
<td>atázáásaba 'the person whom he will not ask'</td>
<td>F+R</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject relative</th>
<th>tone</th>
<th>object relative</th>
<th>tone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>waazáasaba 'the person who might be asking'</td>
<td>F+R</td>
<td>yaazáasaba 'the person whom he might be asking'</td>
<td>F+R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utáazaasaba 'the person who might not be asking'</td>
<td>1+X</td>
<td>atazaáasaba 'the person whom he might not be asking'</td>
<td>F+R</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### CONDITIONAL FUTURE AFFIRMATIVE & NEGATIVE (§8.3.6)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject relative</th>
<th>tone</th>
<th>object relative</th>
<th>tone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>waazáasabye 'the person who would be asking'</td>
<td>F+R</td>
<td>yaazáasabye 'the person whom he would be asking'</td>
<td>F+R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utáazaasabye 'the person whom he would not be asking'</td>
<td>1+X</td>
<td>atazaáasabye 'the person whom he would not be asking'</td>
<td>F+R</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PERSISTIVE AFFIRMATIVE & NEGATIVE (§8.3.7)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject relative</th>
<th>tone</th>
<th>object relative</th>
<th>tone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ugisaba 'the person who still asks'</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>agisaba 'the person whom he still asks'</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utágisaba 'the person who doesn't ask anymore'</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>atagisaba 'the person whom he no longer asks'</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INCEPTIVE/PUNCTUAL NEGATIVE (§8.3.8)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject relative</th>
<th>tone</th>
<th>object relative</th>
<th>tone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>uráasaba 'the person who has yet to ask'</td>
<td>F+R</td>
<td>aráasaba 'the person whom he has yet to ask'</td>
<td>F+R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utáráasaba 'the person who has not yet asked'</td>
<td>1+F+R</td>
<td>atarásaba 'the person whom he has not yet asked'</td>
<td>F+R</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 8.3.1. Relative Immediate

In Kinyarwanda, this construction follows the preprefix /ní/ to show a hypothetical condition.380

/níbariríimba/ [Rwanda] 'If they sing ...' (Kimenyi 2002:208) [cf: Rundi /ní baariríimba/ RECENT]
/níboongéra/ [Rwanda] 'If they repeat ...' (Kimenyi 2002:208) [cf: Rundi /ní boongéra/ RECENT]

#### 072 relative affirmative immediate imperfective


**TONE PATTERN:**
- P S-Ø-Δ-a {both}
- /ukó uteekwá/ {both} '... how it is cooked.' (R18)
- /hari ubwó ubwa buhaanga bukenérwa/ {both} 'Sometimes that skill is needed.' (R38.1)
- /umwé mu bagaanga bakoréra muri ny ntáará/ {both} (R20) 'One of the doctors who work in that region ...'
- /kukó noonsá abáana nkazó/ {both} '... because I breastfeed my children as they do.' (R28.8)

+ one object

**TONE PATTERN:**
- P2 S-Ø-obj-Δ-a {both}
- /siinzí kw ábiikuúnda/ [Rwanda] 'I don't know if he will like it.' (Overdulve 1975:293)
- /kukó buri jaambo arisohóra/ [Rwanda] 'Because each word that he utters ...' (Bizimana 1998:31)
- /kukó ndażikuúnda/ [Rundi] (Cristini 2000:170), /kukó njikuúnda/ [Rwanda] (LN) '.... because I love them (the cows).'
- /kó tubuúmva néezá/ [Rwanda] '... that we understand it well.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:167)

---

380 Kimenyi (2002:207f) calls this a REALIS CONDITIONAL. In Kirundi, a hypothetical condition marked by /ní/ is followed by a RELATIVE RECENT (see §8.3.2).
+ two objects

TONE PATTERN:

\[O2+L \text{ S-obj-obj-} \Delta -a\]

/kó babimúkóre?a/ \{both\} '... that they are doing \textit{it for him}.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:326, JN)
/kó babimwiíba/ \footnote{381} \{both\} '... that they will steal \textit{them from him}.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:326)

073 relative affirmative immediate perfective


TONE PATTERN:

\[P \text{ S-} \Delta -ye\]

/ahó yakavúgye ntárahéza/ \{both\} 'For all the time she has been talking, she is not done yet.'
(Ntahokaja 1976:28)
/amakurú anyúryanye/ \{both\} 'various news' (R8.1)
/ingénye watáanzwe/ \{Rundi\} '... how it was distributed.' (R35.4)

+ one object

TONE PATTERN:

\[P2 \text{ S-obj-} \Delta -ye\]

/ntaa báandi bagabo nguhaáye/ \{Rwanda\} 'I am not giving you any more witnesses.' (R28.9)
/bugiingo ayitegúuye iramuçakíra/ \{Rundi\} 'When he released it, it snatched him.' (R27.3)
/ico ni ko kigitaánya n'íbiíndi/ \{Rundi\} 'That is the thing that differentiates it from others.' (Ntahokaja 1976:27)

074 relative negative immediate imperfective


TONE PATTERN:

\[P \text{ S-ta-} \Delta -a \{both\} \]
\[P \text{ S-t-} \Delta -a \{vowel root\} \{both\} \]

/umubíri mwiízá utágírá inenge/ \{both\} 'a good body that does not have deformity' (R36.4)
/niiwíríraga kó niintaboná inkwi.../ \{Rwanda\} 'I assumed that if \textit{I do not find} firewood... (R34.3)
/imaánza z’ábaantu batuumvíikana/ \{Rwanda\} '... disputes among people who have a misunderstanding' (R40.4)
/ikiintu tudategéera/ \{Rundi\} 'The thing that we don't understand ...' (R33.1)
/ingwáara idateeyé isóni/ \{Rundi\} 'a disease that is not humiliating' (R31.4)

+ one object

TONE PATTERN:

\[P \text{ S-ta-obj-} \Delta -a \{both\} \]

/iyó nta ku girá riba ryáaraampúhyue/ \{Rwanda\} 'If I did not have \textit{you}, he would have finished me off!' (R28.5)
/hari náahó utabashikííra/ \{Rundi\} 'It might not even reach them.' (R35.3)

075 relative negative immediate perfective


TONE PATTERN:

\[P \text{ S-ta-} \Delta -ye \{both\} \]
\[P \text{ S-t-} \Delta -ye \{vowel root\} \{both\} \]

/impanuka idasaanzwé/ \{both\} 'an unusual accident' (R8b, R16)
/yakoze ibintu bidakwiíwe/ \{both\} 'He did \textit{inappropriate} things.' (Jacob #2 1986:324)
/imvúgo itávaangávanga indími/ \{both\} 'a jargon that does not mix languages' (Bizimana 1998:3)
/ivyó mudasobáanukiwe mwoobíbaá/ \{Rundi\} 'You should ask what \textit{you don't understand}.' (R9)

\footnote{381} In the case of a vowel root, the high tone follows the second object, appearing on the first vowel of the root. 237
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

+ one object
TONE PATTERN:
   P2 S-ta-obj-∆-ye {both}
/bataandeméete/ {both} '... that they do not put a load on me.' (R19)

8.3.1.1. Subject Relative Immediate {Rwanda only}

This Kinyarwanda construction is limited to relative verbs that agree with the subject of the sentence and which have a vowel prefix. Consonant-initial prefixes in Rwanda follow the tonality and grammar of object relatives.

076 subject relative affirmative immediate imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
   1 V-∆-a [vowel prefixes on consonant roots only]382 {Rwanda only}
/umugabo ukóra/ {Rwanda} n1-sg-relsubj 'the man who works' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:289)
/umuuntu ubóona igiti/ {Rwanda} n1-sg-relsubj 'the man who finds the tree' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:184)
/umwáana urvyá/ {Rwanda} n1-sg-relsubj 'the child who eats' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:185.289)
/ni jyeewé uyúga/ {Rwanda} n1-sg-relsubj 'I am the one speaking.' (Overdulve 1975:285)
/imibú itéera malaariyá/ {Rwanda} n2-pl-relsubj 'mosquitoes which cause malaria' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:184)
/amazína asóbaanurwa/ {Rwanda} n3-pl-relsubj 'nouns which are explained' (Bizimana 1998:153)
/amashuúri abáanz/ {Rwanda} n3-pl-relsubj 'primary school' [lit. 'schools that start'] (Bizimana 1998:393)

+ one object
TONE PATTERN:
   1 V-obj-∆-a {Rwanda only}
/ni ukó inyáajwí i ká baanziriza/ {Rwanda} 'It is because the vowel that precedes it ...' (Bizimana 1998:111)

077 subject relative affirmative immediate perfective
TONE PATTERN:
   1 V-∆-ye [vowel prefixes on consonant roots only] {Rwanda only}
/amagaambo asáangive igicuúmbi/ {Rwanda} 'words that share a root' (Bizimana 1998:153)
/indwáara ikómeye/ [1rule] {Rwanda} 'a serious illness' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:268)

078 subject relative negative immediate imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
   1+P V-ta-∆-a [voiceless consonant] {Rwanda only}
   1+P V-da-∆-a [voiced consonant] {Rwanda only}
   1+P V-t-∆-a [vowel verb] {Rwanda only}
/udásabá/ {Rwanda} 'one who does not ask' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:186)
/udákorána/ {Rwanda} 'one who does not work with (another)' (Overdulve 1975:311)
/udátemá/ {Rwanda} 'one who does not cut' (Bizimana 1998:290)
/utáandika/ {Rwanda} 'the one who does not write' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:18)

382 Vowel root verbs will have consonant-initial prefixes and follow the same tonal rule [Prule] as for an object relative construction, e.g., /woogósha/ {Rwanda} 'he who shaves' (Kimenyi 2002:203).
079 subject relative negative immediate perfective
TONE PATTERN:
1+P V-ta-Δ-ye [voiceless consonant] {Rwanda only}
1+P V-da-Δ-ye [voiced consonant] {Rwanda only}
1+P V-t-Δ-ye [vowel verb] {Rwanda only}
/udásabyé/ [Rwanda] 'one who did not ask' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:186)
/utáriiyé/ [Rwanda] 'one who did not eat' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:186)
/utáandítse/ [Rwanda] 'the one who did not write' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:186)
/imirimo idákoméye/ [Rwanda] 'easy work [lit. 'that is not difficult'] (Overdulve 1975:217)

8.3.2. Relative Recent
In Kirundi, the relative recent functions as a conditional. When it follows the preprefix /ní/, it shows
a hypothetical situation.

/ni nabafáta nzoobahana/ {Rundi} 'If I catch you, I will punish you.' (cf: Cristini 2000:170)
/ni nakirá néeza nzooa/ {Rundi} 'I will come if I recover completely.' (Cristini 2000:170)
/abashitsi ni baageendá nzoorukuuka/ {Rundi} 'When the visitors leave, I will rest.' (Cristini
2000:170)

080 relative affirmative recent imperfective
See: Overdulve 1975:178f,310, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:159; Cristini 2000:170, Rodegem
1967:50f.
TONE PATTERN:
P S-Δ-a [weak] {Rundi}
P S-aa-Δ-a [strong] {Rundi}
P S-Ø-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rundi}
P S-a-Δ-aga [weak] {Rwanda}
P S-aa-Δ-aga [strong] {Rwanda}
P S-Ø-Δ-aga [vowel root] {Rwanda}

/abaantu twaakoránaga/ {Rwanda} 'people that we (recently) worked with' (cf: Overdulve 1975:310)
/igitabo nasomága/ {Rwanda} 'the book which I (recently) read' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:159)
/mwaandíka/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:197), /mwaandikaga/ {Rwanda} (LN) 'what you (recently) wrote'
/imirimá baahiingága/ {Rwanda} 'the fields that they were cultivating (today)' (Overdulve 1975:178)

+ one object
TONE PATTERN:
P2 S-a-obj-Δ-a [weak] {Rundi}
P2 S-aa-obj-Δ-a [strong] {Rundi}
P2 S-a-obj-Δ-aga [weak] {Rwanda}
P2 S-aa-obj-Δ-aga [strong] {Rwanda}

/ibyó twaabasabága ntimúbiduhe/ {Rwanda} 'You should not give us what we asked you for.'
(Bizimana 1998:270)
/ni nabafatiisha, nzoobahaniisha/ {Rundi} 'If I have them caught, I will have them punished.' (JN,
Cristini 2000:170)

081 relative affirmative recent perfective
TONE PATTERN:
P S-Δ-ye [weak] {both}
P S-aa-Δ-ye [strong] {both}

/iyó wateetse inyama nyoishii/ {both} 'If you cooked a lot of meat ...' (R18)
/inyáanyá watonóye/ {Rwanda} 'tomatoes that you peeled' (R18)
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

/baavuzé/ {both} '... that they spoke (recently)' (Cristini 2000:13)
/babiri mu baári báakoméretse/ 'Two among those who had been injured ...' (R16)

+ one object

TONE PATTERN:
P2 S-a-obj-Δ-ye [weak] {both}
P2 S-aa-obj-Δ-ye [strong] {both}

/harabúra n'uuumvé yeeméra kó yagatwaáye/ [Rundi] 'There isn't a single person who admits that he took it away.' (R7)
/n'uyu nyéne yampamágaye/ [Rundi] 'It is the same one that called me.' (Cristini 2000:128)

082 relative negative recent imperfective


TONE PATTERNS:
P S-ta-a-Δ-aga {Rwanda}
L S-ta-a-Δ-a {Rundi}
/kó bataavuga, ntáco baaroonsé/ [Rundi] 'Because they didn't say anything, they didn't get anything.' (Cristini 2000:177)
/mi ntaabashá/ [Rundi] 'If I cannot ...' (JN)
/yavuze kó mutaasabága/ [Rwanda] 'He said that you did not ask.' (Bizimana 1998:271)
/tutaakoránaga/ [Rwanda] '... that we were not working together' [habitually] (Overdulve 1975:311)
/imirimá bataahiingága/ [Rwanda] 'the fields that they were not cultivating (today)' (Overdulve 1975:178)

083 relative negative recent perfective


TONE PATTERNS:
P S-ta-a-Δ-ye {Rwanda}
L S-ta-a-Δ-ye {Rundi}
/umuuntu atuumviise/ [Rundi] 'a person who did not understand (recently)' (Cristini 2000:177, Rodegem 1967:58) [subject relative]
/umuuntu atuumviise/ [Rwanda] 'a person whom he did not understand' (LN) [object relative]
/íbyó mutaariiyé mwaabitánga/ [Rwanda] 'You should give away what you didn't eat.' (Bizimana 1998:268)
/tutaakoránye/ [Rwanda] '... that we were not (recently) working together.' (Overdulve 1975:311)

8.3.2.1. Subject Relative Recent {Rwanda only}

This Kinyarwanda construction is limited to recent relative verbs that agree with a n1-sg subject of the sentence. The semivowel /w-/ is the prefix in the affirmative (where the PRULE tonality is identical to that for object relatives), but /u-/ and 1RULE tonality does appear in the negative.

084 subject relative affirmative recent imperfective


TONE PATTERN:
P S-a-Δ-aga {Rwanda only}
/wasabága/ [Rwanda] 'the one who recently asked' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:185)
/waandikaga/ [Rwanda] 'the one who recently wrote' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:185)

085 subject relative affirmative recent perfective


TONE PATTERN:
P S-a-Δ-ye {Rwanda only}
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

/wasahyé/ {Rwanda} 'the one who recently asked' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:185)
/wateméyé/ {Rwanda} 'the one who recently cut' (Bizimana 1998:290)
/waandítse/ {Rwanda} 'the one who recently wrote' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:185)
/wībyé/ {Rwanda} 'the one who recently stole' (Bizimana 1998:290)

086 subject relative negative recent imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
1+L V-ta-a-Δ-aga {Rwanda only}
/utáasabaga/ {Rwanda} 'the one who recently did not ask' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:186)
/utíaandíkaga/ {Rwanda} 'the one who recently did not write' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:186)

087 subject relative negative recent perfective
TONE PATTERN:
1+L V-ta-a-Δ-ye {Rwanda only}
/utíaatemye/ {Rwanda} 'the one who recently did not cut' (Bizimana 1998:290)
/utíaasabhye/ {Rwanda} 'the one who recently did not ask' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:186)
/utíaibhye/ {Rwanda} 'the one who recently did not steal' (Bizimana 1998:290)
/utíaanditse/ {Rwanda} 'the one who recently did not write' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:186)

8.3.3. Relative Preterit
The overriding tone pattern for the relative preterit is on the second mora of the word. The presence or absence of an object will not matter as the tone will still fall on the second mora.

088 relative affirmative preterit imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
2+X S-a-Δ-a [weak] {Rundi}
2+X S-aā-Δ-a [strong] {Rundi}
2+X S-Ø-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rundi}
2+X S-a-a-aga [weak] {Rwanda}
2+X S-aā-aga [strong] {Rwanda}
2+X S-Ø-aga [vowel root] {Rwanda}

/ntaabwo iyo gacaáca yakízaga ku maánza z’úwiíshe umuuntu/ {Rwanda} 'That Gacaca never settled a dispute over a person who killed another person.' (R40.5)
/nihó yatángura gukóra/ {Rundi} 'That is when he started to work.' (R17.6)
/ntaabwo baahimagaraga umugoré/ {Rwanda} 'They never summoned the wife.' (R40.4)
/ubwó zaa gaári ya moóshi ebyiri zaágoonganaga/ '... when two trains collided.' {Rwanda} (R8.2)
/ingéne Mwéezi yasá/ How Mwezi looked.' {Rundi} (R5)
/ni twó yatwáara/ {Rundi} 'It is what he took away.' (R25.3)
/inzu buúbakaga/ {Rwanda} 'the house which they (formerly) built' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:159)

+ one object
TONE PATTERN:
2+X S-a-obj-Δ-a [weak] {Rundi}
2+X S-aā-obj-Δ-a [strong] {Rundi}
2+X S-a-obj-Δ-aga [weak] {Rwanda}
2+X S-aā-obj-Δ-aga [strong] {Rwanda}

/insiguuro baáyaha/ {Rundi} 'the explanation that they were giving them' (29.5)
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

089 relative affirmative preterit perfective
TONE PATTERN:
2+X S-a-Δ-ye [weak] {both}
2+X S-aå-Δ-ye [strong] {both}
2+X S-Ø-Δ-ye [vowel root] {both}
/icó nabúze/ {Rundi} 'What I haven't had ...' (R19)
/twaákoranye/ {Rwanda} '... that we have worked together.' (Overdulve 1975:310)

090 relative negative preterit imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
A2+L S-ta-á- {Rundi}
A2+L S-ta-á-aga {Rwanda}
/ibyó bataáryaga baábihaga imbwá/ {Rwanda} 'What they didn't eat they used to give to the dogs.' (Bizimana 1998:274)
/ntaa ndwi vyáha adáshooyémwó kimwé/ {Rundi} 'There wasn't a week that went by that he did not sell one of them.' (R25.2)
/imirima bataáhiingaga/ {Rwanda} 'the fields that they were not cultivating (yesterday)' (Overdulve 1975:178)

091 relative negative preterit perfective
TONE PATTERN:
A2+L S-ta-á- {Rundi}
A2+L S-ta-á-aga {Rwanda}
/umuntu atuúmviise/ {Rundi} 'a person who did not understand' (Cristini 2000:178, JN)
/kó batiíze/ {both} '... that they didn't go to school.' (R38.6)
/inká mutaáguze/ {both} '... cows that you did not buy.' (JN, LN)
/tutaákoranye/ {both} '... that we had not worked together.' (JN, Overdulve 1975:311)

8.3.3.1. Subject Relative Preterit {Rwanda only}
This exclusively Kinyarwanda construction is limited to preterit relative verbs that agree with a n1-sg subject of the sentence. The semivowel /w-/ is the prefix in the affirmative (where the overriding tone pattern is on the second mora of the word, 2RULE, which is identical to that for object relatives), but /u-/ and an additional 1RULE tonality does appear in the negative. The presence or absence of an object will not matter as the tone will still fall on the second mora.

092 subject relative affirmative preterit imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
2+L S-a-á-aga [weak only] {Rwanda only}
/wasáhaga/ {Rwanda} 'the one who formerly asked' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:185)
/waándikaga/ {Rwanda} 'the one who formerly wrote' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:185)

093 subject relative affirmative preterit perfective
TONE PATTERN:
2+L S-a-á-ye [weak only] {Rwanda only}
/wasáhye/ {Rwanda} 'one who formerly asked' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:185)
/watémye/ {Rwanda} 'one who formerly cut' (Bizimana 1998:290)
/waánditse/ {Rwanda} 'one who formerly wrote' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:185)
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

094 subject relative negative preterit imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
1+2+L V-tá-á-Δ-aga [Rwanda only]
1+T V-t-áara-Δ-aga [alt] [Rwanda only]
/utáásabaga/ [Rwanda] 'one who did not ask' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:186)
/utáarasabaga/ [Rwanda] 'one who did not ask' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:186)
/utáákoranaga/ [Rwanda] 'one who did not work with (another)' (Overdulve 1975:311)
/utáándikaga/ [Rwanda] 'one who did not write' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:186)
/utáaráandikaga/ [Rwanda] 'one who did not write' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:186)

095 subject relative negative preterit perfective
TONE PATTERN:
1+2+L V-tá-á-Δ-ye [Rwanda only]
1+T V-t-áara-Δ-ye [Rwanda only]
/umutégarúgorí utáarasháatse kwíivuga izína/ [Rwanda] 'a woman who wanted to remain anonymous' (R22)
/utáásabye/ [Rwanda] 'one who had not asked' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:186)
/utáákoryame/ [Rwanda] 'one who had not cut' (Bizimana 1998:290)
/utáarasabye/ [Rwanda] 'one who had not asked' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:186)
/utáaráanditse/ [Rwanda] 'one who had not written' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:186)

8.3.4. Relative Conditional
The conditional tense in Kinyarwanda and Kirundi when in the relative mood can create a polite command with the sense of please. Generally, however, it is a subordinate or dependent element expressing some EVENTUALITY (in the imperfective similar to English should) or an UNREALIZED EVENT (in the perfective similar to English would have). One of its primary functions is as the first part of if ... then statements; the RELATIVE CONDITIONAL if clause is followed by an INDICATIVE CONDITIONAL then clause (§8.1.4). It also serves in some highly idiomatic constructions, such as following the conjunctive /ahó/ with the meaning instead of.

096 relative affirmative conditional imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
P S-oo-Δ-a [Rundi]
P S-aa-Δ-a [Rwanda]
/waacecéka/ [Rwanda] 'Would you please be quiet!' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:301) [POLITE COMMAND]
/ntaa two nooshobóra/ [Rundi] 'There is nothing that I can do about it.' (R27.5)
/kó bootabáara/ [Rundi] (JN), /kó baatááara/ [Rwanda] (Kimenyi 2002:205) '... that they would defend.'
/baakorå baahéembwa/ [Rwanda] 'If they worked, they would be paid.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:301)
/baríifuza kó haakoréywa ubushaakashaatsi/ [Rwanda] 'They wish that research would be done there.' (R22)
/baacaaná, umwíijimá ugahuunga/ [Rwanda] 'If people build a fire, darkness runs away.' (R28.12)
/icó umuuntu yooshiimá muri ico gihúgu/ [Rundi] 'What one should praise about that country ...' (R29.9)
+ one object

TONE PATTERN:
- P2 S-oo-obj-Δ-a {Rundi}
- P2 S-aa-obj-Δ-a {Rwanda}

/baansabá ibisóbaanuro/ {Rwanda} 'If they ask me for an explanation ...' (R32)
/shaaka ukuündi waahíkóra/ {Rwanda} 'Find another way to do it.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:294)
/ntaa kuündi afíté yaabígeenáa/ {Rwanda} 'He has no other way to do it.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:294)
/barashääka ahó baamuháamá/ {Rwanda} 'They are looking for a place to bury him.' [lit. 'where they might bury him'] (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:294)
/kó yoorímenyéesha ibicíri aguriishakó/ {Rundi} '... that they should inform it about their sale price.' (R9)

097 relative affirmative conditional perfective

TONE PATTERN:
- P S-oo-Δ-ye {Rundi}
- P S-aa-Δ-ye {Rwanda}

/ahó yooovuzé ati/ {Rundi} (R11), /ahó vaavuzé ati/ {Rwanda} (LN) 'Instead of saying ...'
/ahó vootabáaje/ {Rundi} (R27.3), /ahó yaatábáaje/ {Rwanda} (LN) 'Instead of calling for help ...'
/twaagizé inká miroongw iné/ {Rwanda} 'If we sold forty cows ...' (Overdulve 1975:246)
/baakoze baahéembwe/ {Rwanda} 'If they worked, they would be paid.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:301)

098 relative negative conditional imperfective

TONE PATTERN:
- L S-t-oo-Δ-a {Rundi}
- P S-t-aa-Δ-a {Rwanda}

/ivyó batoomenya/ {Rundi} 'What they could not possibly know ...' (Cristini 2000:178, Rodegem 1967:59)
/ibyó utaakenéra waabigurísha/ {Rwanda} 'What you might not need you should sell.' (Bizimana 1998:268)
/tutaagirá ináama/ {Rwanda} 'If we do not hold a meeting ...' (Overdulve 1975:242)
/tutaakorána/ {Rwanda} '... that we would not work together.' (Overdulve 1975:311)

099 relative negative conditional perfective

TONE PATTERN:
- P S-t-aa-Δ-a {Rwanda}

/ibyó mutaaaríiwe mwaabitáangáa/ {Rwanda} 'What you might not eat, you should give away.' (Bizimana 1998:268)
/tutaakoránye/ {Rwanda} '... that we would not have worked together.' (Overdulve 1975:311)

8.3.4.1. Subject Relative Conditional {Rwanda only}

This Kinyarwanda construction is limited to conditional verbs that agree with a n₁-sg subject of the sentence. The semivowel /w-/ (rather than /y-/) is the prefix in the affirmative (where the PRULE tonality is identical to that for object relatives), but /u-/ and 1RULE tonality (with the loss or root tonality) appears in the negative. Nouns of all other classes are treated the same as object relatives.

383 If the construction occurs, the tone pattern should follow that of the imperfective, e.g., L S-t-oo-Δ-ye.
100 subject relative affirmative conditional imperfective
TONE PATTERN:

P S-aa-Δ-a {Rwanda only}
P S-aa+kw-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rwanda only}

/ni ndé waayugá kó ari mu Rwanda hóonyiné bavugá ikinyarwaanda/ {Rwanda} 'Who would say that it is in Rwanda alone that they speak Kinyarwanda?' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:294)
/waatemá/ {Rwanda} 'one who would cut' (Bizimana 1998:290)
/waarasáaga/ {Rwanda} 'one who would incise' (Coupez 1980:449 #21)
/waasogóota/ {Rwanda} 'one who would stab' (Coupez 1980:449 #21)
/waakwiibá/ {Rwanda} 'one who would steal' (Bizimana 1998:290)

101 subject relative affirmative conditional perfective
TONE PATTERN:

P S-aa-Δ-ye {Rwanda only}
P S-aa+kw-Δ-ye [vowel root] {Rwanda only}

/waarasáaze/ {Rwanda} 'one who could incise' (Coupez 1980:449 #22)
/waasogóose/ {Rwanda} 'one who could stab' (Coupez 1980:449 #22)

102 subject relative negative conditional imperfective
TONE PATTERN:

1+X V-t-áa-Δ-a {Rwanda only}
1+X V-t-áa+kw-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rwanda only}

/utáatema/ {Rwanda} 'one who would not cut' (Bizimana 1998:290)
/utáakorana/ {Rwanda} 'one who would not work with (another)' (Overdulve 1975:311)
/utáarasáaga/ {Rwanda} 'one who would not incise' (Coupez 1980:449 #39)
/utáasogóota/ {Rwanda} 'one who would not stab' (Coupez 1980:449 #39)
/utáakwiibá/ {Rwanda} 'one who would not steal' (Bizimana 1998:290)

103 subject relative negative conditional perfective
TONE PATTERN:

1+X V-t-áa-Δ-ye {Rwanda only}
1+X V-t-áa+kw-Δ-ye [vowel root] {Rwanda only}

/utáakoranye/ {Rwanda} 'one who could not work with (another)' (Overdulve 1975:311)
/utáarasáaze/ {Rwanda} 'one who could not incise' (Coupez 1980:449 #40)
/utáasogóose/ {Rwanda} 'one who could not stab' (Coupez 1980:449 #40)

8.3.5. Relative Future
This is the indefinite future tense of relative clauses. In Kinyarwanda, these verbs may follow the conjunction ni 'if' to express a REALIS FUTURE CONDITIONAL (Kimenyi 2002:178).

104 relative affirmative future
TONE PATTERN:

F+T S-zóo-Δ-a {Rundi}
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

- F+A2 S-zóo-kw-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rundi}
- F+R S-záa-Δ-a {Rwanda}
- F+X S-z-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rwanda}

/tukaba twíizeeye kó ivyo bigwanisho bizóosáambuurwa/ {Rundi} ‘... and we hope that those weapons will be destroyed.’ (R37.5, JN)
/amagamaambo azáayûga/ {Rwanda} ‘the words which he will say’ (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:144)
/bazáariríimba/ {Rwanda} ‘(that) they will sing’ (Kimenyi 2002:176)
/nibazáariríimba/ {Rwanda} ‘if they will sing’ (Kimenyi 2002:178)
/bazóogosha/ {Rwanda} ‘(that) they will shave’ (Kimenyi 2002:177)
/nibazóogosha/ {Rwanda} ‘if they will shave’ (Kimenyi 2002:178)
/ni je nzóobáriira/ {Rundi} ‘It is I who will sew’ (Cristini 2000:171)
/muzóokwaándika/ {Rundi} ‘(that) they will sing’ (Cristini 2000:198), /muzáandika/ {Rwanda & Jacob 1998:144} ‘which you will write’

TONE PATTERN:
- F+T S-zóo-obj-Δ-a {Rundi}
- F+O S-záa-obj-Δ-a {Rwanda}

/avuga kó azóobabhényerera akabágwaanya/ {Rundi} (R29.7, JN), /avuga kó azáabhégurukira akabarwaanya/ {Rwanda} (LN) ‘He says that he will make every effort to combat them.’
/azáabhégugira/ {Rwanda} ‘(which he will say on) their behalf’ (LN)

105 relative negative future
TONE PATTERN:
- F+T S-ta-zóo-Δ-a {Rundi}
- F+O S-ta-záa-Δ-a {Rwanda}

/uzáatéma/ {Rwanda} ‘one who will cut’ (Bizimana 1998:290)
/uzáaryá/ {Rwanda} ‘one who will eat’ (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:185)
/uzáusaba/ {Rwanda} ‘one who will ask’ (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:185)
/uzáandika/ {Rwanda} ‘one who will write’ (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:185)
/uzíiba/ {Rwanda} ‘one who will steal’ (Bizimana 1998:290)

8.3.5.1. Subject Relative Future {Rwanda only}
This exclusively Kinyarwanda construction is limited to future verbs that agree with a n1-sg subject of the sentence. Since the prefix /-záa-/ starts with a consonant, the prefix is /u-/ in both the affirmative and the negative. Nouns of all other classes are treated the same as object relatives.

106 subject relative affirmative future
TONE PATTERN:
- F+R V-záa-Δ-a {Rwanda only}
- F+X V-z-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rwanda only}

/uzaateima/ {Rwanda} ‘one who will cut’ (Bizimana 1998:290)
/uzaaryia/ {Rwanda} ‘one who will eat’ (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:185)
/uzaasaba/ {Rwanda} ‘one who will ask’ (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:185)
/uzaandika/ {Rwanda} ‘one who will write’ (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:185)
/uziiba/ {Rwanda} ‘one who will steal’ (Bizimana 1998:290)
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

107 subject relative negative future
TONE PATTERN:
1+F+R V-tá-záá-Δ-a {Rwanda only}
1+T V-tá-z-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rwanda only}
/utázáasaba/ [Rwanda] 'one who will not ask' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:186)
/utázáatéma/ [Rwanda] 'one who will not cut' (Bizimana 1998:290)
/utázáaryá/ [Rwanda] 'one who will not eat' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:186)
/utázáandika/ [Rwanda] 'one who will not write' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:186)
/utáziiba/ [Rwanda] 'one who will not steal' (Bizimana 1998:290)

8.3.6. Relative Conditional Future {Rwanda only}
This tense and affix combination is only found in Kinyarwanda and refers to a conditional action at least one day in the future. Like the indicative and unlike the participial, it is conjugated in both the imperfective and perfective.

108 relative affirmative conditional future imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
F+R S-aa-záá-Δ-a {Rwanda only}
F+X S-aa-z-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rwanda only}
/nóone waazáatwáara iby'abándi/ [Rwanda] 'What if you would take other people's things?' (Bizimana 1998:277)
/umurimá twaazáahíinga/ [Rwanda] 'the field which we would cultivate' (Overdulve 1975:241, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:300)
/twaazáakóra neezá twaazaatsiinda/ [Rwanda] 'If we were to work well, we would succeed.' (Overdulve 1975:242, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:301)
/baazáatabaara/ [Rwanda] '(that) they would defend' (Kimenyi 2002:178)
/baazóongera/ [Rwanda] 'what they would repeat' (Kimenyi 2002:178)

109 relative affirmative conditional future perfective
TONE PATTERN:
F+R S-aa-záá-Δ-ye {Rwanda only}
F+X S-aa-z-Δ-ye [vowel root] {Rwanda only}
/nk'uúbwo waazáahíinze ukarora kó udakirá/ [Rwanda] 'How about you cultivate and then you'll see if you won’t be rich?' (Bizimana 1998:277)

110 relative negative conditional future imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
F+R S-t-aa-záá-Δ-a {Rwanda only}
/inyama ntaazáatéeka zaaba iziíhe/? [Rwanda] 'Which is the meat that I should not cook?' (Bizimana 1998:278)

111 relative negative conditional future perfective
TONE PATTERN:

384 The only example presented by Overdulve for this particular conjugation is in error: /utázaakorana/ (1975:311) should be /utázáakorana/.
385 Kimenyi (2002:178) calls this the FUTURE RELATIVE IRREALIS CONDITIONAL.
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

F+R S-t-aa-záa-Δ-ye {Rwanda only}
/inyama  ntaazáaguze zaaba izihe/ {Rwanda} 'Which is that meat that I should not buy?' (Bizimana 1998:278)

8.3.6.1. Subject Relative Conditional Future {Rwanda only}

This exclusively Kinyarwanda construction is limited to conditional future verbs that agree with a n1-sg subject. The semivowel /w–/ (rather than /y–/) is the prefix in the affirmative (where the tonality is identical to that for object relatives), but /u–/ and 1RULE tonality (with the loss of root tonality) appears in the negative. Nouns of all other classes are treated the same as object relatives.

112 subject relative affirmative conditional future imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
F+R S-aa-záa-Δ-a {Rwanda only}
/waazáatéma/ [Rwanda] 'one who would cut' (Bizimana 1998:290)
/waazáasogoota/ [Rwanda] 'one who would stab' (Coupez 1980:451 #131)
/waazáarásaaga/ [Rwanda] 'one who would incise' (Coupez 1980:451 #131)
/umwáana waazáakúbita uwuúndi/ [Rwanda] 'the child who would hit another child' (LN)

113 subject relative affirmative conditional future perfective
TONE PATTERN:
F+R S-aa-záa-Δ-ye {Rwanda only}
/umwáana waazáakúbita uwuúndi/ [Rwanda] 'a child who could hit another child' (LN)
/waazáasogoose/ [Rwanda] 'one who could stab' (Coupez 1980:451 #132)
/waazáarásaaze/ [Rwanda] 'one who could incise' (Coupez 1980:451 #132)

114 subject relative negative conditional future imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
1+X V-t-áa-záa-Δ-a [Rwanda only]
1+X V-t-áa-z-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rwanda only}
/utáazaatema/ [Rwanda] 'that he should not cut' (Bizimana 1998:290)
/utáazaasogoota/ [Rwanda] 'that he should not stab' (Coupez 1980:451 #139)
/utáazaarásaaga/ [Rwanda] 'that he should not incise' (Coupez 1980:451 #139)
/umwáana utáazaakúbita uwuúndi/ [Rwanda] 'the child who would not hit another child' (LN)
/utáaziiba/ [Rwanda] 'that he should not steal' (Bizimana 1998:290)

115 subject relative negative conditional future perfective
TONE PATTERN:
1+X V-t-áa-záa-Δ-ye {Rwanda only}
/umwáana utáazaakúbita uwuúndi/ [Rwanda] 'the child who could not have hit another child' (LN)

8.3.7. Relative Persistive

This is the persistive tense of relative clauses. In the affirmative it has the sense of still and is tonally marked by the PRULE; while in the negative it has the sense of no longer, not ... anymore and is marked by loss of tonality, LRULE.

386 Kimenyi (2002:184) calls the negative of this the SUBORDINATE CLAUSE 'NOT ANYMORE' TENSE.
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

116 relative affirmative persistive imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
- P S-ki-Δ-a [voiced consonant] {both}
- P S-gi-Δ-a [voiceless consonant] {both}
- P S-c-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rundi}
- P S-cy-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rwanda}

/ntaa muuntu ngikuundá/ {both} 'I don't like anybody anymore.' (Bizimana 1998:263)
/tugikorána/ {both} '... that we still work together.' (JN, Overdulve 1975:310)
/bakirirümá/ {both} 'who still sing' (Kimenyi 2002:204)
/bacyoogósha/ {Rwanda} 'who still shave' (Kimenyi 2002:204), /bacoogósha/ {Rundi}
/bacyibá/ {Rwanda} 'who still steal' (Bizimana 1998:290)
/mucaandika/ {Rundi} '... that you still write.' (Cristini 2000:197)

+ one object
TONE PATTERN:
- P2 S-ki-obj-Δ-a

/kó bakibigeénza/ {both} '... that they still do it.' (Cristini 2000:171, Rodegem 1967:50)
/ahó tukizíbaria/ {both} '... while we are still sewing them (the dresses).' (Cristini 2000:171)

+ two objects
TONE PATTERN:
- O2+L S-ki-obj-obj-Δ-a {both}

/ahó tukizídaráriíra/ {both} '... while we are still sewing them (the dresses) for her.' (Cristini 2000:171)

117 relative affirmative persistive perfective
TONE PATTERN:
- P S-ki-Δ-ye [voiced consonant] {both}
- P S-gi-Δ-ye [voiceless consonant] {both}
- P S-c-Δ-ye [vowel root] {Rundi}
- P S-cy-Δ-ye [vowel root] {Rwanda}

/ntaabwo akijé Kubéëra akazi keénshi/ {Rwanda} 'He is not coming anymore because he has too much work.'
/ntaa mwaavu wúundi ukibonétse/ {Rundi} 'There is no other kind of fertilizer that is still available.' (R35.5)
/tugikoránye/ {both} '... that we are still working together.' (JN, Overdulve 1975:310)

118 relative negative persistive imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
- L S-ta-ki-Δ-a [voiced consonant] {both}
- L S-ta-gi-Δ-a [voiceless consonant] {both}
- L S-ta-c-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rundi}
- L S-ta-cy-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rwanda}

/ni twe tutákikubuura/ {Rundi} 'It is us who don't sweep anymore.'
/tutagikorana/ {both} '... that we no longer work together.' (JN, Overdulve 1975:311)
/atagikina/ {both} '... that he doesn't play anymore.' (JN, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:22)
/ntacaandika/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:197), /ntacyaandika/ {Rwanda} (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:222) '... that I do not write anymore.'
119 relative negative persistive perfective
TONE PATTERN:
L S-ta-γ-ι-Δ-ye
/tutagikoranye/ {both} '... that we are no longer working together.' (JN, Overdulve 1975:311)
/batagiteetse/ {both} '... who are not cooking anymore.' (JN, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:222)

8.3.7.1. Subject Relative Persistive {Rwanda only}
This exclusively Kinyarwanda construction is limited to persistive verbs that agree with a *n1-sg* subject of the sentence. Since the prefixes /-ki/, /-gi/ or /-cy/ start with a consonant, the relative prefix is /u-/ in both the affirmative and the negative. Nouns of all other classes are treated the same as object relatives.

120 subject relative affirmative persistive imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
1+L V-ki-∆-a [voiced consonant] {Rwanda only}
1+L V-gi-∆-a [voiceless consonant] {Rwanda only}
1+L V-cy-∆-a [vowel root] {Rwanda only}
/ukiririimba/ {Rwanda} 'who still sings' (Kimenyi 2002:204)
/ugikorana/ {Rwanda} 'who is still working with' [habitual] (Overdulve 1975:310)
/ugikina/ {Rwanda} 'who is still playing' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:220)
/ucyoongera/ {Rwanda} 'who does again' (Kimenyi 2002:204)

121 subject relative affirmative persistive perfective
TONE PATTERN:
1+L V-ki-∆-ye [voiced consonant] {Rwanda only}
1+L V-gi-∆-ye [voiceless consonant] {Rwanda only}
1+L V-cy-∆-ye [vowel root] {Rwanda only}
/ugikoranye/ {Rwanda} 'who is still working with' [current] (Overdulve 1975:310)
/ukirwaaye/ {Rwanda} 'who is still sick' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:220)

122 subject relative negative persistive imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
1+L V-ta-ki-∆-a [voiced consonant] {Rwanda only}
1+L V-ta-gi-∆-a [voiceless consonant] {Rwanda only}
1+L V-ta-cy-∆-a [vowel root] {Rwanda only}
/utagikorana naatwe/ {Rwanda} 'who is no longer working with us' (LN; cf: Overdulve 1975:311)
/utagikina/ {Rwanda} 'who does not play anymore' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:222)
/utakiiry/ {Rwanda} 'who no longer eats' [habitual] (LN)
/utacyaanitse/ {Rwanda} 'who no longer writing' [now] (LN)

123 subject relative negative persistive perfective
TONE PATTERN:
1+L V-ta-ki-∆-ye [voiced consonant] {Rwanda only}
1+L V-ta-gi-∆-ye [voiceless consonant] {Rwanda only}
1+L V-ta-cy-∆-ye [vowel root] {Rwanda only}
/utagikoranye naatwe/ {Rwanda} 'who is no longer working with us' (LN; cf: Overdulve 1975:311)
/utagikinnye/ {Rwanda} 'who is no longer playing' (LN)
/utakiiriiye/ {Rwanda} 'who is no longer eating' [now] (LN)
/utacyaanitse/ {Rwanda} 'who is no longer writing' [now] (LN)
8.3.8. Relative Inceptive or Punctual

A purely affirmative form exists in Rundi. When a negative or an interrogative heads the clause, the equivalent of an affirmative form also appears in Rwanda.

124 relative affirmative inceptive/punctual
TONE PATTERN:
F+R S-ráa-Δ-a {both}
/ntaa bitooke aráateera/ [Rundi] 'He still has not planted bananas.' (Cristini 2000:171, Rodegem 1967:50)
/ntaabwo uráabwiirwa kuúntamika/ {both} '... yet never are you told to give me a mouthful.' (R36.5, JN)
/ntaa majyaambere uráábóna?/ {both} 'Didn't you see Majyambere yet?' (JN, Bizimana 1998:265)
/ntaa cyo ndjábóna/ [Rwanda] 'I haven't seen anything yet'. (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:226)
/hari uumurimo aráakóra?/ [Rwanda] 'Has he done any chores yet?' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:226)

125 relative negative inceptive/punctual
TONE PATTERN:
F+R S-ta-ráa-Δ-a {both}
F+X S-ta-Δ-a [vowel root] {both}
/ingoórane zihagaze ku bavyéeyi bataráajíijuuka/ [Rundi] 'Difficulties are based upon parents who do not yet have an open mind.' (R39.4)
/uwó ntaratáatonganya agira ngo ngwa néézá/ [Rwanda] 'The one that I did not rebuke yet thinks that I am a nice person.' (Bizimana 1998:265)
/ntaráandika/ {both} '... that I did not yet write.' (Cristini 2000:198, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:224)
/bataróogosha/ [Rwanda] '... that they have not shaved yet.' (Kimenyi 2002:180)
/bataróongera/ [Rwanda] '... that they have not done yet.' (Kimenyi 2002:180)
/tutaráakórana/ {both} '... that we have not yet worked together.' (JN, Overdulve 1975:311)

8.3.8.1. Subject Relative Inceptive {Rwanda only}

Although subject relative constructions only occur in Kinyarwanda when the construction is in the negative, if a negative heads the clause, the equivalent of an affirmative will appear.

126 subject relative affirmative inceptive
TONE PATTERN:
F+R V-ráa-Δ-a {Rwanda only}
F+R V-r-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rwanda only}
/ntaa mwáarimú uráaza/ [Rwanda] 'No teacher has come yet.'
/ntaa muuntu uráasoonza/ [Rwanda] 'No one is hungry yet.'
/ntaa munyéeshuúri uráandika gútya/ [Rwanda] 'There is no student who has written like this yet.'

127 subject relative negative inceptive
TONE PATTERN

387 The only example presented for this particular conjugation is in error: /utáraakóra/ (Overdulve 1975:311) should be /utáráakóra/.
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

1+F+R V-tá-ráa-Δ-a {Rwanda only}
1+F+R V-tá-r-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rwanda only}

\(\text{utáráatema} / \text{Rwanda} \) 'he who has not yet cut' (Bizimana 1998:290)

\(\text{utáráasonozu} / \text{Rwanda} \) 'he who is not yet hungry' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:224)

\(\text{utáráandika} / \text{Rwanda} \) 'he who has not yet written' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:224)

8.4. Autonome

The autonome is the mood that changes a fully inflected verb into a noun. It is used in all tenses to designate the one who VERBS or those who VERB (with appropriate tense changes, e.g., who VERBed, who will VERB, etc.). The primary tonality of the autonome is the ARULE (high tone on the first vowel after the prefix). Neither dialect distinguishes conjoint from disjoint in this mood.

8.4.1. Autonome Immediate

The highest frequency use of the autonome is in the immediate tense, referring to habitual actions or permanent states, the present, the immediate past, the immediate future, or the narrative.

128 autonome affirmative immediate imperfective


**TONE PATTERN:**

\(A^+L \text{ cl-} \Delta-a \) {both} \(^{389}\)
\(A^2+L \text{ cl-} \Delta-a \) {vowel root} {both}
\(U^+X \text{ uú-} \Delta-a \) {both} \(^{390}\) n1-sg special prefix – the single vowel becomes double

\(\text{ahíítwa inoseenti hó mu butaliyááni} / \) {both} 'a place called Innocenti in Italy' (R6)

\(\text{abanywá kanyaanga} / \) {both} 'those who drink Kanyanga (moonshine)' (R24.5)

\(\text{uúsaba ntíyiihúta} / \) {Rwanda} 'The one who asks for something does not hurry up.' (Bizimana 1998:172)

\(\text{ubutáaha} / \) {both} 'next time' (JN, Bizimana 1998:233, Kimenyi 2002:7)

+ one object

**TONE PATTERN:**

\(A^+L \text{ cl-obj-} \Delta-a \) {both}
\(A^+X \text{ cl-obj-} \Delta-a \) {vowel root} {both}

\(\text{uwubáanka ntaákaraambe!} / \) {Rundi} 'May anyone who hates you not live a long life!' (Cristini 2000:203f)

\(\text{abah fpa ni abahjaangira} / \) {both} 'Those who quarrel over them are the ones who share them.' (JN, Bizimana 1998:330)

---

389 Kimenyi (2002:193–7) uses the term HEADLESS RELATIVE. He states (Op.cit.:193) "The headless relative verb – called autonome by Coupez and Meesuven – is always lowered on the the stem in the following tenses: present, recent past, remote past, future, present conditional, future conditional, 'not yet' tense and 'still'/not anymore' tense." Stevick (1965:267–9) has an excellent summary of what he calls AUTONOMOUS FORMS for Kirundi. Overdulve, in his otherwise comprehensive verb table (1975:310–311), fails to exemplify the autonome because his paradigms are limited to the first person plural pronoun (we) and the autonome only agrees with noun classes, not pronouns. He does present a few paradigms for what he terms CAS I. Even in his most recent edition (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:288–291) he prefers to designate this mood as relativ subjectif substantivé (nominalized subject relative), using AUTONOME as an alternate term.

390 Kimenyi (2002:201) associates the tonal placement with first syllable high tone assignment [our Trule]. We interpret the high tonality to be introduced by the autonome prefix. Much like the Irule seems to be characteristic of participial conjugations, the Arule seems to be the tonal hallmark of autonomes.

391 This construction is also recognized by Kimenyi (2002:193f,201f) but we associate it with the Xrule (loss of a subsequent high tone) rather than the Irule (intrinsc low tone).
/bitaama ntiyarí agíca ahabóna/ {both} 'Bitama dropped out of sight.' [lit. 'He was not passing anymore through a visible area there.'] (R25.3)

/ntihazóbúra uwuhávunikira/ {Rundi} 'Someone is quite likely to get hurt there.' (R23)

/abay inywa/ {both} 'the ones who drink it' (R24.4)

/arihó abay iroonka bagaca báyinyegeza/ {Rundi} 'There are those who get it and hide it right away.' (R33.6)

129 autonome affirmative immediate perfective
TONE PATTERN:
A+L cl-Δ-ye {both} 
A2+L cl-Δ-ye [vowel root] {both} 
U+X uú-Δ-ye {both} n1-sg special prefix 

/uúhagarikiwe n'íngwe aravooma/ {both} 'He who is protected by a leopard fetches water.' (Cristini 2000:172, Rodegem 1967:52)

/gisaabo yaámbaye ibisáanzwe/ {both} 'Gisabo wore casual attire.' (R5)

/urasa n'úurwaaye/ {Rwanda} 'You look like someone who is sick.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:290)

+ one object

/daatá azáaguhé urugúkwiye/ {Rwanda} 'May my father give you the love you deserve.' (R36.10)

/ikinéezereje nuukó nsaanzé dúhuuje/ {both} 'What makes me happy is that I see we agree.' (R1, JN)

130 autonome negative immediate imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
A+P cl-tá-Δ-a {both} 
A+P cl-t-Δ-a [vowel verb] {both} 
U+P uu-ta-Δ-a {both, mainly Rwanda} n1-sg special prefix 
U+P uu-t-Δ-a {vowel verb} {both, mainly Rwanda} n1-sg special prefix 

/ntaa kitágirá akamaro ndemá/ {both} 'Nothing I create is unimportant.' (R28.10)

/abadasábóra kuroonka amafaraanga/ {Rundi} 'the ones who cannot obtain the money' (R35.2)

/asínziriye ibidáshirá/ {both} 'He sleeps too much.' (Bizimana 1998:331)

/abatáandíka/ {both} 'those who do not write' (Cristini 2000:199, Overdulve 1975:232)

/uúteeméra/ {both} 'one who does not believe' (Cristini 2000:180, LN)

131 autonome negative immediate perfective
TONE PATTERN:
A+P cl-tá-Δ-ye {both} 
A+P cl-t-Δ-ye [vowel verb] {both} 
U+P uu-ta-Δ-ye {both, mainly Rwanda} n1-sg special prefix 
U+P uu-t-Δ-ye [vowel verb] {both, mainly Rwanda} n1-sg special prefix 

/ahatáahiiye/ {both} 'the places that did not burn' (Cristini 2000:180)

/uútakubúuye n'úmunebwe/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:180), /úútakubúuye n'úmunebwe/ {Rwanda}
(LN) 'One who does not sweep is lazy.' 

/uwudafísé/ {Rundi} 'one who does not have' (R33.4)

/abadásabyé/ {Rwanda} 'those who do not ask' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:289)

/ibítííhuuse imáana irabihuuta/ {Rwanda} 'Those which aren't rushed God pushes along.' [proverb] (Bizimana 1998:211)

+ one object
TONE PATTERN:
A+P2 cl-tá-Δ-ye {both}
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

/hari ahó bishiká kó biizéera uwutáb jshobóye/ {Rundi} (R11), /...úútah jshobóye/ {Rwanda}  
(LN) 'It can happen that people rely upon someone who is not up to it.'  
/abatáb jkúünze/ {both} 'those who do not like them' (LN)

8.4.2. Autonome Recent

The tense marker is short /a/ in weak inflections (those that start with a semivowel) and long /aa/ in strong inflections (those that start with a consonant); it is lost with vowel initial verbs. Note that while Kirundi has the simple imperfective suffix –a, Kinyarwanda has –aga. This construction refers to an action that has been completed on the same day of speaking about it. It can also refer to a habitual event in the recent past. Note that the number of objects does not affect the tone pattern: the one and only high tone falls on the second mora after the prefix in the affirmative (A2RULE) and immediately after the prefix (ARULE) in the negative.

132 autonome affirmative recent imperfective


TONE PATTERN:

\[
\begin{align*}
A2+L \text{ cl-a-} & \Delta \-a \text{ [weak] } \{\text{Rundi}\} \\
A2+L \text{ cl-aa-} & \Delta \-a \text{ [strong] } \{\text{Rundi}\} \\
A2+L \text{ cl-Ø-} & \Delta \-a \text{ [vowel root] } \{\text{Rundi}\} \\
A2+L \text{ cl-a-} & \Delta \-aga \text{ [weak] } \{\text{Rwanda}\} \\
A2+L \text{ cl-aa-} & \Delta \-aga \text{ [strong] } \{\text{Rwanda}\} \\
A2+L \text{ cl-Ø-} & \Delta \-aga \text{ [vowel root] } \{\text{Rwanda}\}
\end{align*}
\]

Note: the n1-sg special prefix uu- becomes uw- before the recent marker and follows the A2 tone rule.391

/abaábariira baarooneksi agahéembo/ {Rundi} 'Those who have sewn received a small wage.' (Cristini 2000:172)

/abaávuga/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:195), /abaávugaga/ {Rwanda} (LN) 'the ones who spoke (recently)'

/uwasabaga/ {Rwanda} 'one who just asked' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:289)

/abaásabaga/ {Rwanda} 'those who just asked' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:289)

/uwaándika/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:199), /uwaándikaga/ {Rwanda} (LN) 'one who just wrote'

/abuúbaka/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:199), /abuúbakaga/ {Rwanda} (LN) 'those who just built'

133 autonome affirmative recent perfective


TONE PATTERN:

\[
\begin{align*}
A2+L \text{ cl-a-ye } & \{\text{both}\} \\
A2+X \text{ cl-Ø-} & \Delta \-ye \text{ [vowel root] } \{\text{both}\}
\end{align*}
\]

Note: the n1-sg special prefix uu- becomes uw- before the recent marker and follows the A2 tone rule.

/uwasábye/ {Rundi} (JN), /uwasábye/ {Rwanda} (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:289) 'one who recently asked'

/uwiíbye/ {Rundi} (JN), /uwiíbye/ {Rwanda} (Bizimana 1998:291) 'one who was stealing (recently)'

/abiíbye/ {Rundi} (JN), /abiíbye/ {Rwanda} (Bizimana 1998:291) 'the ones who were stealing (recently)'

/abaákubuuye baari abakoóbwa/ {both} 'The ones who swept were girls.' (Cristini 2000:172, JN, LN)

«nta cyizere ko n’abakomeretse hashobora kuzakira» {Rwanda} 'There is no hope that even the ones who were injured might survive.' (R8.2)

391 Kimenyi (2002:194) proposes that "after syllabification, this tone is assigned ... to the third vowel from the left." Our characterization is that tone falls on the second mora after the prefix [A2rule]. Either is essentially correct. Here, as everywhere, the student should use the interpretation that assists him or her in learning proper tone placement.
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

«nta bwo yakizaga ku manza z'uwishe umuntu» {Rwanda} 'It never settled a dispute over someone who killed another person.' (R40.5)
/ababatabaye/ {both} 'those who defended' (Kimenyi 2002:194)
/aboogoshe/ {both} 'those who shaved' (Kimenyi 2002:194)
/aboongeye/ {both} 'those who did again' (Kimenyi 2002:194)

+ three objects
TONE PATTERN:
A2+L cl-a-obj-obj-obj-Δ-ye {both}
/hr/ uwa'hamunmandaangiye/ {both} 'Somebody showed him to me there.' (Ntahokaja 1994:116)

134 autonome negative recent imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
A+L cl-tá-a-Δ-a {Rundi}
A+L cl-tá-a-Δ-a-ga {Rwanda}
U+L wu-ta-a-Δ-a-ga n1-sg special prefix {mainly Rwanda}
/uwuutáakubuura yar' ikigáabá/ {Rundi} 'The one who did not sweep was disobedient.' (Cristini 2000:180)
/uwutasabaga/ {Rwanda} 'one who did not ask (recently)' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:289)
/abatáasabaga/ {Rwanda} 'the ones who have not asked (recently)' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:289)

135 autonome negative recent perfective
TONE PATTERN:
A+L cl-tá-a-Δ-ye {both}
U+L wu-ta-a-Δ-ye n1-sg special prefix {Rwanda}
/uuwtaasabye/ {Rwanda} 'one who has not asked (recently)' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:289)
/uuúaatemye/ {Rwanda} 'one who did not cut (recently)' (Bizimana 1998:291)
/uuúaatemye/ {Rwanda} 'one who did not steal (recently)' (Bizimana 1998:291)
/abatáasavye/ {Rundi} (JN), /abatáasbye/ {Rwanda} (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:289) 'those who have not asked (recently)'
/abatáatemye/ {both} 'those who did not cut (recently)' (Bizimana 1998:291)
/ahatáahiiye/ {both} 'a place that did not burn' (Rodegem 1967:59)

8.4.3. Autonome Preterit
The tonality of the autonome affirmative preterit forms winds up in most instances to be identical to that of the autonome recent.

136 autonome affirmative preterit imperfective
There is no distinction between recent and preterit forms in the affirmative.
TONE PATTERN:
A2+L cl-a-Δ-a {Rundi}
A2+L cl-a-Δ-ag-a {Rwanda}
Note: the n1-sg special prefix uu- becomes uw- before the recent marker and follows the A2 tone rule.
/ababariira baaronose agahéembo/ {Rundi} 'Those who had sewn received a small wage.' (Cristini 2000:172)
/uwasaabaga/ {Rwanda} 'he who asked' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:289)
/abaasabaga/ {Rwanda} 'they who asked' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:289)
+ one object
TONE PATTERN:
\[ A2+L \text{ cl-a-obj-}\Delta\text{-a} \{\text{Rundi}\} \]
\[ A2+L \text{ cl-a-obj-}\Delta\text{-aga} \{\text{Rwanda}\} \]
\[ /\text{wiigaanzuuye\ uwa} kú\text{gaanza} / \{\text{Rundi}\} \text{ (R21.3), /wiigaanzuuye\ uwa} kú\text{gaanzaga} / \{\text{Rwanda}\} \text{ 'You overcame the one who had dominated you.'} \]

137 autonome affirmative preterit perfective
TONE PATTERN:
\[ A2+L \text{ cl-a-}\Delta\text{-ye} \{\text{both}\} \]
\[ /\text{guhéembeera\ uwazímye} / \{\text{both}\} \text{ 'to try to smooth out a desperate situation' (JN, Jacob #1 1984:481)} \]
\[ /\text{umwáana\ avuutsé\ kú\ umwé mu\ baároongoranye} / \{\text{Rundi}\} \text{ 'a child who was born to only one of the married couple'} \{\text{R13}\} \]
\[ /\text{hari\ iryakomotse\ ku\ kirwa\ cyitwa\ Tobago} / \{\text{Rwanda}\} \text{ 'There was the kind that originated on an island called Tobago.' (R26.1)} \]
\[ /\text{sinaménye\ ibyaákurikiye\ hó} / \{\text{Rwanda}\} \text{ 'I did not realize what happened next.' (R34.4)} \]
\[ /\text{abaáshaakanye} / \{\text{Rwanda}\} \text{ 'those who got married' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:290)} \]
\[ /\text{akaáje\ karéemerwa} / \{\text{Rwanda}\} \text{ 'What has come about must be accepted.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:345)} \]

+ one object
TONE PATTERN:
\[ A2+L \text{ cl-a-obj-}\Delta\text{-ye} \{\text{both}\} \]
\[ Note: the n1-sg special prefix uw becomes uw before the preterit marker \]
\[ /\text{icaá\ ku\ riíye\ ntúkigéra\ inkoni} / \{\text{Rundi}\} \text{ 'You do not threaten with a stick that which has bitten you.' [proverb] (Rodegem 1967:52)} \]
\[ /\text{igihúuza\ umwáana\ n'ábaámuuvaaye} / \{\text{Rundi}\} \text{ '... that which unites the child with those who gave him birth.' (R13)} \]
\[ /\text{sinzáanga\ uwa} n'kúunze / \{\text{Rwanda}\} \text{ 'I will not hate the one who loved me.' (Bizimana 1998:257)} \]
\[ /\text{n'úwaá\ guhaanze\ aguhoré\ haáfi} / \{\text{Rwanda}\} \text{ '... and may your creator always be close to you.' (R36.10)} \]
\[ /\text{ntaa\ waánka\ uwa} mú\ haaye / \{\text{Rundi}\} \text{ 'No one hates his benefactor.' [lit. 'There is no one who hates the one who gave him.'] \]

+ two objects
TONE PATTERN:
\[ A2+L \text{ cl-a-obj-}\Delta\text{-ye} \{\text{weak}\} \]
\[ /\text{uwa} kúum\ paaye / \{\text{both}\} \text{ 'he who gave you to me' (Cristini 2000:156)} \]

138 autonome negative preterit imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
\[ A+2+L \text{ cl-tá-á-} \{\text{Rundi}\} \]
\[ A+2+L \text{ cl-tá-á-a-} \{\text{Rwanda}\} \]
\[ U+2+L \text{ cl-ta-á-a-} \text{ n1-sg special prefix} \{\text{Rwanda}\} \]
\[ /\text{uwutáákubuura\ yarágiyiye\ mw'lisóko} / \{\text{Rundi}\} \text{ 'The one who did not sweep went to the marketplace.' (Cristini 2000:180)} \]
\[ /\text{uutáásabaga} / \{\text{Rwanda}\} \text{ 'one who did not ask (formerly)' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:289)} \]
\[ /\text{abatáásabaga} / \{\text{Rwanda}\} \text{ 'the ones who did not ask (formerly)' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:289)} \]

139 autonome negative preterit perfective
TONE PATTERN:
\[ A+2+L \text{ cl-tá-á-} \{\text{Rundi}\} \]
\[ A+2+L \text{ cl-t-} \text{Ø-} \text{ ye} \{\text{vowel root}\} \]
8.4.4. Autonome Conditional

The conditional tense in Kinyarwanda and Kirundi when in the autonome creates a nominal expressing some EVENTUALITY or ACTUAL POSSIBILITY realizable on the same day of speaking (in the imperfective similar to English one who would) or an UNREALIZED EVENT or an UNFULFILLED POSSIBILITY (in the perfective similar to English one who would have).

140 autonome affirmative conditional imperfective

TONE PATTERN:
A2+L cl-oó-Δ-a {Rundi}
A2+L cl-oó+kw-Δ-a {Rundi}
A2+L cl-áá-Δ-a {Rwanda}
A2+L cl-áá+kw-Δ-a {Rwanda}

Note: the n1-sg special prefix úú- becomes uw- before the conditional marker.

/íco nabúze ni uwoóva haasi ngo ambúranire/ {Rundi} 'What I've never had is anyone to stand up for me and take my side.' (R19)
/uoóbariira náagiré gúrtyo/ {Rundi} 'He who would sew should do it that way.' (Cristini 2000:172, JN)
/uwaáshiimuuta inká/ {Rwanda} 'one who would steal cows' (Overdulve 1975:244,246)
/uwaákwiiba/ {Rwanda} 'one who would steal' (Bizimana 1998:291)
/aboókwuubaka {Rundi} 'those who would build' (Cristini 2000:199)
/abaákwoogosha/ {Rwanda} 'those who would shave' (Kimenyi 2002:196)
/abaákwoongera/ {Rwanda} 'those who would do again' (Kimenyi 2002:196)

+ one object

TONE PATTERN:
A2+L cl-oó-obj-Δ-a {Rundi}
A2+L cl-áá-obj-Δ-a {Rwanda}

Note: the n1-sg special prefix úú- becomes uw- before the conditional marker.

/ngo tugeendé tureebé icyaátmara impáká/ {Rwanda} 'Come, let's go find some way to settle our dispute.' (R28.2)
/uwaámpa ijaambo muu náama/ {Rwanda} 'If someone would let me speak at a meeting ...' (R32)
/icoómpa ntaázoózé/ {Rundi} 'I wish [lit. 'It would give me'] he would not come!' (Cristini 2000:282)

141 autonome affirmative conditional perfective
See: Overdulve 1975:245

TONE PATTERN:
A2+L cl-áá-ye {Rwanda}

Note: the n1-sg special prefix úú- becomes uw- before the conditional marker.

/uwaáshiimuuse inká/ {Rwanda} 'the one who would have stolen cows' (Overdulve 1975:245)
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

+ two objects

TONES PATTERN:
A2+L cl-oó-obj-Δ-ye {Rundi}
A2+L cl-áá-obj-Δ-ye {Rwanda}
/uwooózitubariiyeye/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:172), /uwaáztubariiryeye/ {Rwanda} (LN) ‘one who could sew it for us’

142 Autonome negative conditional imperfective

TONES PATTERN:
A+L cl-t-oo-Δ-a {Rundi}
A+L cl-t-aa-Δ-a {Rwanda}
U+L uu-t-aa-Δ-a {Rwanda} n1-sg special prefix
U+L uu-t-aa+kw-Δ-a [vowel root] n1-sg special prefix
/uwutóókubura yooba mubí/ {Rundi} ‘One who would not sweep is negligent.’ (Cristini 2000:180)
/abatóovuga/ {Rundi} ‘those who would not speak’ (Cristini 2000:195)
/abatáatema/ {Rwanda} ‘those who would not cut’ (Bizimana 1998:291)
/uutáaatemya/ {Rwanda} ‘one who would not cut’ (Bizimana 1998:291)
/abatáakwiba/ {Rwanda} ‘those who would not steal’ (Bizimana 1998:291)
/uutáakwiba/ {Rwanda} ‘one who would not steal’ (Bizimana 1998:291)

+ one object

TONES PATTERN:
A+L cl-t-oo-obj-Δ-a {Rundi}
A+L cl-t-aa-obj-Δ-a {Rwanda}
U+L uu-t-aa-obj-Δ-a {mostly Rwanda} n1-sg special prefix
/uutáagukundo ntaacyo yaabá amáze/ {Rwanda} ‘He who would not love you would be useless.’ (R36.8)
/abatáahitema/ {Rwanda} ‘those who would not cut them’ (LN)

143 Autonome negative conditional perfective

TONES PATTERN:
A+L cl-t-oo-Δ-ye {Rundi}
A+L cl-t-aa-Δ-ye {Rwanda}
/abatóókubuye baashitse kare/ {Rundi} ‘Those who would not sweep have arrived late.’ (Cristini 2000:180)
/abatáasogoose/ {Rwanda} ‘those who would not stab’ (Coupez 1980:450 #40)
/abatáaraasaaze/ {Rwanda} ‘those who would not incise’ (Coupez 1980:450 #40)

8.4.5. Autonome Future
This mood and tense combination creates an ANTICIPATORY NOMINAL implying that the action will occur tomorrow or later.393 There is no tonally-marked conjoint/disjoint distinction.

144 Autonome affirmative future

TONES PATTERN:
A+T cl-zóo-Δ-a {Rundi}
A+T cl-zóo+kw-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rundi}

393 The "today" future is expressed by the immediate with -ra- (§8.1.1).
A+R cl-záa-Δ-a [Rwanda]
A+X cl-z-Δ-a [vowel root] [Rwanda]
U+F+R úú-záa-Δ-a [consonant root] [Rwanda] n1-sg special prefix
U+L úú-z-Δ-a [vowel root] [Rwanda]394 n1-sg special prefix
/abazóosándga/ [Rundi] 'those who will be found' (Cristini 2000:185)
/voomera zóóse ntuúbá uzi izizóokweera karé/ [Rundi] 'Water all of them, because you don’t know which one will bear fruit first.' (Cristini 2000:172);
/izizééra/ [Rwanda] 'those which will bear fruit' (LN)
/núúzáashobora kuúííura undí azáamwiímure/ [Rwanda] 'Whoever will be able to throw the other out, should do so.' (R28.10)
/abazáákórera/ [Rwanda] 'those who will serve' (Overdulve 1975:231)
/uúzáatéma/ [Rwanda] 'one who will cut' (Bizimana 1998:291)
/abaáziía/ [Rwanda] 'those who will steal' (Bizimana 1998:291)
/uúzáakóra/ [Rwanda] 'one who will work' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:289)
/uúzáasaba/ [Rwanda] 'those who will ask' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:289)
/uúziiba/ [Rwanda] 'one who will steal' (Bizimana 1998:291)

145 autonome negative future
TONE PATTERN:
A+T cl-ta-zoo-Δ-a [Rundi]
A+F+R cl-tá-záa-Δ-a [Rwanda]
U+R uú-ta-záa-Δ-a [vowel root] [Rwanda] n1-sg special prefix
/uútaaziiba/ [Rwanda] 'one who would not steal' (Bizimana 1998:291)

8.4.6. Autonome Conditional Future {Rwanda only}
This tense and affix combination is only found in Kinyarwanda and refers to a nominalized conditional action at least one day in the future. Like the indicative and relative and unlike the participial, it is conjugated in both the imperfective and perfective.

146 autonome affirmative conditional future imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
A2+L cl-aá-zaa-Δ-a [Rwanda only]
U+L úú-t-aá-zaa-Δ-a [vowel root] [Rwanda] n1-sg special prefix
/uútaazáaamurá/ [Rwanda] 'the ones who would defend' (Kimenyi 2002:197)
/abázaakóra/ [Rwanda] 'those who would shave' (Kimenyi 2002:197)
/uútaazáaamurá/ [Rwanda] 'the ones who would steal' (Bizimana 1998:291)

394 Kimenyi (2002:194) in speaking of headless relatives with the uú- prefix states that “high tone on the vowel prefix but low tones elsewhere are noted in the affirmative future tense, affirmative and negative conditional, ‘still’ and ‘not anymore’ tenses.” He does not give supporting examples for the future tense, which has other tone rules when the full autonome prefix (aba-, aka-, ubu-, etc.) is present. The stated tonality (U+L) for autonome affirmative future applies only to vowel roots, consonant roots have a different tonal pattern (U+F+R).
147 autonome affirmative conditional future perfective
TONE PATTERN:
A2+L cl-aá-zaa-∆-ye {Rwanda only}
/abaázaatemye/ [Rwanda] 'the ones who would cut'
/abaáziibye/ [Rwanda] 'the ones who would steal'

148 autonome negative conditional future imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
A+L cl-t-áa-zaa-∆-a {Rwanda only}
U+L uu-t-aa-zaa-∆-a {Rwanda only} n1-sg special prefix
//úutaazaatema/ [Rwanda] 'one who would not cut' (Bizimana 1998:291)
//úutaaziba/ [Rwanda] 'one who would not steal' (Bizimana 1998:291)
//abatáazaaririmba/ [Rwanda] 'those who would not sing' (Kimenyi 2002:197)
//abatáaziiiba/395 [Rwanda] 'those who would not steal' (Bizimana 1998:291)
//abatáazoogosha/396 [Rwanda] 'those who would not shave' (Kimenyi 2002:197)

149 autonome negative conditional future perfective
TONE PATTERN:
A+L cl-t-áa-zaa-∆-ye {Rwanda only}
U+L uu-t-aa-zaa-∆-ye {Rwanda only} n1-sg special prefix
//úutaazaatemye/ [Rwanda] 'one who would not cut'
//abaátaaziibye/ [Rwanda] 'those who would not steal'

8.4.7. Autonome Persistive
This mood and tense combination creates a PERSISTIVE NOMINAL. In the affirmative it has the sense of one who still VERB and in the negative it has the sense of those who no longer VERB, one who does not VERB anymore. All are marked by high tone immediately after the prefix (ARULE), excepting uu-, and loss of any root tonality (LRULE). There is no tonally-marked conjoint/disjoint distinction. Because tonality falls exclusively on the first vowel after the prefix, the presence of one or more objects will not make any tonal difference.

150 autonome affirmative persistive imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
A+L cl-ki-∆-a [voiced consonant]
A+L cl-gi-∆-a [voiceless consonant]
A+L cl-c-∆-a [vowel root] {Rundi}
A+L cl-cy-∆-a [vowel root] {Rwanda}
U+L uu-ki-∆-a [voiced consonant] {mostly Rwanda} n1-sg special prefix
U+L uu-gi-∆-a [voiceless consonant] {mostly Rwanda} n1-sg special prefix
U+L uu-cy-∆-a [vowel root] {Rwanda} n1-sg special prefix
//uwukibaasha kwirega yooshikiira umusáserdoóti/ [Rundi] 'One who can still confess should see a priest.' (Rodegem 1967:52)
//abagítema/ [both] 'those who still cut' (Bizimana 1998:291)
//abagísaba/ [both] 'those who still ask' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:289)
//abacyíiba/ [Rwanda] 'those who still steal' (Bizimana 1998:291)
//uúgisaba/ [Rwanda] 'one who still asks' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:289)

395 Erroneously cited as /abaátaaziiba/.
396 Erroneously cited as /abatáakwoogosha/.
151 autonome affirmative persistive perfective
TONE PATTERN:
A+L cl-ki-Δ-ye [voiced consonant] {both}
A+L cl-gf-Δ-ye [voiceless consonant] {both}
A+L cl-c-Δ-ye [vowel root] {Rundi}
A+L cl-cy-Δ-ye [vowel root] {Rwanda}
U+L uu-gi-Δ-ye [voiceless consonant] n1-sg special prefix
/uúcyiiba/ {Rwanda} 'one who still steals' (Bizimana 1998:291)

152 autonome negative persistive imperfective
TONE PATTERN:
A+L cl-tá-ki-Δ-a [voiced consonant] {both}
A+L cl-tá-gi-Δ-a [voiceless consonant] {both}
U+L uu-ta-ki-Δ-a [voiceless consonant] {mostly Rwanda}
U+L uu-ta-cy-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rwanda}
/ingwaano igahera ubutágisubiira/ {Rundi} '... and the war comes to an end once and for all.' (R37.6)
/uútakivuga/ {both} 'he who is no longer talking anymore' (Rodegem 1967:59)
/uwutákikubuura n’ásomé/ {Rundi} 'He who is no longer sweeping should read.' (Cristini 2000:180, JN)

8.4.8. Autonome Inceptive
This mood and tense combination creates an INCEPTIVE NOMNINAL. A purely affirmative form exists in Rundi with the meaning one who has already VERBed. When a negative or an interrogative heads the clause, the equivalent of an affirmative form also appears in Rwanda. Both dialects have a negative form with the meaning of one who has not yet VERBed. Neither dialect maintains a conjoint/disjoint nor any imperfective/perfective distinction.

154 autonome affirmative inceptive {mostly Rundi}
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

TONE PATTERN:
F+R cl-ráa-∆-a {both}
/abarabariira/ [Rundi] 'Those who would have already sewn ...' (Cristini 2000:172)
/ntaa kiráakórwa/ [both] 'Nothing has been done so far.' (JN, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:290)

155 autonome negative inceptive
TONE PATTERN:
A+F+R cl-tá-ráa-∆-a {both}
U+F+R uú-ta-ráa-∆-a {Rwanda} n1-sg special prefix
/uwutaráavúga/ [Rundi] 'he who has not yet spoken' (Cristini 2000:195)
/uútaráahaaga/ [both] 'he who is not yet full' (Rodegem 1967:59)
/abataráavúga/ [both] 'those who have not yet spoken' (Cristini 2000:195)
/abataráakóra/ [both] 'those who have not yet worked' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:289)
A+R cl-tá-raa-∆-a {Rundi alt}397
/uwutaráabariira ntaátaahe/ [Rundi] 'He who did not sew yet should not go home.' (Cristini 2000:181)
/akatáraabóneka/ [Rundi] (JN), /akatáráabóneka/ [Rwanda] (Jacob 1987 #3:281) 'excellence, superbness; [atr] without precedent or equal' [lit. 'what is not yet seen']

8.5. Subjunctive

The subjunctive is broadly used to express a wish or an obligation.398 It is used for all other verbs following an imperative (see §8.7). There is no tonally-marked conjoint/disjoint distinction. In Rundi, first person singular constructions always have -ra-, i.e., nda- AFFIRMATIVE or sinda-NEGATIVE.

8.5.1. Immediate Subjunctive

The immediate subjunctive expresses a wish or an obligation perceived in the present. Following the preprefix ni it carries the meaning should, and is used in giving ENCOURAGEMENT or making a POLITE COMMAND.

/nimusabé muzoohaabwa/ [Rundi] 'Ask and you shall receive.' (Cristini 2000:206)
/nimukuundáne/ [both] 'Love one another.' (Cristini 2000:207, LN)
/nidusóme/ [Rwanda] 'We should read.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:86)
/nibaandíke/ [Rwanda] 'We should write.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:86)

Preceded by a construction implying some future event, it indicates a CONSECUTIVE ACTION.

/mu cyúumweéeru gitaahá bazaaza tugiré ináama dusuuzúme/ [Rwanda] 'They will come next week and we will hold a meeting and we will investigate.' (Overdulve 1975:250)

156 subjunctive affirmative immediate

TONE PATTERN:
P S-A-e
/erega bahuúngu dutaahé/ [both] 'Hey, guys, let's go home!' (R14)
/nimugeendé mutuuruáne/ [both] 'You should go and be neighbors.' (R28.10)

397 Juvenal Ndayiragije (pc) brought this alternate Kirundi tone pattern to our attention. It may be that forms without high tone on the -raa/- are functioning as TRUE NOUNS with the A+R rules rather than AUTONOMES with the A+F+R rules. One such example is /ntáraabóna/ [both] 'inexperienced person' (see §3.1.2.3). Also see the example /akatáraabóneka/ [Rundi] 'excellence' immediately below.

398 See Overdulve & Jacob (1998:305f) for an excellent overview.
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

/tugwaanyé ingwáara y'igituúntu/ {Rundi} 'Let's combat tuberculosis.' (R31)
/yiigáye/ {both} 'He should be ashamed of himself.' (Cristini 2000:204)

+ one object
TONE PATTERN:

P2 S-obj-Δ-e
/imáana imwaákiire mu bwaámi bwáayo/ {both} 'May God receive her into His kingdom.' (R17.8, JN)
/hoshi dusaangé imáana idukizé/ {both} 'Let's go find God, so that he should settle our dispute.' (R28.9)
/dükiráanure utubwiire úúrusha undí akamaro/ {both} 'Settle our dispute and tell us who is more important.' (R28.10, JN)
/ndabantamagare?/ {Rundi} 'Should I call them?' (Cristini 2000:205)
/mbiókore ubu nyíne?/ {Rwanda} 'Should I do it right now?' (LN)

+ two or three objects
TONE PATTERN:

O2+L S-obj-obj-obj-Δ-e {both}
/ndabibáwiire?/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:205), /mbiháwiire?/ {Rwanda} (LN) 'Should I tell it to them?'
/abikúumupere/ {both} 'He should give them to you for me.' (Ntahokaja 1994:116)

157 subjunctive negative immediate

The negative subjunctive is used to give NEGATIVE COMMANDS or wishes. It also has a special function expressing NEGATIVE SEQUENCE CONSTRUCTIONS (i.e., without the sequence marker –ka–, see §8.12 below).


TONE PATTERN:

2+L nti-S-Δ-e {both}
/ntuúbeere/ {Rwanda} 'Be impartial!' (R28.3)
/ntuúrye inyama/ {both} 'You should not eat meat.' (Cristini 2000:205)
/ntumúraabe/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:205), /ntimúreebe/ {Rwanda} (LN) 'Don't look!'
/ntuwíibe/ {both} 'You should not steal!' (Rodegem 1967:67)

Here are some examples of SEQUENTIAL statements.

/abagabo barakóra abáana ntibákore/ {both} 'Men work, but children do not.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:218, JN)
/akora buhóro ntaábone ighéembo/ {Rwanda} 'He works slowly so he does not earn any salary.' (Overdulve 1975:250, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:217)

+ one object
TONE PATTERN:

2+L nti-S-obj-Δ-e {both}
/aríko nyaa súkaári ntitúyibone/ {Rundi} '... but we could not get that sugar.' (R33.2, JN)
/waahuurá n'íizúuba ntitúrive imbere/ {Rwanda} 'If you meet the sun and yet don't get out of its way ... ' (R28.1)

399 Kimenyi (2002:188) calls this the NEGATIVE IMPERATIVE NEAR FUTURE.
8.5.2. Future Subjunctive

The future subjunctive expresses a wish or an obligation which should be completed or carried out at some point in the future. In many instances it can be translated by English *would*. However, since English lacks any equivalent construction, conveying its exact sense may literally have to include words such as *in the future*.

158 subjunctive affirmative future


TONE PATTERN:
- F+P S-zóo-Δ-e {Rundi}
- F+P S-záa-Δ-e {Rwanda}
- F+P S-z-Δ-e [vowel root]

/abaári báaratáangiye bazáakoméze/ {Rwanda} 'The ones who had started should continue.' (Bizimana 1998:298)

/azóogaráke/ {Rundi} 'He would return.' (Cristini 2000:205)

/úúzáashobora kwíimura undí azzáamwiimure/ {Rwanda} 'Whoever will be able to throw the other out, should do so.' (R28.10)

/uzóohéreze iyí báruwá/ {Rwanda} 'You should send this letter.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:173)

+ one object

TONE PATTERN:
- F+P2 S-zóo-obj-Δ-e {Rundi}
- F+P2 S-záa-obj-Δ-e {Rwanda}

/uzóo ntabáare/ {Rundi} 'You would help me.' (Cristini 2000:205)

/daatá azáaghé urugúkwiïye/ {Rwanda} 'May our father give you the one (love) you deserve.' (R36.10)

/úúzáashobora kwíimura undí azzáamwiimure/ {Rwanda} 'Whoever will be able to throw the other out, he should expel him.' (R28.10)

159 subjunctive negative future


TONE PATTERN:
- 2+T nti-S-zoo-Δ-e {Rundi}
- 2+L nti-S-zaa-Δ-e {Rwanda}
- 2+L nti-S-z-Δ-e [vowel root] {Rwanda}

/síinzookóré/ {Rundi} 'I would not work (in the future).' (Cristini 2000:205)

/ntuúzáakore/ {Rwanda} 'You should not work (in the future).' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:172)

/ntáázoogáruke/ {Rundi} 'He should not come back anymore.' (Cristini 2000:205)

/ntimúzoomére nkaabo/ {Rundi} 'You should not be like them!' (Cristini 2000:205)

/ntibázoongere/ {Rwanda} 'They should not do again.' (Kimenyi 2002:187)

/ntuúzáange/ {Rwanda} 'You should not refuse.' (R28.8)

In Kinyarwanda, this can also function as a sequential statement, in which the prefix -ka- does not appear.

/ntibázaataahe ku gihe/ {Rwanda} '... and they will not come back on time.' (Overdulve 1975:250)

8.5.3. The Gerund Construction

Essentially the gerund is an AUXILIARY CONSTRUCTION composed of the COPULATIVE –rí (always inflected with a high tone) plus a SUBJUNCTIVE verb invariably in n8-sg. Rundi uses a n8-sg subjunctive verb in an adverbial construction similar to the kind described in §3.2.8.4 which is interpreted by Cristini to be an invariable relative participle. Its present tense form, the most
common, implies that an action is expected to occur within the same day of speaking. In the past, it implies an anticipated action in a previous time frame.\textsuperscript{400}

\textbf{160 gerundive adverbial} \{Rundi only\}
TONE PATTERN:
\begin{verbatim}
P bu-Δ-e
\end{verbatim}
/\textit{barakóra bukoré}/ 'They work \textit{with all their might}.' (Cristini 2000:210)
/\textit{nyáa mwíana yakóze bukoré}/ 'That child has worked \textit{with all his might}.' (Rodegem 1967:68)
/\textit{bataangaara butaangáare}/ \{Rundi\} 'They are surprised \textit{beyond surprise}.' (Cristini 2000:210)

\textbf{161 gerundive affirmative present}
TONE PATTERN:
\begin{verbatim}
P S-rí bu-Δ-e
\end{verbatim}
/\textit{ari bupfé}/ \{both\} 'He is about to die.' (Cristini 2000:210)
/\textit{abari bukiri}/ \{both\} 'Those who will survive ...' (Cristini 2000:210)
/\textit{izó uri buteeké}/ \{both\} 'Some that \textit{you will cook} ...' (R18)
\textit{« nibwiraga ko ab'imuhira bari buburare»} \{Rwanda\} 'I assumed that my family \textit{would go to bed hungry}.' (R34.3)

+ one object
TONE PATTERN:
\begin{verbatim}
P2 S-rí bu-obj-Δ-e \{both\}
\end{verbatim}
/\textit{abaantu bari buumpé akazi}/ \{both\} 'The people are going to give \textit{me} work.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:199, JN)
/\textit{incuti yaanjye irí buusűre}/ \{Rwanda\} 'My friend is going to visit \textit{me}.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:199)
/\textit{baragerageza ukuuntu bari bubigéenée}/ \{both\} 'They are trying a way that they will deal with \textit{it}.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:199, JN)

+ two objects
TONE PATTERN:
\begin{verbatim}
O2+L S-rí bu-obj-obj-Δ-e \{both\}
\end{verbatim}
/\textit{bari bubidűhe ku buuntu}/ \{both\} 'They will give \textit{it to us} for free.' (Bizimana 1998:334)

\textbf{162 gerundive negative present}
Note that the negative marker occurs on the auxiliary verb –\textit{ri}, never the gerund.
TONE PATTERN:
\begin{verbatim}
P S-ta-rí bu-Δ-e \{both\}
\end{verbatim}
/\textit{sindi buyugé}/ \{both\} 'I will not talk.' (Cristini 2000:210, Ntahokaja 1976:15)
/\textit{ntari bugiré iruungu}/ \{both\} 'He \textit{won't feel} lonely.' (Cristini 2000:210)
/\textit{nta kiíndi ndí bugiré}/ \{Rundi\} 'There is nothing else that \textit{I can do}.' (Cristini 2000:210)

\textsuperscript{400} Cristini 2000:210 makes it clear that Kirundi only has two gerundive tenses: present and past. Kimenyi 2002:207 states that Kinyarwanda has three: "present, future and past." However, he only exemplifies the affirmative present, giving no indication of what the tonality of the future might be. Coupez, the largest Kinyarwanda grammar, only treats the gerund in its present or immediate tense (1980:458). The same is true for Overdulve 1975:169f and Overdulve & Jacob 1998:198f. It is only the monolingual grammar of Kinyarwanda (Bizimana 1998:293) that presents any data for the FUTURE GERUND, which refers to an eventual action and has the tonal pattern F+P in both the affirmative and negative.
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

/mubwiire yúukó ntarí buuzé/ {both} 'Tell him that I will not come.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:198, JN)
/aba banyéeshuúri ntibari_bwiigé/ {both} 'These students are not going to study.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:199, JN)
/iikiintu tutarí bukoré/ {both} 'the thing which we are not going to make' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:199, JN) [relative construction]
/bagiiye i kigali ntibari_bugarúke vubá/ {both} 'They’re going to Kigali and they will not come back soon.' (Overdulve 1975:170, JN)

+ one object
TONE PATTERN:
   P2 S-ta-rí bu-obj-∆-e {both}
/ntibari bugusigé/ {both} 'They won’t leave you (behind).' (Bizimana 1998:293)

163 gerundive affirmative past
TONE PATTERN:
   1+P S-rí bw-áa-∆-e
/twaari bwaapfé/ {both} 'We would have died.' (Cristini 2000:210)
/náaakavúuka ntáho nari_bwaavyuúmyve/ [Rundi] 'In my life [lit. and I having been born] I had never heard such a thing.' (Cristini 2000:213)

164 gerundive negative past
TONE PATTERN:
   1+P nti-S-rí bw-áa-∆-e
Note: This has the sense of the inceptive negative, but in the past, i.e., not yet.
/ntivyáaři bwáashiké/ [Rundi] 'It had never happened before.' (Cristini 2000:211)
/sinari bwaabibóne/ {both} 'I had never seen that.' (Cristini 2000:211)
/ntibaari bwaavyuuké/ [Rundi] (Cristini 2000:211), /ntibaari bwaabyuuké/ [Rwanda] (LN) 'They were not up yet.'

† gerundive future {Rwanda only, not commonly used}
TONE PATTERNS:
   F+P S-rí bu-záa-∆-e {Rwanda only, affirmative}
   F+P nti-S-rí bu-záa-∆-e {Rwanda only, negative}
/ndí buzáamutumé/ [Rwanda] 'I will eventually send him off'. (Bizimana 1998:293)
/síndi buzáamutumé/ [Rwanda] 'I will not eventually send him off.' (Bizimana 1998:293)

8.6. Infinitive
An INFINITIVE fully shares the properties of verb and noun. It can be translated either by to VERB or by VERBing. Although the basic infinitive form loses the preinitial vowel of the n9 prefix, this vowel is restored in copulative and certain absolute constructions. Coordination of infinitives is accomplished with the conjunction /nó/.

/umwuuga wáabo ní uguhiiga nó kuroba/ {both} 'Their livelihood is hunting and fishing.' (38.1, JN)
/kuvúga nó kwúuma/ [Rundi] (Cristini 2000:325), /kuvúga nó kúumva/ [Rwanda] (LN) 'to speak and to listen'

165 infinitive affirmative immediate
TONE PATTERN:
- R ku-Δ-a [before voiced consonant] {both}
- R gu-Δ-a [before voiceless consonant] {both}
- R kw-Δ-a [vowel root] {both}
- R k-Δ-a [before o or u] {Rwanda}

/twihiáatire gusoma/ [Rwanda] 'We should make every effort to read.' (R4)
« niko gufata akandi gatelefone ka mugenzi we » {both} 'So then he took another cell phone from his friend.' (R7)
« i Kibungo habereye umuhango wo kurekura abagororwa » [Rwanda] 'In Kibungo, a ceremony was held releasing 148 prisoners.' (R8.1)
/kwóogosha/ [both] 'to shave' (Kimenyi 2002:172)
/kwiitabaara/ [both] 'to defend oneself' (Kimenyi 2002:198)

infinitive full affirmative
TONE PATTERN:
- R uku-Δ-a [before voiced consonant] {both}
- R ugu-Δ-a [before voiceless consonant] {both}
- R ukw-Δ-a [vowel root] {both}
- R uk-Δ-a [before o or u] {Rwanda}

/kókó uri mwiíza si ukubëeshya/ [Rwanda] 'You are truly good, it is no lie.' (R36.1)
/ukubáza guteera ukumenya/ [Rundi] 'To ask causes to know.' (Cristini 2000:209, Rodegem 1967:63)
/ukubahó/ [both] 'existence' [lit. 'to be there'] (Rodegem 1967:130)
/ukoongeera/ [Rwanda] 'to add' (Jacob #2 1986:507)
/ukwíikuza kwáawe/ [both] 'your boasting' (R28.2)

+ one object
TONE PATTERN:
- O ku-obj-Δ-a [both]

/ukiiriinda kuhkubaganya/ [both] '... and you avoid disturbing them.' (R18)
/yánániwe kuyigumiisha mu muhaanda/ [Rwanda] 'He failed to keep it on the road.' (R16)
/ashobora kugikubita/ [both] 'She can hit you.' (R22)
/abaantu ahó kuunshiimira baritweengera/ [both] 'Instead of thanking me, people just laugh.' (R19)
/inkezi zikaama ziiza kubúrya/ [Rundi] 'Mice continually came to eat it.' (R27.1)
/kugira babaandáanye kuubazímba/ [Rundi] '... so that they can continue overcharging them.' (R35.5)
/si ukukibuuranira/ [both] 'It is not to defend it (the language).’ (Ntahokaja 1976:i, LN)

+ two objects
TONE PATTERN:
- O+T ku-obj-obj-Δ-a [Rundi]
- O+R ku-obj-obj-Δ-a [Rwanda]

/mu kubituruungikira/ [Rundi] 'in sending them to us' (Cristini 2000:188,209)
/kubimukóréra/ [both] 'to do it for him' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:326, JN)
/kukíbasomera/ [Rwanda] 'to read it for them' (LN)

166 infinitive negative immediate
TONE PATTERN:
- A+P ku-tá-Δ-a [before voiced consonant] {both}
- A+P ku-dá-Δ-a [before voiceless consonant] {both}
- A+P ku-t-Δ-a [vowel root] {both}

/ubukéne eka nó kutámenyá/ [Rundi] 'poverty and ignorance' (R31.2)
/kutíigáanda mfásha n’ábaándi/ [Rwanda] 'not to delay in helping others' (R36.7)
/yaríiyaamirije icítwaazo c'úbukéné có kutáruungíka abáana kwiishuúre/ {Rundi} 'He rejected poverty as an excuse not to send children to school.' (39.4)
/kudáshiíma/ {both} 'not to be satisfied' (Cristini 2000:209, LN)

infinitive full negative
/ukutábwirírikanya ni kwo kutubúza gutéera imbere/ {both} 'The lack of consultation is the reason why we don't advance.' (Ntahokaja 1994:72)

+ one object
TONE PATTERN:
A+P2 ku-tá-obj-∆-a {Rundi}
A+T ku-tá-obj-∆-a {Rwanda}
/kutábišiíma/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:209, Rodegem 1967:64), /kutábišiíma/ 'not to be satisfied with them'
/kutábišába/ {Rwanda} 'not to ask for them' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:285, JN)

167 infinitive affirmative future
TONE PATTERN:
F+T ku-zóo-∆-a {Rundi}
L ku-zaa-∆-a {Rwanda}
/kuzóóroonka/ {Rundi} 'to receive in the future' (Cristini 2000:209, Rodegem 1967:64)
«bakemera kugura ibiro bike cane ku vyo bategekanya kuzogura» {Rundi} 'And they resign themselves to buying fewer kilos than what they were looking forward to buying.' (R35.4)
«ayo makomite abwirizwa kuzojijura abanyagihugu» {Rundi} 'Those committees must convince citizens.' (R39.5)
/kuzóókóra/ {Rundi}, /kuzaakóra/ {Rwanda} (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:285) 'to work (in the future)'
«nta cyizere ko n'abakomeretse bashobora kuzakira» {Rwand} 'There was no hope that the injured might survive.' (R8b)

168 infinitive negative future
Not only are the Kirundi and Kinyarwanda forms tonally distinct, the Rwandan infinitive negative future (which can have up to three high tones) is totally distinct from the affirmative (which is low-toned throughout).
TONE PATTERN:
A+T ku-tá-zoo-∆-a {Rundi}
A+F+R ku-tá-záa-∆-a {Rwanda}
/kutázoogéenda/ {Rundi} 'not to go in the future' (Cristini 2000:209)
/kutázoóloóora/ {Rundi} 'not to choose in the future' (Cristini 2000:209, Rodegem 1967:64)
/kutáziikóra/ {Rwanda} 'not to work in the future' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:285)
/kutáziízaa kwaawe bizaambabaza/ {Rwanda} 'Your not coming will make me feel bad.' (Bizimana 1998:210)

8.7. Imperative
The IMPERATIVE mood expresses an order or command, but the subject or doer (you understood) is never expressed. There are other ways to give orders that can use a subject pronoun, such as the subjunctive /mugeendé/ {both} 'You should go!,' but the linguistic characteristic of imperative forms is that no pronoun appears, e.g., English Stop!, not You stop! The imperative of Kirundi and Kinyarwanda is one of the most simple of verb forms, characterized by two kinds of reduction:
TONE LOSS (if the imperative form is first in a phrase or sentence) and VOWEL SHORTENING (if the root begins with a long vowel). Out of politeness, a command is limited to a single imperative. If one gives a SERIES OF COMMANDS, the following verbs must be in the SUBJUNCTIVE (§8.5).

/injira wiicáre/ {Rwanda} 'Come in and sit down!' (Overdulve 1975:250)
/geenda ubazé/ {both} 'Go and ask!' (Cristini 2000:202, LN)
/guma hamwé, uryamé, uruhúuke, uzóovyuuké ejó/ {Rundi} 'Stay put, lie down, rest, and (don’t) get up until tomorrow!' (Cristini 2000:202)

8.7.1. Imperatives with -a

Imperative forms ending with the suffix -a are either simple verbs or verbs with a first person singular object attached.

169 imperative affirmative
TONE PATTERN:
N+L Ø-∆-a {both}

/soma/ {both} 'Read!' (Overdulve 1975:100)
/kora/ {both} 'Work!' (Overdulve 1975:100,285, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:86)
/tabaa/ {both} 'Call for help!' (R27.9)
/yuza impuün/ {both} 'Rejoice!' (R21.3)
/voomera zóos/ {Rundi} (Rodegem 1967:65); /voomera zóose/ {Rwanda} 'Water all of them!'
/iga/ {both} 'Study!' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:274)

Note that high tone appears on the first vowel if the imperative is not the first word. However, /ati/ {both} 'he said' is followed by a pause and blocks the appearance of high tone.

/niibá unániwe rúhuuka/ {both} 'If you are tired, rest!' (JN, LN)
/niibá uhiinga hiinga néézá/ {Rundi} 'If you're going to plow, plow well!' (Overdulve 1975:243)
/ati: nyugururira/ {both} 'Open for me, he said.' (Cristini 2000:201)
/aravúg' ati kora/ {both} 'He said, "Work!"' (Overdulve 1975:100)

170 imperative affirmative with first person object
TONE PATTERN:
N+L Ø-N[pro-1sg-obj]-∆-a {both}

/mfasha/ {Rwanda} 'Help me!' (Overdulve 1975:150)
/oya nyéeka/ {Rundi} 'No, show me!' (Cristini 2000:201, Rodegem 1967:65)
/mbisa/ {both} 'Make room for me!' (Overdulve 1975:291)
/mpa/ {both} 'Give me!' (Overdulve 1975:150, Cristini 2000:201)

8.7.2. Imperatives with -e

Imperative forms ending with the suffix -e are either reflexive verbs (ii-, §8.13) or verbs with any object infix (except first person singular, #170) attached.

171 reflexive verbs have an imperative with the suffix -e
TONE PATTERN: Ø-i-∆-e {both}

/ifuze/ {both} 'Wish (for it)!' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:274)
/igecendere/ {Rwanda} 'Just go!' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:274)
172 imperative object-embedded verbs
+ one object
TONE PATTERN:
N+L Ø-obj-Δ-e {both}
/tu
bwiire níibá arí wowé mugaanga/ {Rwanda} 'Tell us whether you are the doctor.' (Overdulve 1975:255)
/níibá arí kó ushaaká kájyaane/ {Rwanda} 'If it's what you want, take it!' (LN)
/níibá ubíizi býyuge/ {both} 'If you know it, say it!' (Jacob #2 1986:396)
/dúkíraanure/ {both} 'Settle our dispute!' (R28.10)
/mu
uhanure/ {both} 'Reprimand him!' (Cristini 2000:201, Rodegem 1967:65)
/mufashe/ {both} 'Help him!' (Overdulve 1975:150, JN)
/mubíse/ {both} 'Make room for him!' (Overdulve 1975:291, JN)

+ two objects
TONE PATTERN:
N+L Ø-obj-obj-Δ-e {both}
/bi
mweereke/ {both} 'Show it to him!' (JN, Cristini 2000:201, Rodegem 1967:65)

Only Rundi has some alternate imperatives with the suffix -e without any object expressed.
/fate/ {Rundi only} 'Take!' (Cristini 2000:202)
/geende/ {Rundi only} 'Go!' (Cristini 2000:202)

There is no NEGATIVE IMPERATIVE, i.e., a negative subjectless command. There are, of course, many ways to express a negative order, such as by means of the negative subjunctive or with any of several auxiliary verbs.
/reka kubéesha/ {Rundi} 'Don't lie!' (Cristini 2000:202, Rodegem 1967:65)
/reka guseka/ {both} 'Don't laugh!' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:88)
/gezaho gukóra/ {both} 'Stop working!' (Cristini 2000:202)

8.8. Jussive (-ii-) {Rwanda only}
The jussive in Kinyarwanda is used to express negative wishes or expectations and can often be translated as should not. It is sometimes treated as a negative imperative (e.g., Overdulve 1975:184f), but applies to all persons and noun classes and therefore does not have the zero-marking required of a true imperative. The second person forms (wii- or mwii-) are semantically the closest means of expressing a negative command.

173 negative jussive verbs
TONE PATTERN:
P S-ii-Δ-a {Rwanda only}
P S-ii-kw-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rwanda only}
/wiiviugá ningoga/ {Rwanda} 'Don't speak fast!' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:179)
/biiririrímba/ {Rwanda} 'They should not sing!' (Kimenyi 2002:207)
/yiikwaaambará/ {Rwanda} 'He should not dress up!' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:87)
/wiikwaangá/ {Rwanda} 'Don't refuse!' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:179)
/bii
kwoongéra/ {Rwanda} 'They should not do again!' (Kimenyi 2002:207)

+ one object
TONE PATTERN:
R S-ii-obj-Δ-a {Rwanda only}
8.9. Hortative

A HORTATIVE is a form of urging or encouragement; it generally represents a POLITE COMMAND. As such, it does not express a wish, which is the role of an optative construction (see §8.10 below). Good night! is hortative, while I hope you have a good night! or May you have a good night! is optative. The preverb -ra- is involved in all these constructions.

8.9.1. Hortative Immediate (-ra-Δ-a) {Rundi}, (-ra-Δ-e) {Rwanda}

174 hortative affirmative immediate

TONE PATTERN:
N+L S-ra-Δ-a {Rundi}
N+L S-ra-Δ-e {both}
N+L S-r-Δ-e [vowel root] {both}

/uramuuntaahiriza/ {Rundi}, /uramuuntaahirize/ {Rwanda} 'Give him my regards!'
/muraramuke hó/ {Rwanda} 'Good night!' (ALO:252f)
/niibá urwáaye uriivuuza/ {Rundi} (JN), /niibá urwáaye uriivuuze/ {Rwanda} (Bizimana 1998:385)
'If you are sick, you should get yourself treated.'
/baroongere/ {Rwanda} 'They should do again.' (Kimenyi 2002:187)

8.9.2. Hortative Future (-ra-zoo-Δ-a) {Rundi}, (-ra-zaa-Δ-e) {Rwanda}

175 hortative affirmative future

TONE PATTERN:
N+L S-ra-zoo-Δ-a {Rundi}
N+L S-ra-zaa-Δ-e {Rwanda}

/urazooza/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:203), /urazaaze/ {Rwanda} (LN) 'Come when you want' [lit. 'you should come in the future']
/murazoottinya umwéenda/ {Rundi} 'you should be afraid of debt' (R21.5)
/ejó múrazooba múhari/ {Rundi} (JN), /ejó múrazaabe múhari/ {Rwanda} 'you should be there tomorrow' (Overdulve 1975:251f)

8.10. Optative

An optative expresses a wish on the part of the speaker, e.g., If only horses could fly!, May you recover soon!, I hope you have a great birthday! Such wishes can be positive (a BLESSING) or negative (a CURSE). These constructions are treated here because they are similar in meaning to the imperatives, jussives, and hortatives discussed above, even if they are probably formed with the -ka- sequence prefix (and would equally belong in §8.12 below).


402 In contrast to all other authors cited, Kimenyi (2002:185–6) calls these constructions HORTATIVE.

403 Contrastively, Have a great birthday! would be HORTATIVE.
8.10.1. Optative Affirmative (-ra-ka-, -ra-ga-, -ra-k-) {both}

176 optative affirmative

TONE PATTERN:
L S-ra-ka-Δ-a [voiced consonant] {both}
L S-ra-ga-Δ-a [voiceless consonant] {both}
L S-ra-k-Δ-a [vowel root] {both}
/urakaraamba/ {both} 'May you live long!' (Cristini 2000:203, LN)
/urakavuna umuheto/ {both} 'May you break your bow!' [curse = May you lose your eldest son!] (Cristini 2000:203, LN)
/murakaroota néezá/ {both} 'May you dream well!' (Overdulve 1975:265, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:308)
/aragapfa/ {both} 'So he should die!' (Overdulve 1975:252, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:308)
/baragatsiinda/ {both} 'I hope they win!' (Overdulve 1975:265, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:308)
/murakagwiira múragaheezagirwa n-íimáana/ {Rundi} 'May you all multiply and be blessed by God!' (Cristini 2000:203)
/barakoogosha/ {Rwanda} 'May they shave!' (Kimenyi 2002:185)
/barakoongera/ {both} 'May they do again!' (JN, Kimenyi 2002:185)

8.10.2. Optative Affirmative (-áa-ká-, -óo-ká-) {Rwanda only}

Verbs with these two prefixes never come first in a sentence. The affixes are used in traditional blessings and curses; any tone of the verb is lost, with only the tonality of this affix prevailing.

177 optative affirmative alternate

TONE PATTERN:
F+L S-óo-ká-Δ-a [voiced consonant] {Rwanda only}
F+L S-óo-gá-Δ-a [voiceless consonant] {Rwanda only}
F+A S-óo-k-Δ-a [vowel root] {Rwanda only}
/wóokábyaara/ {Rwanda} '... and may you have children!' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:30)
/bóokáriimba/ {Rwanda} '... and they should sing!' (Kimenyi 2002:186)
/bóogátabaara/ {Rwanda} '... and they should defend!' (Kimenyi 2002:186)
/bóokóogosha/ {Rwanda} '... and they should shave!' (Kimenyi 2002:186)

8.10.3. Optative Affirmative (Ø-ka-Δ-e) {Rwanda only}

This construction does not have a subject marker and is always addressed to the second person. It is therefore structurally like a SUBSECUTIVE IMPERATIVE and is identified as such by Coupez.405 Because its primary semantic effect is a wish (rather than a command), we treat it as optative.

178 optative affirmative alternate

TONE PATTERN:
L Ø-ka-Δ-e {Rwanda only}
L Ø-k-Δ-e [vowel root] {Rwanda only}
/kabycera/ {Rwanda} 'May you have children!' (LN)

---

404 Kimenyi 2002:186 calls this construction CONSECUTIVE HORTATIVE.
405 Coupez 1980:410–12 identifies construction #207 as a MODIFIED IMPERATIVE (affirmatif impératif modifié).
8.10.4. Optative Affirmative Expressions (Ø-nya-ku-µ-a)

There are two special constructions consisting of the preprefix nya- and the prefix ku-. Neither carries a subject prefix. Although the latter part may appear similar to an infinitive construction, it is tonally quite distinct. If addressed to the SECOND PERSON, i.e., *may you VERB* or *you who should VERB*, there is high tone on the kú-, if it is spoken about a THIRD PERSON, i.e., *may he or she VERB* or *one who should VERB*, the entire form is low toned. The second person forms could equally be interpreted as VOCATIVE constructions, following the Vrule (see §3.6.5.2), while the third person forms are sometimes used as nouns in Group 1a (§3.2.1a.2).

179 optative affirmative third person (alternatively n1a)
TONE PATTERN:

L Ø-nya-ku-∆-a [voiced consonant] {both}
L Ø-nya-gu-∆-a [voiceless consonant] {both}
L Ø-nya-kw-∆-a [vowel root] {both}

/nyakubyaara/ {Rwanda} 'one who should bear children' (Bizimana 1998:166, Kimenyi 2002:112)
/nyakunyagwa/ [both] 'one who should be dispossessed' (Kimenyi 2002:112, JN)
/nyagupfa/ [both] 'one who should die; [atr] worthy of death, about to be hung' (Ntahokaja 1994:44)
/nyakwubahwa/ [Rundi] (Cristini 2000:81), /nyakubahwa/ [both] (JN, LN) 'one who should be respected; excellency; reverend'

180 optative affirmative second person (alternatively n1a-voc)
TONE PATTERN:

A+X Ø-nya-kú-∆-a [voiced consonant] {both}
A+X Ø-nya-gú-∆-a [voiceless consonant] {both}
A+X Ø-nya-kw-∆-a [vowel root] {both}

/uraaho nyakúumpemukira/ [both] 'Good day, you who betrays my trust!' (JN, Jacob #2 1986:430)
/nyakúnyaaraa/ [Rundi] (Cristini 2000:81), /nyakúbyaara/ {Rwanda} (Kimenyi 2002:112) 'Oh you who should bear children!'
/nyakúnyagwa/ [both] 'Oh one who should be dispossessed!' (JN, Kimenyi 2002:112)
/nyagúpfa/ [both] 'I wish you would die!' (Ntahokaja 1994:44)
/nyagúhuumirwa/ [Rundi] 'May you be cursed!' (Cristini 2000:81)
/nyakwúubahwa/ [both] (Kimenyi 2002:112), /nyakúubahwa/ [both] (JN, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:309) 'May you be respected! [opt]; Oh you who are worthy of respect!; [voc] Your excellency!'

8.10.5. Optative Negative (nti-S-ka-∆-e)

This construction is used to express wishes in the negative. Overdulve & Jacob suggest it is a modified negative subjunctive (1998:305 – *subjonctif négatif modifié*) whereas Cristini treats it twice: as the OPTATIVE NEGATIVE (2000:203f – *optatif au négatif*) and the SUBSECUTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE IMMEDIATE (2000:214 – *subsécutif de subjonctif immédiat*).

---

406 Kimenyi 2002:186 calls this NYA+INFITIVE. While the infinitive is associated with the tone-retaining Rrule, he proposes that it "has a tone neutralizing effect because it lowers the verb stem." (Op.cit.:112)
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations


TONE PATTERN:

2+L nti-S-ka-Δ-e [both]
2+L nti-S-k-Δ-e [vowel root]

/uwubáanka ntuákaraambe/ [Rundi] 'May someone who hates you not live long!' (Cristini 2000:203)
/ntiríkabe/ [both] 'May it never happen!' (Cristini 2000:214, LN)
/ntuükabwière/ [both] 'Please don’t tell!' (Cristini 2000:204, LN)
/ntuúgatoongane/ [both] 'May you not quarrel!' (Cristini 2000:204, LN)
/ntuúkabyaare/ [Rwanda] 'May you not have children!' (Bizimana 1998:282)
/ntuúgatuke abageenzi/ [Rwanda] 'You should not insult travelers!' (Bizimana 1998:282)
/ntuúkaanke/ [Rundi] (Cristini 2000:204), /ntuúkaange/ [Rwanda] (LN) 'May you not refuse!'

8.11. Exclamative Constructions {Rwanda only}

Kinyarwanda has a special form to express surprise, astonishment, or some other exclamation directly through the verb. It is only used in the affirmative. Note that both conjoint and disjoint forms are distinguished tonally.

/mwaahínga/ [Rrule] {Rwanda} 'How you plow!' (Overdulve 1975:252)
/mwaahiinga néézá/ [Lrule] {Rwanda} 'How well you plow!' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:308)

182 Exclamative conjoint

See: Overdulve 1975:252,310, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:308

TONE PATTERN:

L S-aa-Δ-a
L S-Δ-a [alt weak forms]

/waba umupfú/ [Rwanda] 'How stupid you are!' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:308)
/yaba mubí/ [Rwanda] 'How evil he is!' (Overdulve 1975:252)
/baakora cyaane/ [Rwanda] 'How hard they work!' (Overdulve 1975:252)

183 Exclamative disjoint

See: Overdulve 1975:252,310, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:308

TONE PATTERN:

R S-aa-Δ-a

/waasara/ [Rwanda] 'How foolish you are!' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:308)
/twaakorána/ [Rwanda] 'How we work together!' (Overdulve 1975:310)

8.12. Sequence or Subsecutive Constructions

The prefix series -ka-, -ga-, -k- has a SEQUENCE function; it links a verb to a previously expressed action. It functions like an internal conjunction meaning and or then. Grammatically speaking, it can occur in most constructions discussed above: indicative, participial, relative, and subjunctive. There are both conjoint and disjoint forms in most conjugations. Although Kirundi has a full series of affirmative and negative forms, Kinyarwanda tends to use the NEGATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE for negative sequences (see §8.5.1 #157). There is a subtle distinction between a SEQUENCE construction (with CHRONOLOGICAL connections) and a NARRATIVE construction (with LOGICAL connections, see §8.1.9), as illustrated by the following examples:

/yatéeye imbúto ziramera zirakúra zihuìnduka ibiti binini/ [Rwanda] 'He planted some seeds, they germinated, they grew, they become transformed into great trees.' [narrative] (Overdulve 1975:188)
/ateera imbúto zikamera zigakúra zigahìnduka ibiti binini/ [Rwanda] 'He plants some seeds, they germinate, they grow, they are transformed into great trees.' [sequence] (Overdulve 1975:189)

Kimenyi (2002:188) calls this the NEGATIVE IMPERATIVE HABITUAL.
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

275

Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

//yatéeraga imbúto zikamera zigakúra zigabiinduka ibiti binini/ [Rwanda] 'He was planting some seeds, they were supposed to germinate and grow and become transformed into great trees.' [sequence] (Overdulve 1975:189)

184 subsecutive indicative affirmative immediate conjoint


TONE PATTERN:

L S-ka-Δ-a [voiced consonant] {both}
L S-ga-Δ-a [voiceless consonant] {both}
L S-k-Δ-a [vowel root] {both}

/akabona amafaraanga meénshi/ {both} '... and he earned a lot of money.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:217)

«Mu gikonjo Gisabo yambara imiringa ibiri y’isenga, nini na ntoy, igafatwa n’urubare rw’umujumbu» {Rundi} 'On his wrist Gisabo wore two amulets, one large and one small, held by a very thin copper wire.' (R5)

/abahiínga baroongera bakavuga/ [Rundi] 'And moreover experts repeatedly say ...' (R37.5)

+ one object

TONE PATTERN:

L S-ka-obj-Δ-a {both}

/ukawuroonga néezá/ {both} '... then you rinse it nicely.' (R18, JN)

«bashyingirayo, cyangwa se bakahakura abageni» [Rwanda] 'They marry their children off there or else they get brides from there.' (R38.9)

185 subsecutive indicative affirmative immediate disjoint 408


TONE PATTERN:

R S-ka-Δ-a {both}
R S-k-Δ-a [vowel root]

/abaantu bóóse / bóose ahó bavá bakagara/ [both] 'all people without exception' (Rodegem 1967:68)

/bakanéezeerwa/ [both] '... then they would be happy.' (JN, Overdulve 1975:246)

«n’ibindi bacanira, bigakama» [both] '... and others things that they heat which then evaporate.' (R24.1)

«ndubaka rigasenya» [both] 'I build and then he destroys.' (R28.6)

/ateera imbúto zikamerazigakúra/ [Rwanda] 'He plants the seeds, then they sprout and they grow.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:218)

/urínuyeera ukibirinyira/ [Rwanda] 'You are just drinking and dancing.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:274)

/ejo mu iishuúri narásomaga nkaandika/ [Rwanda] 'Yesterday at school I read and I wrote.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:218)

/bakóogosha/ [both] '... and then they shave.' (Kimenyi 2002:175)

+ one object

TONE PATTERN:

O+L S-ka-obj-Δ-a {both}

«uramenya yuko uca rubi nkakurya» [Rundi] 'You'd better know that if you arbitrate poorly, then I'll eat you.' (R27.4)

/akabibona/ [both] '... and he sees it.' (Cristini 2000:187)

/taaashimúuta inká bakadufata/ [Rwanda] 'If we were to steal some cows, then they would arrest us.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:301)

/akadúcungura/ [Rundi] '... and he saves us.' (Cristini 2000:187)

408 Kimenyi (2002:175) calls this the COMPLEMENTLESS NARRATIVE/CONSECUTIVE TENSE.

275
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

+ two objects
TONE PATTERN:
  O+T S-ka-obj-obj-Δ-a {Rundi}
  O+R S-ka-obj-obj-Δ-a {Rwanda}

\( \text{/akabiturungikira/} \) {Rundi} ‘... and he is sending it to us.’ (Cristini 2000:188)
\( \text{/tukahimukórera/} \) {both} ‘... and we are doing it for him.’ (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:326, JN)

186 subsecutive indicative affirmative recent disjoint
TONE PATTERN:
  \( \text{R S-a-ka-Δ-a} \)

\( \text{/amatá araryóoha, arike yakaryóoha, ahórwakó akabiíha/} \) {Rundi} ‘Milk is tasty, but although it is tasty, taken all the time, it then tastes bad.’ (Cristini 2000:213)

187 subsecutive indicative affirmative preterit perfective
TONE PATTERN:
  \( \text{2+L S-á-ka-Δ-ye} \)

\( \text{/erega yakábaaye mwéezi aríwe mwaámi/} \) {Rundi} ‘Truly, he was Mwezi, he being the king.’ (Cristini 2000:213)

188 subsecutive indicative affirmative conditional
TONE PATTERN:
  \( \text{R S-aa-ka-Δ-a} \)

\( \text{/utwo duseke ní twiizá waakatuguze/} \) {Rwand} ‘Those little baskets are beautiful, so you should buy them.’ (Bizimana 1998:138)
\( \text{/mwaakaroreera/} \) {Rwand} ‘You should stop.’ (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:300)

189 subsecutive indicative affirmative future
TONE PATTERN:
  \( \text{F+R S-zóo-ka-Δ-a} \)
  \( \text{L S-ka-zoo-Δ-a} \)
  \( \text{L S-ka-zaa-Δ-a} \)

\( \text{/aratúnyuze twaazaakamugize/} \) {Rwand} ‘He pleases us so we should have him.’ (Bizimana 1998:257)
\( \text{/urahiinga ukazaasarura/} \) {Rwand} ‘You cultivate and then you will reap.’ (Bizimana 1998:278)
\( \text{/tukazaakorana/} \) {Rwand} ‘... and then we will work together.’ (Overdulve 1975:310)
\( \text{/bakazaaririmba/} \) {Rwand} ‘... and then they will sing.’ (Kimenyi 2002:189)
\( \text{/imíísi ikazoomara/} \) {Rundi} ‘... and the days will endure.’ (Cristini 2000:214)
\( \text{/izóokakúbita/} \) {Rundi} ‘... and then it will hit.’ (cf: Cristini 2000:214)

190 subsecutive indicative negative inceptive
Note: This construction does not normally occur in Rwanda, the NEGATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE is used instead (see §8.5.1 #157). However it can be used with the presupposition or connotation of an excuse (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:227). Coupez (1980:406–7 #180) calls this a "MODIFIED NEGATIVE INDICATIVE INCEPTIVE," disestablishing it from a subsecutive construction.

---

\( ^{409} \) Kimenyi (2002:189) calls this the CONSECUTIVE FUTURE.
\( ^{410} \) French \textit{NÉGATIF INDICATIF INCEPTIF MODIFIÉ}. 

276

**TONE PATTERN:**

**F+R nti-S-ráa-ka-∆-a [voiced consonant] {both}
F+R nti-S-ráa-ga-∆-a [voiceless consonant] {both}
/ntituráakóra/ {Rundi} 'We are not working yet.' (Cristini 2000:214)
/ntituráakóma/ {Rwanda} 'And so I have not fetched water yet.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:227)
(byáa biintu wadusabyé ntituráakabiizana/ {Rwanda} 'Those things that you asked of us we have not brought yet.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:227)

191 subsecutive participial affirmative preterit perfective conjoint

**TONE PATTERN:**

**1+L S-áa-ka-∆-ye {both}
vyáakabaaye keéra aréemerako arí we yiivyé/ {Rundi} 'And finally [lit. and it having become a long while] he admits [narrative] that he was the one who stole.' (Cristini 2000:213)
/háakabaaye keéra/ {both} 'at long last' (JN, LN)

192 subsecutive participial affirmative preterit imperfective disjoint

**TONE PATTERN:**

**1+R S-áa-ka-∆-a
náakavúuka ntáho narí bwáavyumve/ {Rundi} 'In my life [lit. and I having been born] I would never have heard such a thing.' (Cristini 2000:213)
/náakavúuka/ {Rwanda} 'Since I was born ...' (LN)

193 subsecutive participial affirmative conditional

**TONE PATTERN:**

**1+L S-aa-ka-∆-a
mwáakarya mútaakarya ntímuhaagá/ {both} 'Whether you eat or do not eat, you don't get full.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:300, JN)

194 subsecutive participial negative conditional

**TONE PATTERN:**

**1+L S-t-aa-ka-∆-a
mwáakarya mútaakarya ntímuhaagá/ {both} 'Whether you eat or do not eat, you don't get full.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:300, JN)

195 subsecutive participial affirmative future

**TONE PATTERN:**

**1+R S-zoo-ka-∆-a [voiced consonant] {Rundi}
1+R S-zoo-ga-∆-a [voiceless consonant] {Rundi}
1+R S-zaa-ka-∆-a [voiced consonant] {Rwanda}
1+R S-zaa-ga-∆-a [voiceless consonant] {Rwanda}
/bázoogakóra n'úukó badaheembwa/ (Rundi) (Cristini 2000:214), /bázaagakóra n'úukó badaheembwa/ (LN) 'They would also work, it's just that they don't get paid.'

196 subsecutive relative affirmative preterit perfective


**TONE PATTERN:**

**2+L S-áá-ka-∆-ye
baáryaamaga ukó baákaambaye/ {Rwanda} 'They used to sleep as they had been dressed.' (Bizimana 1998:257)

---

411 Cristini’s rendition is /bázoogakóra n'úukó badaheembwa/. With the help of Juvenal Ndayiragije (email of 29 July 2005), we have corrected the tonality of the conjunction and the following negative relative construction.
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

197 subsequent autonome affirmative recent perfective
See: Rodegem 1967:52 (footnote 1)
TONE PATTERN:
A2+L cl-a-ká-Δ-ye
/uwakáriiwe we arary akiibagira ikiboondo ciwé/ [Rundi] 'How is it that one who eats to the full eats and forgets his own child?' (Rodegem 1967:52)

+ one object
TONE PATTERN:
A2+L cl-a-ká-obj-Δ-ye
/uwakábabaye wé ari héhé/ [Rundi] 'The one who cared so much about it, where is he?' (Rodegem 1967:52)

8.13. Reflexive (íi-) {both}

The prefix /íi-/ indicates that the agent(s) or subject(s) are performing the action either upon themselves or by themselves. Many languages, such as English, have a series of reflexive pronouns (oneself, myself, yourself, themselves), but in Bantu languages a verb prefix usually conveys this meaning. The REFLEXIVE comes immediately before the root and stands for a special kind of object concord; it therefore takes an imperative in -é (rather than -a, see §8.7.2). This prefix has its own tone pattern (Irule, §2.4.21) and strips any high-toned root of its tonality. Before vowel roots the form is /íiy-/, and any initial long vowel is shortened.

/-íikuunda/ [both] 'love oneself' < /-kúunda/ [both] 'like, love'
/-íiyereka/ 'show oneself, exhibit oneself in public, parade, dance' < /-éereka/ [both] 'show s.t. to s.o.'

There are some instances when an entirely different English word or phrase will more accurately capture its sense.

/-íiyica/ [both] 'commit suicide' < /-íica/ [both] 'kill'
/-íibwiira/ [both] 'assume, conjecture, suppose' < /-bwiira/ [both] 'say s.t. to s.o., tell'

The combination of this prefix with a BENEFACTIVE augment (see §8.14.1 below) yields a special meaning: just VERB, do VERB calmly, easily, happily implying a simple, non-adverse action: an action done willingly or freely on one's own behalf.

/-íigira/ [both] v-refl-ben 'go away (on one's own), betake oneself, get oneself hence'
/-íisomera/ [both] v-refl-ben 'read s.t. to or by oneself'
/-íiyicarira/ [both] v-refl-ben 'sit oneself down, be seated; [ext] loaf, be idle, sit around (doing nothing)'  
/iyumvire/ [both] v-refl-ben-imp 'Just listen!' (R37.4)
/wiiwikwiigéendera/ [Rwanda] v-refl-ben-jussive 'Don't go away!' (Overdulve 1975:221)
/kwiibeera mu ishyaamba/ [Rwanda] (R38.7), /kwiibeera mu ishaamba/ [Rundi] v-refl-ben-inf 'to just go on living in the forest'


413 Having the sense of by oneself or by itself prompts Overdulve 1975:221 to treat the combination of REFLEXIVE ii- + CAUSATIVE -z- as having a special meaning of spontaneously, without external help, as in /igisebe kirikiza/ [Rwanda] 'A wound heals spontaneously' or /ubwaatsi buriimeza/ [Rwanda] 'Tall grass grows spontaneously.' However, this combination does not regularly yield such a specialized sense, e.g., /-iibonekeza/ [both] 'attract notice, distinguish oneself' or /-iivuza/ [both] 'get oneself treated, seek medical attention.'

414 Kimenyi 1980:64 refers to these constructions as the MIDDLE VOICE.
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

/baríitweenga/ {both} v-refl-ben-ind-imm-dis 'They just laugh.' (R19)
/usanga abaantu bávuga byó kwiivugira/ {Rwanda} v-refl-ben-inf 'You find people talking just for the sake of talking.'
/inkwi zó kwiiteekera/ {both} v-refl-ben-inf 'firewood just for cooking' (R34.4)

Note that all reflexive verbs are VOWEL ROOTS which sometimes have special tonal patterns [e.g., the A2rule or the Jrule] and which cause affixes that precede them to lose their vowel. The high tonality of reflexives will be affected in the same way as other high-toned verbs are by various mood and tense combinations. The one exception is that in the INDICATIVE IMMEDIATE the presence of one or more object infixes ahead of the reflexive prefix brings two tones to the derivation: one falls on the reflexive prefix itself [Irule] and the other on the first syllable of the root, which is the second syllable of the reflexive stem [Prule].

/jye niikuundira umwíijimá/ [Irule] {Rwanda} v-ind-imm-con 'I prefer darkness.' (R28.3)
/abiíbuumbye/ [A2rule] {Rwanda} auto-n1-pl-imm-perf 'people who united' (R10)
/bíshimikije/ [Irule] {Rundi} v-part-aff-imm-perf 'they relying upon' (R39.2)
/iýó bahíiğá baha biiyambariye udukabutura/ [Irule] {Rwanda} v-part-aff-imm-impf 'When they hunt, they wear short pants.' (Overdulve 1975:264)
/bíîshimikije / [2rule] {Rundi} v-ind-aff-imm-impf 'He not getting himself treated ...' (R31.3)
/wiíbyaariye/ [2rule] {Rwanda} (R36.9), /wiivyaariye/ [Rundi] v-ind-pret-perf 'You having brought forth (into the world) ...'
/íírúamwíijangaaniyé/ [2rule + O2rule + Lrule] {Rwanda} v-ind-aff-pret-perf-dis+objx2 'They have resigned themselves there for him.' (Overdulve 1975:264)
/bamwé barahyibiíbóhera/ [Irule + Prule] {Rwanda} v-ind-impf-imm-dis+refl+obj 'Some weave them for themselves.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:274)
/arayiíbwiíra/ [Irule + Prule] {both} v-ind-impf-imm-dis+refl+obj 'He says them to himself.' (Overdulve 1975:264, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:274)
/turáabiringeesha/ [Irule + Prule] {Rundi} v-ind-impf-imm-dis+refl+obj 'We confess to you.' (Cristini 2000:156)
/biírriimbishaga/ [Irule] {Rwanda} v-ind-aff-recent-imm-dis-refl 'They were making themselves sing.' (Kimenyi 2002:249)
/imáana ifasha abaaantu biífásha/ [Prule] {both} v-rel-imm 'God helps those who help themselves.' (Overdulve 1975:220)

8.14. Valence (Verb Augments or Extensions)

In Kirundi and Kinyarwanda, as in Bantu languages generally, a series of suffixes can be added to a verb root in order to add another noun satellite or case relationship to the sentence (see §1.8.5).

/–úubaka/ {both} v-tr 'build something' > /–úubakira/ v-ben 'build something for someone' + beneficiary
/–vúga/ {both} v-tr 'say something' > /–vúgiisha/ v-caus 'make someone speak' + caused actor
/–rima/ {both} v-tr 'cultivate land' > /–rimiisha/ v-caus 'cultivate land with (a tool)' + instrument
/–menya/ {both} v-tr 'know something' > /–menyana/ v-recip 'know each other' + reciprocal

415 If one considers that íi- is itself an object-like form and that it is a high-toned root, the tonal placement is reasonably straightforward, and not nearly as complex as Overdulve implies: "If the reflexive infix -íi- is accompanied by other infixes the rules of tonality are extremely complicated. We will not describe them." (1975:221) [translation by S. Harrell] Their more recent work (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:271) summarizes the tonal situation very clearly.
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

8.14.1. Benefactive or Applicative (-ir-, -er-, -irir-, -erer-)

The suffix -er- is added to stems that have the mid vowels /e/ or /o/, while -ir- is added to those with /i/, /u/ or /a/. It is called the APPLIED or APPLICATIONAL in many textbooks. Its most general sense of doing something for, to, or on behalf of someone has prompted our use of the term BENEFACTIVE.

/-vúgira/ {both} 'speak for, talk on behalf of someone' < /-vúga/ {both} v-tr 'say something, speak'
/-sómera/ {both} 'read something to someone' < /-sóma/ {both} v-tr 'read'
/-séényera/ {both} 'gather firewood on behalf of someone' < /-séénya/ {both} v-tr 'gather firewood'
/-sábira/ {both} 'ask someone for something on behalf of someone else' < /-saba/ {both} v-ditr 'ask someone for something, request something of someone'
/asábira umugaanga umurwáayi umutí/ {both} 'He asks the doctor for a remedy for the patient.' (Overdulve 1975:283, JN)
/mumu teéker e/ {both} 'You should cook for him.' < /-téeka/ {both} v-tr 'cook, prepare food'

One must be aware that, based on context, the addition of this suffix does not always imply that the act is to someone's advantage, it can also have a negative implication (to the detriment of).

/yáámpemukiye/ {both} 'He failed me.' < /-hemuka/ {both} v-tr 'break (a promise), disappoint someone'
/igifátira mu mahahá/ {Rundi} 'one that attacks the lungs' (R31.1) < /-fáta/ {both} v-tr 'catch, seize'

In the perfective forms of both, the /r/ is dropped yielding /-iye/ or /-eye/.

« Mwezi Gisabo varwaniye Uburundi » {both} 'Mwezi Gisabo defended Burundi.' (R3)
« Béatrice yavukiye i Gitega » {both} 'Beatrice was born in Gitega.' (R17.1)
« barondeye uwo batuma ijambo barabura » {both} 'They looked for someone to speak on their behalf, but they couldn't find anyone.' (R11)
/bakeneye intaanga ngo biibónere utwáana/ {Rwanda} 'They need sperm to have children.' (R22)

MONOSYLLABIC VERBS with these extensions have long vowels; a few undergo distinctive sound changes.

/-giira/ {both} v-ben 'go for or on behalf of someone, go after' < /-ja/ {Rundi}, /-jya/ {Rwanda} v-intr 'go'
/-hiira/ {both} v-ben 'be cooked or ripened for someone; burn at a specific place' < /-shá/ {Rundi}, /-shyá/ {Rwanda} v-inch 'get burned; be cooked, be ripe'
/-nywéera/ {both} v-ben 'drink from (a vessel); drink at (a specific place)' < /-nywá/ {both} v-tr 'drink'
/-ríira/ {both} v-ben 'eat on or at' < /-rá/ {both} v-tr 'eat'
/-téera/ {both} v-ben 'throw something to someone; discard something for someone; lose something at (a specific location)' < /-tá/ {both} v-tr 'drop, let something fall; throw (away)

Sometimes, an entirely different English word may more accurately capture its sense, as with:

/-kórrera/ {both} 'serve' < /-kóra/ {both} 'work'
/-ríira/ {both} 'mourn' < /-ríra/ {both} 'cry'
/-rwaanira/ {both} 'defend, protect' < /-rwaana/ {both} 'fight'

Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

Note that the addition of this suffix can make a simple transitive verb DITRANSITIVE, i.e., it will take two objects.

/-aandikira/ {both} v-ditr 'write s.t. to s.o., send a letter to s.o.' < /-aandika/ {both} v-tr 'write'
/-:zanira/ {both} v-ditr 'bring s.t. to or for s.o.' < /-:zana/ {both} v-tr 'bring, come with'

The addition of these suffixes can express the REASON, goal, or purpose of an action.417

/-kóreira/ {both} 'do s.t. for (a reason)'
/-kúbitira/ {both} 'hit s.o. for (a reason)'
/ubácaaniira/ {Rwanda} 'who is the reason they light a fire' (R28.2)

With motion verbs it marks a DESTINATION meaning to or towards, otherwise it expresses a locality associated with an action.418  The place is usually marked by an appropriate preposition (§3.6.4).

/-geendera/ {Rundi} 'visit, frequent.' {Rwanda} 'go to; reach, arrive at' < /-geenda/ {both} v-intr 'go'
/-:irukira/ {both} 'run to some place' < /-:iruka/ {both} v-intr 'run, move quickly'
/-aambarira/ {both} 'dress up in or at (a given place)' < /-aambara/ {both} v-tr 'wear, put on (clothing)'
/arágieerera_ku_rutúgu/ {Rundi} 'He throws it over his shoulder.' (R5)
«mugabo har’aho batonorera mu kanwa» {Rundi} 'However, there are times they peel straight into their mouths.' (R15)
/bakoréra_muri_iyo_ntáará/ {both} '... who work in that region.' (R20)
/ubu_ageendera_ku_mbago/ {Rwanda} 'Now she walks on crutches.' (R34.1)

It can express a certain or indefinite time, especially in constructions headed by /ahó/ or /ahw/.

«sinz’ awh azaaazira» {Rwanda} 'I do not know when he will come.' (Hands 1952:251)
/siményá ahó nzoodhikira/ {both} 'I do not know when I will arrive.' (Cristini 2000:258)
/ahó yakóreye araneezerewe/ {Rwanda} 'Since he is working, he has been happy.' (Overdulve 1975:207)
/tuzasseengerera mu ruseengeru ku cyúumwéeru/ {Rwanda} 'We will pray in church on Sunday.' (Overdulve 1975:207)

The combination of this suffix with a word containing /z/ will result in sound-switching or METATHESIS (see §2.5.16).

/-báriza/ {Rundi} 'ask about, investigate into' < /-ázara/ ['*bazira'] {both} 'ask, question'
/-taangaazira/ {Rwanda} 'inform s.o. about s.t.' < /-taangaaza/ ['*taangaazira'] {Rwanda} 'disseminate information, broadcast, announce, declare'
/-kiriza/ {both} 'cure s.o. for s.o. else; save s.o. for (a reason)' < /-kizira/ ['*kizira'] {both} 'heal, cure'
/-komereza/ {both} 'continue s.t. for s.o.' < /-komeza/ ['*komeza'] {both} 'continue s.t., carry on (with)'

A root can be inflected with either of these suffixes doubled, e.g., /-er/- or /-ir/-.

/-geenderera/ {Rwanda} 'visit, go to see someone' < /-geenda/ {both} 'go, leave'
/-húngirirana/ {Rwanda} 'cultivate for each other reciprocally and habitually' < /-húnga/ 'dig, cultivate'
/ahó yagúriríye umurwáayi imiti ntiyakize/ {Rwanda} 'Ever since he bought medicines for the patient, the latter did not get well.' (Overdulve 1975:207) < /-guririra/ {Rwanda} 'buy s.t. for s.o. for a reason or over a given period of time'
«ari nawe witiriwe uburozi buba mu itabi bwitwa "Nikotini."» {Rwanda} '... after whom the active ingredient in tobacco, nicotine, was named.' (R26.2) < /-ítiririra/ {both} 'attribute s.t. to s.o.; name s.o. for or because of'
«Iyumviriire namwe inkuru ya Bitama.» {Rundi} 'Just listen to the story about Bitama.' (R25.1)
/absirikari_beënsi baapfíriye igihúgu cyáabo/ {Rwanda} 'Many soldiers have died for their country.' (Overdulve 1975:208)

417 For example, see Kimenyi 1980:86–8.
418 For example, see Kimenyi 1980:33,91.
When the adverb /\hamwé/ 'together' appears, the benefactive suffix is often used.419

/ntashobóra gukórera hamwé n’ábaándi/ {Rwanda} 'He is unable to work together with others.' (Hands 1952:251)

Cf: /bakoongera bagakora hamwé/ {Rundi} 'Moreover they worked together.' (R17.8)420

« hari n’ubwo batekera hamwé n’ábaándi/ {Rwanda} 'There are times when they cook together.' (R38.3)

/abáana bató bagaburirwa hamwé na baanyina/ {both} 'Young children are fed together with their mothers.' (R3, JN)

/baravúgira hamwé/ {both} 'They are speaking together.' (Cristini 2000:258, JN, LN)

/tuzooteeranira hamwé/ {Rwanda} (Overdulve 1975:208), /tuzooteeranira hamwé/ {Rundi} 'We will get together.'

The use of this construction depends on context; /hamwé/ does not always trigger or require a benefactive verb.

« gushika aho bazoheba bakaja hamwe n’abandi/ [Rundi] 'Until they will finally join the others.'
(R29.7)

/ishiráhámwe, amashiráhámwe/ [Rundi] 'association' (R9)

/intéerahámwe/ {Rwanda} 'look-a likes (things of the same size or value); cronies (people of the same generation or with the same interests), mates (people who understand each other very well); [ext] Hutu political party; militia men' (R29.7)

8.14.2. Causative (-ish-, -eesh-)

The suffix -eesh- is added to stems that have the mid vowels /e/ or /o/, while -ish- is added to those with /i/, /u/ or /a/.421 English does not have a simple causative system,422 such as that found in Kirundi and Kinyarwanda. These two augmenters are commonly used with a wide variety of verbs with the implication that the action is made to happen or caused to occur. The extra noun case introduced refers to the CAUSED ACTOR.

/-fáshiisha/ {both} v-caus 'have someone help' < /-fásha/ {both} v-tr 'help, assist'

/-ónkeesha/ {both} v-caus 'make someone breastfeed' < /-óonka/ {both} v-intr 'suckle'

/-ruhiisha/ {both} v-caus 'fatigue, tire someone out' < /-ruha/ {both} v-intr 'get tired'

/-tekeesha/ {both} v-caus 'have someone cook something' < /-teeka/ {both} v-tr 'cook'

/kó voorimenyéesha ibiciiro aguriishako/ {Rundi} '... that they should inform it about the sale prices.' (R9)

/ivyúuma bikoréeshwa/ {Rundi} 'tools that are used' (R37.2)

/ababikoreesha/ {both} 'the ones who use them' (R26)

/ndayitëeshwa/ {both} 'I make you abandon them.' (R36.2)

/daatá ariirimbiisha abashyitsi/ {Rwanda} 'Papa is making the visitors sing.' (Overdulve 1975:209)

419 According to Overdulve 1975:208 this construction is obligatory: "If a verb is directly followed by ... hamwé meaning 'together,' the verb must be in the applicative" (translation by S. Harrell). Hands 1952:251 also reports that one of the functions of this construction is "to express co-ordination."

420 Juvenal Ndayiragije (email Aug 12, 2005) advises that it would have been better put as: /bakoongera bagakora hamwé/.


422 Causatives in English are spread across several grammatical systems. Some verbs function in an intransitive and transitive/causative role, such as the water is boiling or I am boiling the water, the horse is running or he is running the horse. A few verbs have completely different causative counterparts, e.g., die – kill, see – show, eat – feed, enter – insert. There are also causative auxiliary constructions, like make me do it, let him work, have them go.
This extension also introduces the INSTRUMENT of an action.423

-ááshiisha [both] v-caus 'chop something (with a tool)' < /-áasa [both] v-tr 'chop'
-/íciiisha [both] v-caus 'use something to kill' < /-íca [both] v-tr 'kill'
-/rimiisha [both] v-caus 'cultivate land with (a tool)' < /-rima [both] v-tr 'dig, cultivate'

The addition of -/ is sometimes closer to what is called a FACTITIVE construction, rather than a causative one, i.e., the action is or has become a fact.

-ááshiisha [both] v-caus 'chop something (with a tool)' < /-áasa [both] v-tr 'chop'

In the perfective forms of both, an extra syllable is added and the /y/ changes to /j/, yielding

/-ishije/ or /eesheje/.424

In the perfective forms of both, an extra syllable is added and the /y/ changes to /j/, yielding

/-ishije/ or /eesheje/.424

Sometimes, an entirely different English word may more accurately capture its sense.

/-giriisha/ [both] v-caus 'sell' (R9, R33, R35) < /-gura [both] v-tr 'buy'
/-böneeshawa [both] v-caus 'show, demonstrate' (R37.3) < /-bóna [both] v-tr 'see, find, acquire'
/-aandikiiisha [both] v-caus 'register, enroll someone in (a program)' < /-aandika [both] v-tr 'write'

8.14.3. Causative or Factitive (+y-)

The addition of -y- or palatalization is sometimes closer to what is called a FACTITIVE construction, rather than a causative one, i.e., the action is or has become a fact.

-ááshiisha [both] v-caus 'chop something (with a tool)' < /-áasa [both] v-tr 'chop'
-/íciiisha [both] v-caus 'use something to kill' < /-íca [both] v-tr 'kill'
-/rimiisha [both] v-caus 'cultivate land with (a tool)' < /-rima [both] v-tr 'dig, cultivate'

MONOSYLLABIC VERBS with these extensions have long vowels; a few undergo distinctive sound changes.

/-giisha/ [both] v-caus 'make s.o. or s.t. go' < /-ja [Rundi], /-jya [Rwanda] v-intr 'go'
/-hiisha/ [both] v-caus 'make s.o. burn s.t.; cause s.o. to get burned; let s.t. be cooked' < /-shá [Rundi],
-/shyá [Rwanda] v-inch 'burn oneself, get burned'
/-nyewéshe [both] v-caus 'have s.o. drink s.t.; give s.o. s.t. to drink; make s.o. drink' < /-nywá [both] v-tr 'drink'
/-pfuusha [both] v-caus 'kill; let s.o. die; lose (relative, friend) in death' < /-pfá [both] v-st 'die'
/-tíeeshe [both] v-caus 'cause to lose; make s.o. abandon s.t.; cause s.t. that has been started to fail; interrupt' < /-tá [both] v-tr 'drop; discard'

In the perfective forms of both, an extra syllable is added and the /y/ changes to /j/, yielding

/-ishije/ or /eesheje/.424

/-umutwáare yakóreesheje igitáramo iwé' [Rwanda] 'A chief threw a party at his palace.' (R14) <
/-kóreesha [both] 'employ; use; throw (a party)' /haaraköreesheje [Rundi] (R37.4), /haaraköreesheje [both] (JN, LN) 'There has been used ...'
/-baawugiriishije [both] 'They sold it.' (R35.1) < /-guriisha [both] 'sell'
/-bábicishije [both] 'They making it pass ...' (R35.1) < /-ciiisha [both] 'cause to cut; make s.t. pass'
/-ríishije [both] 'feed; make s.o. eat; eat s.t. with an utensil' < /-ryá [both] v-tr 'eat'

Sometimes, an entirely different English word may more accurately capture its sense.

/-guriisha [both] v-caus 'sell' (R9, R33, R35) < /-gura [both] v-tr 'buy'
/-booneesha [both] v-caus 'show, demonstrate' (R37.3) < /-bóna [both] v-tr 'see, find, acquire'
/-aandikiisha [both] v-caus 'register, enroll someone in (a program)' < /-aandika [both] v-tr 'write'

8.14.3. Causative or Factitive (+y-)

The addition of -y- or palatalization is sometimes closer to what is called a FACTITIVE construction, rather than a causative one, i.e., the action is or has become a fact.

/-báábaaka [both] v-caus 'hurt someone, cause someone to be in pain' < /-báábara [both] v-tr 'hurt'
/-kira [both] v-caus 'cure, heal, make well; save (s.o.;) enrich' < /-kira [both] v-st 'heal, be healed or cured; be in good health; be saved or delivered from s.t. troublesome or annoying'
/-geenda [both] v-tr 'make s.o. go or walk; drive (vehicle); conduct oneself; treat, behave towards; deal with (a matter), manage (affairs)' < /-geenda [both] v-intr 'go, walk'
/-óóza [both] v-tr 'wash, rinse' < /-óóza [both] v-intr 'immerse, be in water; bathe'
/-guma [Rundi] v-caus 'keep, preserve, maintain,' [Rwanda] 'hold tightly, hold with both hands; [ext] be stingy or miserly' < /-guma [both] v-intr 'be firm, hard, solid, stable'
/-yobya [Rwanda] v-caus 'lead s.o. into error' < /-yobya [both] v-intr 'lose (one's way), get lost; err (in counting or speaking)'

424 Technically the full form of the suffix is -ishizye or -eesheje. The combination -z- and -y- yield -j- (see 2.5.8).
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

Unlike formations in -ish- or -eesh-, the factitive can be highly idiomatic. In some cases the verbs so derived can have drastically different meanings which can only be differentiated by context.

/-rwáaza/ [both] v-caus 'sicken, make s.o. sick' < /-rwáara/ [both] v-st 'be sick, feel ill; ache'
/bí byókuryá birárwáaza umwáana/ [Rwanda] 'This food will make the child sick.' (Overdulve 1975:210)
/-rwáaza/ [both] v-tr 'nurse, aid or help s.o. who is sick; have s.o. who is sick in one's household'
/uyu mugabo ararwáaza umwáana/ [both] 'This man helps the sick child.' (Overdulve 1975:210)
/uyu mugabo arwaaje umwáana/ [both] 'This man has a sick child.' (Overdulve 1975:211)
/-ramutsa/ [both] v-tr 'greet, salute; wish s.o. well; welcome' < /-ramuka/ [both] v-intr 'rise, get up in the morning'
/ava haasi aramutsa amahoro» [Rundi] 'He stood up and gave the greeting "Peace!"' (R11)

The following exemplify the contrast of -sh- and -y- forms.

/-vúgiisha/ [both] v-caus 'make s.o. speak, cause to speak; chat, talk with s.o., have a conversation'
/-vúza/ [both] v-caus 'have s.o. speak, whistle; play (instrument), beat (a drum); make s.t. sound'
/ararhámaga ararhámaza umwáana/ [both] 'He is sending for the child.' (LN)
/ararhámagariiisha ararhámaza umwáana ingoma/ [both] 'He is summoning the child by means of a drum.' (LN)

When the stem ends in -r, the perfective forms of these factitives are unpredictable and will have to be memorized for each individual verb. Otherwise, the original stem consonant returns (for roots with d, g, m), an extra syllable with /i/ or /e/ is added (a disyllabic imperfective becomes a trisyllabic perfective stem), and the /y/ or /z/ changes to /j/ yielding /-ije/ or /-eje/.

g > z /-haajije/ < /-haaza/ [both] v-caus 'suffice, be enough; cause to become full or sated' < /-haaga/
{both} 'eat enough'
/ya mafaranga yarahajije/ [both] 'That money was enough.' (Overdulve 1975:211)
g > z /-óoejije/ < /-óoza/ [both] v-tr 'wash, rinse' < /-óoga/ [both] v-intr 'immerse, be in water; bathe'
d > z /-geenjeje/ < /-geenza/ [both] v-tr 'make s.o. go or walk' < /-geenda/ [both] v-intr 'go, walk'
d > z /-tíinda/ < /-tíinza/ [Rwanda] 'delay, make s.o. late' < /-tiinda/ [both] v-intr 'be late'
m + y /-gumije/ < /-gumya/ [see ABOVE] < /-guma/ [both] v-intr 'be firm, hard, solid, stable'
t > sh /-rushije/ < /-rusha/ [both] v-tr 'surpass, excel' < /-ruta/ [both] v-tr 'exceed'
r > z /-éeejeje/ < /-éeza/ [both] v-caus 'whiten, brighten' < /-éera/ [both] v-st 'be or become white'
r > z /-kiijije/ < /-kiiza/ [both] v-caus 'cure, heal' [see ABOVE] < /-kira/ [both] v-st 'be healed'

EXCEPTIONS (extra syllable not added)
r > z /-bábaraje/ < /-bábara/ [both] v-caus 'hurt' [see ABOVE] < /-bábara/ [both] v-st 'be hurt'
r > z /-húeje/ < /-húuza/ [both] v-caus 'put in contact, unite, cause people to come together' < /-húura/
{both} v-st 'come together, meet'
r > z /-rwáaje/ < /-rwáaza/ [both] v-caus 'sicken' [see ABOVE] < /-rwáara/ [both] v-st 'be sick'
r > z /-tiija/ < /-tiiza/ [both] v-caus 'lend s.t. to s.o.' < /-tiira/ [both] v-tr 'borrow, ask for a loan'

Sometimes, an entirely different English word may more accurately capture its sense.

/-aanduz/ [both] v-caus 'contaminate, infect' < /-aandura/ [both] v-st 'get dirty; contract (disease)'
/-éémera/ [both] v-caus 'confirm, attest, acknowledge' < /-éemera/ [both] v-tr 'agree, accept'
/-guza/ [Rwanda] v-caus 'borrow money, ask for a loan' < /-gura/ [both] v-tr 'buy, purchase'
8.14.4. Reciprocal, Mutual, or Associative Verbs (-an-)

The addition of the suffix -an- generally indicates that the agents or subjects are doing an action to each other (MUTUAL) or with one another (RECIProCAL).\(^{425}\) In these instances the SUBJECT is always PLURAL.

\[-\text{geendana}/ \text{both} v-recip 'go together' < /\text{geenda}/ \text{both} v-intr 'go, walk'}
\[-\text{kiunda}/ \text{both} v-recip 'love one another' < /\text{kiunda}/ \text{both} v-tr 'love'}
\[-\text{tuzaabonana ubuündi}/ \text{(Rwanda)} 'We will see each other at some other time.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:259)'
\[-\text{umwáana avuutsé kurí umwé mu baároongoranye}/ \text{(Rundi)} 'A child who was born to only one of the married couple.' (R13)'
\[-\text{tuzaabonana ubuündi}/ \text{(Rwanda)} 'Disputes among people who have a misunderstanding, who quarrel over trivial matters such as criticizing each other, insulting one another.' (R40.4)'

With a direct object, using an -an- verb implies that the object does not participate in the action; however, if the following noun is marked with na- it implies the action is mutual. Note that in these instances the SUBJECT may be SINGULAR.

\[-\text{impumyi igeendana inkoni}/ \text{(both)} 'A blind person walks with a cane.' (Overdulve & Jacob 199:261)'
\[-\text{yariirukanye ibitéero vy'áabáarabú}/ \text{(Rundi)} 'He pursued the Arab troops.' (R3)'
\[-\text{kukó navuukaneye agamaguru abiri nk'ábaándi}/ \text{(both)} '... because I was born with two legs like other people' (R34.2)'
\[-\text{umubyéeyi ageendana akáana ké}/ \text{(Rwanda)} 'The mother walks with her baby.' [it is on her back and is not itself walking] (Overdulve 1975:212)'
\[-\text{umubyéeyi arageendana n'úumwáana we}/ \text{(Rwanda)} 'The mother is walking with her child.' [it is also walking] (Overdulve 1975:213)'
\[-\text{vakoranaga néezá n'ábaándi}/ \text{(Rwanda)} 'She worked well with others.' (LN)'
\[-\text{petéetero ajaaana abáana}/ \text{(Rundi)} 'Peter escorts the children.' (Cristini 2000:264)\(^{426}\)'
\[-\text{petéetero ajaaana n'áabáana}/ \text{(Rundi)} 'Peter goes with the children.' (Cristini 2000:264)'

It also expresses the MANNER of an action.\(^{427}\)

\[-\text{uyu mwaána arageendana ubwóoba}/ \text{(both)} 'This child walks with fear.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:260)'
\[-\text{umugoré aravúgana agahiinda}/ \text{(both)} 'The woman is talking with sorrow.' (Kimenyi 1980:84)'
\[-\text{abakózi báacu bakorana umweéte}/ \text{(both)} 'Our workers work with dedication' (Overdulve 1975:212)'

MONOSYLLABIC VERBS with these extensions have long vowels, but no distinctive sound changes.

\[-\text{baáana}/ \text{(both)} v-cop-recip 'be with one another; live together' < /\text{bá}/ \text{(both)} v-cop 'be, become'}
\[-\text{háana}/ \text{(both)} v-recip 'give to each other, exchange' < /\text{há}/ \text{(both)} v-ditr 'give s.t. to s.o.'
\[-\text{nywáana}/ \text{(both)} v-recip 'drink together; [fig] be friends' < /\text{nywá}/ \text{(both)} v-tr 'drink'}

---


\(^{426}\) Overdulve (1975:213) gives parallel examples in Rwanda: /\text{turajyaana abáana}/ 'We are taking the children away.' (the children are not doing anything themselves); /\text{turajyaana n'áabáana}/ 'We are going with the children.' (the children are walking too).

\(^{427}\) See Kimenyi (1980:83–6) for examples and certain constraints.
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

The perfective forms are regular: /n/ + /ye/ yields /-nye/.

/twaazanye/ [Rundi] (JN), /twaazanye/ [Rwanda] (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:261) 'We came together.'
/baáraazánye inzoga/ [Rundi] 'They brought the beer.' (Cristini 2000:264)
/uriya musóre twaáriiganye/ [both] 'I studied together with that young man.' [lit. 'That young man we studied together.'] (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:261, JN)

Sometimes, the idea of reciprocity does not carry over into the English translation.

/háno hari iimbwá iryáana/ [both] 'Beware of dog!' [lit. 'Here there is a dog that bites.'](Overdulve & Jacob 1998:261, JN)
/ahorana inzara/ [both] 'He is always hungry.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:261)

8.14.5. Attributive or Stative (-ik-, -ek-)

The suffix -ik- is added to stems that have the mid vowels /e/ or /o/, while -ik- is added to those with /i/, /u/ or /a/, and -k- is added to verbs ending in /-ra/. This construction is called NEUTER in many publications, but that term normally refers to nouns that are neither masculine nor feminine (i.e., gender-neutral) or else to verbs that are neither active nor passive (i.e., voice-neutral). However, these two suffixes have the force of turning a verb into an adjective-like or attributive construction (§6.5), the translation of which is often closest to the English suffixes -able or -ible. In other instances, the resulting verb may be translated as get or become VERB or even be easy to VERB.

/-bóheka/ [both] v-atr 'be easily tied' < /-bóha/ [both] v-tr 'tie, bind'
/-máanyuka/ [both] v-atr 'be broken, get disrupted' < /-máanyura/ [both] v-tr 'break (up, into pieces), fracture; detach;' cf: /ikimaányu/ [both] n4-sg 'slice, piece, fraction, portion, morsel'
/-seeseka/ [both] v-atr 'be spread out (beyond borders)' < /-seesa/ [both] v-intr 'pour, spread; throw out onto the ground'
/uwuhabwunikira/ [Rundi] auto-n1-sg-imm+obj 'one who breaks a bone there' (R23) < /–vúnika/ [both] v-atr 'get broken, be fractured'
/uyu murimá urahíingika/ [Rwanda] 'This field is easy to cultivate.' (Overdulve 1975:235)

«Uwo muhisi yari umuntu yitaho umwuga wiwe bimwe biboneka» [Rundi] 'The departed was a person who obviously cared for her profession.' (R17.7)

MONOSYLLABIC VERBS with these extensions have long vowels and are formed from the perfective stem.

/-pfuuka/ [both] v-atr 'be dead (of hair), get defeathered' < /-pfá, -pfúuye/ [both] v-st 'die'
/-ríika/ [both] v-atr 'be edible; get eaten' < /-ryá, -ríiye/ [both] v-tr 'eat'
/-seeka/ [both] v-atr 'be grindable, be easily ground' < /-sya, -seeye/ [both] v-tr 'grind'

The perfective forms regularly exhibit a single sound change: /k/ + /ye/ yields /-tse/.

/napunitse ukuguru/ [both] 'I fractured my leg.' (Overdulve 1975:236) < /–vúnika/ [both] v-atr 'get broken; be fractured'

428 One exception is /-gororoka/ v-atr [both] 'be straight; be righteous,' which shows ASSIMILATION (VOWEL HARMONY) to the two previous o's.

The augment -uur- is added to stems that have the vowels /a/, /e/, /i/, or /u/, while -oor- to stems that have /o/. These have the effect of creating a TRANSITIVE VERB with the REVERSE MEANING of the root, similar to English prefixes such as un- or dis-.

The augment -uuk- is suffixed on stems that have the vowels /a/, /e/, /i/, or /u/, while -ook- on stems that have /o/. These latter augments create an INTRANSITIVE VERB. This system is not used on all verbs (i.e., it is not as productive as the benefactive or causative augments) and the appropriate English meaning is not readily predictable. The student will have to learn which verbs can take these suffixes and should carefully study their meanings.

The perfective forms regularly exhibit the expected sound changes: /tr/ + /ye/ yields /-ye/ (the /tr/ drops) and /k/ + /ye/ yields /-se/.

The perfected forms regularly exhibit the expected sound changes: /tr/ + /ye/ yields /-ye/ (the /tr/ drops) and /k/ + /ye/ yields /-se/.

Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

/aamaferi vacyitse/ [Rwanda] 'defective brakes' (R16) < /-ciika/ [both] v-atr 'break, rupture'«

<ivyiyumviro bigayitse vyibhonyawboko» [Rundi] 'the despicable ideas of genocide' (R29.7) <

/gayika/ [both] 'be despicable, contemptible'


Note the unexplained shift in root tonality from /-üurira/ to /-uururuka/.
8.14.8 Durative or Frequentative (-iriz-, -erez-)

The augment -agur- is added to a limited number of stems of more than one syllable that have the vowels /e/, /o/, or /u/, while -agir- appears on a few stems with /a/ or /i/. Monosyllabic roots are inflected with -agur-. There is also a less commonly used alternate -agar-. These affixes imply that an action is repeated many times or takes place over a long period of time. They may also serve simply to intensify a verb.

/-hoondagura/ [both] v-repet 'flog, thrash, hit again and again' < /-hoonda/ [both] v-tr 'beat, hit, strike'
/-kúbitagura/ [both] v-repet 'thash soundly, strike again and again' < /-kúbita/ [both] v-tr 'beat, hit'
/-ménagura/ [both] v-repet 'break s.t. to bits or into several pieces, crush to smitherens' < /-méná/ [both] v-tr 'break, shatter'
/-rimagura/ [both] v-repet 'dig quickly, with short strokes' < /-rima/ [both] v-tr 'dig, hoe, cultivate land'
/-kinagira/ [both] v-repet 'play hard.; play and play' < /-kina/ [both] v-tr 'play, enjoy oneself'
/-cáagagura/ [Rwanda] v-repet 'cut into small pieces' < /-cá/ [both] v-tr 'cut, slice'
/-nyaagagura/ [Rwanda] v-repet 'defecate often, constantly go to the toilet' < /-nnya/ [both] v-tr 'defecate'
/-ryaagagura/ [Rundi] v-repet 'insult s.o., speak harsh words to s.o.;' [Rwanda] 'eat voraciously, eat without stopping' < /-rýá/ [both] v-tr 'eat'
/-táagagura/ [Rwanda] v-repet 'lose things here and there; squander (one's wealth)' < /-táá/ [both] v-tr 'drop; throw away, discard'
/-téembagara/ [both] v-repet 'topple, tumble down or over' < /-téemba/ [both] v-intr 'slope (downwards)'
/ikakiguragura/ [both] v-repet-seq-narr+obj 'Then it stirs it around again and again.' (R12)
/báatémaguranye/ [both] v-repet-part-recent-perf 'They having (recently) cut each other to pieces ...'

The perfective forms regularly exhibit the expected sound changes: /r/ + /ye/ yields /ye/ (/r/ > Ø).

/-gaanduguye/ < /-gaandagura/ [Rundi] v-repet 'kill, liquidate'
/-sirагyel/ < /-sirагira/ [Rwanda] v-repet 'come and go repeatedly; go back and forth often'
/-témaguye/ < /-témagura/ [both] v-repet 'shred, cut up (into smaller pieces)'

8.14.8 Durative or Frequentative (-iriz-, -erez-)

The suffix -erez- is added to stems that have the mid vowels /e/ or /o/, while -iriz- is added to those with /i/, /u/ or /a/. These DURATIVE or FREQUENTATIVE verb augments have the sense of do VERB persistently, repeated, or over a prolonged time.

/-henerëza/ [both] v-freq 'keep bending over with one's butt protruding (bare-topped or naked)' < /-hena/
{both} v-intr 'bend over (showing one's butt, but not necessarily bare), moon; [ext] be naked'
/-kórezeza/ [Rwanda] v-freq 'make a living from day to day by farming for others (day labor)' < /-kóra/ {both} v-tr 'work'
/-hitirëza/ [Rundi] v-freq 'pass by unnoticed, sneak through' < /-hitá/ [both] v-intr 'pass (by, over)'

---

433 Only four are known to do so, see examples below.
435 The only authors to discuss these augment are: Hands 1952:288 (PERSISTIVE), Hurel 1959:81 (INTENSIVE, French verbes intensifs), and Kimenyi 2002:263 (FREQUENTATIVE) for Kinyarwanda, and Cox 1970:22 for Kirundi. Both Overdulve 1975:239 and Cristini 2000:257 refer to the APPLICATIVE (our BENEFACTIVE) + CAUSATIVE or FACTITIVE function of this combination, i.e., -er- or -ir- + -er- > -erez- or -iriz-.
/sabiriza/ [both] v-freq 'beg without stop, ask for s.t. repeatedly; live like a beggar' /-saba/ [both] v-dir 'ask, request' 

/-úumviriza/ [both] v-freq 'listen carefully, pay close attention' /-úumva/ [both] v-tr 'hear, listen' 

/-ziririza/ [both] v-freq 'scrupulously observe taboos' /-zira/ [both] v-st 'be forbidden, prohibited, taboo

The perfective forms regularly substitute /-je/ for /-za/.

/-gumirije/ < /-gumiriza/ [both] v-freq 'continue s.t. indefinitely' 

/-henereje/ < /-henereza/ [both] v-freq 'keep bending over' [ABOVE]

/-sabirije/ < /-sabiriza/ [both] v-freq 'beg without stop' [ABOVE]

8.14.9. Multiple Augments

Most of the verb extensions detailed in the above sections can co-occur, but rarely in the high number of combinations exemplified in some of the textbooks. Table 106, derived from Overdulve (1975:237), outlines the order in which multiple augments are generally placed. Note that the order of benefactive and reciprocal augments can be inverted.

Table 106. Typical Order of Co-occurring Verb Augments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REPET</th>
<th>CAUS</th>
<th>BEN</th>
<th>RECIPI</th>
<th>CAUS (FACT)</th>
<th>PASS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-agur /-agir /-agagur</td>
<td>-iish /-eesh</td>
<td>-ir /-er /-irir /-erer</td>
<td>-an</td>
<td>-y /-z /-ez</td>
<td>-w</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REV</td>
<td>ATR</td>
<td>RECIPI</td>
<td>BEN</td>
<td>-ir /-er</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-uuk /-okk /-uur /-oor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

However, there cannot be hard and fast rules, because it depends on the nature of the verb stem, e.g., is it a causative verb with a reciprocal augment?, or is it a reciprocal verb with a causative augment?

/-kóreeshanya/ [both] v-caus+recip 'make work together' 

/-áankaniisha/ [Rundi], /-áanganiisha/ [Rwanda] v-recip+caus 'excite hatred among, turn s.o. against another' 

/-menyaniisha/ [both] v-recip+caus 'introduce s.o. to s.o. else' [lit. 'make people know each other']

The following represent some "real world" instances of two or more affix combinations.

«Abadandaza bawugurishiriza mu kinyegero ku giciro c'umurengera» [Rundi] v-caus+ben+fact 'Merchants sell it secretly at an excessive price.' (R35.1)

/azooshikiriwa/ [Rundi] v-ben+fact+pass 'They will be forwarded to ...' (R9)

/baragerekeranye/ [both] v-ben+recip 'They are on top of one another.' (R31.2)

/haárakoresheje iw/ [Rundi] v-caus+pass 'There has been used ...' (R37.4)

/kugwiirirana/ [Rundi] v-ben+recip 'to increase' (R37.3)

/niimugirirana/ [Rwanda] v-ben+recip 'If you have for each other ...' (R28.10)

/-shuuhiriza/ [Rundi], /shyúuhiriza/ [Rwanda] v-ben+fact 'measure.'

/twaábbitaangaarije we/ [both] v-ben+fact+pass '... that we were informed about it.' (R24)

/uwuhavunikira/ [Rundi] v-attr+ben 'who breaks a bone there' (R23)

/waráhabishije / [both] v-caus+pass 'You have been overwhelmed.' (R21)

/wuúmvikaniye / [both] v-attr+recip+ben 'who was heard on (the radio)' (R20)

436 See, for example, Overdulve (1975:237,313), who has two tables with up to six co-occurrences in Kinyarwanda, but only exemplifies five. His example /gu-kór-eesh-erez an y-wa/ (Ibid:238) is misparsed (as four morphs) and rejected by our consultants. Cristini 2000:271 presents an example with four /ku-gerek-ir-an y-wa 'be piled one on top of the other.' Unfortunately, not only is there a spelling error «gerika» (sic), the verb /gereka/ [both] 'put s.t. on top of s.t. else, superimpose, add to' is not formed from /gera/ [both] 'measure.'
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

/zikaba ziciibonekeza/ {Rundi} v-atr+fact 'They still attract notice.' (R37.4)
/záagaragajwe/ {both} v-fact+pass 'They being shown ...' (R10)

8.15. Voice (Passive)

The Bantu suffix -w- allows the subject and object of a sentence to be reversed.437 This suffix always comes just before the final aspect suffix of the verb. This construction is reasonably straightforward when forming passives with the endings -a or -e (i.e., affirmative or negative imperfective, subjunctive, etc.).

/-hishwa, -hishwe/ {both} v-pass 'be hidden' < /-hisha/ {both} v-tr 'hide, conceal'
/-kámwa, -kámwe/ {both} v-pass 'be milked' < /-káma/ {both} v-tr 'milk (a cow)'
/-remwa, -remwe/ {both} v-pass 'be created' < /-rema/ {both} v-tr 'create, form'
/-tiinywa, -tiinywe/ {both} v-pass 'be feared' < /-tiinya/ {both} v-tr 'fear, be afraid of'

However, several sound changes affect the perfective form of passive verbs, namely palatalization, velarization, and metathesis438 (§2.5.16), so that many perfective forms barely seem to resemble their imperfective counterparts. These pairs should be memorized.

d > z /-kündwa, -künzwe/ {both} v-pass 'be loved' < /-künda/ {both} v-tr 'love'
d > z /-ruundwa, -ruunzwe/ {both} v-pass 'be piled up' < /-ruunda/ {both} v-tr 'pile up, amass'
g > z /-fuungwa, -fuunzwe/ {both} v-pass 'be closed' < /-fuunga/ {both} v-tr 'close, shut'
g > z /-saangwa, -saanzwe/ {both} v-pass 'be usual' < /-saanga/ {both} v-tr 'go towards'
k > ts /-biikwa, -biitswe/ {both} v-pass 'be stored' < /-biika/ {both} v-tr 'store, put s.t. away'
k > ts /-téekwa, -téetswe/ {both} v-pass 'be cooked' < /-téeka/ {both} v-tr 'cook'
n > ny /-zanwa, -zanywe/ {both} v-pass 'be brought' < /-zana/ {both} v-recip 'bring, come with'
r > O /-téerwa, -téewa/ {both} v-pass 'be caused' < /-téera/ {both} v-tr 'cause, provoke, elicit'
r > O /-táaráwa, -tááwea/ {both} v-pass 'be taken away' < /-táára/ {both} v-tr 'carry, take away'
r > z /-gurwa, -guzwe/ {both} v-pass 'be sold' < /-gura/ {both} v-tr 'buy, purchase; sell, trade'
s > sh /-meswa, -mêshe/ {both} v-pass 'be washed' < /-mesa/ {both} v-tr 'wash, launder'
t > s /-iítwa, -iíswe/ {both} v-pass 'be named' < /-iíta/ {both} v-tr 'name s.o.'
y > O /-fátwa, -fáshe/ {both} v-pass 'be caught' < /-fáta/ {both} v-tr 'catch, seize'
y > O /-gawa, -gawe/ {both} v-pass 'be despised' < /-gaya/ {both} v-tr 'despise, scorn, have contempt for'
z > j /-garagazwa, -garagajwe/ {both} v-pass 'be shown' < /-garagaza/ {both} v-caus 'show'
/abashinzwe/ {both} auto-nl-pl-imm-perf-pass 'the ones who are responsible for' (R16) < /-siìingwa/
{both} v-pass 'be fixed or established; [ext] be responsible for, be in charge of
/iyi mpanuka idasaanzwé ngo yaaba yáaratéewe námáferi yaaciitse/ {Rwanda} v-part-pret-perf-pass 'This unusual accident, it is believed, may have been caused by defective brakes.' (R16) < /-téerwa/
{both} v-pass 'be caused'
/bitaama yarákuundwa hóóse/ {Rundi} v-ind-pret-impf-pass 'Bitama was loved everywhere.' (R25) < /-kuundwa/ {both} v-pass 'be loved'
/akarwa kiitíwá ijíwi/ {Rwanda} v-rel-imm-pass 'A small island called Ijíwi.' (R20) < /-iítwa/ {both} v-pass 'be named'
/wiitwa ndé?/ {both} v-ind-imm-pass 'What's your name?' [lit: 'Who are you called?'] (Rodegem 1970:195)
/imaana ishiimwé/ {both} v-sub-imm-pass 'God be praised!' (Overdulve 1975:194) < /-shiimwa/
{both} v-pass 'be appreciated, be approved of; get praised'
/tweereke ingéne wafashwé/ {Rundi} v-rel-recent-perf-pass 'Show us how you were caught.' (R27.9) < /-fátwá/ {both} v-pass 'be caught'


438 In a form like /kúnzwe/ {both} 'be loved' the METATHESIS involves the switching of places of w passive and y perfective, i.e., /kúund-y-w-e/.
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

/haári hátumiwe abaantu bóóse/ {Rundi} v-part-imm-perf-pass 'Everybody was invited.' (R29.3) < /-túmirwa/ {both} v-pass 'be summoned, get invited'
/ntaa butááyu buharaángwa/ {Rwanda} v-rel-imm-pass+obj 'There is no sign of arid land there.' (R32) < /-raangwa/ {both} v-pass 'be characterized, be identified'
/babijeéjwe/ {Rundi} v-rel-imm-perf-pass+obj 'who are responsible for it' (R35.4) < /-zéezwa/ {Rundi} v-pass 'be someone who can be counted upon'
«Ubu rero barahumiriza bakemera bákazimbwa» {Rundi} v-seq-imm-pass 'So they just close their eyes and resign themselves to being overcharged.' (R35.4) < /-ziimbwa/ {Rundi} v-pass 'be overcharged'.

Causative passives have syllable addition in their perfective forms, i.e., –eeshwa > –eeshejwe or –iígiishwa > –íigishijwe.
/-íigiishwa, -íigishijwe/ {both} v-caus-pass 'be taught'
/-tíësswa, -tíëshejwe/ {both} v-caus-pass 'cause s.o. to lose s.t. {Rwanda}; {Rundi} [ext] be contradicted'
/-vúgiishwa, -vúgiishijwe/ {both} v-caus-pass 'made a slip of the tongue'

Monosyllabic roots form their imperfective passive by adding a b, i.e., /-bw/. Due to sound change, the perfective forms always end in /-we/.
/-báabwa, -báawe/ {Rwanda} v-pass 'be' [special passive idiom] < /-bá/ {both} v-cop 'be, become; live'
/-cíibwa, -cíiwe/ {both} v-pass 'be cut; be arbitrated' < /-cá/ {both} v-tr 'cut, slice, sever'
/-giibwa, -giiwe/ {Rwanda} v-pass 'be frequented' < /-jya/ {Rwanda} v-motion 'go (to, towards)'
/-háabwa, -háawe/ {both} v-pass 'be given' < /-há/ {both} v-ditr 'give s.t. to s.o.'
/-kóobwa, -kóowe/ {both} v-pass 'be paid (of a dowry)' < /-kwá/ {both} v-tr 'pay a dowry'
/-moobwa, -moowe/ {both} v-pass 'be shaved' < /-mwa/ {both} v-tr 'shave'
/-neebwa, -neewe/ {both} v-pass 'be excreted' < /-nnya/ {both} v-tr 'defecate, go to the toilet'
/-nyóobwa, -nyóowe/ {both} v-pass 'be drunk' < /-nywá/ {both} v-tr 'drink'
/-ruübwa, -ruuwe/ {both} v-pass 'be eaten' < /-ryá/ {both} v-tr 'eat'
/-seebwa, -seewe/ {both} v-pass 'be ground' < /-syá/ {both} v-tr 'grind'
/-táabwa, -táawe/ {both} v-pass 'be discarded' < /-tá/ {both} v-tr 'drop, let s.t. fall; discard'
/-vuubwa, -vuuwe/ {both} v-pass 'be exited' < /-va/ {both} v-intr 'leave, exit'

Note that the use of the passive is far more frequent and idiomatic in Kirundi and Kinyarwanda than it is in English. Even intransitive verbs can have a passive in order to form an impersonal construction.

«Iyi nzu n'iyo kubabwamo n'umwami.» {Rwanda} 'This is a house fit for a king to live in.' [lit. 'to be lived in by a king'] (Hands 1952:281)
/agíiye ibugiíbwa/ {Rwanda} 'He is going to his usual hangout.' [lit. 'to a place being frequented']
(Bizimana 1998:233)

8.16. Irregular Verbs

There is a small set of verbs shared between Kirundi and Kinyarwanda that lack complete paradigms common to most verb roots, e.g., no perfective form (–sa), no imperfective form (–físe / –fíte, –fíte), no past forms, etc. Most have a very limited set of inflections. And a few irregularly end in -i, (–rí, –'zi, –ruuži, –zinányi) rather than -a. Each dialect also has a few unique roots, e.g., /-méengo/ {Rundi}, /-ruuži/ {Rwanda}. The locative copulative /-rí/ is irregular, but will be treated in the section on copulative verbs (§8.17.2) just below.

291
8.16.1. The Possessive Verbs

Kirundi and Kinyarwanda each have its own root to express possession or ownership. These forms appear to be perfective (which is a standard conjugation for a stative verb) and there is no imperfective version. The recent and the preterit are formed from the auxiliary /-rí/ and appropriate participials. There are forms in the indicative, participial, relative, and autonome. The standard verbal synonym for these is: /-gírá/ {both} 'have, hold, own, possess.'

/-físe/ {Rundi} 'have, own, possess' (Cristini 2000:242f)
/bítaama vari’díí físe abageenzi bënshe/ {Rundi} 'Bitama had many friends.' (R25)
/ntaa báana bafíse/ {Rundi} v-ir-poss-rel-imm 'They don't have any children.' (Rundi) (Cristini 2000:243)
/abafíse amééenyo/ {Rundi} v-ir-poss-auto-nl-pl-imm 'those who have teeth' (Cristini 2000:243)
/bamufíite ishari / {Rundi} v-ir-poss-ben-ind-imm+obj 'They are jealous of him.' [lit. 'They have jealousy for him.'] (Cristini 2000:243)

/-fíte/ {Rwanda} 'have, own, possess' (Overdulve 1975:147)
/mfíte umuriro/ {Rwanda} v-ir-poss-ind-imm 'I have a fever.' (Bizimana 1998:204)
/muracyáafíte ibitabo/ {Rwanda} v-ir-poss-ind-persist 'You still have books.' (Overdulve 1975:230)
/ntaa ntegé mfíte/ {Rwanda} v-ir-poss-rel-imm 'I don't have energy.' [lit. 'There is no energy that I have.'] (Jacob 1984 #1:290)
/abiífíte/ {Rwanda} v-ir-poss-auto-nl-pl-imm 'wealthy people'
/amfíte amafaraanga ijana/ {Rwanda} v-ir-poss-ben-ind-imm+obj 'He owes me one hundred francs.' [lit. 'He has for me one hundred francs.'] (Bizimana 1998:204)

8.16.2. The Cognitive Verbs

There is a small set of verbs, only one of which, /-’zi/, is shared by both dialects, that expresses some form of knowing (e.g., supposing, perceiving, or being acquainted).

/-méengo/ {Rundi} [Alt: -méenga] 'say (that); suppose, believe, think, have an impression (that); seem (to be so)' (Cristini 2000:245, Rodegem 1967:90 and 1970:262, Ntahokaja 1994:182). This defective verb form is generally used in the indicative immediate, recent, and conditional tenses in the second person singular [pro-2sg] or group one plural [n1-pl] to imply an impersonal construction. It can also be used in a sequence or subsecutive construction.

/umeengo ntaa gatíma mugírá/ {Rundi} v-ir-ind-imm 'One gets the impression that you don't have much courage.' (Rodegem 1967:90)
/bameengo/ {Rundi} v-ir-ind-imm 'People believe that ...' (Rodegem 1967:90 & 1970:262)
/ameengo/ {Rundi} v-ir-ind-recent 'I got the impression that ...' (Ntahokaja 1994:182)
/woomeenga niwe/ {Rundi} v-ir-ind-cond 'One would suppose that it is him.' (Rodegem 1970:262)
/woomeengo ararwáaye/ {Rundi} v-ir-ind-cond 'One should say that he is sick.' (Cristini 2000:245)
/ukameengo/ {Rundi} v-ir-seq-ind-imm 'As if ...' or 'And one gets the impression that ...' (Rodegem 1967:90, Ntahokaja 1994:182)


/baruúzi umwáana agwá/ {Rwanda} v-ir-ind-imm 'They notice the child falling.' (Overdulve 1975:259)
/turahíruúzi/ {Rwanda} v-ir-ind-imm+obj 'We understand it.' (Overdulve 1975:230)
/ndacyáaruúzi/ {Rwanda} v-ir-ind-persist 'I am still able to see.' (Bizimana 1998:205)
/ndakúbwíria nkúruúzi/ {Rwanda} v-ir-part-imm 'I am talking to you as I see you.' (Bizimana 1998:205)
/ubwó muruuzí yahíindutse umutuku/ [Rwanda] v-ir-rel-imm 'But now you see they have turned red.'
(R28.5)
/uuruzí/ [Rwanda] v-ir-auto-imm 'one who realizes' (LN)

439 Its regular counterpart is /-menya/.

/zaa zi/ [Rundi] (Cristini 2000:237, Rodegem 1967:73), /baazi byiinzí/ [Rwanda] (LN) v-ir-ind-imm 'They know a lot of things.'

/baramúuzi/ [both] v-ir-ind-imm-disj+obj 'They know him.' (Rodegem 1967:74, LN)

/siimbíizi/ [both] v-ir-auto-imm 'The ones who know best.' (Cristini 2000:238)

/narií mbíizi/ [both] v-ir-cmp-pret+obj 'I knew it.' (Rodegem 1967:74, LN)

/ibyo uvgá biizwi na báke/ [Rwanda] v-ir-ind-imm-pass 'The things you say are known by a few people.' (Bizimana 1998:205)

//zinanyi/ [Rundi] 'know each other, be acquainted' [Alt: -zinana, -zinanye] (Cristini 2000:239)

/umuuntu muuzinányi/ [Rundi] v-ir-recip-rel-imm 'a person that you know well' (Cristini 2000:239)

/-:ziranye/ [Rwanda] 'know each other, be acquainted'(Jacob 1987 #3:593)

/ubusáanzwe ntíwaári tíúziranye twámenyaniye mu kazi/ [Rwanda] v-ir-recip-part-imm 'Previously we did not know each other, but we got acquainted at work.' (Jacob #2 1986:347)

8.16.3. The Comparative Verbs

There are two verbs that express some form of comparison but which lack perfective forms. These have already been discussed and exemplified at the very end of Chapter 6 (§6.6).


/ntibaangána/ [both] v-ind-neg-imm 'They are not equal.' (Rodegem 1967:76, Cristini 2000:242)

/hari abadáshobóra kuroonka amafaraanga aanganá gúrtyo/ [Rundi] v-rel-imm 'There are those who cannot get that kind of money.' (R35.2)

/afite umutwé ungána n’úmusózi/ [Rwanda] v-rel-subj-imm 'He has a huge head.' [lit. 'head as big as a hill'] (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:277)

/huuzura abaángana/ [Rundi] v-auto-imm 'Those who are equal become friends.' (Rodegem 1967:76)


/ntasá ukó yahóra asá/ [Rundi] v-ind-neg-imm – v-part-aff-imm 'He does not look like he used to look.' (Cristini 2000:240)

/bagása n’ibisumá/ [both] v-ir-imm 'And they look like thieves.' (Cristini 2000:241)

/ingéne mwéezi yasá/ [Rundi] v-rel-pret 'How Mwezi looked.' (R5)

---

439 Both Bizimana 1998:205 and Overdulve & Jacob 1998:248 indicate that /-zi/ has a benefactive form, but only in the perfective /-ziye/, e.g., /unziye amabaanga/ [Rwanda] 'You are aware of my secrets.'

440 It is the lack of a perfective counterpart that makes this root irregular in Kirundi. There is a perfective form in Kinyarwanda, e.g., /waanganyye gútyo ryáarí?/ 'When did you get so big?'
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

8.16.4. The Prohibitive Verb

/-ooya/ {both} 'stop s.t., abandon; let s.o. be; renounce; prevent, not allow.' This verb is limited to three forms: imperative, subjunctive, and subsecutive. If it governs another verb, that verb will be in the INFINITIVE.441

/oya ayo/ {Rwanda} v-ir-imp 'Stop it! = That's enough!' (Jacob #2 1986:515)
/oya iyo/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:241, Rodegem 1967:76), /oya ibyo/ {Rwanda} (Hurel 1959:169) v-ir-imp 'Stop it! = Let me be!' (Jacob #2 1986:515)
/geenda buhóro mwooye kugwa/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:241) v-ir-sub+inf 'Go carefully so that you won't fall.' (Cristini 2000:241, Rodegem 1967:76)
/yooyé kudúteera ubwóoba/ {both} v-ir-sub+inf 'He should not scare us.' (Cristini 2000:277, LN)
/(ni) booyé gupfá náabí/ {Rundi} v-ir-sub+inf+pro-1sg-obj '... so that they won't die miserably.' (Cristini 2000:241, Rodegem 1967:76)
/mwooyé gutíinya/ {both} v-ir-sub+inf 'Don't be afraid!' (Cox 1970:17)
/zikooya kujá kurwaana mw'iijoro/ {Rundi} v-ir-seq-ind-imm '... so that they (the cows) won't fight during the night.' (Cristini 2000:241, Rodegem 1967:76)

8.17. Copulative Verbs

There are three sets of verbs that express to be: an invariable PREDICATIVE /ni/ (negative /si/), an irregular LOCATIVE root /-rí/, and a MONOSYLLABIC COPULATIVE root /-bá/. They each have their own functions and presuppositions.

«ni kigali» {both} v-cop-invar-ind-aff-imm 'It is Kigali.' (LN)
«ari i kigali» {both} v-cop-loc-ind-aff-imm 'He is in Kigali.' (cf: Overdulve 1975:146)
«aba i kigali» {both} v-cop-mono-ind-aff-imm 'He lives in Kigali.' (cf: Overdulve 1975:146)

8.17.1. The Invariable Predicative Copulatives (ni, si)

The copulatives /ni/ or /si/ before a consonant, /n/ or /s/ before a vowel, are PREDICATIVES in the INDICATIVE IMMEDIATE, INVARIABLE for number or noun class. Their subject is either in the THIRD PERSON or INDEFINITE (e.g., it is), i.e., never in the first or second person.442 They have high tone when not first in a clause [Nrule].

/umugoré wé ni mutó/ {both} v-cop-invar 'His wife is young.' (Overdulve 1975:84)
/s'uumwé, si babiri, ni bóóse/ {Rundi} v-cop-invar 'Not just one or two, but everyone.' (Cristini 2000:219)
/ni vyiizá/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:232), /ni byiizá/ {Rwanda} (Overdulve 1975:88) v-cop-invar 'It's ok.'
/ni wewé/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:218), /ni wowé/ {Rwanda} (Overdulve 1975:177) v-cop-invar 'It's you!' /umwiígiisha ni mukurú/ {both} v-cop-invar 'The professor is an authority.' (Cristini 2000:233, LN)
/oya s'uumwaana/ {both} 'No, he is not a child' (Cristini 2000:233, LN)

When followed by an infinitive, the full form is used.

/n'ukuvúga iki?/ {Rundi}, /n'ukuvúga iki?/ {Rwanda} v-cop-invar 'What does that mean?' (Cristini 2000:218, Overdulve 1975:113)
/ibi s'úgukóra/ {Rundi}, /ibi s'úugukóra/ {Rwanda} v-cop-neg-invar 'This is not the way to work.'

Either is strictly in the indicative mood present tense. When any other tense or mood is required, an appropriately inflected form of /-rí/ or /-bá/ will be involved (see below).

/ni wé/ {both} v-cop-invar 'It's him!' (Cristini 2000:218, Overdulve 1975:286)

441 The use of /-ooya/ as an AUXILIARY VERB will be discussed in Chaper 10.
442 In /wowéhó ni uguhúguura/ {Rwanda} 'As far as you're concerned, you only need a refresher course' (R4), /wowéhó/ is not the subject, but an address or vocative form.
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

There is a difference in vowel length between Kirundi and Kinyarwanda after n' or s'. Rwanda always compensates for the loss of í by lengthening the first vowel of the following word. However, in Rundi, a long vowel only appears if high tone occurs in either of the following two morae, if followed by a consonant cluster (see §2.2.2.5), or if followed by a demonstrative (see §5.8) or relative pronoun (§4.5).

/n'umugabo/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:232), /n'uumugabo/ {Rwanda} (Overdulve 1975:52) 'He is a man.'
/s'umugani/443 {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:232), /s'uumugani/ {Rwanda} (LN) 'It is not a proverb.'
/s'umukéecuru/443 {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:232), /s'uumukéecuru/ {Rwanda} (LN) 'She is not old.'
/eegó n'umugabo/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:233) 'Yes, he is a man,' /uyu n'uumugabo/ {Rwanda} (Overdulve 1975:52) 'This one is a man.'
/n'ijinká/ {both} 'It is a cow.' (Cristini 2000:232, LN) [high tone in second following syllable]
/n'uumwaana/ {both} 'He is a child.' (Cristini 2000:232, LN) [high tone in second following syllable]
/yohaáni n'uumwaana/ {both} 'John is a child.' (Cristini 2000:32, LN)
/n'ícó ubona/ {Rundi} 'It is what you see.' (Cristini 2000:233) [high tone in second following syllable]
/n'iícúuma/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:233), /n'iícúuma/ {Rwand} (LN) 'It is iron.'
/n'índwi/ {Rundi} 'There are seven.' (Cristini 2000:233) [consonant cluster]
/n'íuyu/ {both} 'This is him.' (Cristini 2000:233, LN) [deictic]
/n'íubbu/ {both} 'It is now.' (Cristini 2000:233, LN) [deictic]
/n'íjévó bavugá/ {Rundi} 'That's what they say.' (Cristini 2000:217) [relative pro]

8.17.2. The Locative Copulative (-rí)

The irregular locative copulative is conjugated in FOUR TENSES (immediate, recent, preterit, and persistive) and FOUR MOODS (indicative, participial, relative, and autonome). The subject must agree in class and number. Note, for example, that it does not have an infinitive or an imperative form. It has four major functions:

- to make statements about the general PLACE or LOCATION of something or someone,444
  /ari hé?/ {both} v-cop-loc-ind-aff-imm-n1-sg 'Where is he?' (Overdulve 1975:145)
  /abagabo hari muu nzu/ {both} v-cop-loc-ind-aff-imm-n1-pl 'The men are in the house.' (Overdulve 1975:51)
  /urwaandiko waari mu isáandukú/ {Rwanda} v-cop-loc-ind-recent-n5-sg 'The letter was in the case.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:163)
  /siinzí ahw áari/ {both} v-cop-loc-rel-aff-imm-n1-sg 'I don't know where he is.' (Overdulve 1975:255)
  /inká zaaawa nítifári mu rugó/ {both} v-cop-loc-ind-neg-imm-n5-pl 'Your cattle are not in the stockade.' (Hands 1952:126)

- to predicate something about FIRST AND SECOND PERSON SUBJECTS,
  /ndi peetéro/ {Rundi}, /ndi peetero/ {Rwand} (Hands 1952:126) v-cop-loc 'I am Peter.'
  Cf: /ni peetéro/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:232), /ni peetero/ {Rwand} v-cop-invar 'He is Peter.'
  /ndi haané/ {both} 'We are outside.' (Overdulve 1975:86)
  Cf: /ni haané y'iíghúgu/ {both} 'It is outside of the country.' (LN)
  /ndi hé?/ {both} 'Where are you?' (Hands 1952:126)
  Cf: /ni hé?/ {both} 'Where is it?' (LN)

443 Note that the high tone is more than two morae away.
444 If the predication of place or location is EQUATIONAL, that is, subject and predicate are EQUAL, then /ni/ is used, e.g., /i wáacu n'ií kigali/ {Rwand} 'Our place is in Kigali.' (Overdulve 1975:87)


Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

- to make a copulative or predicative statement in the indicative, participial, relative, or autonome mood, in the immediate, recent, preterit, or persistive tenses,

/ harihó abayiroonka bagaca báinyegeza/ [Rundi] v-cop-loc-aff-imm-n10-loc+post 'There are those who get it and hide it right away.' (R33.6)

/igituúntu kiri kubiri/ [both] v-cop-loc-ind-aff-imm-n4-sg 'There are two kinds of tuberculosis.' (R31.1)

/daatá aracyáarí hó/ v-cop-loc-ind-aff-persist 'My father is still alive.' (Rwanda) (Overdulve 1975:215)

/ arí byó ushaaká naabigúha/ [Rwanda] v-cop-loc-part-aff-imm 'If it’s [lit. ‘it being’] what you want, I would give it to you.' (Bizimana 1998:235)

/abaári aho/ [both] v-cop-loc-auto-pret-n1-pl 'The ones who were there.' (R14)

/ntuúvuge ibitárí ngoombwá/ [Rwanda] v-cop-loc-auto-neg-imm-n4-pl 'You should not speak about things that are unnecessary.' (Bizimana 1998:146)

- to serve as an auxiliary verb (see discussion in §10.3) that sets an action in a completely different time frame from that introduced in the discussion or narrative thus far; the following verb is in the participial mood.

/nikó gufáta [v-inf] akaándi gatelefoóne ka mugeenzi wé, ahamagara [v-ind-imm-con = narr] inoomero zaa kamwé rwiiwé, ahó karí kányegejwe [v-cop-loc-rel-aff-pret-n7-sg]/ {Rundi} 'So he borrowed another cell phone from his friend and dialed his own number (to find) where it had been hidden.' (R7)

« Kuba rero imodoka nka bisi ishobora [v-aux-rel-imm] koreka abantu nka bariya ijya [v-rel-imm] mu muhanda itari nzima, byari bikwiye [v-cop-loc-aux-ind-cond] kugira uwo bibazwa [v-rel-imm-pass], cyane cyane abashinzwe ubuzima bwazo n’abashinzwe kuzohereza mu mihanda. » {Rwanda} 'The fact that a defective motor vehicle such as a bus, which can kill so many people, goes on the road, would make it appropriate to hold somebody accountable, especially the mechanics and dispatchers who put them on the road.' (R16)

The copulative locative is almost always used in the CONJOINT with the one exception that a DISJOINT construction with a n10-loc object /-ha/- can occur.

/arahári/ [both] 'He is there.' (JN, Overdulve 1975:85,146)

/ ejó murazooba múhari/ [Rundi] (JN), /ejó murazaabe múhari/ [Rwanda] (Overdulve 1975:251) v-cop-loc-part-imm+obj 'Please be there tomorrow.'

/ arikó ikibázo kihári ubu/ [Rundi] (JN), /ikibázo arikó ubu gihiári../ [Rwanda] (R24) v-cop-loc-rel-imm+obj 'A problem, however, which exists there now...'

/ niyazá nzooba ndáhari/ [Rundi] (JN), /néezá ndáhari ../ [Rwanda] v-cop-loc-part-neg+obj 'If he comes while I am gone...' [lit. ‘me not being there’] (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:346)

8.17.3. The Monosyllabic Copulative (-bá, -báaye)

These copulative forms are used in all moods and tenses not covered by /ni/ or /-rí/: PERFECTIVE conjugations, FUTURE, CONDITIONAL, INFINITIVE, IMPERATIVE, and SUBJUNCTIVE.

/byóose byaabaaye néezá/ [Rwanda] v-cop-ind-aff-recent-perf-n4-pl 'Everything went well.' (Overdulve 1975:205)

/uyu mwáana azaaba mureemure/ [Rwanda] v-cop-ind-aff-fut-n1-sg 'This child will be tall.' (Overdulve 1975:146)

/noobaaye umubéeshi/ [Rundi] v-cop-ind-aff-cond-perf-pro-1sg 'I would be a liar.' (Cristini 2000:165)

/ubukwé bwáabo ntíbukibaaye/ [both] v-cop-ind-neg-persist-perf-n8-sg 'Their wedding is no longer taking place.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:223)

/mbáaye umukúngu, naafasha abakené/ [Rwanda] v-cop-part-aff-imm-perf-pro-1sg 'If I were rich [lit. ‘me becoming rich’], I would help the poor.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:296)

/báaba abavyéeyi, báaba abáana, bóóse hamwé bagira umuryaango umwé/ [Rundi] v-cop-part-aff-recent-n1-pl 'Be it parents or children, they all constitute a home.' (Cristini 2000:234)

/kubá/ [both] v-cop-inf-aff-imm 'to be, to become'
Chapter 8: Verb Conjugations

«Iyi nzu n’iyó kubabwamo n’umwami.» {Rwanda} v-cop-aff-imm-pass+post 'This is a house fit
for a king to live in.' [lit. 'to be lived in'] (Hands 1952:281)
/kutábá/ {both} v-cop-aff-imm 'not to be, not to become'
/kuzóobá/ {Rundi}, /kuzaaba/ {Rwanda} v-cop-aff-fut 'to be or become in the future'
/kutázoobá/ {Rundi}, /kutázáabá/ {Rwanda} v-cop-aff-fut 'not to be or become in the future'
/ba/ {both} v-cop-imp 'Be!, Become!
/ba urí háno/ {both} 'Stay here!' (LN)
/-bé/ {both} v-cop-sub 'so that one be or become'
/umujuura ntaábe akiyaruka/ {Rwanda} v-cop-sub-imm-n1-sg 'So that the thief won’t come back
any more.' (Overdulve 1975:261)

When either /-rí/ or /-bá/ could be used, /-bá/ implies a SPECIALIZED living in or at or associated
with a given place, whereas /-rí/ is a more GENERAL LOCATIONAL.
/uba hé?/ {both} v-cop-aff-imm-n1-sg 'Where do you live?' (Hands 1952:128)
cf: /ari hé?/ {both} v-cop-loc-aff-imm-n1-sg 'Where is he?' (Overdulve 1975:145)
/ibikerí biba haáfi y’ámáazi/ {Rwanda} v-cop-aff-imm-n4-pl 'Frogs are (found) near water.' (Hands
1952:128)
/ibyo ntibibá hó mu gihúgu cy’iwaácu/ {Rwanda} v-cop-aff-imm-n4-pl 'That does not exist
in our country.' (Overdulve 1975:215)

Like /-rí/, /-bá/ forms can serve as AUXILIARY VERBS (see discussion in §10.3) that set an action in
a completely different time frame from that introduced in the discussion or narrative thus far; the
following verb is in the participial mood.
/iyóo mbá wé siimbá náaje/ {both} v-cop-aff-imm-pro-1sg 'If I were him, I would not have
come.' (JN, Overdulve 1975:246)
«umutumwajambo aba ari unwizigirwa» {Rundi} v-cop-aff-imm-n1-sg 'A spokesperson is
usually trustworthy.' (R11)
/ejó murazaabe múhari/ {Rwanda} v-cop-aff-fut-pro-2pl 'Please be there tomorrow.' (Overdulve
1975:251)
/tukaba twíizeye ko… / {both} v-cop-seq-aff-imm-pro-1pl '…and we are hoping that …'
(R37.5)
9. NEGATIVES

Any word that contains or expresses the idea of no or not can be called a NEGATIVE. Such words usually run across the part of speech system of any language, so as to negate a noun, a pronoun, an adjective, an adverb, or a verb. However, each language tends to do this in its own way. English, for example, has just a few negatives: not, shortened to n't, is used with nominals (nouns, pronouns, demonstratives), adjectives, and verbs. The negative imperative is expressed by don't and a simple negative statement (also an interjection) by no.

He is not a lawyer. [noun]
It wasn't me. [pronoun]
Not this one. [demonstrative]
This car was not expensive. [adjective]
I am not going. [verb – present]
We have not paid yet. [verb – perfect]
You will not be able to sleep. [verb – future]
I don't have any money. [verb – possessive]
I have no money. [simple predicative]
Don't you dare! [negative imperative]
Do you want some? – No, thanks! [simple negative statement]
Oh, no! [interjection]

Kinyarwanda and Kirundi differ from English in that there are two negatives in the primary verb system: a pre-prefix /nti-/ not used in the indicative and subjunctive moods, and the infix -ta- for all other moods (participial, relative, autonome, infinitive, etc.). There is no negative imperative (see §8.7); the closest is the JUSSIVE limited to Rwanda (§8.8 #173). There is a special PREDICATIVE NEGATIVE /ntaa/ none, there isn't any (§9.3), and the COPULATIVE verb /ni/ has a completely separate negative, /si/ is not (§9.4). Finally, there are a number of adverbs or interjections that have negative overtones. While most of these are discussed elsewhere in this book, they are brought together here for the benefit of learners of these dialects.

9.1. Indicative & Subjunctive Negative (nti-, nt-, si-)

The full pre-prefix form is /nti-/ before consonants, /nt-/ before vowels, and a special form for the first person singular /si-/; which is realized as /sin-/; see Table 54. These negative forms are characterized in some books as tonally unstable, which is our Nrule (§2.4.13). If a negative is not first in a sentence or clause, it will have high tone on the initial syllable; if it is first, it will have a low-toned initial syllable. There is no tonal distinction between conjoint and disjoint constructions, i.e., even if the verb is followed by an object or another complement, there is only one structural and tonal pattern for each negative mood-tense-aspect construction. Furthermore, there is no distinction between a CURRENT /barakóra/ (both) they are working, and a HABITUAL activity /bakora/ (both) they work.

/ntibakóra/ (both) v-ind-neg-imm-n1-pl 'They do not work.' or 'They are not working.' (Cristini 2000:191, LN)
/ntityibone/ (both) v-sub-neg-imm-pro-1pl+obj '... and yet we could not find it.' (R33.2)
/ntakóra/ (Rundi) (Cristini 2000:191). /ntaakóra/ (Rwanda) (Overdulve 1975:95) v-ind-neg-imm-n1-sg 'He does not work, he is not working (either currently or habitually).'

445 Kinyarwanda always has compensatory vowel lengthening, whereas Rundi only has long vowels before monosyllabic roots.
446 For example, Cristini (2000:160) says "nti est employée dans les formes négatives des propositions indépendantes et a toujours le ton instable." [nti is used in independent negative propositions and always has an unstable tone].

298
Chapter 9: Negatives

/ hàciyiye indwi zibiri càanké zitatu ntába acáanduza/ [Rundi] v-cop-ind-neg-imm-n1-sg 'After two or three weeks he is no longer contagious.' (R31.3)

/múukuumphá mu nyoni ntuúznange/ [Rwanda] v-sub-neg-fut-pro-2sg 'If he offers me to you as a witness from the birds, you should not refuse.' (R28.8)

/ntuuonsindira aha/ [both] v-ind-neg-imm-pro-2sg 'You are not going to defeat me here.' (R28.9)

/mtándi/ or /mtánda/ [Rundi] (Crístini 2000:238), /mtândi/ [Rwanda] (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:166) v-ind-neg-imm-pro-1sg+obj 'I don't know it.'

/naménye/ [both] v-ind-neg-pref-perf-pro-1sg 'I did not know.' (R34.4)

Indicative and subjunctive negative forms have been treated throughout the chapter on verbs, see §8.1.1 #005–6 (INDICATIVE NEGATIVE IMMEDIATE), §8.1.2 #011–12 (INDICATIVE NEGATIVE RECENT), §8.1.3 #017–18 (INDICATIVE NEGATIVE PRETERIT), §8.5.1 #157 (SUBJUNCTIVE NEGATIVE IMMEDIATE), §8.5.2 #159 (SUBJUNCTIVE NEGATIVE FUTURE), §8.5.3 #162 (GERUNDIVE NEGATIVE PRESENT), §8.10.5 #181 (OPTATIVE NEGATIVE), etc. Kinyarwanda also has a special INDICATIVE NEGATIVE NARRATIVE, discussed in §8.1.9 and exemplified in #037.

9.2. Dependent Negative (-ta-, -da-, -t-)

These post prefixes are used in all types of dependent or subordinate verb constructions (participial, relative, autonome, infinitive). They were also treated throughout the chapter on verbs, e.g., §8.2.1 #040–41 (PARTICIPIAL NEGATIVE IMMEDIATE), §8.2.2 #046–47 (PARTICIPIAL NEGATIVE RECENT), §8.2.3 #052–53 (PARTICIPIAL NEGATIVE PRETERIT), §8.3.1 #074–75 (RELATIVE NEGATIVE IMMEDIATE), §8.3.2 #082–83 (RELATIVE NEGATIVE RECENT), §8.3.8 #125 (RELATIVE NEGATIVE PUNCTUAL), §8.4.1 #130–31 (AUTONOME NEGATIVE IMMEDIATE), §8.4.8 #155 (AUTONOME NEGATIVE INCEPTIVE), §8.6 #166 (INFINITIVE NEGATIVE IMMEDIATE), #168 (INFINITIVE NEGATIVE FUTURE), etc.

-ta- (before a voiced consonant)

/nawé ațáazi ivyó arí vyó/ [Rundi] v-part-neg-imm 'As for him, he didn't know what was going on.' (R23)

/twaasaanze abanyéeshuúri bátacyiiga/ [Rwanda] v-part-neg-persist 'We found out that the pupils don't study any more.' (Overdulve 1975:191)

/ntáramaaviga/ [Rundi] (JN), /ntáramaaviga/ [Rwanda] (R27.4) v-part-neg-punc 'Before I speak ...'

/umubiri mwiizá u tá girá ineenge/ [both] v-rel-neg-imm 'A good body without imperfection.' (R36.4)

/ku bátáyiizi/ [both] v-auto-n1-pl-neg-imm-red+obj 'For those who do not know it.' (R24)

/abatákirwaaye bazooguma imuhirá/ [Rundi] v-auto-n1-pl-neg-persist-perf 'Those who are not sick anymore will stay at home.' (Crístini 2000:181)

/ubutázogáruka/ [Rundi] (JN), /yagiyye ubutázzágaruka/ [Rwanda] (Bizimana 1998:233) v-auto-n8-sg-neg-fut 'He left for good.' [lit. 'one that will not return']

/ntaa kítágiirá akamaro ndémá/ [both] v-auto-n4-sg-neg-imm-red 'Nothing I create is unimportant.' (R28.10)

/kutámenyá/ [both] v-inf-neg-imm 'not to know; ignorance' (Bizimana 1998:31, R31.2)

-da- (before a voiceless consonant)

/ntaa ndwi yahéra adáshooyév móó kimwé/ [Rundi] v-part-neg-imm-perf 'There wasn't a week that went by that he did not sell one of them.' (R25.2)

/háábaaye impanuka idásaanzwé/ [both] v-rel-neg-imm-pass-perf 'An unusual accident occurred.' (R8b)

/ubudafísé akaraangamuuntu/ [Rundi] v-auto-n1-pl-neg-imm 'One who does not have an identification ...' (R33.4)

/ațoongana übudútuuzá/ [both] v-auto-n8-sg-neg-imm 'He quarrels without any letup.' (Bizimana 1998:233)

/kudákora/ [both] v-inf-neg-imm 'not to work' (Overdulve 1975:227f)
9.3. Predicative Negatives

There is an extremely common\textsuperscript{447} PREDICATIVE NEGATIVE meaning \textit{there is not} or \textit{there are none}. It is inflected for three basic moods: INDICATIVE, PARTICIPIAL, and RELATIVE.\textsuperscript{448} Nouns and nominal constructions such as the autonome that follow any of these are in their reduced form.

\texttt{/ntaa muuntu/} [both] \textit{neg-pred-ind+n1-sg} 'nobody' (Cristini 2000:235, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:231)
\texttt{/ntaa máazi ahári/} [both] \textit{neg-pred-ind+n3-pl} 'There is no water.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:231)
\texttt{/ntaa kibázo/} [both] \textit{neg-pred-ind+n4-sg} 'No problem!' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:231)
\texttt{/ntaa bahári/} [both] \textit{neg-pred-ind+v-auto-imm-n1-pl} 'There is no one.' (JN, Overdulve 1975:199)

9.3.1. Indicative Predicative Negative (\textit{nta}, \textit{ntaa})

Kirundi uses the short form \texttt{/nta/} at the beginning of a sentence before pronoun roots; however, the long form \texttt{/ntaa/} is used anywhere before a noun or at the end of a clause before a pronoun root (which will have high tone). Kinyarwanda, on the other hand, always uses the long form \texttt{/ntaa/}.\textsuperscript{449} In both dialects, the pronoun following «\textit{nta/\textit{ntaa\textit{\textit{\textit{\textit{}}}}}\), usually functioning as head of a relative construction, loses its high tone.

\texttt{/ntaa we/} [both] \textit{neg-pred-ind+pro-n1-sg} 'There isn't anyone.' (Kimenyi 2002:218, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:232)
\texttt{/ntaa we nabóonyé/\textsuperscript{450}} [Rwanda] \textit{neg-pred-ind+pro-n1-sg} 'I didn't see him.' (Overdulve 1975:199, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:232)
\texttt{/ntaa we nabáriye/} [Rundi] \textit{neg-pred-ind+pro-n1-sg} 'I didn't tell anyone.' (Cristini 2000:235)
\texttt{/ntaa muuntu yarí akímusonera/} [Rundi] \textit{neg-pred-ind+n1-sg-red} 'No one respected him anymore.' (R25.4)
\texttt{/ntaa baantu baharí/} [Rwanda] \textit{neg-pred-ind+n1-pl-red} 'Nobody is there.' (Bizimana 1998:287)
\texttt{/nta gitabo afité/} [Rwanda] \textit{neg-pred-ind+n4-sg-red} 'He doesn't have a book.' (Kimenyi 2002:218)
\texttt{/ntaa gitabu mfíse/} [Rundi] \textit{neg-pred-ind+n4-sg-red} 'I don't have a book.' (Cristini 2000:235)
\texttt{/ntaa cő/} [Rundi] (Rodegem 1967:80, Cristini 2000:235), \texttt{/ntaa cyő/} [Rwanda] (Kimenyi 2002:218) \textit{neg-pred-ind+pro-n4-sg} 'There isn't any (e.g., a book).
\texttt{/nta co mboná/} [Rundi] \textit{neg-pred-ind+pro-n4-sg} 'I saw nothing.' (Rodegem 1967:79, Cristini 2000:235)
\texttt{/ntaa cyo bakórá/} [Rwanda] \textit{neg-pred-ind+pro-n4-sg} 'They aren't doing anything.' (Overdulve 1975:199, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:232)
\texttt{/ntaa biíndi/} [both] \textit{neg-pred-ind+atr-n4-pl-red} 'There aren't any others.' (Rodegem 1967:80, LN)

\textsuperscript{447} Overdulve 1975:199 suggests that this construction is more common than the negative with \textit{nti-}, e.g., \texttt{/sinamuboonye/} 'I didn't see him.' This is not born out in our Reader (Nibagwire & Zorc 2002) where there were 25 occurrences of \textit{nti-} and only 8 with \textit{nta}. However, there were 43 with -\textit{ta-} since it negates so many different kinds of constructions.
\textsuperscript{449} Kimenyi 2002:218, in contrast with Overdulve 1975 and 1998, and Bizimana 1998:239, maintains that "Its last vowel is always lengthened except when it is followed by a pronoun which is a subject or a complement of the verb on the right." Thus, \texttt{/nta cyo afité/} [Rwanda] \textit{neg-pred-ind+pro-n4-sg} 'He doesn't have it (the book).' This Rundi-like length difference may obtain in some dialects, but apparently not in Kigali.
\textsuperscript{450} Contrast: \texttt{/nta we mboná/} [Rwanda] \textit{neg-pred-ind+pro-n1-sg} 'I don't see him.' (Kimenyi 2002:218)
Although forms may differ in length between Kinyarwanda and Kirundi, the indicative has standard negative tonality [Nrule] (high tone on the first syllable if it is not the first word of a sentence or clause).

In combination with the conjunctive marker /ntaa n(a)-/ means not even. In both dialects, its use with vowel-initial forms of the numeral /-mwé/ irregularly has high tone on the second mora of the first syllable.

Table 107. Indicative Predicative Negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>initial position</th>
<th>final position</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pro-n1-sg</td>
<td>ntaa we</td>
<td>ntaa we</td>
<td>there is no one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n1-pl</td>
<td>ntaa bo</td>
<td>ntaa bo</td>
<td>there is no one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n2-sg</td>
<td>ntaa wo</td>
<td>ntaa wo</td>
<td>there is nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n2-pl</td>
<td>ntaa yo</td>
<td>ntaa yo</td>
<td>there is nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n3-sg</td>
<td>ntaa ryo</td>
<td>ntaa ryó</td>
<td>there is nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n3-pl</td>
<td>ntaa yo</td>
<td>ntaa yo</td>
<td>there is nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n4-sg</td>
<td>ntaa cyo</td>
<td>ntaa có</td>
<td>there is no one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n4-pl</td>
<td>ntaa cyo</td>
<td>ntaa cyó</td>
<td>there is no one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n5-sg</td>
<td>ntaa yo</td>
<td>ntaa yo</td>
<td>there is no one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n5-pl</td>
<td>ntaa zo</td>
<td>ntaa zo</td>
<td>there is no one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n6-sg</td>
<td>ntaa rwo</td>
<td>ntaa rwó</td>
<td>there is nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n6-pl</td>
<td>ntaa zo</td>
<td>ntaa zo</td>
<td>there is nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n7-sg</td>
<td>ntaa ko</td>
<td>ntaa kó</td>
<td>there is no one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n7-pl</td>
<td>ntaa two</td>
<td>ntaa twó</td>
<td>there is no one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n8-sg</td>
<td>ntaa bwo</td>
<td>ntaa bwó</td>
<td>there is nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n8-pl</td>
<td>ntaa yo</td>
<td>ntaa yó</td>
<td>there is nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n9-sg</td>
<td>ntaa ko</td>
<td>ntaa kó</td>
<td>there is nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n9-pl</td>
<td>ntaa yo</td>
<td>ntaa yó</td>
<td>there is nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n10-loc-sg</td>
<td>ntaa ko</td>
<td>ntaa kó</td>
<td>there is no place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n10-loc-pl</td>
<td>ntaa ko</td>
<td>ntaa kó</td>
<td>there are no places</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n11-loc-sg</td>
<td>ntaa kwo</td>
<td>ntaa ko</td>
<td>there is no way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n11-loc-pl</td>
<td>ntaa kwo</td>
<td>ntaa ko</td>
<td>there are no ways</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9.3.2. Participial Predicative Negative (ntáa {Rwanda}, atá {Rundi})

These dialect-specific invariable participial forms are used in temporal clauses, in phrases meaning *without*, and after verbs or conjunctions which govern the participial mood (see §10.2.1 and Table 115, also §12.2.2 and Table 125).

/nkeeka atá we baaboonyé/ {Rundi} neg-pred-part+pro-n1-sg 'I think that they did not see anyone.' (Cristini 2000:235)
/byáago yapfúuye ntáa mwáana asizé/ {Rwanda} neg-pred-part+1-sg-red 'Byago died without having any children.' (Jacob 1986 #2:418)
/aje ntáa bahári/ {Rwanda} neg-pred-part+v-auto-n1-pl-red 'He is coming but no one is there.' (Bizimana 1998:287)
/agiiye atáco akozé/ {Rundi} neg-pred-part+pro-n4-sg 'He is leaving without having done anything.' (Rodegem 1967:80)
/yasámwe atá gicúmuro/ {Rundi} (Rodegem 1967:80), /yasámwe ntáa gicúmuro/ {Rwanda} (LN) neg-pred-part+n4-sg-red 'She was conceived without sin.'
«akagura ibilo bimukwiye n’umuryango wiwe atá ngorane» {Rundi} neg-pred-part+n5-sg-red 'And he buys enough kilograms for himself and his family without any problem.' (R33.1)
/ashobora kugúkubita ntáa niicyó akubajíje/ {Rwanda} neg-pred-part+rel-obj-pro-n4-pl-conj 'She can hit you without asking you anything.' (R22)
/bahaguruka atá co bavugá/ {Rundi} neg-pred-part+pro-n4-sg 'They got up without saying a thing.' (Cristini 2000:235)
/nsaanga ntáa kaguru mfíte/ {Rwanda} neg-pred-part+n7-sg-red 'I found that I had no leg.' (R34.5)

Table 108. Participial Predicative Negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Rundi</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pro-n1-sg</td>
<td>atá we</td>
<td>ntáa we</td>
<td>there being no one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n1-pl</td>
<td>atá bo</td>
<td>ntáa bo</td>
<td>there being no one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n2-sg</td>
<td>atá wo</td>
<td>ntáa wo</td>
<td>there being nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n2-pl</td>
<td>atá yo</td>
<td>ntáa yo</td>
<td>there being nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n3-sg</td>
<td>atá ryo</td>
<td>ntáa ryo</td>
<td>there being nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n3-pl</td>
<td>atá yo</td>
<td>ntáa yo</td>
<td>there being nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n4-sg</td>
<td>atá co</td>
<td>ntáa cyo</td>
<td>there being no one / nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n4-pl</td>
<td>atá vyo</td>
<td>ntáa byo</td>
<td>there being no one / nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n5-sg</td>
<td>atá yo</td>
<td>ntáa yo</td>
<td>there being no one / nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n5-pl</td>
<td>atá zo</td>
<td>ntáa zo</td>
<td>there being no one / nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n6-sg</td>
<td>atá rwo</td>
<td>ntáa rwo</td>
<td>there being nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n6-pl</td>
<td>atá zo</td>
<td>ntáa zo</td>
<td>there being nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n7-sg</td>
<td>atá kyo</td>
<td>ntáa kyo</td>
<td>there being no one / nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n7-pl</td>
<td>atá too</td>
<td>ntáa too</td>
<td>there being no one / nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n8-sg</td>
<td>atá bwo</td>
<td>ntáa bwo</td>
<td>there being nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n8-pl</td>
<td>atá yo</td>
<td>ntáa yo</td>
<td>there being nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n9-sg</td>
<td>atá ko</td>
<td>ntáa ko</td>
<td>there being nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n9-pl</td>
<td>atá yo</td>
<td>ntáa yo</td>
<td>there being nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n10-loc sg/pl</td>
<td>atá ho</td>
<td>ntáa ho</td>
<td>there being nowhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n11-loc sg/pl</td>
<td>atá kwo</td>
<td>ntáa kwo</td>
<td>there being no way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>there being no ways</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9.3.3. Relative Predicative Negative (ntáa {Rwanda}, ata, ataa {Rundi})

These dialect-specific invariable relative forms are used in the same kind of object relative constructions described in §8.3, such as after conjunctions that govern the relative (see §12.2.1 and Tables 123–4). In Kirundi, the final vowel is lengthened before a reduced noun and with a high-toned pronoun root in sentence final position.

/iyó  ntáa bahári ngira iruungu/ {Rwanda} neg-pred-rel+v-auto-n1-pl-red 'When they are not there, I feel lonely.' (Bizimana 1998:287)

/bararwáaye ni cyó gitumá  ntáa baáje/ {Rwanda} neg-pred-rel+v-rel-aff-pret-perf-n1-pl 'They are sick, that is why they did not come.' (Overdulve 1975:199)

/atubwiira yúukó  ntáa bakorá/ {Rwanda} neg-pred-rel+v-rel-aff-imm-n1-pl 'They tell us that they aren't working at all.' (Overdulve 1975:199)

/kukó  ntáa tégeko ririhó rihaná abacúruuza iyo nzogá/ {Rwanda} neg-pred-rel+n3-sg-red '... because there exists no penal law for those who sell that liquor.' (R24)

/kukó  ataa mafaraanga afisé/ {Rundi} neg-pred-rel+n3-pl-red '... because he has no money.' (Cristini 2000:236)

/aca aramúbwiira kó  ataa có/ {Rundi} neg-pred-rel+pro-n4-sg 'He immediately tells him that it is no big deal.' [lit. 'that it is nothing'] (R23, JN)

Table 109. Relative Predicative Negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pro agreement</th>
<th>most positions</th>
<th>sentence final</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pro-n1-sg</td>
<td>ata we</td>
<td>ataa wé</td>
<td>ntáa we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n1-pl</td>
<td>ata bo</td>
<td>ataa bó</td>
<td>ntáa bo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n2-sg</td>
<td>ata wo</td>
<td>ataa wó</td>
<td>ntáa wo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n2-pl</td>
<td>ata yo</td>
<td>ataa yó</td>
<td>ntáa yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n3-sg</td>
<td>ata ryo</td>
<td>ataa ryó</td>
<td>ntáa ryo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n3-pl</td>
<td>ata yo</td>
<td>ataa yó</td>
<td>ntáa yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n4-sg</td>
<td>ata co</td>
<td>ataa có</td>
<td>ntáa cyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n4-pl</td>
<td>ata vyo</td>
<td>ataa vyó</td>
<td>ntáa byo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n5-sg</td>
<td>ata yo</td>
<td>ataa yó</td>
<td>ntáa yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n5-pl</td>
<td>ata zo</td>
<td>ataa zo</td>
<td>ntáa zo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n6-sg</td>
<td>ata rwo</td>
<td>ataa rwó</td>
<td>ntáa rwo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n6-pl</td>
<td>ata zo</td>
<td>ataa zo</td>
<td>ntáa zo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n7-sg</td>
<td>ata ko</td>
<td>ataa kó</td>
<td>ntáa ko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n7-pl</td>
<td>ata two</td>
<td>ataa twó</td>
<td>ntáa two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n8-sg</td>
<td>ata bwo</td>
<td>ataa bwó</td>
<td>ntáa bwo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n8-pl</td>
<td>ata yo</td>
<td>ataa yó</td>
<td>ntáa yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n9-sg</td>
<td>ata ko</td>
<td>ataa kó</td>
<td>ntáa ko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n9-pl</td>
<td>ata yo</td>
<td>ataa yó</td>
<td>ntáa yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n10-loc</td>
<td>ata ho</td>
<td>ataa ho</td>
<td>ntáa ho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n11-loc</td>
<td>ata kwo</td>
<td>ataa kwó</td>
<td>ntáa ko</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 9: Negatives

9.4. Invariable Copulative Negative (si, s’)

The invariable predicative copulatives (ni and si) were discussed and exemplified in §8.17.1. See that section for limitations on usage (INDICATIVE NEGATIVE PRESENT THIRD PERSON) and on differences in vowel length after s’.

/s'abarí háno, s'abatári háno/ {both} 'Neither those present nor those absent.' (Cristini 2000:219, LN)
/si uku navúutse/ {both} 'This is not how I was born.' (R34.2)
/aríko sí beénsí/ {both} 'But there are not a lot of them.' (R38.11)
/kókó urí mwiizá sì ukubéeshya/ {Rwanda} 'You are truly good, it is no lie.' (R36.1)

The following table presents all of the pronoun roots (see Table 50 in Chapter 4) with this negative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Rundi–Rwanda</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pro-1sg</td>
<td>si je</td>
<td>si jye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>it is not me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-1pl</td>
<td>si twe</td>
<td>it is not us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2sg</td>
<td>si wewé</td>
<td>si wowé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>it is not you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2pl</td>
<td></td>
<td>si mwe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>it is not you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n1-sg</td>
<td>si wé</td>
<td>it is not him, her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n1-pl</td>
<td>si bó</td>
<td>they are not them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n2-sg</td>
<td>si wó</td>
<td>it is not it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n2-pl</td>
<td>si yó</td>
<td>they are not them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n3-sg</td>
<td>si ryó</td>
<td>it is not it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n3-pl</td>
<td>si yó</td>
<td>they are not them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n4-sg</td>
<td>si có</td>
<td>si cyó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>it is not he, she, it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n4-pl</td>
<td>si vyó</td>
<td>si byó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>they are them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n5-sg</td>
<td>si yó</td>
<td>it is not he, she, it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n5-pl</td>
<td>si zó</td>
<td>they are not them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n6-sg</td>
<td>si rwó</td>
<td>it is not him, her, it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n6-pl</td>
<td>si zó</td>
<td>they are not them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n7-sg</td>
<td>si kó</td>
<td>it is not him, her, it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n7-pl</td>
<td>si twó</td>
<td>they are not them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n8-sg</td>
<td>si bwó</td>
<td>it is not it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n8-pl</td>
<td>si yó</td>
<td>they are not them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n9-sg</td>
<td>si kwó</td>
<td>si kó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>it is not it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n9-pl</td>
<td>si yó</td>
<td>they are not them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n10-sg-loc</td>
<td>si hó</td>
<td>it is not it (the place, time, situation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n10-pl-loc</td>
<td>si hó</td>
<td>they are not them (the places, times, situations)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n11-sg-loc</td>
<td>si kó</td>
<td>it is not it (the truth or manner)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n11-pl-loc</td>
<td>si kó</td>
<td>they are not them (the truths or manners)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n12-sg-loc</td>
<td>si mwó</td>
<td>si mwó / si mó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>it is not there (in the place)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n12-pl-loc</td>
<td>si mwó</td>
<td>si mwó / si mó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>they are not there (in the places)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9.5. Invariable Negatives (Adverbs, Interjections)

There are numerous words and expressions which carry some form of negative overtone. These mostly come from the part-of-speech system of adverbs and interjections.

/ashwi/ {both} intj-neg 'No!, not at all!, absolutely not!, never!'
/eka/ {Rundi} intj-neg 'No!, not at all, not a bit'
/ekáaye/ {Rundi} 'No!' (quite strong) (Cox 1970:53, JN)
/oya/ {Rundi}, /oyá/ {Rwanda} intj-neg 'No!'
/oya da/ {both} 'Not at all, No then'
/oyayé/ {Rundi}, /oyayéé/ {Rwanda} 'Not at all, certainly not, absolutely not'
/reka/ {both} intj-neg = v-imp 'No!: Stop!, Don't talk about it!: no more!: not at all!, never!' /reka da/ {both}, /reka ra/ {Rwanda} 'No!, Stop!, Don't talk about it!' [addressing a man] (JN, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:311)
/reka ma/ {both} 'No!, Stop!, Don't talk about it!' [addressing a woman] (JN, Hurel 1959:89, LN)
/na mba/ {both} adv-neg-cmp 'not at all; absolutely not'
/eke na mba/ {Rundi} 'Not a bit!' (Cox 1970:52)
/ntaa na mba/ {both} 'absolutely nothing' (Jacob 1986 #2:342, JN)

There is a special adverbial construction, /haba na-/ that is strongly negative in its implications, but does not contain any negative marking.

/haba n’úbusá/ {Rundi} (JN), /haba na búsa/ (Overdulve 1975:292) {Rwanda} 'not at all'
/reka sinamututse, haba na gáto/ {both} 'Hey!, I didn't insult him in the slightest!' (JN, Overdulve 1975:292)
Chapter 10: Auxiliary Verbs

10. AUXILIARY VERBS

Sometimes two or more verbs are used together. Usually the first governs the second. Such a verb that serves as a head to another is called an AUXILIARY VERB. English uses verbs like have (she has gone), be (I am exercising), and get (he got accustomed) as auxiliary verbs. Kirundi and Kinyarwanda have an extremely rich system of such verbs.

10.1. Coverbs

COVERBS generally follow another verb, which serves as the HEAD VERB. Altogether there are four monosyllabic roots shared by Kirundi and Kinyarwanda: /-té/ {both} how?, /-ti/ {both} said, /-tyá/ {both} like this, /-tyó/ {both} like that. Kirundi has two alternate forms for the latter: /-rtyá/ like this and /-rtyó/ like that. Each of these coverbs has only one conjugation, preceded by an appropriate noun class agreement prefix. All but -ti (which is low-toned) follow the 1 rule (high tone comes on the first vowel to follow a consonant). They are presented in Tables 111-114 below.

10.1.1. Quotative Coverb

The root /-ti/ marks both direct and indirect quotations. This low-toned coverb (Table 111) is more similar to punctuation marks (quotation marks and the colon) in English than to any translational equivalent with say or said. Unlike the other three coverbs, it can be used alone and does not have to follow a head verb. In such a situation, it behaves like a head verb rather than a coverb.

```
/ baravúga bati tugeendé/ {both} co-v-n1-pl 'They say, "Let's go!"' (Overdulve 1975:229)
/ bati tugeendé/ {both} v-n1-pl 'They say, "Let's go!"' (Overdulve 1975:229)
/ bati naasaaságare/ {Rundi} v-n1-pl 'They said, "May it abound!"' (R11, JN)
/ nahó bavuga bati/ {Rundi} co-v-n1-pl 'Moreover they say that ...' (R35.3)
/ ati iki?/ {both} v-n1-sg 'What does he say?' (Cristini 2000:244)
/ aravúga ati turiríimbe/ {both} co-v-n1-pl 'He said, "Let's sing!"' (Overdulve 1975:283)
/ izúuba riti .../ {both} v-n3-sg 'The Sun said ...' (R28.4)
/ igihúunyirá kiti .../ {Rwanda} v-n4-sg 'Owl said...' (R28.5)
/ birapfúkama biraramya biti nyagásani .../ {both} co-v-n4-pl 'They knelt down and prayed... 'Oh Lord...' (R28.10)
/ inshuntí záacu zaatubwiiye ziti twaáboonye ibyáago/ {Rwanda} co-v-n5-pl 'Our friends told us: "We had some misfortunes."' (Overdulve 1975:229)
/ agacúramá kati umwíijimá waguheenze ubwéenge/ {Rwanda} v-n7-sg 'The bat said: "Darkness fooled you."' (R20)
/ amafaraanga aanganá gúrtyo/ {Rundi} 'that much money' [lit. 'money that is equal like that'] (R35.2)
```

10.1.2. Deictic Coverbs of Manner

There are two roots that broadly can be translated thus, and which relate to the demonstratives treated in Chapter 5: first person (like this) and third person (like that). These are detailed in Tables 112–3. Note that the roots are high-toned and follow the WEAK vs. STRONG conjugation [1 rule]: vowel-initial prefixes have high tone on the root, while consonant-initial prefixes have high tone on the prefix.

```
/ bikore utyá/ {both} co-v-pro-2sg 'Do it like this.' (JN, Jacob 1987 #3:444)
/ uzzaabikora utyó/ {Rwanda} co-v-pro-2sg 'You will do it like that.' (Overdulve 1975:228)
/ baánditse bátyo/ {both} co-v-n1-pl 'They wrote like this.' (JN, Overdulve 1975:229)
/ bityo isumú iyibámó ikabaanza kuvamó/ {Rwanda} 'That way the toxin that is in there is first released.' (R20)
```

306
### Table 111. Quotative Coverb (-ti)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AGREEMENT</th>
<th>voiced consonant</th>
<th>voiceless consonant</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pro-1sg</td>
<td>nti {both}</td>
<td></td>
<td>I said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-1pl</td>
<td>tutor {both}</td>
<td>dutton {both}</td>
<td>we said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2sg</td>
<td>utti {both}</td>
<td></td>
<td>you said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2pl</td>
<td>mutti {both}</td>
<td></td>
<td>you said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n1-sg</td>
<td>atti {both}</td>
<td></td>
<td>he, she said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n1-pl</td>
<td>batti {both}</td>
<td></td>
<td>they said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n2-sg</td>
<td>utti {both}</td>
<td></td>
<td>he said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n2-pl</td>
<td>itti {both}</td>
<td></td>
<td>they said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n3-sg</td>
<td>ritti {both}</td>
<td></td>
<td>it said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n3-pl</td>
<td>atti {both}</td>
<td></td>
<td>they said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n4-sg</td>
<td>kiti {both}</td>
<td>gitti {both}</td>
<td>he, she, it said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n4-pl</td>
<td>biti {both}</td>
<td></td>
<td>they said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n5-sg</td>
<td>itti {both}</td>
<td></td>
<td>he, she, it said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n5-pl</td>
<td>zitti {both}</td>
<td></td>
<td>they said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n6-sg</td>
<td>ritti {both}</td>
<td></td>
<td>it said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n6-pl</td>
<td>zitti {both}</td>
<td></td>
<td>they said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n7-sg</td>
<td>kati {both}</td>
<td>gati {both}</td>
<td>he, she, it said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n7-pl</td>
<td>tuti {both}</td>
<td>duti {both}</td>
<td>they said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n8-sg</td>
<td>buti {both}</td>
<td></td>
<td>it said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n8-pl</td>
<td>ati {both}</td>
<td></td>
<td>they said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n9-sg</td>
<td>kuti {both}</td>
<td>guti {both}</td>
<td>it said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n9-pl</td>
<td>ati {both}</td>
<td></td>
<td>they said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n10-sg</td>
<td>kati {both}</td>
<td></td>
<td>it (the place) said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n10-pl</td>
<td>hati {both}</td>
<td></td>
<td>they said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n11-sg</td>
<td>kuti {both}</td>
<td>guti {both}</td>
<td>it (the truth or manner) said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n11-pl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>they said</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 112. Manner Coverbs (-tyá {both}, -rtyá {Rundi})

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AGREEMENT</th>
<th>{both}</th>
<th>Rundi only</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pro-1sg</td>
<td>ntyá</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>I ... like this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-1pl</td>
<td>dutya</td>
<td>turtya</td>
<td>we ... like this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2sg</td>
<td>utya</td>
<td>urtyá</td>
<td>you ... like this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2pl</td>
<td>mütta</td>
<td>murtya</td>
<td>you ... like this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n1-sg</td>
<td>atya</td>
<td>artya</td>
<td>he / she ... like this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n1-pl</td>
<td>bätta</td>
<td>bärtya</td>
<td>they ... like this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n2-sg</td>
<td>utya</td>
<td>urtyá</td>
<td>it ... like this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n2-pl</td>
<td>itya</td>
<td>irtyá</td>
<td>they ... like this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n3-sg</td>
<td>ritya</td>
<td>rirtya</td>
<td>it ... like this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n3-pl</td>
<td>atya</td>
<td>artya</td>
<td>they ... like this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n4-sg</td>
<td>gitya</td>
<td>kirtya</td>
<td>he / she / it ... like this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n4-pl</td>
<td>bitya</td>
<td>birtya</td>
<td>they ... like this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n5-sg</td>
<td>itya</td>
<td>irtyá</td>
<td>he / she / it ... like this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n5-pl</td>
<td>zitya</td>
<td>zirtya</td>
<td>they ... like this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n6-sg</td>
<td>rūtya</td>
<td>rūrtya</td>
<td>he / she / it ... like this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n6-pl</td>
<td>zitya</td>
<td>zirtya</td>
<td>they ... like this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n7-sg</td>
<td>gatyra</td>
<td>kartyra</td>
<td>he / she / it ... like this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n7-pl</td>
<td>dutya</td>
<td>tūrtya</td>
<td>they ... like this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n8-sg</td>
<td>butya</td>
<td>būtya</td>
<td>it ... like this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n8-pl</td>
<td>atya</td>
<td>artya</td>
<td>they ... like this</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 10: Auxiliary Verbs

Table 113. Manner Coverbs (-tyó {both}, -rtyó {Rundi})

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AGREEMENT</th>
<th>{both}</th>
<th>Rundi only</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pro-1sg</td>
<td>ntyó</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>I ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-1pl</td>
<td>dútyo</td>
<td>túrtyo</td>
<td>we ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2sg</td>
<td>utyó</td>
<td>urtyó</td>
<td>you ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-2pl</td>
<td>mútyo</td>
<td>múrtyo</td>
<td>you ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n1-sg</td>
<td>atyó</td>
<td>artyó</td>
<td>he, she ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n1-pl</td>
<td>bátyo</td>
<td>bártyo</td>
<td>they ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n2-sg</td>
<td>ityó</td>
<td>irtyó</td>
<td>it ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n2-pl</td>
<td>mityó</td>
<td>mírtyo</td>
<td>they ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n3-sg</td>
<td>rityo</td>
<td>rírtyo</td>
<td>it ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n3-pl</td>
<td>atyó</td>
<td>artyó</td>
<td>they ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n4-sg</td>
<td>gítyo</td>
<td>kírtyo</td>
<td>he / she / it ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n4-pl</td>
<td>bityo</td>
<td>bírtyo</td>
<td>they ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n5-sg</td>
<td>ityó</td>
<td>irtyó</td>
<td>he / she / it ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n5-pl</td>
<td>zityo</td>
<td>zírtyo</td>
<td>they ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n6-sg</td>
<td>rútyo</td>
<td>rúrtyo</td>
<td>he / she / it ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n6-pl</td>
<td>zityo</td>
<td>zírtyo</td>
<td>they ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n7-sg</td>
<td>gátyo</td>
<td>kártyo</td>
<td>he / she / it ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n7-pl</td>
<td>dútyo</td>
<td>túrtyo</td>
<td>they ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n8-sg</td>
<td>bútuo</td>
<td>bútuyo</td>
<td>it ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n8-pl</td>
<td>atyó</td>
<td>artýo</td>
<td>they ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n9-sg</td>
<td>gútyo</td>
<td>kúrtyo</td>
<td>it ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n9-pl</td>
<td>atyó</td>
<td>artýo</td>
<td>they ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n10-sg</td>
<td>hátyo</td>
<td>hártyo</td>
<td>it ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n10-pl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>they ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n11-sg</td>
<td>gútyo</td>
<td>kúrtyo</td>
<td>it ... like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-n11-pl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10.1.3. Interrogative Coverbs of Manner

There is the shared root /-té/ that can be translated how? Since it fits into the Rwanda-Rundi system of question words, it will also be discussed and exemplified in §13.9.

/bameze háte/ {both} qw-co-v-n1-pl 'How are they?' (Overdulve 1975:228)
/cyaári kímeze gíte/ {Rwanda} qw-co-v-n4-sg 'How did it go?' (R40.3)
/umubaré wáabo sé waaba uungána uté/? [Rwanda] qw-co-v-n2-sg 'How many of them are there?' [lit. 'Their number is equal to how?'] (R38.11)
/hameze háte/ {both} qw-co-v-n10-loc 'How is it there?' (Ntahokaja 1994:181)
Chapter 10: Auxiliary Verbs

10.2. Auxiliary Verbs

There are a number of verbs that lose their original meaning when they serve as the head of another verb.451 As Kimenyi (1980:8) puts it so well: "The main characteristic of auxiliary verbs is that they have no semantic function of their own but rather convey grammatical information, mostly temporal and aspectual." The new meaning can be drastically different and is usually translated by an adverb in English. Thus /-kúunda/ {both} like, love when heading an infinitive has a special habitual meaning, often. While /-pfá/ {both} means die, as an auxiliary heading an infinitive it means just VERB, simply VERB.

/ntibakuunzé kwaanduranya/ {Rwanda} v-aux+inf 'They do not quarrel often.' (R38.8)
/abavyéeyi bapfa kubareka/ {Rundi} v-aux+inf 'The parents just let them be.' (R15)

The most important and yet complex aspect of auxiliary verbs is that they can be followed by any of six different kinds of complements:452 simple indicative, indicative disjoint with -ra-, subsecutive (-

---

451 For Kinyarwanda, see Overduilve 1975:281f, Kimenyi 1980:9–11, Bizimana 1998:298-301; for Kirundi, see Rodegem 1970:passim, Cristini 2000:275–80. Of these, Kimenyi's grammatical overview is exceptionally helpful, while Rodegem's lexical treatment is the most thorough since he specifies which mood(s) each verb may take.

452 Kimenyi states initially that "They are classified into two types, namely, those which must appear with the main verb in the PARTICIPAL construction, and those which make the main verb appear in the INFINITIVAL form. (Ibid:8). However, later he notes that "If both the modality verb and the embedded verb occur in the -ra- TENSE, then both of them have a past time reference. If, however, the embedded verb is in the SUBJUNCTIVE mood, the event to which the verb refers is in the future. (Ibid:11). Overall, then, he identifies four such constructions. Rodegem refers to five moods (1970:passim): En complexe verbal, ce verbe régit cinq modes: l'indicatif, le conjonctif, l'infinitif, le subjonctif et le subsécutif. Freely translated using our terms: When used with another
ka-, infinitive (ku-), participial, or subjunctive. It should be noted that no auxiliary verb governs a relative construction. Many verbs can be followed by two or more constructions with subtle shifts in grammatical meaning, as the following example sets illustrate.

/-geenda/ [both] v-aux
  /narággeenze ndábóna/ [Rundi] v-aux+ind-dis 'I never saw such a thing.' (JN, Jacob 1984 #1:345)
  /yageenda arábúundabunnda/ [Rundi] v-aux+ind-dis 'He wound up prowling.' (R25.3)
  /harábáaye umugabo akağeenda akarima/ [Rundi] v-aux+seq 'There was a man who used to go plowing.' (Rodegem 1970:107, JN)
  /ngiiye kwiubaka urwánjé/ [Rundi] v-aux+ind-dis 'Moreover he fought against the Germans.' (R3)
  /nyuma ikonoongera ikakimira/ [Rwanda] v-aux+seq 'Afterwards (the rayfish) swallows (its stomach) again.' (Rodegem 1970:107)
  /abahiínga baroongera bakavuga yúukó/ [Rundi] v-aux+part 'They finally returned home.' (Cristini 2000:276)
  /iheera kóisúbira yó/ [Rwanda] v-aux+part '… he immediately returned home.' (Overdulve 1975:260)
  /baahavuuve bataaha/ [Rundi] v-aux+part 'They returned home.' (Cristini 2000:276)
  /baborá bákkora cyaane/ [Rwanda] v-aux+part 'They always work hard.' (Overdulve 1975:155)
  /abashyitsi báacu baaaragee baagaañira/ [Rwanda] v-aux+part 'Our visitors talked all night long.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:193)
  /naaje nsaanga bágiyëe/ [both] v-aux+part 'I came just after their departure.' (JN, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:193)
  /ubwo bitiinze bizooza?/ [Rundi] v-aux+part-fut 'Is this ultimately going to happen?' (Rodegem 1970:495, JN)
  /atúma dúkira/ [both] v-aux+part 'He is doing his best to cure us.' (Overdulve 1975:259)
  /ařūumva arváaye/ [both] v-aux+part 'He feels sick.' (Rodegem 1970:528)

The various sections and tables below present auxiliaries on the basis of what MODALITIES (mood or aspect) they govern. For the benefit of the student, they are organized by frequency, e.g., the participial occurs the most and is treated first, then the infinitive, etc. The learner should be on the lookout for verb roots that appear in more than one table and the relevant differences that obtain.

10.2.1. Auxiliary Verbs Governing the Participial

By far the most frequent mood required by auxiliary verbs is the PARTICIPIAL (see Table 115).

/-oongera/ [both] v-aux
  /yoongoongera ararwaanya abadaági/ [Rundi] v-aux+ind-dis 'Moreover he fought against the Germans' (R3)
  /umwúumwé ba-geenda bávuga impaámvu/ [both] v-aux+part 'One by one they tell the reason in turn.' (JN, Overdulve 1975:260)
  /baahavuuve bataaha/ [Rundi] v-aux+ind-dis 'They finally returned home.' (Cristini 2000:276)
  /iheera kóisúbira yó/ [Rwanda] v-aux+part '… he immediately returned home.' (Overdulve 1975:260)
  /baborá bákkora cyaane/ [Rwanda] v-aux+part 'They always work hard.' (Overdulve 1975:155)
  /abashyitsi báacu baagaañira/ [Rwanda] v-aux+part 'Our visitors talked all night long.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:193)
  /naaje nsaanga bágiyëe/ [both] v-aux+part 'I came just after their departure.' (JN, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:193)
  /ubwo bitiinze bizooza?/ [Rundi] v-aux+part-fut 'Is this ultimately going to happen?' (Rodegem 1970:495, JN)
  /atúma dúkira/ [both] v-aux+part 'He is doing his best to cure us.' (Overdulve 1975:259)
  /ařūumva arváaye/ [both] v-aux+part 'He feels sick.' (Rodegem 1970:528)

verb, this verb governs five moods: INDICATIVE, PARTICIPIAL, INFINITIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE, and SEQUENTIAL. Our only refinement is that the indicative has two forms: simple (Ø marked) vs. -ra- marked.

453 For example, as Rodegem 1970:51 observes, Rundi /-cá/ is strictly limited to two functions: participial and indicative (with -ra-). Others, like /-geenda/ (Ibid:107) or /-gera/ (Ibid:110) can govern five constructions.
Table 115. Auxiliary Verbs Governing the Participial

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Auxiliary</th>
<th>dialect</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-áama</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>always VERB; continually VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bóna</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>have the chance or opportunity to VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ca</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>VERB immediately or right away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-geenda</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>wind up VERBing; VERB at long last</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-geenda</td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td>VERB s.t. in turn, take turns VERBing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-gera</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>finally VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-guma</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>continue VERBing; do VERB nonstop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-hava</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>VERB finally, do VERB as a consequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-héera kó</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>do VERB right away, immediately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-híta</td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td>do VERB immediately, right away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-hóra, -hóze</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>always VERB, often VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-iirirwa</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>do VERB all day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ja</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>take turns VERBing [repetitive auxiliary]; keep on VERBing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-jya</td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td>habitual auxiliary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mara, -maze</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>has / have already VERBed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-oongera</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>VERB moreover or additionally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-pfúma</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>prefer VERBing, rather VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ráara</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>spend the night VERBing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ramuka</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>spend the morning VERBing; VERB by chance; in case VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-riinda</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>finally VERB, ultimately VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-saanga</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>find VERB, notice VERB, note that VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-saangwa</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>usually, normally, or habitually VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-shooka</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>do VERB immediately, forthwith, quickly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-síga</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>after having VERBed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sígará</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>start VERBing (a new activity); do VERB again (and again)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-súbiira</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>do VERB again</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-teba</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>finally VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tiinda</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>finally VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-túma</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>make sure that VERB, try one’s hardest to VERB allow, permit, make possible to VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-úumva</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>feel like VERBing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-za</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>ought to VERB, should VERB [obligation]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ziinduka</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>VERB in the morning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10.2.2. Auxiliary Verbs Governing the Infinitive

Auxiliary verbs taking an infinitive complement are the second most frequent in both dialects (see Table 116).

/abakoóbwa babaanza kwíinjira/ {both} v-aux+inf 'The girls enter first.' (Overdulve 1975:282)
/baagiiye mw iivuuriro kugira ngo booyé kurwáara/ {Rwanda} v-aux+inf 'They went to the dispensary so that they would stop being sick.' (Overdulve 1970:250)
/ñozongera kuwúbona ryáari?/ {both} v-aux+inf 'When am I going to see it again?' (Rodegem 1970:309, LN)
/aja kuraba umukurú wiíyo ntáará/ {Rundi} v-aux+inf 'He goes to see the mayor of that district.' (R23)
/ngiive gusoma/ {both} v-aux+inf 'I am going to read.' (Overdulve 1975:281)
/byaari bikwiive kugira uwó bibazwá/ {both} v-aux+inf 'It would be appropriate to hold somebody accountable.' (R16, JN)
Chapter 10: Auxiliary Verbs

/uksiirimwe kwiita ku byo nkubiira/ {Rwanda} v-aux+inf 'You ought to pay attention to the things I tell you.' (Overdulve 1975:216)
/mwooye gutinya/ {both} v-aux+inf 'Don't be afraid!' (Cox 1970:17)
/napfuuye kubivyega/ {both} v-aux+inf 'I pronounced these words without much conviction.'
/reka kurira/ {both} v-aux+inf 'Stop crying!' (Rodegem 1970:345, Jacob 1986 #2:608)
/abagabo baari gusoma/ {Rwanda} v-aux+inf 'The men would have read.' (Kimenyi 1980:9)
/icó bategerezwa gukóra/ {Rundi} v-aux+inf 'That which they should do.' (R23, JN)
/indwi izá kuuza/ {Rundi} v-aux+inf 'next' [lit. 'week that is going to come'] (Rodegem 1970:566)

Table 116. Auxiliary Verbs Governing the Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Auxiliary</th>
<th>dialect</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-baanza</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>VERB first of all; begin by VERBing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-báasha</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>can VERB, be able to VERB (physically do s.t.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bóna</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>then VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-eenda</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>be at the point of VERBing, almost VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-geenda</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>finally VERB, VERB at long last</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-goomba</td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td>must VERB, be necessary to VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-héruuka</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>have just VERBed, have recently VERBed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-héza</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>when VERB; after VERBing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ja</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>go to VERB; go and VERB [andative auxiliary]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-jya</td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td>going to VERB, soon VERB, be about to VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-komeza</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>continue to VERB, carry on VERBing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kúunda</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>VERB often; VERB continually or habitually</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kwiira, -kwiire, -kwiiriye</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>should VERB, ought to VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td>should VERB, must VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mara, -maze</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>has / have already VERBed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-oongera</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>do VERB again, start VERBing again</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ooya</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>stop VERBing; so that ... not VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-pfá</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>just VERB, simply VERB; VERB anyhow, all the same (do s.t. rashly or without forethought; hit and miss style)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-reka</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>stop VERBing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ri</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>supposed to VERB; would have VERBed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-shaaka</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>be about to VERB, be on the verge of VERBing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-shóbora</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>can, be able to VERB; be capable of VERBing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-shobora</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-táangura</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>start to VERB, begin to VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-táangira</td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tégerdzwa</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>have to VERB, ought to VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-:za</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>come and VERB; come to VERB [venitive auxiliary]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The two auxiliary motion verbs /-ja/ {Rundi}, /-jya/ {Rwanda} go to VERB, go and VERB [ANDATIVE] and /-za/ {both} come to VERB, come and VERB [VENITIVE] can sometimes overlap in their translational meanings come vs. go.454 This is because they lose their sense of directionality in favor of a future meaning, similar to English going to VERB.

/kuja kwívúuza/ {Rundi}, /kuja kwívúuza/ {Rwanda} 'to come / go and get oneself treated > going to get oneself treated'

---

454 This even applies to French. See, for example, Cristini 2000:279 under kuuza where aller is used in the translation although the primary gloss is venir.
10.2.3. Auxiliary Verbs Governing the Subjunctive

There are several verbs that take a subjunctive complement (see Table 117).

/baanza ukoré/ {both} v-aux+sub 'Work first!' (Rodegem 1970:25)
/geenda uhebé/ {Rundi} v-aux+sub 'Finally, give up!' (Rodegem 1970:107)
yabivuze agira ngo uraakáre/ {Rwanda} v-aux+sub 'He said that just to make you angry.' (Jacob 1984 #1:367)
/abagabo barakomeza basomé/ {both} v-aux+sub 'The men will continue to read.' (Kimenyi 1980:11, JN)
/ongera umbwiíre/ {both} v-aux+sub 'Tell me again!' (Jacob 1986 #2:507)
/bazooteba bageendé/ {Rundi} v-aux+sub 'They will finally go.' (Rodegem 1970:480)
/reka nkubwei/ {Rundi} v-aux+sub 'Let me tell you!' (Jacob 1986 #2:608)
/abagabo baratáangira basomé/ {Rwanda} v-aux+sub 'The men will start by reading.' (Kimenyi 1980:11)
/baratiinda bagarúke/ {both} v-aux+sub 'They will finally return.' (Rodegem 1970:495)
/nzé ngeendé kuraaba/ {Rundi} v-aux+sub 'I should come to see.' (Rodegem 1970:566)

Table 117. Auxiliary Verbs Governing the Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Auxiliary</th>
<th>dialect</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-baanza</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>VERB first (of all)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-geenda</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>so VERB; go ahead and VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-gera</td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td>finally VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-gera ngo</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>so that VERB, in order to VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-gumya</td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td>will keep on VERBing, shall continue to VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-héza</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>so then VERB; VERB afterwards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-komeza</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>will continue to VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ongera</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>do VERB again, start VERBing again</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-reka</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>let do VERB; wait!; come on [exhortative]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-shyíra</td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td>finally VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-táangira</td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td>start by VERBing [future time reference]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-teba</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>finally VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tiinda</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>finally VERB, ultimately VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-za</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>should come to VERB [purpose or eventual outcome]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10.2.4. Auxiliary Verbs Governing the Indicative Disjoint with -ra-

More verbs take a DISJOINT INDICATIVE COMPLEMENT, i.e., with the marker -ra- (see Table 118), than take a simple (zero or unmarked) indicative complement (see §10.2.5).

/aça arabáhamagara/ {Rundi} v-aux+ind-dis 'He will call them immediately.' (Cox 1970:10)
/yagéenda arabiundabuunda/ {Rundi} v-aux+ind-dis 'He wound up prowling.' (R25.3)
/yuumvise ibyo aheera kó arageenda/ {Rwanda} v-aux+ind-dis 'When he heard this, he left immediately.' (Overduiwe 1975:215)
/arabéza arabícia/ {Rundi} v-aux+ind-dis 'Then he killed them.' (Cristini 2000:277, JN)
«Umukazana na inabukwe ntibabora barashira hamwe.» {Rundi} v-aux+ind-dis 'Mother-in-law and daughter-in-law frequently do not live happily together.' (Rodegem 1970:171f)
/tutiriwe turadóondagura háno/ {Rundi} v-aux-rel+ind-dis '... (that) we won’t take the time to detail here.' (R37.3, JN)
/aia araguraanana/ {Rundi} v-aux+ind-dis 'He keeps on borrowing.' (R25.3)
/abagabo barakomeza barasoma/ {Rwanda} v-aux+ind-dis 'The men kept reading.' (Kimenyi 1980:11)
/barikó bariiga ikiruúndi/ {Rundi} v-aux+ind-dis 'They are in process of learning Rundi.' (Rodegem 1967:136)
Chapter 10: Auxiliary Verbs

/abagabo barikó barsoma/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:226), /abagabo barihó barsoma/ {Rwanda} (Kimenyi 1980:9) v-aux+ind-dis 'The men are (in the process of) reading.'

/asaanga inká zirizizitura/ {Rwanda} v-aux+ind-dis 'He notices that the cows are getting untied.' (Overduylve 1975:259)

/arashyira araaza/ {Rwanda} v-aux+ind-dis 'He finally arrived.' (Jacob 1987 #3:158)

/ubwóoro buráteba buramúteera/ {Rundi} v-aux+ind-dis 'Poverty finally overcomes him.' (R25.2)

/baratiinda baramukanywá/ {Rundi} v-aux+ind-dis 'They finally make him suffer.' (R25.3)

/soma wumuve uraseka/ {both} v-aux+ind-dis 'Read (this), you'll feel like laughing.' (R14)

/a/iyandikwa ku nguvu ry'abana baja kw'ishure ryoza rirabera ku muhana ku muhana.» {Rundi} v-aux+ind-dis 'Enrollment of children in schools should take place on a house-by-house basis.' (R39.5)

/azé aranywá amáazi/ {Rundi} v-aux+ind-dis 'He should drink water.' (Rodegem 1970:566)

Table 118. Auxiliary Verbs Governing the Indicative Disjoint with -ra-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Auxiliary</th>
<th>dialect</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-cá</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>VERB immediately or right away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-geenda</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>start to VERB; wind up VERBing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-héera kó</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>do VERB right away, VERB immediately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-íirirwa</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>spend the whole day VERBing; do VERB all day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ja</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>keep on VERBing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-komeza</td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td>continued to VERB; kept VERBing [past]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-oongera</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>VERB moreover or additionally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-rikó</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>be (in the process of) VERBing [continuous action]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-rihó</td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td>VERB moreover or additionally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-saanga</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>find, notice, note that VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-shyíra</td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td>finally VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-teba</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>finally VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tiinda</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>feel like VERBing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-úumva</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>feel like VERBing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-za</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>ought to VERB, should VERB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10.2.5. Auxiliary Verbs Governing the Simple Indicative

Very few verbs take a SIMPLE INDICATIVE complement (see Table 119).

/... arabaanza aguma haanzé/ {both} v-aux+ind '... he first waited outside.' (Cristini 2000:275, LN)

«Baraheza batuma umuntu kuvuga ijambo nk'uko bisanzwe.» {Rundi} v-aux+ind 'Then they send some person to give the customary speech.' (R11)

/ngira ngo ntibaazá/ {both} v-aux+ind 'I don't think they will come.' (LN)

Table 119. Auxiliary Verbs Governing the Simple Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Auxiliary</th>
<th>dialect</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-baanza</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>VERB first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-gira ngo</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>suppose that VERB, be of the opinion that VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-héza</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>then VERB; VERBed afterwards</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10.2.6. Auxiliary Verbs Governing the Subsecutive or Sequence with -ka-

There are just a few verbs that take a subsecutive or sequence complement (-ka-, -ga-, -k-; see Table 120 and review §8.12, #184–197).

/irabaanza igatéekwa/ {both} v-aux+seq 'They (the cassavas) are first cooked.' (R20)
/haárabaaye umugabo akageenda akarima.../ {Rundi} v-aux+seq 'Once upon a time, there was a man who went regularly to plow...' (Rodegem 1970:107)

/ukayireka igashwa/ {Rwanda} v-aux+seq 'Then you let it cook.' (R8)

/... utiinda ugaafátwa/ {Rundi} v-aux+seq '... and finally you get caught.' (Rodegem 1970:495)

/umúúsi umwé umwaámi akaa za agasaba nyaa mukoóbwa nawé akamúbenga/ {Rundi} v-aux+seq 'One day the king came and asked for the hand of this girl in marriage, but she refused him.' (Rodegem 1970:566)

Table 120. Auxiliary Verbs Governing the Subsecutive or Sequence with -ka-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>v-aux dialect English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-baanza [both] VERB first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-geenda [Rundi] go regularly to VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-hava [Rundi] VERB finally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-héza [Rundi] then VERB; VERB afterwards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-oongera [Rundi] do VERB again; VERB moreover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-reka [both] let VERB; allow s.t. to VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ruha [both] be tired of VERBing; get bored with VERBing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-teba [Rundi] finally VERB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tiínda [both] finally VERB; VERB some day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-:za [both] come and VERB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10.3. Copulative Auxiliary Verbs

Complex as they may be, the two copulative auxiliaries have two basic functions: to supply missing tenses (such as for the irregular verbs /-:zi/ [both] know or /-físe/ [Rundi] and /-fíte/ [Rwanda] have, own)\(^{455}\) and to mark an action as out of the time frame established by the initial verb (see Botne 1983, 1987, and 1989b).

The copulative auxiliaries /-ba/ and /-rí/ can be found in an impressive away of tense combinations. The following examples endeavor to illustrate several of those possible where the auxiliary verb is in one tense and mood and the following participial construction can be in the same or different tenses with subtle nuances in temporal implication. The first concern the copulative auxiliary /-bá/.

- **aux -bá = inf + verb = part-imm-perf**
  /kubá urwáaye biraambabaje/ {both} v-cop-aux-inf+v-part-imm-perf 'The fact that you are sick saddens me.' (Bizimana 1998:296, JN)

- **aux -bá = ind-imm-impf + verb = part-imm-perf**
  /mba mbáaye intwáari/ {both} v-cop-aux-ind-imm-impf+v-part-imm-perf 'I would be a courageous person.' (Bizimana 1998:297)

- **aux -bá = ind-imm-impf + verb = part-recent-perf**
  /iyó ngirá amafaraanga mba ngúze iki gitabo/ {both} v-cop-aux-ind-imm-impf+v-part-imm-perf 'If I had money, I would buy this book.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:298)

- **aux -bá = ind-imm-impf + verb = part-recent-perf**
  /amatá ukamiye umugoré uba uyámennye/ {both} v-cop-aux-ind-imm-impf+v-part-imm-perf "The milk that you draw for a woman, (by this very fact) you wasted it."\(^{456}\) (Overdulve 1975:263, JN)

\(^{455}\) Overdulve 1975:261 gives both RECENT and PRETERIT paradigms for Kinyarwanda /-fíte/ and /-:zi/ formed with the auxiliary /-rí/. Both of these verbs are defective and do not have a simple conjugation covering those tenses.

\(^{456}\) With this example, Overdulve makes the point that the actions are CONSECUTIVE and that the second is the necessary result of the former. This is a more specific function than our "out of timeframe" paradigm.
Chapter 10: Auxiliary Verbs

- **aux -bá = ind-imm-impf + verb = part-pret-perf**

  /iyo babishaaka baba baarabikóze/ {both} v-cop-aux-ind-imm+v-part-pret-perf-dis 'If they wanted, they would have done it.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:299, JN)

  /iyo ririya shūúri ridasanwa, riba ryáragüyue/ {both} v-cop-aux-ind-imm+v-part-pret-perf-dis 'If that school had not been repaired, it would had been destroyed.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:299, JN)

- **aux -bá = ind-neg-imm-impf + verb = part-pret-perf**

  /iyo bamenyá kóoga ntilabá báariishwe n'ūurúuzi/ {both} v-cop-aux-ind-neg-imm+v-part-pret-perf 'If they knew how to swim, they would not have drowned.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:299, JN)

- **aux -bá = ind-neg-imm-impf + verb = part-punc**

  /izuba ntilabá rirakomera/ {Rundi} v-cop-aux-ind-neg-imm+v-part-punc 'The sun is still not hot.' (Cristini 2000:168)

  /akúretse ntiyoba afíse umujinyáya/ {Rundi} (JN), /akúretse ntiyaba agíra umujinyáya/ {Rwanda} (Bizimana 1998:296) v-cop-aux-ind-neg-cond-imm+v-part-imm-impf 'If he let you, he would not be angry.' [lit. 'he would not have anger']

  /akúretse yooba atágirá umujinyáya/ {Rundi} (JN), /akúretse yooba atágirá umujinyáya/ {Rwanda} (Bizimana 1998:296) v-cop-aux-ind-cond-imm+v-part-neg-imm-impf 'If he let you, he would not be angry.'

  /yooba biteerwa.../ {Rundi} (JN), /byaaba biteerwa.../ {Rwanda} (R38.8) v-cop-aux-ind-cond-imm+v-part-imm-impf 'It might be caused…'

- **aux -bá = ind-cond + verb = part-pret-perf**

  /iyi mpanuka idasaanzwé ngo yooba váteéwe n'amafre yachtítse/ {Rundi} (JN), /iyi mpanuka isasaazwé ngo yooba váratéewe n'amafri yachtítse/ {Rwand} (R16) v-cop-aux-ind-cond-imm+v-part-imm-perf 'This unusual accident, it is believed, may have been caused by defective brakes.'

  /umuntu yooba váráshitse/ {Rundi} v-cop-aux-ind-cond-imm+v-part-pret-perf 'Mankind should have reached…' (R37.1)

- **aux -bá = ind-fut + verb = part-pret-perf**

  /ejó nk'iki gihe nzooba nágézé i káampalá/ {Rundi} (JN), /ejó nk'iki gihe nzooba nágézé i káampalá/ {Rwand} (Overdulve 1975:170) v-cop-aux-ind-fut+v-part-imm-impf 'Tomorrow, at about this time, I will have reached Kampala.'

  /ejó nk'iki gihe nzooba náashitse i káampalá/ {Rwanda} (Overdulve 1975:170) v-cop-aux-ind-fut+v-part-persist 'Tomorrow, at about this time, I will have reached Kampala.'

- **aux -bá = ind-fut + verb = part-pret-perf**

  /aux -bá = ind-fut + verb = part-punc**

  /abatúiranyi bazaba báaneesheje mu rubaánza/ {Rwanda} v-cop-aux-ind-fut+v-part-punc 'The neighbors will have won the trial.' (Overdulve 1975:263)

  /nzooba nágézé i Káampalá/ {Rundi} (JN), /nzooba náarézé i Káampalá/ {Rwanda} (Overdulve 1975:170) v-cop-aux-ind-fut+v-part-punc 'I will have reached Kampala.'

  /aux -bá = ind-fut + verb = part-persist**

  /ejó azaaba akírwaaye/ {Rundi} (JN), /ejó azaaba akírwaaye/ {Rwand} (Overdulve 1975:262) v-cop-aux-ind-fut+v-part-persist 'Tomorrow he will still be sick.'

  /aux -bá = ind-fut + verb = part-neg-punc**

  /ejó tuzaaba tútarááháaba inyishú yiwi/ {Rund} (JN), /ejó tuzaaba tútarááháabwa igisúbizo cyé/ {Rwand} (Overdulve 1975:262) v-cop-aux-ind-fut+v-part-neg-punc 'Tomorrow we still will not have received his response.'

  /aux -bá = ind-neg-perf + verb = part-persist**

  /ntiýabáaye agítaháa/ {Rundi} v-cop-aux-neg-perf-perf+v-part-persist 'He did not come back anymore.'

  /aux -bá = seq-imm + verb = part-imm-perf**

  /tukaba twíizeeye kó.../ {both} v-cop-aux-seq-imm+v-part-imm-perf '… and we are hoping that…' (R37.5)

  /aux -bá = seq-imm + verb = part-pret-perf**

  /iziíndi nazó zikaba záárarórónse urukingo/ {Rundi} (R37.3), /iziíndi nazó zikaba záárarórónse urukingo/ {Rwand} (LN) v-cop-aux-seq-imm+v-part-pret-perf '… and others have obtained the vaccine.'
Chapter 10: Auxiliary Verbs

- **aux -bá = rel-imm + verb = part-imm-impf**
  
  \[\text{If} \ \text{we could know} \ldots\] (R33)

- **aux -bá = sub-imm + verb = part-persist**

  \[\text{... so that a thief should not come back any more.}\] (Overdulve 1975:261)

- **aux -bá = imp + verb = part-imm-perf**

  \[\text{Wait a little bit!}\] (Overdulve 1975:263, JN)

The second set of examples concerns the copulative locative auxiliary /-rí/.

- **aux -rí = ind-cond + verb = part-imm-perf**

  \[\text{It would be appropriate.}\] (R16)

- **aux -rí = ind-recent + verb = part-imm-perf**

  \[\text{They were sick.}\] (Bizimana 1998:296, JN)

- **aux -rí = ind-recent + verb = part-recent-perf**

  \[\text{They have fetched water.}\] (Bizimana 1998:295, JN)

- **aux -rí = auto-recent + verb = part-recent perf**

  \[\text{Two among the injured}\] (R16, JN)

- **aux -rí = auto-pret + verb = part-pret-perf**

  \[\text{Those who had started should continue.}\] (Bizimana 1998:296, JN)

---

457 Overdulve suggests that the auxiliary combination here is because the subjunctive lacks the persistive tense. However, this example should follow a previously made statement such as 'We got dogs' or 'We put up a fence,' and it would then be out of the timeframe of that statement.
10.4. Multiple Auxiliary Verbs

It should be noted that three or four verbs can be strung together, where two or more of them are serving as auxiliary head verbs. The second will be governed by the first, a third would then be governed by the second, and so on.

/bakaba báakomeza konka/ {both} v-cop-aux-ind-seq+v-aux-part-cond-impf+v-inf '... and they should continue to suckle.' (R6, JN)

/mba nábaaye nkóra/ {both} v-cop-aux-ind-imm+v-cop-aux-part-recent-perf-con+v-part-imm-impf 'I should have been working.' (Bizimana 1998:231, JN)

/mba narábáaye ndétse/ {Rwanda} v-cop-aux-ind-imm+v-cop-aux-part-pret-perf+v-part-imm-perf 'I should have waited.' (Bizimana 1998:297)

/akaba vári afíse inzu/ {Rundi} (JN), /akaba vári afíte inzu/ {Rwanda} (Bizimana 1998:297) v-cop-aux-seq-imm+v-cop-loc-part-pret+v-part-imm '... and he had a house.'

/iyo nká ikaba vári iğiijive kuvyáara/ {Rundi} (JN), /iyo nká ikaba vári iğiijive kuvyáara/ {Rwanda} (Bizimana 1998:297) v-cop-aux-seq-imm+v-cop-loc-part-pret+v-aux-part-imm-perf+v-inf '... and that cow was just about to give birth.'

/baári básigaye báaza kwiishuza/ {Rundi} v-cop-loc-aux-ind-pret+v-aux-part-imm+v-aux-part-imm+v-inf 'They had started coming to claim back the debt.' (R25.3)

/ntaa mpanuka nk’iíyi varyi ihérutse kubá/ {both} v-cop-loc-aux-ind-recent+v-aux-part-imm-perf+v-cop-inf 'No accident like this has recently occurred.' (R16, JN)

/imvúra varyi imáze iminsi igwá/ {both} v-cop-loc-aux-ind-pret+v-aux-part-imm-perf+v-part-imm-impf 'It had been raining for days.' (R34.3, JN)

/bwaári búmaze kwiíra/ {both} v-cop-loc-aux-ind-pret+v-aux-part-imm+v-inf 'It had already grown dark.' (R34.3, JN)
11. ADVERBS

Adverbs are a class of words that modify or complement verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs. They may indicate TIME, PLACE, MANNER, DEGREE, INTENSITY, FREQUENCY, MEASURE, SIZE, or OPINION. As with adjectives, there are very few "pure" adverbs in Kirundi or Kinyarwanda.

 ejó {both} 'tomorrow; yesterday' (one day in the past or future)
 kare {both} 'early'
 kure {both} 'far (away), distant, long off'
 nooné {Rundi}, nóone {Rwanda} 'today'
 ryáarí {both} 'when?' (see §13.6)

The majority are formed from nouns, adjectives, deictics, numerals, or verbs.

 bugúfi {Rundi}, bugufí {Rwanda} adv-place = adj-n8-sg 'near, nearby'
 háno {both} adv-place = deic-1-excl-n10-loc 'here, hereabouts, in this area'
 ubu {both} adv-time = deic-1-n8-sg 'now, currently; today'
 kimwé {both} adv-manner = num-n4-sg 'in the same way or manner'
 bitaangáaje {both} adv-manner = v-rel-imm-perf-n4-pl 'remarkably, in an astonishing manner'
 búkeeye {both} adv-time = v-part-imm-perf-n8-sg 'the next morning' [lit: 'as it dawns']
 ukó bwíije {both} adv-time = v-rel-imm-perf-n8-sg 'nightly, each night' [lit: 'when it gets dark']

While there is some overlap of adverbs between Bantu languages and English, we saw in §10.2 that many AUXILIARY VERBS in Kirundi and Kinyarwanda are translated by ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS in English. Furthermore, the COVERBS OF MANNER discussed in §10.1.2 (Tables 112 /-tyá/ and 113-/tyó/) always function adverbially.

11.1. Adverbs of Time

One of the most common functions of adverbs is to indicate a particular time frame.

 ejó {both} 'tomorrow; yesterday' (one day in the past or future)
 ni aah'eéjo {both} 'See you tomorrow.' (Jacob 1984 #1:262, JN)
 kare {both} 'early'
 nkúukó nabivuzé kare {both} 'As I said (it) earlier.' (Jacob 1986 #2:189, JN)
 nooné {Rundi}, nóone {Rwanda} 'today'
 uzé nooné/ {Rundi}, uzé nóone/ {Rwanda} (Bizimana 1998:218) 'You should come today.'
 ubu {both} 'now, currently; today'
 abakoóbwa b'uúbu {both} 'girls nowadays'  (Jacob 1987 #3:450, JN)
 kurúubungúubú {both} 'at this time, right now'
 ubu ngúubú {both} 'right away, this very instant'
 búkeeye {both} 'the next morning' [lit: 'as it dawns']
 búkeeye bagaca báduuza igicíiro/ {Rundi} 'The following morning they immediately increase the price.' (R33.6)
 bwíije {both} v-part-imm-perf 'in the evening' (Cristini 2000:292)
 ukó bukeeyé, ukó bwíije/ {both} v-rel-imm-perf 'day and night' (R25.3)
 hatóoyá/ {both} adv-time-n10 'later on (the same day)'
 ararírya hatóoyá/ {both} 'He will eat it later on.' (Overdulve 1975:141, JN)
 nimugórooba/ {both} 'in the evening, at twilight' [lit: 'it is at night']
 navúganye na we ejó nimugórooba/ {both} 'I spoke with him yesterday evening.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:260, JN)
 mu kaánya/ {both} 'earlier, a while ago (past); later, in a moment (future)'

---

458 For Kinyarwanda, see Hands 1952:141-148 or Overdulve 1975:268–73 (treated as INVARIABLES), and for Kirundi, see Cristini 2000:292-297.
Chapter 11: Adverbs

/aragaruka mu kaánya/ {both} 'He will be back shortly.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:347)
/mu gitóondo/ {both} 'in the morning'
/ejó mu gitóondo/ {both} 'tomorrow morning' (Rodegem 1970:500)

11.2. Adverbs of Place

Another extremely common function of adverbs is to indicate a location or place.

/epfó/ {both} adv-place 'down, below, under, at the bottom; lower'
/haanzé/ {both} adv-place 'outside (of a house)'
/abanyarwaanda babá haanzé y'íghhúgu/ {both} 'Rwandans who live abroad...' (R29.3)
/kure/ {both} adv-place 'far (away), distant, long off'
/ni kure/ {both} 'It is far.' (Overdulve 1975:290, JN)
/íghhúgu caa kure/ {Rundi} 'a distant country' (Cristini 2000:78)
/háno/ {both} adv-place 'here, hereabouts, in this area'
/ní háno muu nzu/ {both} 'Here I am in the house!' (Overdulve 1975:86, JN)
/inó/ {both} adv-place 'here, hereabouts, in this area'
/ngw íinó vubá/ {both} 'Come here quickly!' (Overdulve 1975:268, JN)
/hátagí/ {both} adv-place 'in the middle (of), in between, among; inside'
/hííno/ {both} adv-place {both} 'this way, over here'
/híírya nó hiíno/ {both} 'here and there, near and far, back and forth, to and fro' (R8a, R30.1, R32, R34.4, JN)
/háákurya/ {both} 'on the other side (of a body of water, of a border); beyond, on that side of'
/háákurya y'úurúuzi/ {both} 'on the other side of the river' (Overdulve 1975:119, JN)

11.3. Adverbs of Manner

There are several ways of indicating the manner in which some action is done.

/buhóoro/ {both} adv-manner-n8-sg 'slowly; slightly, a little; gently; softly'
/vuga buhóro/ {both} 'Speak softly!' (Rodegem 1970:173)
/buhóro búhoro/ {both} adv-manner-n8-sg-redup 'very slowly, carefully, gently, little by little' (Overdulve 1975:288)
/buhóro búhoro ni rwó rugeendo/ {Rwanda} 'Slowly but surely.'
/bwaango/ {both} adv-manner-n8-sg 'quickly, fast'
/níngoga/ {both} adv-manner 'quickly, in a hurry, rapidly, hastily'
/kora níngoga/ {both} 'Work quickly!'
/vubá/ {both} adv-manner 'quickly, rapidly, hastily'
/geenda aríko ugarúke vubá/ {both} 'Go, but come back quickly!'
/bitaangáaje/ {both} adv-manner = v-rel-imm-perf-n4-pl 'remarkably, in an astonishing manner'
/bahiinga bitaangáaje/ {Rwanda} 'They plow in an astonishing way.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:338)

11.4. Adverbs of Degree or Intensity

Some words are used to qualify a statement in terms of degree or intensity.

/caane/ {Rundi}, /cyaaane/ {Rwanda} 'very (much), quite, exceedingly'
/ni bibi caane/ {Rundi}, /ni bibi cyaane/ {Rwanda} 'It is very bad.'
/caane caane/ {Rundi}, /cyane cyane/ {Rwanda} adv-redup 'especially, mostly, particularly'
/rwóóse/ {Rundi}, /rwóóse/ {Rwanda} 'totally, entirely, altogether, absolutely, completely, quite' [denotes strong emphasis, intensive, or superlative]
/bugúfi rwóóse/ {Rundi}, /bugúfi rwóóse/ {Rwanda} 'quite near, very close' (Overdulve 1975:271)
/azi gusoma rwóóse/ {Rwanda} 'He knows how to read perfectly.' (Overdulve 1975:224)
/ahakurú/ {Rundi} 'especially, principally, in the first place'

320
11.5. Adverbs of Measure, Quantity, or Frequency

Some words, especially a few which are generally adjectives, can function to modify a verb.

/dutóodutó/ {both} adv-measure = adj-n7-pl-redup 'tiny, very small (pieces)'
/ukazikatakata dutóodutó/ {both} adv-measure '... and you cut them into small pieces.' (R18, JN)
/rudeéende/ {both} 'unique; [atr] sole; singular [ling]; [adv] only, solely'
/asigaranye umwáana umwé rudeéende/ {both} 'He still has only one child.' (Rodegem 1970:68)
/rukuúmbi/ {both} adj499 'unique, sole, single'
«agapapuro kandítseho ingingo imwe rukuúmbi» {Rwanda} 'A small piece of paper on which is written but a single issue.' (R32)
/keénshi/ {both} 'often, many times'
/baáje keénshi/ {both} 'They came often.' (Bizimana 1998:362, JN)
/bikabijé/ {both} 'too much, in excess'
/avuga bikabijé/ {both} 'He talks too much.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:338)

11.6. Adverbs of Opinion

A few words function as adverbs which express an opinion on the part of the speaker. Normally, such words are either interjections (§14) or ideophones (§15).

/aháarí/ {Rwanda} 'maybe, possibly, perhaps'
/aháári uzagaaruka/ {Rwanda} 'Maybe you will come back.' (Bizimana 1998:235)
/buruúndu/ {Rundi}, /buruundú/ {Rwanda} 'definitely, for sure, decidedly, for good'
/búrya/ {both} 'in fact, essentially'
/búrya sinamuboonye/ {both} 'In fact, I didn't see him.' (Bizimana 1998:229)
/wéenda/ {Rwanda} 'maybe, perhaps' (R34.4)
/weenda arageenda/ {Rwanda} 'He is really sick.'

11.7. Adverb Derivation

Adverbial expressions and phrases can be derived in several ways in both Kirundi and Kinyarwanda. There are two conjunctions (nka- and na-) which introduce adverbial phrases, and several noun classes can assume adverbial functions.

11.7.1. Adverbs of Comparison (nka-)

Adverbial statements involving comparison (SIMILATIVE ADVERBS) are marked by /nka/ {both} like. such as. The SIMILATIVE PRONOUNS, e.g., /nkaáwe/ {both} like you, /nkawé/ {both} like him, her, were treated in §4.11 and are detailed in Table 68.

/ejo nk'iíki gihe/ {both} 'around this time tomorrow' (Overdulve 1975:170, JN)
/ageenda nk'umugabo/ {both} 'He walks like a man.' (Overdulve 1975:170, JN)
/akora nka Mugabo/ {both} 'He works like Mugabo.' (Overdulve 1975:170, JN)

11.7.2. Adverbs Marked by na-

Several expressions are marked by the conjunction /na/.

/náábí/ {both} 'badly, poorly, unsatisfactorily'
/néezá/ {both} 'well, nicely, satisfactorily, fine'
/kaándi yakorana néezá n'ábaándi/ {Rundi} 'Moreover, she worked well with others.' (R17.7)
/na gáto/ {both} 'at all'
/sinayishiímye na gáto/ {both} 'I wasn’t satisfied with it at all.' (R1)

499 Mostly an adjective, e.g., /umwáana umwé rukuúmbi/ {Rwanda} 'an only child' (Jacob 1986 #2:292)
11.7.3. Adverbs Derived from Nouns

Reduced forms in several noun classes can function adverbially. Note how Kinyarwanda tends to favor some nouns in group 4 while Kirundi uses nouns in group 6 to express the same idea.

\[n4\]
/kizuúngu/ {both} adv-n4-sg 'like a white person; in a European way'
/iceése/ {Rundi} adv-n4-sg 'clearly, openly, out in the open, publicly'
/kigabo/ {both} adv-n4-sg 'like a man' [Alt: /rugabo/ {Rundi} BELOW]
/kigoré/ {both} adv-n4-sg 'like a woman' [Alt: /rugoré/ {Rundi} BELOW]
/bibi/ {both} adv-n4-pl 'badly, poorly, not in a good manner'

\[n6\]
/rugabo/ {Rundi} adv-n6-sg 'like a man' [Cf: /kigabo/ {both} ABOVE]
/rugoré/ {Rundi} adv-n6-sg 'like a woman' [Cf: /kigoré/ {both} ABOVE]

\[n8\]
/butaambwe/ {Rundi} adv-n8-sg 'like a lion'
/kuroha butaambwe/ {Rundi} 'To roar as a lion,' (Cristini 2000:294)
/bukóokó/ {both} adv-n8-sg 'like an animal'

\[n10\]
/haasi/ {both} adv-loc-n10a 'down, on the ground; below (vertical)'
/haruguru/ {both} adv-loc-n10a 'above, on high, higher up'
/haanyuma/ {both} adv-loc-n10a 'after, afterwards, later'
/ható/ {both} adv-loc-n10a 'soon, a little later on (the same day)'

\[n11\]
/kwiínshi/ {both} adv-invar-n11 'differently'
/abaantu biiyumvira kwiínshi/ {Rundi} (JN), /abaantu bateekereza kwiínshi/ {Rwanda} (Bizimana 1998:227) 'People think differently.'
/gusa/ {both} adv-invar-n11 'for no reason; for nothing; free, gratis'
Chapter 12: Conjunctions and Coordination

12. CONJUNCTIONS AND COORDINATION

Since verbs can be coordinated in several different ways by the use of various moods or markers, conjunctions are not always required in Kirundi and Kinyarwanda as they are in English. For example, PARTICIPIAL constructions can serve as TEMPORAL clauses, and do not require the use of conjunctions such as if or when.

\[
\text{/akiri umwáana yarakúbagana caane/} \quad \text{(Rundi) (JN), /akiri umwáana yarakúbaganaga cyane/} \quad \text{(Rwanda) (LN)} \quad \text{v-cop-loc-part-persist} \quad \text{‘When he was still young, he was a very hyperactive child.’}
\]

\[
\text{/akúretse yooba atágirá umujinyá/} \quad \text{(Rundi) (JN), /akúretse yaaba atágirá umujinyá/} \quad \text{(Rwanda)} \quad \text{(Bizimana 1998:296) v-part-imm-perf} \quad \text{‘If he lets you go, he would not be furious.’}
\]

SUBJUNCTIVE constructions can follow an imperative to show a SERIES OF COMMANDS, doing away with the need for and.

\[
\text{/ngwiinó wiicáre/} \quad \text{(both) v-sub-imm} \quad \text{‘Come in and sit down!’ (LN)}
\]

Similarly, the SUBSECUTIVE can show a SEQUENCE OF ACTIONS, so that a conjunction like and or then is not required.

\[
\text{/iyo umuumuntu ashaajé akarwáara agafá/} \quad \text{(Rundi) (Cristini 2000:212), /iyo umuumuntu ashaajé ararwáara agafá/} \quad \text{(both) (JN, LN) v-seq-imm} \quad \text{‘When a man grows old, he then gets sick and dies.}
\]

There is also the CONJUNCTIVE VERB INFIX -na-, which carries the sense of even.

\[
\text{«Ni kuki hajya havugwa inzara ikananitana abantu?»} \quad \text{(Rwanda) v-seq+na ‘How can there sometimes be talk about a famine that even kills off people?’ (R32)}
\]

\[
\text{/barakóra bakaníiga/} \quad \text{(both) v-seq+na ‘They work and they even study.’ (JN, LN)}
\]

Although conjunctions may not be required as often as they may be in English, there are several conjunctions or complementizers in both dialects, several of which govern various moods, similar to auxiliary verbs.

12.1. Coordinating or Non-Influencing Conjunctions

There are a group of conjunctions that simply join words, phrases, or clauses, but do not govern any following verb. Note that some are infinitive forms.

\[
\text{/ari izúuba ari jyé, ukuundá ikiíhe/} \quad \text{(Rwanda) ‘Between me and Sun, whom do you love?’ (R28.5)}
\]

\[
\text{«ariko nya sukari ntituyibone ku masoko»} \quad \text{(Rundi) ‘... and yet we could not find that sugar in the marketplace.’ (R33.2)}
\]

\[
\text{/ntaa kiíndi kiyaago atári Bitama/} \quad \text{(Rundi) ‘There was no other topic of conversation except Bitama.’ (R25)}
\]

\[
\text{/nómoone turabyúumva, ariko ejó twaári tútaráabyúumva/} \quad \text{(Rwanda) ‘Now we understand it, but yesterday we hadn't understood it yet.’ (Overdulve 1975:262)}
\]

\[
\text{/bagashira inkóno iruhaánde y'íizíiko cáanké ku ruseenge/} \quad \text{(Rundi) ‘... and they place the pots on the side of the hearth or on a rack.’ (R15)}
\]

\[
\text{/urashaaka iri tára cáanké ririya/} \quad \text{(Rundi) (JN), /urashaaka iri tára cyángwá ririya/} \quad \text{(Overdulve 1975:89) (Rwanda) ‘Do you want this lamp or that one?’}
\]

\[
\text{/umushyitsi aricara kaándi araganya} \quad \text{(Rwanda) ‘The visitor sits down and moreover groans.’ (Overdulve 1975:267)}
\]

\[
\text{/kuva i mugera gushika i gatára/} \quad \text{(Rundi) ‘from Mugera to Gatara’ (Cristini 2000:305)}
\]

\[
\text{/kuva i kigali kugera i gitaráama/} \quad \text{(Rwanda) ‘from Kigali to Gitarama’ (LN)}
\]

\[
\text{/twiívuuje máze turataaha/} \quad \text{(both) ‘We got ourselves treated and then we went home.’ (Jacob 1986 #2:341, JN)}
\]

\[
\text{/máze ishaaka ryaawe riraangúuke/} \quad \text{(Rundi) ‘... and Thy Will be done’ (Cristini 2000:304)}
\]

460 Perhaps the most thorough treatment in the literature is that of Cristini (2000:303–28) where dozens of forms are discussed and exemplified.
Chapter 12: Conjunctions and Coordination

«Iroshima na Nagasaki» {both} ‘Hiroshima and Nagasaki’ (R37.4)
/Péetero na Yóhaána/ {Rwanda} ‘Peter and John’ (Overdulve 1975:224)
/Péetero na Pááulo/ {Rundi} ‘Peter and Paul’ (Cristini 2000:325)
/hírrya nó hiíno/ {both} ‘here and there’ (R8, R30.1, R32, R34.4)
/kuvúga nó kwúumva/ {both} ‘to talk and to listen’ (Cristini 2000:325)

Table 121. Coordinating or Non-Influencing Conjunctions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjunction</th>
<th>dialect</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arí ... arí</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>whether ... or; between ... or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aríko</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>but, however, nevertheless [transitional rather than contrastive]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atári</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>except [lit. it not being]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cáanké</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cyáangwá</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gushika</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>to, until, up to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kugera</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>to, until, up to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kuyá</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>from, since</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>máze</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>and then, afterward, finally, in short [new series of ideas]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nó</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>and [before a locative or infinitive]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n'</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>and [before a consonant]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n'</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>and [before a vowel]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The conjunctions na- and nka- involve details of vowel length and tone, summarized in Table 122. They parallel the tonality of possessive constructions (§3.6.3.1). If the word following a connective begins with a vowel, then the /a/ of the connective drops and the first vowel receives high tone. If the next vowel has high tone, then the first vowel is lengthened. If, on the other hand, the following word begins with a consonant, if it is low toned then the resulting form will also be low toned throughout; if it has a high tone, then the first vowel after the connective will also acquire high tone.

Table 122. Vowel Length and Tone After Conjunctives na- and nka-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>next</th>
<th>tone</th>
<th>form</th>
<th>tone</th>
<th>length</th>
<th>tone rule(s)</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>low</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>low</td>
<td>short</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>na perezida 'and a president'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>nka</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>short</td>
<td>H+R</td>
<td>nka perezida 'like a president'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>low</td>
<td>n'</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>short</td>
<td>H+L</td>
<td>n'índa 'with a stomach'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>n'</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>short</td>
<td>H+VL</td>
<td>nk'íisúka 'like a hoe'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>n'</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>H+VL+E</td>
<td>nkúukó 'by whom?' [root: ndé]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>n'</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>H+VL</td>
<td>inkóno n'ítaábi 'pipe and tobacco'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>n'c (short cons)</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>short</td>
<td>H+R</td>
<td>n'úumwáarimú 'with a teacher'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>n'cc (long cons)</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>H+R</td>
<td>nk'úumwáarimú 'like a teacher'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>pro/deic</td>
<td>low</td>
<td>high second mora</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>A2</td>
<td>naáha 'and this place'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>pro/deic</td>
<td>low</td>
<td>high second mora</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>A2</td>
<td>nkaáha 'like this place'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>pro/deic</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>n'</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>H+VL+E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>pro/deic</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>n'</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>H+VL+E</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** These tonal and length conditions are discussed in Overdulve 1975:47f,83 and in Kimenyi 2002:138ff.
12.2. Subordinating Conjunctions

Similar to auxiliary verbs (see §10.2), there are many conjunctions which govern a particular mood. In fact, they have all the mood compliments as do auxiliaries (infinitive, participial, subjunctive), but they also govern relative constructions. The learner should be wary of those that appear in more than one table below because sometimes there are subtle differences in meaning or function.

12.2.1. Conjunctions Governing the Relative

By far the most frequent mood required by a conjunction is the RELATIVE. Several of these are exemplified immediately below and presented in Table 123.

/ahó baahiinzé baahaboonye inzóka/ {Rwanda} 'In the place where they were cultivating, they found a snake.' (Overdulve 1975:186)

/hamwé yapfá/ {Rundi} 'When he died ...' (JN)

/haakó ndyá, ngiye gukóra/ {Rundi} 'Instead of eating, I'll go to work.' (Cristini 2000:314)

/ingéne imbeba zaáje mu ntáará/ {Rundi} 'How mice came to the region.' (R27)

/yeema kó yagatwaáye/ {both} 'He admitted that he took it.' (R7)

/nzi kw'ákundá amafaraanga cyaane/ {Rwanda} 'I know that he loves money very much.' (Overdulve 1975:159)

/baagiuye mw iivuuriro kugira ngo badapfá/ {Rwanda} 'They went to the infirmary so they wouldn't die.'

/yaabitáanze kúko baamuhasé/ {Rwanda} 'He handed them over because they pressured him.' (Overdulve 1975:293)

/nasíiwe kúko narwáaye/ {Rundi} 'I was absent because I was sick.' (Cristini 2000:315)

«kúko navukanye amaguru abiri nk'abandi» {both} 'Because I was born with two legs like everybody else.' (R34.2)

/ni haagirá uwukómereka ntuúze uvugé ngo sinakúbwíiye/ {Rundi} 'If there is someone who gets hurt, you should not say that I didn't warn you.' (R23)

/ni waantsiínda uraándya/ {Rundi} 'If you beat me, you will eat me.' (R27.4)

/niínđamúka mbáaye miniisítiri/ {Rwanda} 'In case I become a minister.' (R32)

/núuramúka wáanze/ {Rwanda} 'In case you refuse.' (R28.9)

/niínndadhú inkwi, barí buburáare/ {Rwanda} 'If I don't find firewood, they would go to bed hungry.' (R34.3)

/níkó twaabisaanze/ {both} 'That's how we found it.' (R38.3)

/mbuze ukuntu ngirá/ {both} 'I do not know what to do.' [lit: how that I do'] (JN, LN)

/ubwó ntáa murimo uhári táaha/ {Rwanda} 'Since there is work, go home.'

/barabóna ukó twoogá/ {both} 'They will see how we swim.' (Overdulve 1975:186)

/ndásaba yúuko muccecéka/ {both} 'I ask that you keep quiet.'

/mubwiire yúuko ntari buuze/ {both} 'Tell him that I won't come.' (Overdulve 1975:170, JN)

There are just a few conjunctions that require a RELATIVE CONDITIONAL construction (see Table 124).

/ahó yoovvué/ {Rundi}, /ahó yaavuuzé/ {Rwanda} 'instead of saying'

/haákó wooganaára, wookóra/ {Rundi} 'Rather than talking, you should work.' (Cristini 2000:314)

/niívó yoobá yáapfúuyé noogẹneendayó/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:328), /niívó yaabá yáapfúuyé naajyayó/ {Rwanda} (LN) 'Even if he would have died, I would still go there (elsewhere).'

/icó niípffúua núbókkó mwooiihrwá/ {Rundi}, /icyó niífíuža núbókkó mwaahiirwá/ {Rwanda} 'What I wish is that you be happy.'

/vyiiza n'úukó yooaaahá/ {Rundi} (Cristini 2000:320), /ibyiízá n'úukó yaataahá/ {Rwanda} (LN) 'It is better that he should go home.'
Chapter 12: Conjunctions and Coordination

Table 123. Conjunctions Governing the Relative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjunction</th>
<th>dialect</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ahó</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>where, in the place which [locative]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ahó</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>when, while, at the time which [temporal]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ahó</td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td>after, since [temporal]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haakó</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>rather than, instead of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hamwé</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>when, the moment that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>igihe</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>when, the time that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ingéne</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>how</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ukugéne</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>how</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iyó</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>if, when, whenever, each time that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kó</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>that [after a psych verb: say, ask, know, doubt, want, see]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kw' [+ vowel]</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>that [before a vowel]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kugira ngo</td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td>lest, so that not, in order that ... not [negative only]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kukó</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ni</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>if, in case [hypothetical, followed by an immediate in Rwanda and recent in Rundi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n' [+ vowel]</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>that is what; that is how ... [indicating the manner or process of a subsequent action]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nukó</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ubwó</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>when, since, at the moment that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ukó</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>how, however, as, in the manner which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ukuuntu</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>how</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yúukó</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>that; whether [after a psych verb: say, ask, know, doubt, want, see, deny]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 124. Conjunctions Governing the Relative Conditional

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjunction</th>
<th>dialect</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ahó</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>rather than, instead of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haakó</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>rather than, instead of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niiyó</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>even if</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'nuukó</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>it is that [statement of fact]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12.2.2. Conjunctions Governing the Participial

The second most frequent mood required by a conjunction is the PARTICIPIAL.

"kaándi yiıyicariye muu nzu" {both} 'Although he is just sitting at home...' (R37.3)
"niibá ubíizi bívuge" {both} 'If you know it, say it!' (DRF:281)
«niiba utanyuzwe, cyo tujye kureba ikidukiranura» {Rwanda} 'If you are not satisfied, though, let's go look for a way to settle our dispute.' (R28.2)
"iyáabá wákoraga i bukaávu, waavuze igiswáyiré gusa" {Rwanda} 'If you worked in Bukavu, you would just speak Swahili.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:298)
"náambá ugira ngo ndakúbeesha" {Rundi} 'Maybe you think that I am lying to you.' (DRF:274)
Table 125. Conjunctions Governing the Participial

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjunction</th>
<th>dialect</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iyáábá</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>if [governs a participial recent verb and is followed by a conditional perfect]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaándi</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>although, even if</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>níibá</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>if (it is so) [conditional; implies some restriction or reservation]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>náambá</td>
<td>{Rundi}</td>
<td>if, perhaps [expressing some doubt]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12.2.3. Conjunctions Governing the Infinitive

There are several conjunctions that take an INFINITIVE complement.

/abaantu ahó kuunshiímira barítweengeera/ {both} 'But instead of thanking me, people just laugh.' (R19)

/ahó kuvúga/ {both} 'instead of speaking' (Overdulve 1975:181)

/kirazira kaándi kunywá inzogá/ {both} '... and it is forbidden to drink alcoholic beverages.' (R31.5)

/kuvúga nó kwúumva/ {both} 'to talk and to listen' (Cristini 2000:325)

/nzi yúuk' ushobora kuúmfasha, nikó kugusaanga/ 'I know that you are able to help me, that is why I have come to you.'

Table 126. Conjunctions Governing the Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjunction</th>
<th>dialect</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ahó</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>rather than, instead of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaándi</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>and to VERB, also to VERB; and VERBng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nó</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>and so, therefore, that is why, that's how [indicating the reason for a subsequent action]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nikó</td>
<td>{Rwanda}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12.2.4. Conjunctions Governing the Subjunctive

There are just a few conjunctions that take an SUBJUNCTIVE complement.

/kugira coorohé, kiziingwé/ {Rundi} 'So that it would be supple and pliable.' (R5)

/kugira ngo turoonké isúkaári/ {both} 'So that we should obtain sugar.' (R33.3)

/baramúbwiira ngw azé/ {both} 'They are telling him that he should come.' (Overdulve 1975:148)

/aramúbwiira ngo navyiíhoze/ {Rundi} 'He tells him that he shouldn't worry.' (R23)

/icý’íibáanzé ngo twíiháatire gusoma/ {Rwanda} 'The most important thing is that we should make an effort to read.' (R4)

/umugaanga ngo yiinjíre asaanga amáze gupfá/ {both} 'The doctor notices as soon as he enters that he has just died.' (Overdulve 1975:248)

Table 127. Conjunctions Governing the Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjunction</th>
<th>dialect</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kugira</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>to, so that, in order that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngo</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>that; so that, in order that [before a consonant]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngw</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>that; so that, in order that [before a vowel]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngo</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>when, just as, as soon as, at the same time as [before a consonant]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngw</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>when, just as, as soon as, at the same time as [before a vowel]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12.2.5. Conjunctions Governing the Indicative

Very few conjunctions take an INDICATIVE complement.

«urabona ga wa mugabo ngo uza kuntega nihitira» {Rundi} 'Do you realize that you come to snare me while I just pass by?' (R27.2)
/yahakanye ngo ntaabiizi/ {Rundi} (JN), /yaahakanye ngo ntaabiizi/ {both} (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:312) 'He denied that he doesn't know it.'
/ngw'araaza/ {both} 'Apparently he will come.' (Overdulve 1975:247)
/bababajwe nůukó baabiivyve/ {Rundi} 'They are troubled because they stole them.' (Cristini 2000:320)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjunction</th>
<th>dialect</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ngo</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>that [statement of fact, before a consonant]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngw</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>that [statement of fact, before a vowel]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngo</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>maybe, it seems as if, probably, suppose that [introduces some doubt or uncertainty to a statement]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngw</td>
<td>{both}</td>
<td>because, due to, and that, on account of</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13. INTERROGATIVES AND QUESTION WORDS

Question words are often described as interrogative pronouns. However, only a few are strictly "pro-nouns" (i.e., they stand for nouns). Of the forms discussed below, only four sets are NOMINAL: /ndé/ n1a who?, /-he/ n+class which?, /-ki/ n+class and /ki/ n4-invar what?, /-ngáahé/ qw-num how many? Words for how?, when?, where? are ADVERBS.

13.1. The Overall Structure of Question Sentences

As with English, certain statements in Kirundi and Kinyarwanda can be turned into questions by their intonation.

You're going ↓ [simple statement] You're going ↑ [question]

The learner should listen carefully to the pitch contours of a native speaker (or the recording accompanying the reading selections inNibagwire and Zorc 2002) on the following questions.

/urabóna ga wa mugabo ngo uza kuünëga nihihitira?/ [Rundi] 'Do you realize that you happened to catch me when I was merely passing by?' (R27.2)
/wagira ngo nca nkúrekura?/ [Rundi] 'Did you think that I would immediately set you free?' (R27.3)
/waahhuurá n'íizúuba ntúùrive imbere?/ [both] 'You meet the sun and yet don't get out of its way?'
(R28.1, JN)
/ntúùzi?/ [both] 'Don't you know it?' (Rodegem 1967:162)
/muzaajya i Kigali ejó?/ [Rwanda] 'Will you go to Kigali tomorrow?' (Overdulve 1975:219)
/uzí i Gitarama?/ [Rwanda] 'Have you been to Gitarama?' (Overdulve 1975:143)

There are several words available in both dialects to MARK QUESTIONS explicitly (Table 129). Most of them come first in their sentence, although /sé/ may follow a phrase or even come sentence final.

/moléeqa mwaá bagabo n'tibiki/ [Rundi] 'Hey, guys, what's up?' (R27.8, JN)
/moléeése /mbeêsé/ muri aaho?/ [Rwanda] 'Hello!, How are you' (Jacob 1986 #2:342)
/moléeése /mbeêsé/ uzaagaruka uté?/ [Rwanda] 'How are you going to come back?' (Jacob 1986 #2:342)
/moléeése /mbeêsé/ uzaagaruka uté?/ [Rwanda] 'Are you up-to-date?' (Rodegem 1970:261)
/moléeése /mbeêsé/ uzaagaruka uté?/ [Rwanda] 'Are you coming or not?' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:156)

Table 129. Question Markers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question Marker</th>
<th>Dialect</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>esé</td>
<td>(both)</td>
<td>is it? [question marker]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mbeéga</td>
<td>(both)</td>
<td>is it so? [question marker that introduces a query]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mbeésé</td>
<td>[Rundi]</td>
<td>is it? [question marker]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mbeesé</td>
<td>[Rwanda]</td>
<td>is it? [question marker]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Overdulve 1975:19f,219 for a brief overview of intonation in Kinyarwanda.
13.2. 'Who?' - Person Noun Interrogative (ndé, baandé)

The form /ndé/ (both) *who?*, *which person?* is mainly used for humans. It is a member of noun group *1a*, so in the singular, it never varies, and takes no prefix (zero). In the plural, it takes the prefix /bàa-/.

/uri ndé?/ (both) *Who are you?* [singular] (Ntahokaja 1994:103)
/muri baandé?/ (both) *Who are you?* [plural] (Ntahokaja 1994:103)
/wiitwa ndé?/ (both) *What’s your name?* ' (Overdulve 1975:156)
/wakubiswe naa ndé?/ (both) *By whom were you hit?* (LN, JN)
/ni baandé?/ (both) *Who are they?* (Rodegem 1967:122)
/muroondera baandé?/ (Rundi) *Whom are you looking for?* (Ntahokaja 1994:103)
/abaantu baahozé aha ní baandé?/ (both) *Who are the people who were here?* (Ntahokaja 1976::13)
/ntábáhó baacyuurwa naá nde mw'iicuumbi?/ (Rwanda) *If I did not exist, who would lead them to their quarters?* (R28.2)

It is usually found after the verb (sentence final), but can be placed before it for emphasis. In such circumstances, it is preceded by the copulative and becomes part of a relative construction.

/ni ndé yagukubíse?/ (Rundi) (JN), /ni ndé wagukubíse?/ (Rwanda) (LN) *Who hit you?*
/ni ndé yarí kumenya yúuko urí izúuba?/ (Rundi) (JN), /ni ndé warí kumenya yúuko urí izúuba?/ (Rwanda) (R28.2) *Who would know that you are Sun?*
/ni baandé baabivuzé?/ (both) *Who said it?* (Overdulve 1975:157)

13.3. 'What?' (invariable /ikí/ or root /-kí/)

The invariable /ikí/, which has the reduced form /kí/ when following a head noun, is a GENERIC INTERROGATIVE for *what?* It come phrase or sentence final, after a verb (if there is one). It seeks information, implying complete ignorance of what is being discussed.

/ut'ikí?/ (both) *What are you saying?* (Overdulve 1975:134, Rodegem 1967:80)
«Icyo n'iki? N'urukwavu.» (both) *What is that? It is a rabbit.* (Hands 1952:191, JN)
/undutiisha ikí?/ (both) *What makes you better than me?* (R28.2)
/n'ukuvúga ikí?/ (both) *What does that mean?* (Rodegem 1967:80)
/urashaaka ikí?/ (both) *What do you want?* (Overdulve 1975:233)
/ushaaka ikí mi gihúgu?/ (both) *What are you looking for in the country?* (R28.1)
/baaguze ikí?/ (both) *What did they buy?* (Overdulve 1975:134)
«Icyo kiganiro cyari ikí?» (both) *What was that conversation about?* (R40.3, JN)
/ubu ní magiingo kí?/ (Rundi) (Rodegem 1967:155), /ubu ní gihe kí?/ (Rwanda) (Hands 1952:189, LN) *What time is it now?*
/iyi nyama ní bwóoko kí?/ (both) *What kind of meat is this?* (Rodegem 1967:155)
/uyo mwáana arizwa n'íkí?/ (Rundi) *Why is that child is crying?* (Cristini 2000:88)
«Mbes'íkí n'íkí?» (Rwanda) *What is this?* [ignorance] (Hands 1952:190)
«Ibyo uvuze ubitewe n'íkí?» (Rwanda) *What makes you talk that way?* (R28.2)
«impamvu yo kwibonekeza uyikura ku kí?» (Rwanda) *To what do you attribute your attracting notice?* (R28.1)

466 This is an example of the generic what? in its reduced form, /kí/. The invariable interrogative /kí/ (§13.4) means what kind of? all by itself. Here /bwóoko/ supplies the meaning kind or type (of).
When declined (see Table 130), this question word refers to someone or something already mentioned, and is seeking further information. Both Kirundi and Kinyarwanda follow root tonality (high tone on the final monosyllabic root $kì$).

/n'umuki/ [Rundi] 'What kind of person?' (Cristini 2000:87, JN)
/uyu mugabo n'uimuki/? [Rwand] 'This man is of what nationality?' (Overduulve 1975:233)
/ibyó bashaakì n'ibikì/? [Rwand] 'What kinds of things do they want?' (Overduulve 1975:233)
«mbes'ibi n'ibikì?» [Rwand] 'What are these?' (Hands 1952:189)
/iyo nàaina yategetse ibikì n'ibikì?/ [both] 'What was the point of that meeting?' (R4)
«ni imiki? (imyambi)» [Rwand] 'which arrows?' (Hurel 1959:60)
«Dore, yazany'inzoga! Uvuze kw ar' inki?» [Rwand] 'See, he has brought beer! What did you say it was?' (Hands 1952:189)
«Mbes Gakeri n'umuki?» [Rwand] 'What is Gakeri? (a boy or a girl); What is Gakeri's nationality or status? (Hands 1952:190)
«Uvuze k'urwo ar'uruki? N'urukwavu.» [both] 'What did you say it was? It is a rabbit. (Hands 1952:191, JN)

### Table 130. Declined forms of -ki 'which'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>class</th>
<th>Rundi-Rwanda</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n1-sg</td>
<td>umuki</td>
<td>what?, which (one)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-pl</td>
<td>abaki</td>
<td>what?, which (ones)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-sg</td>
<td>umuki</td>
<td>what?, which (one)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-pl</td>
<td>imiki</td>
<td>what?, which (ones)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-sg</td>
<td>iki</td>
<td>what?, which (one)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>irikì</td>
<td>[generic as well as group specific]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-pl</td>
<td>amaki</td>
<td>what?, which (ones)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-sg</td>
<td>igiki</td>
<td>what?, which (one)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-pl</td>
<td>ibikì</td>
<td>what?, which (ones)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-sg</td>
<td>inkì</td>
<td>what?, which (one)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-pl</td>
<td>inkì</td>
<td>what?, which (ones)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-sg</td>
<td>uruki</td>
<td>what?, which (one)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-pl</td>
<td>inkì</td>
<td>what?, which (ones)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-sg</td>
<td>agaki</td>
<td>what?, which (one)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-pl</td>
<td>uduki</td>
<td>what?, which (ones)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-sg</td>
<td>ubuki</td>
<td>what?, which (one)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-pl</td>
<td>amaki</td>
<td>what?, which (ones)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-sg</td>
<td>uguki</td>
<td>what?, which (one)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-pl</td>
<td>amaki</td>
<td>what?, which (ones)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10-loc</td>
<td>ahaki</td>
<td>what (place)?, which (place)?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 13.4. 'What kind or sort of?' (invariable /kì/)

There is an INvariable iNTERROGATIVE /kì/ {both} that follows a noun and is used to inquire about the type, characteristics, or origin of the person or item in question. Its head noun usually appears after a copulative (ni, si, ari, atari, etc.).

---

468 The southeastern dialect of Kirundi follows strong (C’Vki) vs. weak (Vki) tonality. To reflect this, all of the forms in Cristini 2000:88 should have had the little stick rather than the grave accent. We are grateful to Juvenal Ndayiragije (pc) for pointing out this typographical error with tonal implications.
Chapter 13: Interrogatives and Question Words

/\'ni mutí kí/? [both] 'What sort of medicine is it?' (Overdulve 1975:233, Hands 1952:263, JN)
/\'ni kiintu kí/? [both] 'What kind of thing is it?' (Overdulve 1975:233, JN)
«Mbes' iki ni giti ki\' [86x678]?» [both] 'What sort of tree is this?' (Hands 1952:189, JN)
«Mbese Gakeri ni muntu ki\'?» [Rwanda] What sort of person is Gakeri? (what is he like, what is wrong with him?) (Hands 1952:191)
/\'ga\'are kí/? [Rwanda] 'What kind of bicycle?' (Overdulve 1975:233)

13.5. 'Which (of two or several)?' (-:he)

The root /-:he/ [both] is an ENUMERATIVE INTERROGATIVE in that it implies what?, which? (of several possibilities).470 It is fully inflected for all major noun groups and has both preposed and postposed forms (see Table 131). There are tonal differences between the two dialects throughout: Rundi forms have two high tones (1rule + Rrule) while Rwanda have but one (Mrule). When this interrogative precedes a noun or follows a verb as its object, it is in its full form (any following noun is in its reduced form).

/\'uwúuhé mugabo/? [Rundi] (JN), /\'uwúhe mugabo/? [Rwanda] (Overdulve 1975:218) qw-n1-sg 'which man?'
/\'watábaawe n\'u\'uwúuhé muuntu/? [Rundi] qw-n1-sg-agent 'Which individual helped you out?' (Cristini 2000:135)
/\'abáahé bahuúngu/? [Rundi] qw-n1-pl 'which boys?' (Cristini 2000:135)
/\'uravúga abáahé/? [Rwanda] qw-n1-pl 'Which ones are you talking about?' (Bizimana 1998:194)
/\'uwúuuhé mutí/? [Rwanda] qw-n2-sg 'which medicine?' (LN)
/\'uyu mutí ni \'uwúuhé/? [Rwanda] qw-n2-sg 'That medicine, which one is it?' (Hurel 1959:59)
/\'ayáahé matá/? [Rwanda] qw-n3-pl 'which milk?' (Overdulve 1975:218)
/\'arı izúuba arı jye, ukuunda \'ikiíhe/? [Rwanda] qw-n1-pl 'Between me and Sun, whom do you love?' (R28.5)
/\'ushimye ijíihé/? [Rundi] qw-n4-pl 'Which ones do you prefer (books)'' (Ntahokaja 1994:103)
/\'iyiíhe nká/? [Rwanda] qw-n4-pl 'which milk?' (Overdulve 1975:218)
/\'matá yáahe?/ [Rwanda] (Oberdulve 1975:218) qw-n3-pl -red 'which milk?'
/\'umúnsi \'uwúuhé/? [Rundi] (Cristini 2000:134), /\'umuúsi \'uwúhe/? [Rwanda] (LN) qw-n2-sg-red 'which day?'
/\'amatá yáahe/? [Rwanda] qw-n3-pl -red 'which milk?' (Overdulve 1975:218)
/\'umuúsi \'uwúuhé/ [Rundi] (Cristini 2000:134) qw-n2-sg, /\'umuúsi wúuhé/ [Rwanda] (LN) qw-n2-sg-red 'which day?'
/\'inká ziíhe zirwaayé/? [Rwanda] (LN, JN) qw-n5-pl 'Which cows are sick?'
/\'wavúukiye mu kíihé gihúgu/? [Rundi] (Cristini 2000:135, JN), /\'wavúukiye mu kíihé gihúgu/ (LN) qw-n4-sg-red 'in which country were you born?'
/\'wavúukiye mu kíihé gihúgu/ [Rundi] (Cristini 2000:135, Rodegem 1967:28), /wavúukiye mu kíihé gihúgu/ [Rwanda] (LN) qw-n4-sg-red 'in which month are you born?'
/\'u\'nu wúunde ni giti ki\'? [both] 'What sort of tree is this?' (Hands 1952:189, JN)
«Mbese Gakeri ni muntu ki\'?» [Rwanda] What sort of person is Gakeri? (what is he like, what is wrong with him?) (Hands 1952:191)
/\'ga\'are kí/? [Rwanda] 'What kind of bicycle?' (Overdulve 1975:233)

For reduced forms, Kirundi and Kinyarwanda have a different distribution. In Rwanda, a short form follows the head noun and any conjunction or preposition; the Rundi short form is used exclusively after prepositions. Note that Rundi uses the full form either before or after the noun.

/nka wuuhé wúundi?/ [Rwanda] qw-n1-sg-red 'like who else?' (Bizimana 1998:194)
/\'umúisi wuuhe/ [Rundi] (Cristini 2000:134) qw-n2-sg, /\'umuúsi wúuhé/ [Rwanda] (LN) qw-n2-sg-red 'which day?'
/\'amatá yáahe/? [Rwanda] qw-n3-pl -red 'which milk?' (Overdulve 1975:218)
/\'imu bïihé bitabo/ [Rundi], /\'imu bïihé bitabo/ [Rwanda] qw-n4-pl-red 'in which books?'
/\'inká ziihe zirwaayé/ [Rwanda] (LN, JN) qw-n5-pl-red 'Which cows are sick?'
/\'wavúukiye mu kìihé gihúgu/ [Rwundi] (Cristini 2000:135, Rodegem 1967:28), /wavúukiye mu kìihé gihúgu/ [Rwanda] (LN) qw-n4-sg-red 'In which country were you born?'
/\'inká viihe/ [Rwanda] qw-n5-sg-red 'which cow?' (Overdulve 1975:218)
/\'mu kúuhé k\'wëezi/ [Rundi], /\'mu kiuhe kwëezi/ [Rwanda] qw-n9-sg-red 'in which month?'

Chapter 13: Interrogatives and Question Words

Table 13.1. ‘Which (of two or several)?’ (¬:hé)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>class</th>
<th>¬:hé [preposed]</th>
<th>Rwanda</th>
<th>¬:hé [postposed]</th>
<th>Rwanda after prep</th>
<th>following noun or after prep</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n1-sg</td>
<td>uwúuhé</td>
<td>uwúhe</td>
<td>wúuhé</td>
<td>wúuhe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1-pl</td>
<td>abáahé</td>
<td>abaáhe</td>
<td>báahé</td>
<td>báahe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-sg</td>
<td>uwúuhé</td>
<td>uwúhe</td>
<td>wúuhé</td>
<td>wúuhe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2-pl</td>
<td>iyíihé</td>
<td>iyíhe</td>
<td>yiíhé</td>
<td>yiíhe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-sg</td>
<td>iríihé</td>
<td>iríhe</td>
<td>riíhé</td>
<td>riíhe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3-pl</td>
<td>ayáahé</td>
<td>ayaáhe</td>
<td>yáahé</td>
<td>yáahe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-sg</td>
<td>ikiíhé</td>
<td>kiihé</td>
<td>kiihé</td>
<td>kiihe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4-pl</td>
<td>ibíihé</td>
<td>ibíhe</td>
<td>biíhé</td>
<td>biíhe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-sg</td>
<td>iyíihé</td>
<td>iyíhe</td>
<td>yiíhé</td>
<td>yiíhe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5-pl</td>
<td>izíihé</td>
<td>izíhe</td>
<td>ziíhé</td>
<td>ziíhe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-sg</td>
<td>urúuhé</td>
<td>urúhe</td>
<td>rúuhé</td>
<td>rúuhe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n6-pl</td>
<td>izíihé</td>
<td>izíhe</td>
<td>ziíhé</td>
<td>ziíhe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-sg</td>
<td>akáahé</td>
<td>akaáhe</td>
<td>káahé</td>
<td>káahe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n7-pl</td>
<td>utúuhé</td>
<td>utúhe</td>
<td>túuhé</td>
<td>túuhe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-sg</td>
<td>ubúuhé</td>
<td>ubuúhe</td>
<td>búuhé</td>
<td>búuhe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n8-pl</td>
<td>ayáahé</td>
<td>ayaáhe</td>
<td>yáahé</td>
<td>yáahe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-sg</td>
<td>ukúuhé</td>
<td>ukúhe</td>
<td>kúuhé</td>
<td>kúuhe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n9-pl</td>
<td>ayáahé</td>
<td>ayaáhe</td>
<td>yáahé</td>
<td>yáahe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n10-loc</td>
<td>aháahé</td>
<td>ahaáhe</td>
<td>háahé</td>
<td>háahe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class 17 loc</td>
<td>ukúuhé</td>
<td>ukúhe</td>
<td>kuúhe</td>
<td>kuúhe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13.6. ‘When?’ – Time Interrogative (ryáarí)

One inquires about time by means of an invariable TEMPORAL INTERROGATIVE /ryáarí/ {both} when? It always follows the verb and usually ends the sentence. The response to the question need not be as accurate or precise as it is in western society.471

/nooné uzookinzanira ryáarí/ {Rundi} ‘So when will you bring it to me?’ (Rodegem 1970:383)
/waguuye ryáarí/ {both} ‘When did you fall?’ (Overdulve 1975:144, JN)
/bazoogaruka ryáarí/ {Rundi}, /bazaagaruka ryáarí/ {JN} (Rwanda) (Overdulve 1975:144) ‘When will they come back?’
/arageenda ryáarí/ {both} ‘When will he leave?’ (Overdulve 1975:144, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:137, JN)
/yabikoze ryáarí/ {both} ‘When did he do it?’ (Overdulve 1975:248, JN)

An alternate means of asking about time is to use the noun /igihe/. Kinyarwanda uses the reduced form in the expression /igihe kí/, whereas Kirundi uses the full form /igihe kí/.

/ni igihe kí/ {Rundi} (JN), /ni gihe kí/ {Rwanda} (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:137) ‘What time is it?’
/waaje igihe kí/ {Rundi} (JN), /waaje gihe kí/ {Rwanda} (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:137) ‘At what time did you arrive?’
/abahíinzi baaruhuuka igihe kí/? {Rundi} (JN), /abahíinzi baaruhuuka gihe kí/? {Rwanda} (R28.2) ‘When would farmers rest?’

---


333
13.7. 'Where?' – Place Interrogatives (hé and héhé)

The form /hé/ is an invariable LOCATIVE INTERROGATIVE, which comes in the final position of its clause or sentence. For emphasis one can also use the reduplicated form /héhé?/.472

/ari hé?/ -or- /ari héhé?/ {both} 'Where is he?
/itaábi ryaáturutse hé?/ {Rwanda} 'Where did tobacco come from?' (R26)
/G.S.M. rwaanjé, uri hé?/ {Rundi} 'My cell phone, where are you?' (R7)
/itára ryaawe riri hé?/ {both} 'Where is your little lamp?' (Overdulve 1975:143, JN)
/wakiboonye hé?/ {both} 'Where did you find it (the spoon)?' (Overdulve 1975:144)
/nagishyize hé?/ {Rwanda} 'Where did I put it (the book)?' (Overdulve 1975:144)
/baabibiitse hé?/ {both} 'Where did you put them aside? (the things)' (Overdulve 1975:144)
/«Nka we se weguye ujya hé?» {Rwanda} 'Where are the likes of you are going?' (R28.1)
/ugiiye héhé?/ {both} 'Where are you going?' (Rodegem 1967:65, LN)
/biicaye héhé?/ {both} 'Where are they seated?' (Cristini 2000:259, LN)
/uri uwa héhé?/ {both} 'Where are you from?' (Cristini 2000:135, LN)

13.8. 'How much?, How many?' – Numerical Interrogative

A question word concerning number is formed from the NUMERAL INTERROGATIVE root /–ngáahé?/ which is generally inflected in the plural except for singulars used as mass nouns (see Table 132). If inquiring about QUANTITY it means how many?, if about COST it means how much? As with other interrogatives, it comes last in its phrase. Note that a number is required in the response.

/abasóre baangáahé?/ {both} qw-num-n1-pl 'How many young men?' (Cristini 2000:139, LN)
/ufise imyáaka ingáahé?/ {Rundi} (JN), /ufite myáaka ingáahé?/ {Rwanda} (Overdulve 1975:114)
/qw-num-n2-pl 'How old are you?' [lit. 'how many years have you?']
/itaábi riingáahé?/ {Rwanda} qw-num-n3-sg 'How much tobacco?' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:106)
/amafaraanga angáahé?/ {both} qw-num-n3-pl 'How many francs?' (Overdulve 1975:114, JN)
/uragura ibirago biingáahé?/ {both} qw-num-n4-pl 'How many mats are you buying?' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:106, JN)
/mutuunze inká ziingáahé?/ {both} qw-num-n5-pl 'How many cows do you have?' (Ntahokaja 1994:103, LN)
/utwáana tuungáahé?/ {both} qw-num-n7-pl 'how many children?' (Overduve & Jacob 1998:106, JN)
/har' uburyó bungáahé bwó kubikora?/ qw-num-n8-col {both} 'How many ways are there of doing it?' (Hands 1952:190, JN)
/amáato angáahé?/ {both} qw-num-n10-loc-pl 'how many canoes?' (Hurel 1959:122, JN)
/biri kuungáahé?/ {both} qw-num-n11-col 'Of how many kinds are they?' (Cristini 2000:140, JN)
/murya kaangáahé ku muunsí?/ {both} qw-num-adv 'How many times do you eat per day?' (Ntahokaja 1976:13, LN)

Table 132. Numerical Interrogatives (-ngáahé)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AGREEMENT</th>
<th>FORM</th>
<th>ENGLISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>qw-num-n1-pl</td>
<td>baangáahé</td>
<td>how many?, how much?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qw-num-n2-pl</td>
<td>ingáahé</td>
<td>how many?, how much?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qw-num-n3-sg/col</td>
<td>riingáahé</td>
<td>how many?, how much?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qw-num-n3-pl</td>
<td>angáahé</td>
<td>how many?, how much?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Chapter 13: Interrogatives and Question Words

| qw-num-n4-pl | biingáahé | how many?, how much? |
| qw-num-n5-pl | ziingáahé | how many?, how much? |
| qw-num-n6-pl | kaangáahé | how many?, how much? |
| qw-num-n7-pl | tuungáahé | how many?, how much? |
| qw-num-n8-pl | kuungáahé | how many?, how much? |
| qw-num-n9-pl | angáahé | how many?, how much? |
| qw-num-n10-loc | haangáahé | how many places? |
| qw-num-n11-adv | kuungáahé | how many types or kinds? |
| qw-num-adv | kaangáahé | how often?, how many times? |

13.9. 'How?' – Coverb (-té, Adverbial of Manner)

There is an INTERROGATIVE COVERB -té how? agreeing with the head verb\(^{474}\) (also see §10.1.3 and especially Table 114 for all noun group citations). The tonal distinction between WEAK and STRONG applies here; if the prefix is composed of a consonant, the tone falls on the prefix; if the prefix is composed of a vowel or nasal, the tone falls on /-té/.

/ŋiré nté/ {both} 'What should I do?' (Rodegem 1967:117)
/umeze uté/ {both}\(^{475}\) 'How do you feel?' (Overdulve 1975:140, JN)
/ndabikora nté/ {Rwanda} 'How am I going to do it' (Overdulve 1975:140)
«Gacaca ya Gihanga yari iteye ite?» {both} 'How was Gihanga's Gacaca?' (R40.0, JN)
«icyo kiganîro cyari kimeze gite?» {Rwanda} How did that conversation go? (R40.3)

Note that forms of /-té/, especially /bíte?/ can be used alone; the action of the head verb is then understood from context.

/barabikora/ ... /bíte?/ {both} 'They will do it.' ... 'How?' (Overdulve 1975:141, JN)
/ni bíte?/ {both} 'What's going on?' (said by one person to another person who is approaching) (Overdulve 1975:141, JN)
/bíte?/ {both} 'What happened?' (e.g., if one sees some spilled milk) (Overdulve 1975:141, JN)

13.10. 'Why?' – Reason Interrogative

The invariable interrogative /iki/ {both} What? (§13.3 ABOVE) can also have the sense of Why?
«ni kubera iki isukari iguma itaboneka?» {Rundi} 'Why does sugar continue to be unavailable?'
(R33.5)
/umyankira iki?/ {Rundi} 'Why do you hate me?' (Cristini 2000:314)
/yagukubitiye iki?/ {both} 'Why did he hit you?' (LN)

Another simple means of asking why? is with the COPULATIVE PHRASE /ni kuki/ {both}.
\(^{476}\)
/yagiiye ku mutwaâre ... ni kuki/ {both} 'He went to the chief. ... Why?' (Cristini 2000:314, LN)
/umukózi yataashye isáah'ëshaanu/ ... /(ni) kuki?/ {Rwanda} 'The worker came back home at 11:00.'
... 'Why?' (Overdulve 1975:163)
/ejó sinzáaza gukorá/ ... /(ni) kuki?/ {Rwanda} 'Tomorrow I will not come to work. ... Why (not),'
(Overdulve 1975:163)


\(^{475}\) The Kirundi forms cited in Rodegem 1967:78, 117 /umeze uúte/ may be dialectal, but are not standard Rundi according to Juvenal Ndairagije (pc).

\(^{476}\) For Kinyarwanda, see Overdulve 1975:163; and for Kirundi, see Cristini 2000:214.
In asking further and including an additional clause, this construction is followed by a relative.

/ni kuki hajyá hávugwa inzara?/ {Rwanda} v-aux-rel-imm-impf+v-part-imm-impf-pass ‘How can it be that there is sometimes talk about famine?’ (R32)

/ni kuki ’útaáje?/ {both} v-rel-neg-pret-perf ‘Why didn’t you come?’ (LN)

/ni kuki yaraakáye?/ {both} v-rel-aff-recent-perf ‘Why was he angry?’ (Overdulve 1975:163, JN)

/ni kuki watubeéshe?/ {Rwanda} v-rel-aff-recent-perf ‘Why didn’t you do it?’ (Overdulve 1975:163, JN)

/ni kuki utabikóze?/ {both} v-rel-neg-recent-perf ‘Why didn’t you do it?’ (Overdulve 1975:163)

/ni kuki mudahagúruka?/ {both} v-rel-neg-imm-impf ‘Why don’t you get up?’ (Overdulve 1975:163)

There is a more complex INTERROGATIVE OF REASON that involves a compound expression: the copulative ni + the invariable interrogative /iki/ what? + the verb /-túma/ be the cause of inflected in N4-SG RELATIVE (gi-, c-aa- or cy-aa-, etc.) [lit. ‘It is what that is the cause?’]. The tense of the verb must match the time period of the question, and the subsequent clause is in the participial mood.

/n’iiki gitumá atáaha vubá/ {both} v-rel-aff-imm-impf+v-part-aff-imm-impf ‘Why is he going back home quickly?’ [lit. ‘It is what that made sure he always comes back quickly?’] (Overdulve 1975:161,163; cf: Cristini 2000:314)


/n’iiki caatumyé utabikóze?/ {Rwanda} v-rel-aff-recent-perf+v-part-aff-imm-impf ‘Why did you lie to us?’ (Overdulve 1975:161)

/n’iiki cyaatumyé ukúbita umwáana/ {Rundi} v-rel-aff-imperfect+v-part-aff-imm-impf ‘Why did you hit the child?’ (Cristini 2000:314)

/n’iiki gitumá múdahiingá?/ {Rwanda} v-rel-aff-imm-impf+v-part-neg-imm ‘Why aren’t you cultivating?’ (Overdulve 1975:162)

/n’iiki gitumá múdakorá?/ {both} v-rel-aff-imm-perf+v-part-neg-imm ‘Why aren’t you working?’ (Overdulve 1975:162)

/n’iiki cyaatumyé mútageendá nóone?/ {Rwanda} v-rel-aff-recent-perf+v-part-neg-imm ‘Why didn’t you leave today?’ (Overdulve 1975:162)

Overdulve illustrates some subtle differences and implications between the various means of asking why? in Kinyarwanda. Juvenal Ndayiragije has kindly supplied parallel Kirundi examples.

/kuki uraakára?/ {both} ‘Why are you getting angry? (you have no reason to get angry.)’ (Overdulve 1975:163, JN)

/n’iiki gitumá uráakara?/ {both} ‘What makes you angry? (perhaps you have a reason for getting angry that I am unaware of)’ (Overdulve 1975:163, JN)

/ni kuki dufisé ikiruhuuko?/ {Rundi} (JN), /ni kuki dufité ikiruhuuko?/ {Rwanda} (Overdulve 1975:163) ‘Why are we having a day off?’ (there is a vacation, what’s the meaning of this? there is a certain irritation being expressed in regard to this unnecessary vacation)

/n’iiki gitumá tugira ikiruhuuko?/ {Rundi} (JN), /n’iiki gitumá dúfite ikiruhuuko?/ (Overdulve 1975:163) ‘What is the reason for this vacation we have?’ (one wants to know the real reason for this vacation)

There is an alternative expression using /ni có gitúma/ {Rundi}, /ni cyó gitumá/ {Rwanda} (and appropriate temporal alternates) instead of /n’iiki gitumá/ {both}.

/bararwáaye ni có gitumá badakorá?/ {Rundi} (JN), /bararwáaye ni cyó gitumá bádakorá/ {Rwanda} (Overdulve 1975:155) ‘They are sick, which is why they aren’t working.’

«Ubwiza bw’umubiri bagaragazwa n’izuba, ariko umutima witonda ukagaragazwa n’umwiyimá ni cyó gi tumá bamwe barata ubwiza ku manywa, mu ijoro bagakora bupiyi.» {Rwanda} ‘The beauty of the body is revealed by the Sun, then again, a good heart is revealed by Darkness, which is why some people pay lip-service to beauty by day, but by night they behave like jackals.’ (R28.10)

477 Additional discussion and exemplification can be found for Kinyarwanda in Overdulve 1975:161-162, (less so Hands 1952:166 concerning adverbial clauses of reason), and for Kirundi in Cristini 2000:314.
Note that /ni kuki?/ may be used as an independent sentence; in this case it represents a reaction to something mentioned previously. Since expressions with /-túma/ demand a complement, they are excluded as short answers.
Chapter 14: Interjections

14. INTERJECTIONS

An interjection is a call or outcry made by a speaker, expressing his or her attitude or personal reaction to something which has arisen. They are of two kinds: those used independently and those used with other words to form a phrase. Furthermore, they can be pure forms (ashwi, pe, yee), they can be derived from verbs (bwaakéeye, have) or from other parts of speech (daáta, maáma). Review the discussions on VOCATIVE NOUNS (§3.6.5) and VOCATIVE PRONOUNS (§4.7) as well as EXCLAMATIVE VERBS (G§8.11), which also function as interjections. Several NEGATIVE INTERJECTIONS have been discussed and exemplified in §9.5.

14.1. Independent Interjections

The following are interjections which can be used alone, i.e., they can be a complete utterance.

/ahoó/ [Rwanda] intj ‘So there!, That's it! (R28.7)
/ashwi/ [both] intj-neg 'No! not at all! absolutely not! never!'
/hoobé/ [both] intj 'Hey!' (affectionate greeting after not seeing one another for some time)
/oya/ [Rundi], /oyá/ [Rwanda] intj-neg 'No'
/eegó/ [Rundi] intj ‘Yes' (R27.4)
/yee/ or /yeego/ [both] intj ‘Yes' [positive answer to a question]
/yóóroro/ [both] ‘Ouch!' (cry of pain)

These independent interjections are clearly derived from other parts of speech.

/bwaakéeye/ [both] v-ind-recent-perf ‘Good morning!' [lit: 'it has dawned']
/daáta/ [both] nla-sg-voc 'Oh my goodness!' [astonishment]; 'yes indeed!' [agreement] (R27.5)
/Cf: /da/ [both] ‘Surely!, so then!' [used by males to indicate astonishment]
/eémwe/ [both] intj-pro-2pl ‘What!, Ha! [astonishment]
/have/ [both] v-imp ‘Go away!, Get out!; Stop it! (Bizimana 1998:208f, Cristini 2000:201)
/kuu máana/ [both] n5-sg-loc ‘So long; Good bye!' [lit. 'to God']
/maáma/ [both] n1a-sg-voc ‘Oh my goodness!' [indicating astonishment]
/mwaaramutse/ [both] v-ind-recent-perf ‘Good morning!, Good day!, Hello'
/mwiíriwe/ [both] v-ind-recent-perf ‘Good afternoon!, Good evening!'

14.2. Dependent Interjections

The following interjections can be characterized as dependent, because they are tied to other words within a phrase.

/de/ [both] intj ‘Oh how white!, Wow, how bright! [for white or clear things] (ALO:224, GSN:197)
/kwééra de/ [Rundi], /kééra de/ [Rwanda] ‘Oh how very white!'
/endá/ [both] intj 'Please, If you please; If possible [used to soften a command] (R27.2)
/hoshi/ [both] intj ‘Scram!, Be off with you!, Get out!' [used with an imperative verb, considered rude]
/hoshi géenda/ [both] ‘Go away!' (R28.4)
/ihibaambéewé/ [Rundi] intj ‘no, oh no!, alas!'
/« wa mugabo ati: ihibaambéewé ntundya ngutabaye» [Rundi] 'That man says: "Oh no, don't you eat me after I helped you out."
/mbeé/ [both] intj ‘Oh! hey!' [used with reduced noun forms] (see §3.6.5)
/ngaaho/ [both] intj ‘That's all!, That's enough!' (R27.3)
/mbeéga/ [both] intj ‘Wow!, ha!, what!' [surprise or astonishment]
/mbeéga ihyiishiimo/ [Rwanda] ‘Wow, what a joy!' (Jacob 1986 #2:342)
/nuuko/ [both] cop-expr = intj ‘So then, All right, Good!'
Chapter 14: Interjections

/nuuko ni vyizá/ [Rundi], /nuuko ni byiizá/ [Rwanda] 'Well then, that's great!'
/nyaábuna/ {both} intj 'come on!, for mercy's sake!' (R27.3, R37#6)
«Ngaho nyabuna nguswage na none yariko irampara!» [Rundi] 'That's it! I might as well kill you; anyway I've been starving!' (R27.3)
/nyaábuna nímuuntabáare/ [Rundi] (JN), /nyaábuna nímuuntábaare/ [Rwanda] (Jacob 1986 #2:433) 'For God's sake, please help me!'
/pé/ {both} intj 'very, great, extremely, completely'
/imódoká yaawe yarapfúuye rwóose pe/ 'Your car is a total wreck!' (Overduulse 1975:225)
/yohaána agira ubwéenge pe pe pe/ 'John is extremely crafty!' (Overduulse 1975:225)
/shaáhu/ {both} intj 'My dear friend!, Oh old friend'
«ariko shaalu uribona» 'But, my dear friend, you are arrogant!' (R27.3)
/shyuu/ [Rwanda] intj 'Haaa?, how come?, why do you say that? [disagreement or disbelief]' (R28.2&7)
«umwijima uti "shyuu! ibyo uvuze Zuba ubitewe n’iki» 'Darkness says: "Haaa! What caused you, Sun, to say that?"' (R28.2)
/ye/ {both} intj 'indeed, surely'
/yeego ye/ {both} intj-emph 'Yes indeed!, But of course!' [emphatic affirmation]
/eegóye/ {both} intj-emph 'Yes indeed!, No doubt!' [emphatic affirmation]
Chapter 15: Ideophones

15. IDEOPHONES

IDEOPHONES are an important part-of-speech in the Bantu language family. They share certain features with VERBS (in that they predicate actions, sounds, or states), with ADVERBS (in that they are often attributive), and with INTERJECTIONS (in that they emphasize or add color to discourse, similar to English *boing!*, *splat!*, *plop!*, or *thwack!*). In Rwanda-Rundi they appear to be limited in number. They are also found in other language families around the world, where they have been called PHONESTHEMES or DISCOURSE VERBS. The primary difference between an interjection and an ideophone is that an interjection expresses a speaker's reaction to a situation or an event, whereas an ideophone imitates the event, sound, or color itself (as if it were speaking).

They are widely used in colloquial speech (conversations) and in narratives (e.g., folktales and stories). Many serve as roots upon which verbs or other parts of speech are built.

- **/cwe/** {both} 'hush! (imitation of the "sound" of sudden silence)
  - Cf: /-cwéékeera/ v-intr 'diminish (of noise); go out, be about to die (of fire)' {Rwanda}; 'be lazy' {Rundi}
- **/duumbagu/** {Rundi} 'kerplunk! (imitation of the sound of s.t. falling into water)'
  - Cf: /-duumbab/ {Rundi} v-tr 'plunge s.t. into a liquid; drop s.t. into water'
- **/duumburi/** {Rwanda} 'kerplunk! (imitation of the sound of s.t. falling into water)'
  - Cf: /-duumbura/ {Rwanda} v-tr 'throw s.t. into a liquid; drop s.t. into water' (Kimenyi website:18)
- **/jwíí/** {Rwanda} 'chirp!, squeak!, peep! (imitation of the high-pitched sound of a rodent or small bird)'
  - Cf: /– jwíígiira/ {both} v-intr 'chirp, squeak, twitter, emit a shrill or high-pitched sound (as a rodent, small animal, or bird)'
- **/pya/** {both} 'bang!, wham!, crack! (imitation of the sound of a sudden strike)'
  - Cf: /-pyátáura/ {Rwanda} v-tr 'hit s.t. with full force (as lightning); slap, hit s.o. strongly and suddenly (as with the palm of one's hand)'
- **/tukutuku/** {both} 'very red'
  - Cf: /– tukura/ {both} 'be red, reddened, blush'
- **/vútú/** {both} 'smack!, crack!, snap! (imitation of the sound of a sudden hit)'
  - Cf: /– vútura/ {both} 'hit s.o. or s.t. suddenly, give a smack to'

They usually occur as a complement after a quote verb, either the invariable quotative particle *ngo* or an appropriate form of the quotative coverb -tí (see §10.1.1).

- **/mbaa/** {both} 'moo!' (imitation of the sound of a cow)
  - Cf: /ínka /iti mbaa/ {both} 'A cow goes moo.'
- **/bwii/** {Rwanda} (imitation of the sound of a flatulence or passing gas)
  - Cf: /umusuzi uracumá ngo bwii/ {Rwanda} 'gas escapes him with a fart' (R14)
- **/dudududu/** {Rwanda} 'gush!, gunk!' (imitation of the sound of liquid flowing rapidly from a container with a small mouth, as wine from a bottle)
  - Cf: /– dudubiza/ {both} 'gush out'

---


480 Coupez (1980:461f) suggests that there are approximately 80 in Kinyarwanda, not counting lexical variations, in the dictionary of 1979. On the other hand, Kimenyi treats over 200 in an article on his website. Rodegem (1970:627f) presents a total of 78 qualifying forms for Kirundi of which 31 are ideophones and 47 are onomatopoeas.
Chapter 15: Ideophones

/bóose baashiimye ibikino amashyi ngo papapapa/ [Rwanda] 'Everyone praised the games and clapped their hands bravo, bravo!' (Overdulve 1975:247)

/umugozí ngo vutú/ {both} 'and, smack, the rope broke' [See /vutú/ ABOVE]

/ngo togotogo/ [Rwanda] 'bubble!, bubble!' (imitation of the sound of s.t. boiling)

Cf: /-togota/ {both} 'boil'

English equivalents would often be introduced by the phrase "It went ..." or "VERBed with a(n) ...," e.g.,

I saw a hungry cat, it went 'meow.'
The vase dropped; it went 'craaaaaasssh.'
The safe dropped with a thud.
The dog ran off with a yelp.

However, note that an ideophone can occur alone, where its function would justify the label of DISCOURSE VERB (i.e., an interjective verb, which is invariable or uninflected).

Ideophones are the only part of speech where TRIPLICATION can occur (not just REDUPLICATION, see §2.5.17).

/kacikacikaci/ [Rwanda] (sound of applause or clapping) (Bizimana 1998:219, Overdulve & Jacob 1998:304)

/kogoco kogoco kogoco/ [Rwanda] (sound of chewing) (Gusoma 6:37)

/kwe/ {both} (JN, Jacob 1986 #2:320), /kwekwe/ (Rodegem 1970:254), /kwekwekwe/ (Rodegem 1970:627) {Rundi} 'ha! ha! ha!' (sound of laughter)

/diridiridiri/ {Rundi} (Rodegem 1970:627), /diridiri/ [Rwanda] (Jacob 1984 #1:241) (sound of footsteps)

Some ideophones employ sounds that are not part of the usual Rwanda or Rundi system, akin to English tsk! (a click sound used to express sympathy or disappointment). Consult Bizimana 1998:220–2 for these details and additional discussion and exemplification.
16. WORD ORDER

Word order involves the usual placement of words in a phrase or sentence. English and most Bantu languages are similar in that they place the SUBJECT first, followed by the VERB, and then the OBJECT or other complements. Linguists refer to this phenomenon as SVO [subject – verb – object], because there are languages where, for example, VSO is the norm. However, the similarity seems to stop there. Within a given phrase, the order of nouns and the words that go with them is drastically different between English and Bantu languages.

16.1. Word Order within Phrases (Nouns and Other Elements)

While English tends to put modifiers (possessives, numerals, and adjectives) ahead of a noun (LEFT-BRANCHING), Kirundi and Kinyarwanda put them after (RIGHT-BRANCHING). The head noun in Bantu is always the first in several different kinds of constructions.

16.1.1. Word Order of Possessive Constructions

The POSSESSED noun always comes first in Kirundi and Kinyarwanda, followed by the POSSESSIVE MARKER, which agrees with the head noun in class and number (see §3.6.3), and finally the POSSESSOR. When English uses the possessive case (apostrophe s), the possessor comes first, e.g., Paul’s wife; when English can use the preposition of, then the word order is similar to that of Bantu, e.g., a wife of Paul.

- [N + poss-N]
  /ighúgu c’úbuyápaáni/ [Rundi] n4-sg-poss-n8-sg ‘Japan’ [lit. ‘country of Japan’] (R37.4)
  /inkómooko y’itaábi/ [both] n5-sg-poss-n3-sg ‘the origin of tobacco’ (R26.2)
  /urubare rw’úmujuumbu/ [Rundi] n6-sg-poss-n2-sg ‘a very thin copper wire’ [lit. ‘very thin wire of copper’] (R5)
  /akuuko k’igití/ [Rwanda] n7-sg-poss-n4-sg ‘a wooden spatula’ [lit. ‘spatula of wood’] (R18)
  /ubumwé bw’úburuúndi/ [both] n8-sg-poss-n8-sg ‘the unity of Burundi’ or ‘Burundi’s unity’ (R3)

If an adjective or numeral appears, it precedes the possessive noun phrase.

- [N + Adj / Num + poss-N]
  /baánki nkurú y’ighúgu/ [both] adj-n5-sg ‘the Central Bank’ [lit. ‘bank main of the country’] (R2)
  /mu minotá iriindwi yaa nyuma/ [Rwanda] num-n2-pl ‘during the final seven minutes’ (R30.1)
  /itoóni icúmi na zíbiri z’ímbúto ya sojá/ [Rundi] num-expr-n5-pl ‘twelve tons of soya seeds’ (R9)

However, a possessive pronoun immediately follows a noun, with adjectives following them.

- [N + poss-pro + Adj]
  /n’uumwáana wiíwe bwíitë/ [Rundi] ‘It is his own child.’ (Cristini 2000:113)
  /abáana báabo babí barahíinga/ [Rwanda] ‘Their bad children are plowing.’ (Overdulve 1975:48)

16.1.2. Word Order of Adjective Constructions

Adjectives always follow the noun they modify (see §6.1), whereas in English, they precede them.

- [N + Adj]
  /abáana báabo babí barahíinga/ [Rwanda] ‘Their bad children are plowing.’ (Overdulve 1975:48)
Adjectives used adverbially follow the verb they modify.

/ukazikatakata dutóodutó/ {both} adj-n7-pl-redup 'Then you cut them into very small pieces.' (R18)

/uramenya yíyikóucá rubí (urubaánza) nkakúrya/ {Rundi} 'You'd better know that if you arbitrate badly, I'll eat you.' (R18)

/ní'útuúndi dupfuuyé naabí/ {both} adv '... and other matters that are not important.' (R19)

16.1.3. Word Order of Numeral Constructions

Numeral expressions (see §7), no matter how long, always follow the head noun.

• [N + Num]
  /ibisagára bibiri/ {Rundi} 'two cities' (R37.4)
  /indwi zibiri cáaké zitatu/ {Rundi} 'two or three weeks' (R31.3)
  /ndagúha abagabo batatu/ [both] 'I will give you three witnesses.' (R28.3)
  /kugeza byíiburá ku méezi atandátu/ {Rwanda} 'up to at least six months' (R6)
  /amafaraanga amajana abiri ku kiró/ {Rundi} 'two hundred francs per kilo' (R35.2)
  /unzaníre amafaraanga ibihuumbi bibiri/ [both] 'You should bring me two thousand francs.'

• [N + Num + V-rel]
  /ku bíbüga hitatu bitaandúkaanye/ {Rundi} (JN), /ku bíbüga hitatu bitaandúkanye/ {Rwanda} (R30.2) 'on three different (soccer) fields'

Ordinal numerals (see §7.2) are preceded by possessive markers.

• [N + poss + Num-ord]
  /iki kinjana ca 20/ {Rundi} (R37.4), /iki kinyeejana cyaa 20/ {Rwanda} (LN) 'this twentieth century'
  /ingwaano yaa mbere n'iíya kábiri z'iiisí yöøse/ {Rundi} (R37.4), /intaambara yaa mbere n'iíya kábiri z'iiisí yöøse/ {Rwanda} (LN) 'World War I and World War II'

Numerals used adverbially generally follow the verb they modify.

• [V + Num]
  /yamukubise rimwé/ {both} 'He hit him once.'
  /amaze kunyera káne kuri ilyo boomba/ {Rundi} 'She has already slipped at that pump four times.' (R23)

When numeral expressions co-occur with adjectives or other attributive constructions, the word order seems to be freer, as in the first two bulleted items.
Chapter 16: Word Order

• [N + Num + Adj]
  /abaana babiri bató/ {both} num-n1-pl 'two young children' (LN)
  /ibitabo bitatu biníni/ {both} num-n4-pl 'three large books' (LN, JN)
  /inoóti eshaanu nshyaáshya/ {Rwanda} num-n5-pl 'five brand new banknotes' (LN)
  /intébe enyé ntóoyá/ {both} num-n5-pl 'four small chairs' (LN)

• [N + Adj + Num]
  /abaana bató babiri/ {both} num-n1-pl 'two young children' (LN)
  /ibitabo biníni bitatu/ {both} num-n4-pl 'three large books' (LN, JN)
  /inoóti nshyaáshya eshaanu/ {Rwanda} num-n5-pl 'five brand new banknotes' (LN)
  /intébe ntóoyá enyé/ {both} num-n5-pl 'four small chairs' (LN)

16.1.4. Word Order of Locative Constructions

Locative expressions (see §3.6.4) are marked by the PREPOSITIONS481 /, [both] prep-n13-loc (see §3.6.4.1), /mu, (muu, mw', muri)/ [both] prep-n12-loc (see §3.6.4.2), /ku, (kuu, kw', k', kuri)/ [both] prep-n11-loc (see §3.6.4.3), or /kwaal/ [both] prep-n11-loc-poss (see §3.6.4.4). As the name implies, prepositions come before the noun. Note that all forms are low toned and do not influence the tonality of the following noun. A locative construction stands in place of or in addition to an object (see §16.2 below).

• Loc-prep + N
  /yavúukiye i Gitéga/ {both} 'She was born in Gitega.'
  /nibwó ahiítwa "Innocenti" hó mu Butaliyaáni/ {both} 'This is when in a place called "Innocenti" in Italy ...' (R6)
  «ari nawe witiriwe uburozi buba mu itabi bwitwa Nikotini» {both} '... after whom the active ingredient in tobacco, called nicotine, was named.' (R26.2)
  «ryabanje mu Burayi rizanywe n'abazungu b'abasipanyoro» {both} 'It was first brought to Europe by Spaniards.' (R26.2)
  /itaábi ní igití kibarírwa mu bivóbyabwéenge/ [Rwanda] 'Tobacco is a plant which is counted among drugs.' (R26.1)
  /uwaámpa ijaambo muu náama y'ábamíniisítiri/ [Rwanda] 'If someone let me speak at a ministerial meeting ...' (R32)
  /yahiinduye igisaámbu cyé mw úmurimá/ [Rwanda] 'He changed his arid terrain into a tillable field.' (Overdulve 1975:281)
  /twáábaaye intwáari ku rugaámba/ {both} 'We have been valiant warriors on the battlefield.' (Bizimana 1998:347)
  /ubiteeka ku muriro muké/ {both} 'You cook them on low heat.' (R18, JN)

There are also locative expressions where the verb is marked by corresponding POSTPOSITIONS /–mó/, /–mú/– [Rwanda], /–muó/– [Rundi], /–hó/– [both], /–hú/– [both], /–kó/– [Rundi], /–yó/– [both], /–yú/– [Rwanda]. Note that these are linked to the verb and all have high tone.

These serve three completely separate functions. The first is when there is no following object or locative; the complement has already been stated, is clearly understood from context, or is part of the idiom of the verb.

• V-loc-post
  /yiinjiye mó/ [Rwanda] 'He went in.' (Overdulve 1975:216)
  cf: /yiinjiye muu nu/ [both] 'He went into the house.' (Overdulve 1975:216)

481 Overdulve 1975:318 remarks: "locatives of the form ha, ku, and mu, the predicative ntaa, the type 6 demonstrative pronoun [our Form 5 deictic, see §5.5]; the prefixal pronoun [our plural forms for nla baa- (§3.2.1a) and n5b zaa- (§3.2.5a)], and the interrogative pronoun [our vocative pronouns §2.4.10, §3.6.5.2, §4.7] must be treated as forming part of the following word."
Chapter 16: Word Order

/amatégeko abajuura banyura hó ni meénsi/ [Rwanda] 'The laws that thieves violate are numerous.'
(Overdulve 1975:214)
cf: /abajura banyura ku matégeko/ [Rwanda] 'The thieves violate the law.' (Overdulve 1975:214)
/si bó bayituúymó bónynié/ [Rwanda] 'They are not the only ones to live in it.' (R38.11)
/inzu batuuyé mó ni niiziá/ [Rwanda] 'The house they live in is beautiful.' (Overdulve 1975:214)
/muu nzu yó gutàambiramwó/ [Rundi] 'in a nightclub' [lit. 'in a house for dancing in'] (R7)
/ikinikwa mu mazi bityo isumu iyibamo ikabanza kuvamó/ [Rwanda] '... and they are immersed in water in that way their toxin within is first drawn out.' (R20)
/nabishyize hó/ [Rwanda] 'I placed them there.' [i.e., /ku méeza/ 'on the table'] (LN)
/akora yó/ [both] 'He works somewhere there.' (LN)
/i gitéga tubayó/ [Rundi] 'In Gitega where we live.' (Cristini 2000:273), 'In Gitega we live there.' (JN)
/yadínduye amáazi mó divaayi/ [Rwanda] 'He turned water into wine.' (LN)
/ntaa ndwi yahéra adáshooyé mwó kimvé/ [Rundi] 'There wasn't a week that passed without him taking to market one among them (livestock).' (R25.2)
/ugashyiramó ibitúungurú/ [Rwanda] 'Then you put in the onions.' (R18)
/yari umununtu yiitágh umwuuga/ [Rundi] 'She was a person who cared for her profession.' (R17.7)
/ucaaníyehó akaambi/ [Rwanda] 'If you light a match to it ...' (R24)

The second is when the object or other complement is stated. The postposition comes after the verb in order to stress or FOCUS on the closeness or importance of that complement.

• V-loc-post + O
/yahiinduye amáazi mó divaayi/ [Rwanda] 'He turned water into wine.' (LN)
/ntaa ndwi yahéra adáshooyé mwó kimvé/ [Rundi] 'There wasn't a week that passed without him taking to market one among them (livestock).' (R25.2)

When the following nominal begins with a vowel, the final ó changes to w and is usually written conjunctively with the noun (with or without an apostrophe), but the postposition technically belongs to the verb as the high tone on the first mora indicates. Furthermore, the noun following a postposition is in its FULL FORM, whereas after a preposition, the noun is in its REDUCED FORM.

/baamwoohereje hw'intumwá/ [Rwanda] 'They sent him in the capacity of messenger.' (Overdulve 1975:281)
/araandika hw'iyizina/ [Rwanda] 'He is writing a name on it.' (Kimenyi 2002:142)
/mboonye mw'íibiri/ [Rwanda] 'I just find two in there.' (Bizimana 1998:189)
/hari mwáamáazi/ [both] 'There is water in it.' (Kimenyi 2002:142)
/yoohereje y'imbwa/ [Rwanda] 'He sent dogs there.' (Kimenyi 2002:142)

Finally, these postpositions appear in certain instances of REVERSAL (see §16.3.6 below) where the subject is postponed.

• O + V-loc-post + S
/amabáhashá arímó ibicíiro/ [Rundi] (R9), /amabáhashá arímó ibicíiro/ [Rwanda] (LN)

'envelopes in which are prices'
cf: /ibicíiro birí mu mabáhashá/ [both] 'prices which are in envelopes' (LN)
/urugó ruri mwó abáana/ [Rundi], /urugó ruri mó abáana/ [Rwanda] 'The enclosure there are in it some children.' (Overdulve 1975:216)
cf: /abáana bari mu rugó/ [both] 'The children are in the enclosure.' (Overdulve 1975:216)
/abatuúrage baaza mwó umunyámahaánga/ [Rundi], /abatuúrage baaza mó umunyámahaánga/ [Rwanda] 'Among the inhabitants comes a stranger.' (Overdulve 1975:216)
cf: /umunyámahaánga aza mu batuúrage/ [Rwanda] 'A stranger comes among the inhabitants.' (Ibid)
/urugó ruri kó abáana/ [Rundi], /urugó ruri hó abáana/ [Rwanda] 'The enclosure which guards the children.' (Overdulve 1975:216)
cf: /abáana bari ku rugó/ [Rwanda] 'The children are guarding the enclosure.' (Ibid)
/harihó ubukené bwiínshi mu rwanda/ [both] 'There is a great deal of poverty in Rwanda.' (Hands 1952:85, LN)

482 Note that the verb will be CONJOINT, never disjoint (see Overdulve 1975:216).

345


Chapter 16: Word Order

/naajyaana/má agapapuro kaandítseho ingiingo imwé/ {Rwanda} 'I would take in there a small piece of paper on which is written a single issue.' (R32)

See §16.3.5 BELOW concerning constructions where the locative comes first in a sentence.

16.2. Standard Word Order within Sentences [SVO]

Linguists speak of the typology of a language. One of the main such distinguishing features is the order of words or phrases within a typical sentence. English and Bantu languages both have an unmarked sentence order of SUBJECT – VERB – OBJECT, abbreviated SVO. Object here refers to a whole range of complements such as locatives, adverbs, predicates, not just a direct or indirect object. The complement of a verb to be (ní, –rí, –bá) is, broadly speaking, its object (more accurately a PREDICATE COMPLEMENT).

• S + V + O
  /[S] umugabo [V] yabwiýe [O] umwáana wiwé/.../ {Rundi} 'A man told his son...' (R1)
  /[S] impanuka ya biisi [V] yoóretse [O] imbagá/ {Rwanda} 'A bus accident killed many.' (R16)
  /[S] ikibázo c'ísúkaári [V] kirasinga [O] ubwéenge/ {Rundi} 'The sugar problem defies reason.' (R33)
  /[S] gisaabo [V] yaámbaye [O] ibisáanzwe/ {both} 'Gisabo wore casual attire.' (R5)
  /[S] itaábi [V] ní [O] igítí kiharírwa mu bíóbyabwéenge/ {Rwanda} 'Tobacco is a plant which is counted among drugs.' (R26.1)
  /[S] umugóre [V] akorana [O] agahuúngu ké/ {both} 'The woman works with her baby (on her back).' (Overdulve 1975:212)
  /[S] umugabo [V] arakóraná [O-assoc] n'umuhuúngu wé/ {both} 'The man works (together) with his son.' (Overdulve 1975:212)

Of course, if the subject has already been mentioned or specified, or it is a first or second person pronoun, it will be incorporated into the verb:

• S-V + O
  /[S] umugabo [V] yabwiýe [O] umwáana wiwé/.../ {Rundi} 'A man told his son...' (R1)
  /[S] impanuka ya biisi [V] yoóretse [O] imbagá/ {Rwanda} 'A bus accident killed many.' (R16)
  /[S] ikibázo c'ísúkaári [V] kirasinga [O] ubwéenge/ {Rundi} 'The sugar problem defies reason.' (R33)
  /[S] gisaabo [V] yaámbaye [O] ibisáanzwe/ {both} 'Gisabo wore casual attire.' (R5)
  /[S] itaábi [V] ní [O] igítí kiharírwa mu bíóbyabwéenge/ {Rwanda} 'Tobacco is a plant which is counted among drugs.' (R26.1)
  /[S] umugóre [V] akorana [O] agahuúngu ké/ {both} 'The woman works with her baby (on her back).' (Overdulve 1975:212)

Several verbs, especially those with augments (see §8.14) can take TWO OBJECTS (they are DITRANSITIVE) or even THREE OBJECTS (TRITRANSITIVE). Refer to the discussion of multiple objects in §4.3. While some constructions presented in grammar books with three or four objects are logically possible, they do not usually occur in actual speech.

• S + V + O1 + O2
  /[S] asaba [O1] umugaangá [O2] umuti/ {both} 'He asks the doctor for medicine.' (Overdulve 1975:283)
  /[S] asabira [O1] umurwáayí [O2] umuti/ {both} 'He asks for a remedy for the patient.' (Overdulve 1975:283)
  /[S] arusha [O1] mukúru wé [O2] ubwéenge/ {both} 'He surpasses his older brother in intelligence.' (Overdulve 1975:280)
  /[inf] guhá [O1] umuntu [O2] ikiintu/ {both} 'to give something to someone' (Overdulve 1975:280)
  /dukiraanure utubwiire ([S-rel]V) uurusha [O1] undí [O2] akamaró/ {Rwanda} 'Settle our dispute and tell us who is more important.' [lit. '... the one who surpasses the other in value.'] (R28.10)

Since an INFINITIVE functions fully as both a verb and a noun, as a VERB it can take an object and as a NOUN it can serve as the object of a head or auxiliary verb.
Chapter 16: Word Order

- V + O + [O=V-inf + O] /ndóori atanga mugabo gusoma igitabo/ [both] 'Ndori is ahead of Mugabo in reading the book.' (that is, Ndori reads the book before Mugabo) (Overdulve 1975:281)
/mugabo arusha ndóori guhíinga umurimá/ [Rwanda] 'Mugabo surpasses Ndori in cultivating the field.' (that is, Mugabo cultivates the field better than Ndori) (Overdulve 1975:281)

The complement of many verbs (see §8.6) and several auxiliary verbs may be an INFINITIVE (see §10.2.2 and Table 116), which itself may be followed by its own complement..

- V(-aux) + O=V-inf /twiiháatire gusoma/ [Rwanda] 'We should make every effort to read.' (R4)
/bakuunda kóoga/ [both] 'They like swimming.' (Overdulve 1975:281)
/tureenda kurya/ [both] 'We are about to eat.' (Overdulve 1975:281)

- V-inf + Nobj /bugiingo nya ntaámbwe igiiyé kuryá wáa mugabo…/ {Rundi} 'Just when that lion was about to eat that man ...' (R27.8)
/imvúra ishaaka kwóonly na imirimá/ [both] 'The rain is threatening to destroy the fields.' (Rodegem 1970:412)
/iyó ishaaka kujúgunya imyaanda/ [Rwanda] 'When it wants to discard waste ...' (R12)
/umutégarúgorí utáarasháatse kwíivuga izína/ [Rwanda] '... a woman who was not willing to reveal her name.' (R22)
/ndashaaka kwiíga ikinyarwaanda/ [both] 'I want to learn Rwanda.' (Overdulve 1975:281)

An AUTONOME also functions fully as both a verb and a noun. Thus, as a VERB it can take an object or complement and as a NOUN it can serve as the OBJECT of a verb (or the PREDICATE COMPLEMENT of a copulative verb).

- V + O=V-auto /duteeké ibiryóoshye/ [Rwanda] 'Let's cook delicious food.' (R18)
/ntuúvuge ibitári ngoombwá/ [both] 'You should not speak about unnecessary things.' (Bizimana 1998:146)
/ní haagirá uwukómereka ntuúze uvugé ngo sinakúbwíiye/ [Rundi] 'If there is anyone who gets hurt, you should not say that I didn't warn you.' (R23)
/sínáménye ibyaákurikívehó/ [Rwanda] 'I didn't realize what happened next.' (R34.5)
/ntuúsabe ibidáharí/ [both] 'You should not ask for what is not there.' (Bizimana 1998:148)

A VOCATIVE usually comes sentence final, but may come sentence initial, especially if it followed by a modifying phrase.

- (S) + V + (O) + Voc /yaaga sogokú!/ [Rundi] 'Chat, Grandpa!' (R27)
/uri mwiizá maáma/ [both] 'You are good, my mother!' (R36)
/murézi utáanga urugero rwiizá/ [both] 'Oh teacher who provides a good example!' (36.5)

16.3. Forms of Sentence Reversal

Apart from the standard word order, Kinyarwanda and Kirundi have many means of REVERSAL available. Changing the word order generally changes the sense, impact, or overall implications of what is being said (such highlighting is termed FOCUS in linguistics). As Bizimana points out, not all instances of reversal or FRONTING result in emphasis. Many instances simply have completely different meanings:

/inká ni itúungo/ [both] 'Cattle are livestock.' (Bizimana 1998:342)
/itúungo ni inká/ [both] '(One kind of) livestock is cattle.' (Bizimana 1998:342)
Chapter 16: Word Order

16.3.1. Passivization [OVS]

The most common form of reversal available in both English and Bantu is the use of the PASSIVE VOICE (-w-) whereby the object is promoted to subject position and the doer of the action (the passive agent, if any is specified) is put in the place usually reserved for the object, marked by na.

- O + V-pass + (na-S)
  /imbwá yiishwe n’íngwe/ {both} 'The dog is killed by the leopard.' (Overdulve 1975:283)
  cf: /imbwá yiishe ingwe/ {both} 'The dog killed the leopard.' (Overdulve 1975:283)

Note that “in certain expressions a verb can have a passive meaning without taking a passive suffix, especially with regard to objects of everyday life” (Overdulve 1975:196).

- O + V-rel + S
  /amafaraanga ntáa yo ngirá/ {Rundi}, /amafaraanga ntáa yo ngirá/ {Rwanda} '... the money I don't have.' (Overdulve 1975:298)
  /ivyáamwa birimá abaruúndi/ {Rundi} '... the fruits which the Rundis cultivate.' (Cristini 2000:169)
  /inyána zirágiye abáana/ {both} '... the calves which the children guard.' (Cristini 2000:169, LN)
  /inyama ziteetsé abagoré/ {both} '... the meat which the women cooked.' (LN, JN)

Note that the second (sequence) verb /zigakíra/ is ACTIVE, not passive.

16.3.2. Other Kinds of Object-First Constructions [OV(S)]

In one EMPHATIC CONSTRUCTION an object complement can be placed in front of the verb; in this case it is generally echoed as an object in the verbal form by an appropriate group-agreement infix.

- O + V
  /ibitooke tubitarika héepefo y’úrugó/ {Rundi} 'The bananas, we let them ripen outside in the yard.' (R15, Cristini 2000:331)
  /imirimo yaawe ndayigútesha/ {both} 'Your tasks, I make you abandon them.' (R36.2)
  /imirhuo yaanjye ndayigukwiíza/ {Rwanda} 'My troubles, I extend them out to you.' (R36.2)
  /amarirá yaanjye ndayigutúura/ {Rwanda} 'My tears, I give them to you.' (R36.2)

RELATIVE CLAUSES may also have this OVS order, but the verb is ACTIVE and its subject is not marked by na.

- O + V-rel + S
  /amafaraanga ntáa yo ngirá/ {Rundi}, /amafaraanga ntáa yo ngirá/ {Rwanda} '... the money I don't have.' (Overdulve 1975:298)
  /ivyáamwa birimá abaruúndi/ {Rundi} '... the fruits which the Rundis cultivate.' (Cristini 2000:169)
  /inyána zirágiye abáana/ {both} '... the calves which the children guard.' (Cristini 2000:169, LN)
  /inyama ziteetsé abagoré/ {both} '... the meat which the women cooked.' (LN, JN)
  /ijaambo rivuzé abagabo/ {both} '... a word that is spoken by men.' (LN, JN)
Note that generally the order of RELATIVE CLAUSES is more fixed than their indicative counterparts.

- **N + S + V-rel + Cop + Adj**
  `/ingwe abahigí b'ingwe baroondéra ni mbí/ [Rundi] 'The leopard that the hunters are looking for is dreadful.' (Cristini 2000:169)
  `/udukwi tweebwé turoondéra ni dukéeyí/ [Rundi] 'Sticks for firewood that we are looking for are really small (in amount).' (Cristini 2000:169)

- **N + S-V-rel + Cop + Adj**
  `/umurimá duhíwa ni mwízí/ [Rwanda] 'The field that we plow is good.' (Overdulve 1975:280)

- **N + S-V-rel + Obj**
  `/imirwa coro amítwí b'ínzirakareéngane/ [Rwanda] '... battles which kill innocent civilians.' (R10)

- **Rel-Pro + S-O-V-rel**
  `/cyó unsabá ... ndákiguha/ [Rundi] 'Whatever you ask from me, I will give it to you.' (R27.10)

### 16.3.3. Indefinite Constructions [VS]

There are certain INDEFINITE CONSTRUCTIONS with the order VS, i.e., wherein the verb comes first and the subject follows. These are usually translated by there is or there are. Kimenyi 1980:56 describes this process as "dummy insertion" with ha-. He points out that in this kind of construction, only subjects can be transformed in this way, i.e., not grammatical objects (as in passivization). However, this n10 construction can be found in both the active and the passive.

- **V-indef + S**
  `/haaje abaantu beénshi/ [both] v-indef-recent-perf-act-con 'There came many people.' (Overdulve 1975:280)
  `/hitarira umwáana/ [both] v-indef-imm-impf-act-dis 'It is the child who is crying.' (Kimenyi 1980:56) or 'There is a child crying.'
  cf: `/umwáana ararira/ [both] v-ind-imm-impf-act-dis 'The child is crying.'
  `/hiibwe umugóre/ [both] v-indef-imm-perf-pass-con 'It is the woman who was robbed.' (Kimenyi 1980:56) or 'There was a woman robbed.'
  cf: `/umugóre yaríibwe/ [both] v-ind-imm-perf-pass-dis 'The woman was robbed.'
  `/ntihiibwe umugóre/ [both] v-indef-neg-imm-perf-pass 'It is not the woman who was robbed.' (Kimenyi 1980:56) or 'There was no woman robbed.'
  `/haári háatumiwe abaantu bőóse/ [Rundi] (R29.3), /haári hááatumiwe abaantu bőose/ [Rwanda] (LN) v-indef-cop-loc-aux-cmp-v-part-v-part-perf-pass-con 'All the people had been invited.'
  `/haárahíinguwe imiti myiínshi/ [Rundi] v-indef-perf-pass-dis 'There were many medicines manufactured.' (R37.3)
  `/haáFKozwe ibibi vy'ágahomerabunwa/ [Rundi] (R37.4), /haáFKozwe ibibi by'ágahoma-munwa/ [Rwanda] (LN) v-indef-perf-pass-dis 'Evil beyond belief had been done.'
  `/hari abaantu batatu bahiingá/ [Rwanda] v-cop-loc-indef-imm + v-rel-imm 'There are three people who cultivate.' (Overdulve 1975:233)
Chapter 16: Word Order

16.3.4. Impersonal Constructions [V(O)]

The first group plural ba- they and the fourth group neuter singular ki- and plural bi- it are used to form IMPERSONAL CONSTRUCTIONS which do not make reference to specific persons, things, or events. In these, the subject is bound up in the verb and the sentence has no head noun. Such a verb may occur alone or with a variety of complements: object, adverb, clause, etc.

• V-impers [the verb alone]
  /biragayitse/ [both] v-impers-n4-pl-ind-imm-perf-dis 'It is despicable.' (R30.2, JN)
  /birakomeye/ [both] v-impers-n4-pl-ind-imm-perf-dis 'It is difficult.' or 'That's hard.' (Overdulve 1975:88, Bizimana 1998:340)
  /ntibishobóka/ [both] v-impers-n4-pl-ind-neg-imm-impf 'It is impossible.' (Overdulve 1975:88, JN)

• V-impers + O [verb + object or a variety of complements]
  /bizooba vyiizá/ {Rundi} (JN), /bizaaba byiíza/ {Rwanda} 'This will be beautiful'.
  /vyaáraangiye néézá/ {Rundi} (JN), /byaáraangiye néézá/ [Rwanda] 'This ended well.' (LN)
  /vyaákozwe vubá/ {Rundi} (JN), /byaákozwe vubá/ {Rwanda} 'It was done quickly.' (LN)
  /ni byiíza/ {Rundi} (JN), /ni byiíza/ [Rwanda] 'It is good.' (Overdulve 1975:88)
  /ni bibí/ [both] 'It is bad.' (Overdulve 1975:88)
  /bikaba vyúumviikana kó.../ {Rundi} (JN), /bikaba byúumviikana kó.../ {Rwanda} v-impers-n4-pl-ind-imm-impf 'And it is clear that ...' (R26.2)
  /vyaatwaaye amafaraanga menshi/ [Rundi] (JN), /byaatwaaye amafaraanga menshi/ [Rwanda] v-impers-n4-pl-ind-recent-perf-con 'This cost him a lot of money.' (LN)

16.3.5. Locative First Constructions [LocV(S)]

If the sentence starts out with a locative, then the subject appears behind the verb which is itself in the locative, i.e., it will have either an indefinite n10 subject or an appropriate postposition attached (see §16.1.4).

• Loc + V+post + S
  /kurí paríki y'ibirúunga vigaanjemo ingagi zó mu misózi/ {Rwanda} 'In the Volcano Park which is dominated by mountain gorillas ...' (LN)
  /mu gicapó hakaba harimwó umuhoro/ [Rundi] 'In the picture, there used to be a machete.' (R29.5)
  /mu rugó hari mó abaantu/ [Rwanda] 'There are people in the enclosure.' (Overdulve 1975:280)
  /mubíava nzo usuaanzi udáandarizwámwó/ [Rundi] 'to places where it is usually sold.' (R35.4)
  /múri baánki mfíseyó amafaraanga menshi/ [Rundi] (JN), /múri baánki mfítemó amafaraanga menshi/ [Rwanda] 'At the bank, I have (in it) a lot of money.' (Overdulve & Jacob 1998:265)

• Loc + n10-loc-V
  /ku mugórooba harákóonjía/ [both] 'In the evening, it is cold.' (Overdulve 1975:285)
  /ku kivú ni hééza/ [both] 'At Lake Kivu, it is beautiful.' (Overdulve 1975:285)
  /mu máazi hooga abahuúngu/ [both] 'There are (some) boys swimming in the water.' (Overdulve 1975:285)
Chapter 16: Word Order

- **Loc + S + v+post**
  
  /mu kabándé inká ziriishayó/ {Rundi} (JN), /mu kabándé inká ziriishamó/ {Rwanda} 'In a valley, cows graze there.' (Bizimana 1998:347)

16.3.6. Grammatical Reversal \((O)VS\)

In this highly idiomatic construction, the object appears first, followed by an indicative conjoint verb, and lastly the subject.\(^{484}\) Note that the verb agrees with the fronted object and a literal translation would often render the sentence's meaning as ludicrous.

- **O + V + S**
  
  /amafaraanga yaaanje yiivye ndé?/ {Rundi} (JN), /amafaraanga yaaanje yiibye ndé?/ {Rwanda} 'Who stole my money?' (LN)

  /ibi vyakoze ndé/ {Rundi} (JN), /ibi byakoze ndé/ {Rwanda} 'Who did this?' (LN)

  /uruguma ruva amaráso/ {both} 'Blood is flowing from the wound.' [lit: 'The wound is emitting blood.'](Meeussen 1959:215f, LN)

  /uwo murímá uhiinga Paawúro/ {Rwanda} 'This field is cultivated by Paul.' (Overdulve 1975:196)

  /umurímá uhiinga Yohaána/ {Rwanda} 'John cultivates the field.' [lit: 'The field cultivates John.'](Overdulve 1975:215–6)

  cf: /yohaána ahinga umurímá/ {Rwanda} 'John cultivates the field.' (Overdulve 1975:215–6)

  /umurímá uhiingwa na Yohaána/ {Rwanda} 'The field is cultivated by John.' (Overdulve 1975:216)

  cf: /imiento yuwira na Yohaána/ {Rwanda} 'Only he who has spent a sleepless night can talk about it.' [proverb]

  /ijaambo ryaavuzwe wéwe/ {Rundi} 'The word that you said.' (Cristini 2000:169)

  cf: /internet ryaavuzé na wéwe/ {Rundi} 'The word that was said by you.' (Cristini 2000:169)

  /yáa matá yanyooye umwáana/ {both} 'The child drank that milk.' [lit: 'That milk drank the child.'](Bizimana 1998:343)

  cf: /umwáana yanyooye yáa matá/ {both} 'The child drank that milk.' (Bizimana 1998:343)

  /im bogá zibona abáana/ {both} 'The children get the vegetables.' [lit: 'The vegetables get the children.'](Bizimana 1998:343)

  cf: /abáana babona imbogá/ {both} 'The children get the vegetables.' (Bizimana 1998:343)

  /amasúka ahiingishá abaantu/ {both} 'People plow with hoes.' [lit: 'Hoes make people plow.'](Bizimana 1998:345)

  cf: /abaantu báhiingishá amasúka/ {both} 'People plow with hoes.' (Bizimana 1998:345)

  /amasúka ahiingishá naabaantu/ {both} 'Hoes are used by people to plow.' (Bizimana 1998:345)

  /ababyéeyi buumvira umwáana/ {Rwanda} 'A child obeys (his) parents.' (Bizimana 1998:345)

  cf: /umwáana yuumvira ababyéeyi/ {Rwanda} 'The parents are obeyed by the child.' (Bizimana 1998:345)

In a similar construction, there is no fronted object, but an IMPERSONAL INDICATIVE conjoint verb is followed by the true subject (contrast the word order in §16.3.4). Note that the verb is in the NEUTER PLURAL (bi- n4-pl) but is ACTIVE, not passive as is the English rendition.

- **V-impersonal + S**
  
  /bitegetse mugaanga/ {both} 'It is ordered by the doctor.' (Overdulve 1975:196)

  /bivuze Yohaána/ {both} 'It is said by John.' (Overdulve 1975:196)

---

\(^{484}\) As Overdulve 1975:216 illustrates for Kinyarwanda, this SYNTACTIC REVERSAL has the effect of avoiding the passive suffix without changing the order of the words. Overdulve & Jacob 1998:266f point out that INVERSION puts emphasis on the verb, while SYNTACTIC REVERSAL places emphasis on the object. Also consult the numerous possibilities for reversal in Bizimana 1998:342–353. For Kirundi, see Meeussen 1959:215.
Even a passive construction can have reversal when the verb is marked with the postposition -mo (Rwanda) / -mwo (Rundi).

- **O + V-post (-mo / -mwo) + S**
  
  /nihó ibisagára bibiri vy'igihúgu c'úbuyápaáni vyaáteerwamwó boómbe atomike/ {Rundi}
  
  (R37.4), /nihó imigí ibirí y'igihúgu cy'úbuyápaáni vyaáteerwagamó boómbe atomike/
  
  {Rwanda} (LN) 'This is when atomic bombs were dropped upon two cities in Japan.' [lit. 'two cities of 
  Japan were bombed upon atomic']

An infinitive can be separated from its head verb for dramatic effect:

/nó kumwúumviriza ntaa wabáandaanije/ {Rundi} v-inf + neg-pred-ind + auto-n1-sg-red '... and there
  was no one who continued to pay attention to him.' [lit. ... and to pay attention to him there was no one.]

(R11)

Some instances of reversal may appear awkward, especially where several nouns appear and the subject of the verb is sentence final.

- **V + O1 + O2 + Loc + S**

/yahereye umwáana ibiryó muu nzu umubyéeyi/ {Rwanda} 'The parent gave food to the child in 
  the house.' (Bizimana 1998:341)
17. INDEX OF GRAMMATICAL TERMINOLOGY

The following bring together all of the technical terms used in this book and also terms one might encounter in French textbooks and grammars (mostly from Overdulve 1975).

ablative case – the place from or out of which an action proceeds

abstract noun – indicates an abstraction or non-tangible item, e.g., love, friendship, often marked by ubu- [n8], but also found in other noun classes [n5, n6]

accusative – the name of the case identifying the direct object of a verb or after certain prepositions in Latin which has been applied broadly to the grammar of other languages; in English and Bantu it occurs unmarked or zero after the verb, i.e., word order rather than case prevails; object pronoun infixes are also expressions of the accusative case

addressee – the one who is listening, the second person, as in English you (Old English thou, ye)

adjective – a smallish group of descriptive words in Bantu languages that modify a noun; each must match the class of the noun to which it is linked

adverb – a word that modifies a verb or an adjective and indicates time, place, manner, degree, intensity, frequency, measure, size, or opinion (§11)

adverbial numeral – the use of a number as an adverb, e.g., at once, primarily, at once (§7.3)

affirmative – a term indicating the positive logical value of the verb; contrast: negative

affix – a prefix, infix, or suffix (q.v.)

agent – the doer of an action

agreement marker – connects two nouns together and can serve to mark a whole range of relationships, including possession, attribution, etc.

allophones – alternate pronunciations of a given phoneme

alternate form – a word which has more than one shape, e.g., /ɪŋufʊ/ or /ɪŋuvʊ/ ‘strength’

andative – an auxiliary motion verb implying go to VERB, go and VERB (§10.2.2); contrast: venitive

antonym – a word with the opposite meaning of another, e.g., good – bad

apodosis – the then clause in a conditional statement (§8.1.4); contrast: protasis; see: indicative conditional

appellative (Overdulve 1975:252-254) – see: vocative

applicative verb augment – see: benefactive

article – the term sometimes used for the first vowel of a noun class marker, e.g., umu-, ama-; see: thematic vowel

aspect – indicates whether an action is ongoing or in progress (progressive), finished (perfective), or not yet completed (imperfective); contrast: tense

aspiration – the process of pronouncing a consonant with a puff of air, such as the first consonant of English pit, ton, kick

assimilation – the sound change whereby a sound becomes more similar to a neighboring sound, such as what happens to the English negative prefix in- in imperfect, incomplete, irregular

associative verb – the addition of the augment -an- indicates that the agents or subjects are doing an action to each other (mutual) or with one another (reciprocal)

attributive or stative – a verb augment (-ik- or -ek-) that has the force of turning a verb into an adjective-like or attributive construction (§8.14.5)

augment1 – a morpheme that comes after the verb root and usually changes the valence
augment – a morpheme which precedes the classifier and which has the same vowel as the latter; it is found in substantives and equivalent forms (Overdulve 1975:42,322); see: article

automatic – a predictable or consistent change in a language, such as some spelling differences between Rundi and Rwanda, e.g., Rwanda «cy» > Rundi «c», Rwanda «shy» > Rundi «sh», Rwanda «by» > Rundi «vý»; contrast: sporadic

cardinal numeral – a primary number, e.g., one, two, three, four, etc. (§7.1, Tables 86–94)

cardinal vowel system – the five major vowels /a, e, i, o, u/

Cás i – monophonic, non-prevocalic prefix (Overdulve 1975:308 note 6); see: weak

Cás ii – diphonic and/or prevocalic prefix (Overdulve 1975:308 note 6); see: strong

causative verb – the addition of the augments -iish- or -eesh- implies that the action is made to happen or caused to occur (§8.14.2); see also: factitive verb

causitive verb

caused actor – the person made to do some action as the result of adding the causative augments –iish– or –eesh– (§8.14)

back – refers to the location in the mouth or oral cavity where certain vowel sounds are made; see: front – central – back

benefactive or applicative verb – the addition of the augment -ir- or -er- shows the result of applying the action; doing s.t. for, to, or on behalf of someone; it can turn a transitive verb into a ditransitive one (§8.14.1)

bisyllabic – a word consisting of two syllables

both – for the purposes of this study, the word or example occurs in Kirundi (Bujumbura dialect) and in Kinyarwanda (Kigali dialect)

citation form – the standard form given when one says a noun or a verb; the form most likely to appear in a dictionary
Chapter 17: Index of Grammatical Terminology

class – a member of a grammatical subdivision of nouns in the Bantu language family; one of 19
categories in Kinyarwanda or Kirundi in which the majority of nouns are arranged; a class is
characterized by its own classifier (Overdulve 1975:41,322); contrast: group

class marker – an affix associated with a particular noun class, e.g., ki (iki) n4-sg, bu (ubu) n8-
sg

classifier – prefix or infix characteristic of or associated with a specific noun class (Overdulve
1975:41,322)

closed set – a part of speech not open to borrowing

cognitive verb – a verb that expresses some form of knowing (e.g., assume, suppose, perceive, or
be acquainted, §8.16.2)

collective noun – a noun that refers to a collection of entities, e.g., /ubwaátsi/ {both} n8-sg-col
‘grass,’ /umuceri/ {both} n2-sg-col ‘rice,’ or a noun in the plural that does not have a singular,
sometimes called PLURALIA TANTUM, e.g., /amahóro/ {both} ‘peace,’ /amáazi/ {both} ‘water’

comparative degree – an inflected (e.g., English -er) or phrasal (e.g., English more) form of an
adjective which is in an ascending series and shows that a noun has more of a quality than some
other noun with which it is compared, not found in Rwanda and Rundi

comparative verb – two verbs (/-:ngana/ {both} ‘be the same size, be equal or equivalent; be so
many’ and /-sa/ {both} ‘look like, resemble’) that express some form of comparison (§8.16.3)

comparison of inferiority – use of an active verb to compare one noun to another (§6.6)

comparison of superiority – use of an active verb to compare one noun to another (§6.6)

compensatory lengthening – the lengthening of a vowel which compensates for the loss of
another vowel, e.g., /mur’úuru/ {both} ‘in this one’ [n6-sg] < /muri uru/

completely different word – a situation where two otherwise closely-related dialects do not
overlap at all, e.g., /igitígiri/ {Rundi}, /umubaré/ {Rwanda} ‘number’

compound – two or more roots or stems put together into a single word

conditional – the verb tense marked by /-oo-/ {Rundi} or /-aa-/ {Rwanda} signifying some
hypothetical condition or eventuality, often translated by should or would (§8.1.4)

conditional future – the tense and affix combination /-aa-zaa-/ found only in Kinyarwanda
which refers to a hypothetical condition or eventuality at least one day in the future

conditioning mood (Overdulve 1975:241f, French: mode conditionnant) – see: relative
conditional

conjunct – refers to a verb that has an object or some other complement following it; it is unmarked
and loses any high tone; contrast: disjoint

conjugation – moving around from one verb form to another

conjunction – word form that links words or sentence parts; see: coordinating and sub-
ordinating

conjunctive1 – a word that behaves like a conjunction

conjunctive2 (Overdulve 1975:155f, 258–260, French conjonctif) – see: participial

conjunctive writing or written conjunctively – entire phrases are written together as one word,
as in Rwanda and Rundi /baramúfasha/ ‘they are helping him;’ contrast: conjunctive writing

consonant – sounds which, in one way or another, obstruct the flow of air through either the mouth
or nose; contrast: vowel

consonant roots – stems that begin with a consonant

context – the total setting or situation of a word in a sentence or a story, one should always be on
the lookout for clues given by context
contraction – a sequence of two or more vowels within a word

coordinating conjunction – a word linking equal grammatical elements, e.g., and, or in English; contrast: subordinating conjunction

couple – a group of two classes which regularly go together to express singular-plural contrast (Overdulve 1975:41,322); see: noun group

copulative verb – the invariable /ni/ and /si/ and the conjugated forms of /–bá/, /–báye/ and /–ri/ which express the idea of to be (§8.17)

coverb – four monosyllabic verb roots that follow another verb which serves as its head verb: /–té/ {both} how?, /–tí/ {both} said, /–tyá/ {both}, /–rtýá/ {Rundi} like this, /–tyó/ {both}, /–rtýó/ {Rundi} like that (§10.1)

current relevance – an implication of the perfective aspect that an action or state has been achieved but its effects are still present, e.g., has arrived (and is still here), is hungry (has become hungry and still is)

daerisis (or double dots) – designates a long vowel, both of which are high-toned, e.g., /mwëse/ {Rundi} 'all of you' = /mwéése/

definite – equivalent to the in English; contrast: indefinite

degree – category of tense in a verb conjugation (Overdulve 1975:322)

déctic – a demonstrative pronoun, e.g., this, that

dependent – a form which cannot be used alone because it is tied to other words within the phrase

derivation – the process of moving from one part of speech to another (e.g., friend noun > befriend verb) or even to a subclass of a given part of speech (friend, friendship nouns); contrast with inflection

derived homographs – words that happen to be pronounced the same although the difference is exaggerated by different grammatical patterns, e.g., rays [n-pl] and raise [v-tr] in English; «basoma» in Rundi has nine different readings based on mood or tense distinctions, while it has five differences in Rwanda (Table 10)

dialect – a member of a speech community that is mutually-intelligible with at least one other member of that community all of which then form a single language (q.v.)

digraph – a combination of two letters which represents a single sound

diminutive – meaning involving something smaller in size, relationship, or degree to a correlate noun in another class

discourse verb – a verbal ideophone or interjective verb that occurs alone and is invariable or inflected

disjoint or disjunctive – refers to a verb that does not have any object or other complement following it; it is usually marked by -ra- and preserves root tonality; contrast: conjoint

disjunctive writing or written disjunctively – whole words are separated by spaces, as in English they will have bought it; contrast: conjunctive writing

disjunctively – written as whole words and separated by spaces (contrast: conjunctively)

disyllabic – having two syllables; contrast: monosyllabic, trisyllabic, polysyllabic

ditransitive – a verb that takes two objects

dual – just two individuals or items are specified

dual meaning – enumerative pronoun that covers the sense of English both, two of

durative or frequentative – a verb augment (-iriz-, -erez-) that carries the sense of do VERB persistently, repeatedly, or over a prolonged time (§8.14.8)
echo – a sound or a form that is found identically elsewhere in the same word, such as the first vowel of most class affixes (umu-, iki-, ama-, uku-, etc.) or the second part of a reduplication (kugeendageenda, gukorakora, etc.)

echo form – emphatic pronoun forms that relate to each of the noun groups (§4.1)
eision – loss of vowels across a word boundary

emphatic personal pronouns – the long form of personal pronouns (§4.1)
ending – morpheme which habitually terminates a word (Overdulve 1975:323); see: suffix
enumerative – a word that overlaps with a number in terms of its meaning (§7.5)
enumerative interrogative – a question word asking Which (of two or several)? (§13.5)
enumerative pronoun – pronouns that share semantic features with numbers (§7) in that they imply some form of enumeration (§4.10)
exclamative (Overdulve 1975:252) – see: interjection
existential verb – forms of the verb (ku)gira {both} 'be (such and such, of a certain quantity or number)'
expression – a group of words usually used together
extended meaning – a secondary, but related meaning
external object – a full noun that appears in the sentence as a complement after the verb

factitive verb – the addition of the augment -y- or palatalization implies that the action is or has become a fact (§8.14.3); see also: causative verb
false friends – words that sound the same or similar but do not have the same meaning, e.g., English demand and French demande 'request;' cf: inter-dialectal homograph
feminine – female gender
final vowel – a vowel that occurs at the end of a word; contrast: initial vowel, penult vowel
first person – the speaker, as in English I, we
fixed or obligatory tone pattern – tone is always found on a given syllable
focus – a means of highlighting noun complements, e.g., passive voice (-w-) makes the object of an action into a subject, or word order reversal puts sentence elements out of their usual SVO order
free word order – the order of words per se does not serve a grammatical function so they may be switched around without any significant meaning change
frequentative – see: durative
fricative or spirant – sound made when the air flow gets partially obstructed, resulting in some form of friction within the mouth
front – central – back – refers to the location in the mouth or oral cavity where vowel sounds are made
future – verb tense signifying that an action is proposed to be completed

Ganda law also called Meinhof's law – see: nasal harmony
general kinship terms – kin nouns that have the usual possessive marking (§1.8.1, Table 18); contrast: primary kinship terms, secondary kinship terms
generic interrogative – the declined question root /–kí/ asking What? (§13.3, Table 130)
gerund – an auxiliary construction composed of the copulative –rí (always inflected with a high tone) plus a subjunctive verb invariably in n8-sg; its present tense form implies that an action is expected to occur within the same day of speaking; in the past, it implies an anticipated action in a previous time frame (§8.5.3)

glide or semivowel – if the air flows freely (which is the characteristic of a vowel), but is affected by the shape of the mouth

government – requiring that another word be in a specific grammatical category, e.g., adjectives or subjects must agree with the class and number (group) of the noun to which they refer

grammar differences – the case where two dialects inflect words in a completely different way, e.g., [future] {Rundi} -zoo-, {Rwanda} -zaa-

grammarian – a person who studies the structure and parts of speech of a language

grammatical class – see: class

group – way of looking at Bantu noun classes on the basis of their singular and plural forms taken together, e.g., group 1 = class 1 (umu-) & 2 (aba-), group 2 = class 3 (umu-) & 4 (imi-), etc.

hacek (or upside-down circumflex) – indicates a long vowel, the second of which is high-toned, e.g., /ububâsha/ {Rundi}, /ububaasha/ {Rwanda} 'ability'

head verb – the main verb in a sentence; term usually used if an auxiliary or subordinate verb is present, such as I want to go (want is the head verb)

high – mid – low – refers to the position of the tongue (tongue height) in the pronunciation of a vowel

high tone – the rising in pitch on a given mora or syllable; contrast: low tone

high tone root – a base or stem that is marked by at least one high tone, usually on the first vowel

homograph – a word with the same spelling but different sound, which also has a completely different meaning, e.g., English close, /klos/ 'near' as opposed to /klo:z/ 'shut'

homonym – one of two or more forms that have the same sound but a completely different meaning, e.g., English right 'correct' vs. 'not left'

homophone – a word with the same sound but different spelling, e.g., English raise vs. rays

hortative – the mood of a verb expressing some form of urging or encouragement, e.g., let’s do x (§8.9), contrast: optative

human ecosystem – the total local environment established by people living in a particular area, e.g., a dam in a river, a city, a house, etc

hypothetical – the logical value of a verb marked by /ní-/ if followed by an object relative construction, immediate in Rwanda and recent in Rundi; see also: affirmative, negative

ideophone – a word that imitates an event, a sound, or even a color (as if it were speaking)

idiomatic meaning – the true meaning which usually does not relate to the individual meaning of the words; contrast: literal meaning

immediate – the verb tense comprising four distinct meanings: (1) general, timeless truth (e.g., in a proverb); (2) present, current action; (3) today or immediate future; (4) immediate past (§8.1.1)

immediate disjunctive – verb tense marked with /-ra-/; in addition to its general use it is used, even before a complement, to express the present (current action) or the today future (Overdulve 1975:61)

imperative – the mood of a verb expressing a command (§8.7)
imperfective – the -a aspect suffix on a verb which shows that an action has not yet been completed or is still in progress

impersonal – a construction which does not make reference to specific persons, things, or events, marked by first group plural ba- they and the fourth group neuter singular ki- and plural bi- it

inalienable possessive – a construction based on n6-sg rw- with the sense of very own’ (§4.4)

inceptive – verb tense signifying yet or already in the affirmative and not yet in the negative

inchoative – a verb signifying becoming x

indefinite – equivalent to a or an in English (§4.8)

indefinite nouns – forms used when the speaker has either forgotten a word (or a name), or would rather not reveal it (§4.8)

independent – a form which can be used alone; a form that can be a complete utterance

indicative – the mood of main or independent clauses, used in making assertions or asking questions (§8.1; cf: Overdulve 1975:61)

indicative conditional – the then clause in a if ... then statement; see: relative conditional, cf: apodosis

infinitive – citation form of a verb meaning to VERB in English (§8.6); can also serve as a noun in group 9a; serves as the complement of auxiliary verbs like to want or to be able

infix – an affix specifying the noun group of an object that comes after other prefixes but immediately before the root

inflection – moving about within a given part of speech, such as changing a noun from singular to plural or conjugating a verb for a different tense or mood; contrast: derivation


initial vowel – a vowel that occurs at the beginning of a word; contrast: penult vowel, final vowel

insideness – an interior location in space or in time

instrumental – specifies with or using x and marked by the augment -ish- or -eesh-; the reason for or result of an action; a way or means; carries the sense of while or during with time words

intensive degree – a form of an adjective (e.g., phrasal in English using adverbs like very, extremely) which is in an ascending series and shows that a noun has more of a quality than some other noun with which it is compared. marked by the suffixes –:nyá, –:yá, and –:yí in Kirundi (§6.6)

intensive or repetitive – a series of verb augments (-agur-, -agir-, -agagur-, -agar-) that imply that an action is repeated many times or takes place over a long period of time (§8.14.7)

intensive or repetitive action – the implication of reduplication on verbs (§2.5.17)

inter-dialectal homograph – words that look (or even sound) the same, but have a completely different meaning, e.g., «nyakanga» 'September' {Rundi}, but 'July' {Rwanda}; cf: false friends

interjection – a call or outcry made by a speaker, expressing his or her attitude or personal reaction to something which has arisen; a verbal gesture or emotive word, such as in English ouch!, help!, oh!

internal object – an object pronoun that occurs immediately before the verb root; see: infix

interrogative – a question word

intonation – tone marks a sentence type (e.g., question, exclamation, statement, etc.); the function of high sounds and lows sounds at the level of the sentence (Overdulve 1975:322)
intransitive – a verb that does not take a direct object
invariable – a word that does not inflect or change (copulatives /ni/ or /si/, adverbs, prepositions, and interjections)
invariable interrogative – the question word /iki/ asking What? (§13.3)
invariable interrogative – the question word /ki/ asking What kind? or What sort of? (§13.4)
irregular – any form that does not fit the pattern considered basic for that part of speech
irregular noun – any noun that either is missing either a plural or singular form, or a noun that jumps from one noun class to another in its plural form (§3.5)
irregular verb – any verb not inflected according to the general patterns of a verb conjugation (§8.16)
iterative – doing something again, e.g., the English prefix re-

jump tonal rule – moves a high tone within the root word one mora to the right
jussive – the mood of a verb in Kinyarwanda expressing negative wishes or expectations (§8.8)

kin term – a word or phrase specifying one's relationship (i.e., my father, your father vs. his father)
Kinyarwanda /ikinyarwaanda/ – in this study the Rwandan dialect of the greater Kigali area
Kirundi /ikiruúndi/ – in this study the Rundi dialect of the greater Bujumbura area

language – the collection of all dialects (q.v.) that are mutually intelligible
left-branching – the tendency to put all the details that modify, qualify or otherwise explain a noun ahead of it, i.e., to the left in writing; English is a left-branching language (§16.1)
letter – a character used in the spelling of a language
lexical – that which pertains to the wordstock of a language, all that is presented in the dictionary (cf: Overdulve 1975:70,322)
lexical morphophoneme of the root – morphophoneme which plays an integral role in the root which is presented in a dictionary (Overdulve 1975:70); see: root tonality
limitation – having the sense of English only, just (§3.2.8.4)
literal meaning – the meaning obtained if the words are translated one by one; contrasts with idiomatic meaning
locative – expresses the location of an action, such as the place in or position at; marked by the prepositions ku, mu, i, kwaa or by the suffixes -ko, -mo / -mwo, -yo
logical value – the nature of the assertion: affirmative, negative, or hypothetical
long vowel – a double vowel; a vowel that lasts two morae /aa, ee, ii, oo, uu/
low tone – the falling in pitch on a given mora or syllable; contrast: high tone
low tone root – a root with all vowels pronounced with low pitch and written without any characters above (unmarked)

macron – designates a long low-toned vowel in Kirundi, e.g., /(ku)gša/ {Rundi}, /(ku)giša/ {Rwanda} 'make s.o. go'
manner interrogative – a question word asking How? (§10.1.3, §13.9)
marked 1 – having an affix or high tone, e.g., indicative immediate disjoint (marked with -ra-), passive (marked with -w-); contrast: unmarked
marked – having a presupposition or special meaning attached, e.g., How young are you? implies that the person is young, not old; contrast: unmarked

marker – a verbal morpheme placed immediately after the prefix, and which characterizes in particular the category of degree (Overdulve 1975:61,322)

masculine – male gender

Meinhof’s law also called Ganda law – see: nasal harmony

metathesis – sound switching, e.g., English ask > African-American English aks

Meussen’s rule – elimination of the second of the two high tones in a row; two high tones do not normally occur on immediately-following morae; the second one will be dropped (§2.4.25); cf: tonal haplography

mobile tonal rule or leftward tone shift – moves a high tone one mora to the left

monosyllabic – consisting of just one syllable, e.g., monosyllabic verbs; contrast: disyllabic, trisyllabic, polysyllabic

mood – the verbal function within the type of statement being made; see: indicative, participial, relative, autonomous, infinitive, imperative, jussive, hortative, optative

mora [pl: morae] – the length or duration of a vowel; a long vowel represents two morae

moraic tonality – the placement of high tone on a given mora (rather than on a specific syllable); contrast: syllabic tonality

moraic tone rule – high tone appears on the first mora following the first consonant of the word

morpheme – the smallest meaningful unit obtainable by linguistic analysis; a word is made up of morphemes (Overdulve 1975:42,322)

morphology – the layering of affixes around a root (§8, Table 101); the study of the grammatical structure of words (Overdulve 1975:322)

morphophonology / morphophonology – the study of different phonological forms that can serve as morphemes (Overdulve 1975:322); see: morphophonemic change

morphophonemic change – a sound change brought about by contact with different morphemes, e.g., /d/ > /r/

morphotoneme – unit of tonality at the level of the morpheme; one passes from morphotonemes to tonemes by the rules of representation (Overdulve 1975:70,322)

mutual – the addition of the augment -an- indicates that the agents or subjects are doing an action to each other (§8.14.4); see also: reciprocal

narrative – a simple (immediate tense) form of the verb that acquires its time value from context; it has a logical connection to the main action (§8.1.1, §8.1.9); contrast: subsecutive

nasal – sound produced when the air flows through the nose rather than the mouth

nasal harmony (Ganda law, Meinhof’s law) – instead of a nasal becoming more like a consonant (e.g., in- > im- in §2.5.2), the consonant /b/ becomes the nasal /m/ if the following syllable begins with a nasal, e.g., /imaάnza/ {both} n6-pl ‘disputes, litigations < iN-baάnza

natural gender – based upon the sex of the referent

negative – any word that contains or expresses the idea of no or not; a term indicating the negative logical value of the verb, e.g., nti- or -ta- are negative markers for verbs; contrast: affirmative

neuter – neither gender, i.e., not masculine or feminine

nil – nothing, no data available or the form is not known to occur

nominal – a word that serves as a noun, such as pronouns, autonomes, infinitives, or adjectives
nominal prefix – a prefix which relates to the noun (Overdulve 1975:42)
nomnative – the name of the case identifying the subject of a finite or copulative verb in Latin which has been applied broadly to the grammar of other languages
non-stable initial tone – several verb constructions have high tone on the first syllable so long as the verb does not come first in the sentence or follow a pause, e.g., negative verbs with ni-, copulatives with ni, si or -rí, and imperatives (§2.4.13); cf: provisional high tone (Stevick 1965:22) or initial unstable tone (Cristini 2000:186f, Rodegem 1967:102 French: ton initial instable)
noun – a form inflected for class, number, and case, and which refers broadly to persons, places, or things
noun class – a way of marking nouns among Bantu languages somewhat like gender in Indo-European languages; there are 19 noun classes in Rwanda-Rundi; contrast: noun group
noun group – the combination of singular and plural noun classes; there are 13 in Rwanda-Rundi
noun phrase – a head noun linked with another nominal, a numeral, or an adjective
noun phrase agreement markers – see: possessive markers
number – singular and plural; grammatical category encompassing class agreement (for the first six or seven) and fixed forms for those higher
numeral – a number in the form of a cardinal (one), ordinal (first), or adverbial (once)
numeral interrogative – a question word asking How much? or How many? (§13.8, Table 132)
object – the receiver of the action
object pronoun infix – an affix specifying the noun group of an object that comes after other prefixes but immediately before the root
object relative pronoun – a relative pronoun followed by a verb in the object relative mood; also called: precessive pronoun (§4.5 and Table 61)
optative – the mood of a verb expressing a wish (cf: Overdulve 1975:251f)
ordinal – any number expressing a sequence in a series equivalent to English -th (§7.2, Table 95)
orthography – the spelling system of a language
outsideness – an exterior location in space or in time
palatalized consonant – sound combinations with /y/
participial – the mood of dependent or subordinate clauses (§8.2), literally translated with -ing; also used in temporal clauses implying when or as soon as, after certain head verbs involving cognition, plus a number of auxiliary verbs (see §10.2.1 and Table 115), and always after the copulative auxiliaries -rí, -bá that show that an action is out of the main time line (see §10.3), usually marked by high tone on the first postconsonantal vowel
passive – a transitive verb form marked by the pre-suffix -w-, allowing the object of an action to serve as the subject of the sentence (§8.15); see: voice; contrast: active
pejorative – derogatory, depreciatory, reflecting a negative attitude
penult or penultimate – the next to last syllable or the second syllable from the end of the word; contrast: initial syllable, final syllable
perfective – the -ye aspect suffix on a verb which shows that an action has been completed or a state has been achieved, i.e., have VERBed; see: current relevance
persitve – verb tense signifying that an action is still going on
person – grammatical category relating to the speaker (first person I or we), the addressee or person who is listening (second person you), or another, i.e., who or what is being talked about (third person he, she, it, they)

personal interrogative – the question word /ndé/ asking Who? (§13.3)

phoneme(s) – significant sounds making up all words within a language

phonemic representation – sounds are written between slashes /a/

phonesteme – an equivalent of Bantu ideophones (q.v.) in some other language families

phonetic rendition – sounds are written within square brackets [a]

phonetics – describes how the sounds that actually occur in words are pronounced

phonologist – a person who analyzes which sounds are critical to a specific language

phonology – the area of linguistics that deals with sounds that are critical to a specific language; the study of different sounds and their pronunciation (Overdulve 1975:322)

phonotactics – the study of sound combinations which are permittable in a language

phrase – two or more words that together serve as a single part of speech, such as a noun phrase or a verb phrase

place interrogative – a question word asking Where? (§13.7)

plural – grammatical category of number identifying more than one; contrast: singular, dual

pluralia tantum – collective nouns (q.v.) in the plural that do not have a singular

polysyllabic – having four or more syllables; contrast: monosyllabic, disyllabic, trisyllabic

positional – a word that occurs in a fixed position, e.g., before or after a noun; see: postposition and preposition

positive degree – the basic form of an adjective which implies no comparison

possessed or thing possessed – the first member of a possessive phrase in Kirundi and Kinyarwanda followed by a possessive marker, e.g., /umwiigiisha wa yóhaání/ {both} 'John's teacher' (§3.6.3.2, §4.4)

possessive – marks the relationship between possessor (like English 's) and thing possessed; also marks some association with a head noun (like English of); sometimes such a construction behaves like an adjective (§3.6.3)

possessive marker – a special series of particles that agree with the noun group of the possessor (Table 48)

possessive verb – a verb that expresses possession or ownership, /-físe/ {Rundi}, /-fíte/ {Rwanda} 'have, own, possess' (§8.16.1)

possessor – the second member of a possessive phrase in Kirundi and Kinyarwanda preceded by a possessive marker, e.g., /umwiigiisha wa yóhaání/ {both} 'John's teacher' (§3.6.3.2, §4.4)

postposition – a form specifying a location that comes after the verb

postprefix – the morpheme that immediately follows a prefix (Overdulve 1975:322)

postradical (syllable) – the syllable that immediately follows the root syllable (Overdulve 1975:70,322)

precessive pronoun – a relative pronoun followed by a verb in the object relative mood (§4.5 and Table 61); also called: object relative pronoun

predicate – the part of a sentence that follows the subject, usually consisting of the verb and any complements (object, locative, etc.) attached to it

predicate complement – the "object" or complement of a copulative verb (ní, –rí, –bá)
predicative copulative – invariable monosyllabic verbs (ní, sí) which can only have a third person (he is, she is, they are) or indefinite (it is) subject (§8.17.1)

predicative negative – a construction signifying there is not or there are none, marked with /ntaa/ and its other conjugated forms

prefix – any affix that comes before the root; small word part or morpheme that comes before a root or stem; indicates the class membership of a noun, the subject or tense of a verb

preposition – a form that comes before the noun or nominal (contrast: postposition)

pre-prefix – the morpheme which immediately precedes the prefix (Overdulve 1975:70,323)

preterit – the verb tense signifying an action completed previous to the day of speaking about it (§8.1.3)

primary homographs – words which in their root form happen to be pronounced the same and belong to the same part of speech, e.g., English light 'not heavy' – 'not dark.'

primary kinship terms – kinship nouns where the possessor is built in, with no possessive marking, e.g., /daată/ {both} 'my father,' /só/ {both} 'your father' (§1.8.1, Table 16)

progressive – denotes an ongoing action

prohibitive – an auxiliary verb/-ooya/ {both} ordering one to stop doing VERB or which does not allow VERB (§8.16.4)

pronoun – a word that stands for a noun (a person, location, or other noun)

proper noun – a personal, family, or place name; always capitalized

protasis – the if clause in a conditional statement (§8.1.4); contrast: apodosis

Proto Bantu – the prehistoric or parent language of all Bantu languages

provisional high tone (Stevick 1965:22) or initial unstable tone (Cristini 2000:186f, Rodegem 1967:102 French: ton initial instable) – see: non-stable initial tone

proximity – a near location in space or in time

question word – an interrogative form

quotative – a form used to state the words said by oneself or another, either in a direct quote (exact words) or indirect quote (paraphrased or following a conjunction such as that, §10.1.1)

radical syllable – the first syllable of the root (Overdulve 1975:323)

reason interrogative – a question word asking Why? (§13.10)

recent past – the verb tense signifying an action completed on the same day of speaking about it (§8.1.2)

reciprocal – the addition of the augment -an- indicates that the agents or subjects are doing an action with one another (§8.14.4); see also: mutual

reduced form – the initial vowel of the prefix is dropped; the short form of a noun class prefix, e.g., ba- (aba-), ki- (iki-), ku- (uku-), etc.

reduplication – the process of repeating part or all of a word

reflexive – performing an action upon oneself; the prefix /íi-/ indicates that the agents or subjects are performing the action either upon themselves or by themselves (§8.13)

regressive assimilation – for words having four or more syllables, vowel harmony (q.v.) can work backwards to such an extent that it changes a root vowel, e.g., /-gomorora/ {both} v-rev-tr 'take down a dam or blockade, remove an obstacle' < /-gomena/ v-tr 'build a dam, obstacle, blockade' (§2.5.13)
repetitive – see: intensive
relative – the verb mood of dependent or subordinate clauses that broadly translate as who, which, or that in English; relative clauses are linked to an element (subject or object) within the main clause and are usually marked by high tone on the second syllable of the root (§8.3)
relative conditional – the if clause in a if ... then statement; see: indicative conditional, cf: protasis
relative subjective – see: autonome (Overdulve 1975:156-158, 231)
reversive – a verb augment that creates a verb with the reverse meaning of the root, e.g., open vs. close, cover vs. uncover (§8.14.6)
right-branching – the tendency the put all the details that modify, qualify or otherwise explain a noun after it, i.e., to the right in writing; Kirundi and Kinyarwanda are right-branching languages (§16.1)
root or radical – the minimal part of a word that carries its basic meaning; meaningful form that occurs as an element of inflection or derivation; contrast: stem; the fundamental morpheme of a word, which contains its lexical meaning (Overdulve 1975:42)
root cell – first cell of a root (Overdulve 1975:322)
root syllable – the first syllable of the root (Overdulve 1975:70)
root tonality – basic unit of tonality assigned to a word
Rundi /ikiruúndi/ – in this study the dialect of the greater Bujumbura area
Rwanda /ikinyarwaanda/ – in this study the dialect of the greater Kigali area
second person – the addressee or person spoken to, i.e., you
secondary homograph – see: derived homograph
secondary kinship terms – kin nouns with obligatory plural possessive marking (§1.8.1, Table 17)
sequence – the marker (-ka-) that establishes an action as chronologically related to a prior action (§8.12); see: subsecutive
singular – grammatical category of number identifying one and only one; contrast: plural, dual
singulative pronoun – an enumerative pronoun that covers the sense of English alone, only, by oneself (§4.10.1)
sound change – also called: morphophonemic change
sporadic – a unusual or inconsistent change in a language, e.g., when two speech varieties have words that are slightly different: Rundi ←–anka→ vs. Rwanda ←–anga→ 'dislike, reject;' contrast: automatic
stative – a verb showing an emotion, feeling, or state, usually it is intransitive; such verbs usually are in the perfective to show current relevance (q.v.)
stative verb augment – see: attributive (§8.14.5)
stem – a small word-part that is stripped of all affixes, but which occurs in word-formation; contrast with root; a form to which affixes may be or have been added
stop or obstruent sound – the airflow that passes through the vocal chords gets fully obstructed
strong noun – has a consonant (stop or strong nasal) in its prefix; contrast: weak noun
subject – the doer or agent, usually the first part of a clause or sentence; also called the nominative case
subject agreement prefixes – the pronoun and noun group affixes that usually appear first on the verb agreeing with the doer of the action (Table 54)

subjunctive – the -e aspect suffix of a verb which expresses a wish or obligation, e.g., /tuɡeɛndɛ/ 'we should go' (§8.5)

subordinate verb – a verb governed by a head verb (q.v.)

subordinating conjunction – a word linking unequal grammatical elements, e.g., if, that, unless, nevertheless in English; contrast: coordinating conjunction

subsecutive – a pragmatic feature of a verb showing that it is a sequence to another action, marked with -ka- and having chronological implications (§8.12)

suffix – small word part or morpheme that comes after a root or stem, e.g., –a, –e, –ye on a verb or –i, –o on a noun; any affixes that come after the root

superlative degree – an inflected (e.g., English -est) or phrasal (e.g., English most) form of an adjective which expresses the greatest amount or intensity of a quality that is found among all the objects compared, not found in Rwanda and Rundi

suppletion / suppletive – the complete replacement of a form by an unrelated word, such as English went as the past of go, first as the ordinal of one, or Rundi-Rwanda sin– 'I not' (n– + nti–) or mbere 'first' (mwé)

syllabic tonality – the orientation of tone to a given syllable; contrast: moraic tonality

syllabic tone change – causes tone to appear on or move to another syllable of the root

syllable – a combination of consonants surrounding one vowel (short or long) that can be pronounced independently

tap or flap – the sound produced when air is stopped by the tongue tapping against the ridge just behind the teeth

tense – refers to the placement of an action in time: present, recent past, preterit, conditional, future, persistive, inceptive (contrast: aspect)

thematic cluster – a group of morphemes including the root, suffixes, and, in certain cases, the ending (Overdulve 1975:42,323)

thematic consonant – serves to identify a specific noun class, e.g., b n1-pl, ry n3-sg, c {Rundi}, cy [Rwandaj] n4-sg, z n5-pl or n6-pl, rw n6-sg, k n7-sg, tw n7-pl, bw n8-sg, etc.

thematic vowel – one of three vowels (a, i, u) that occurs before the noun class prefix, e.g., ama-, imi-, iri-, aku-, umu-; also referred to as an article

theme – see: valence, transitive, intransitive

third person – the person or thing being discussed, someone or something other than the speaker or addressee, i.e., he, she, it, they

time interrogative – a question word asking When? (§13.6)

tiroir (French) – group of verbal forms which are found in the same section of a conjugation table, e.g., affirmative indicative immediate imperfective disjunctive (Overdulve 1975:94,323)

tonal haplology – elimination of the second of the two high tones in a row (§2.4.25)

tonality – function of high and low sounds at the level of syllables (Overdulve 1975:323)

tone – the pitch contour assigned to a particular vowel: high or low (§2.4)

tone anticipation – slight rise in pitch of a low tone vowel if the next syllable has a high tone vowel, e.g., brings word-final high tone to the penult

tone dissimilation – the tonality of the prefix and that of the root intertwine

toneme – unit of tonality at the level of the word (Overdulve 1975:323); see: root tonality
totality or wholeness – the ranges of English all, each, every, the whole of
transitive – a verb that has or takes a direct object
trigraph – a combination of three letters which represents a single sound, such as «shy»
trisyllabic – having three syllables; contrast: monosyllabic, disyllabic, polysyllabic
tritransitive – a verb that takes three objects
truncation – shortening of the word, such as by syllable deletion
two for the price of one – the fact that one word in Rwanda has two equivalents in Rundi, or vice versa

ultima – final syllable
unit of time – names of the hours of the day, the days of the week, or the months of the year based on numerals (§7.4, Tables 98–100)
unmarked\(^1\) – not receiving any affix or high tone, e.g., indicative immediate conjoint (-ø- as opposed to disjoint marked with -ra-), active (-ø- as opposed to passive marked with -w-); contrast: marked
unmarked\(^2\) – not having any presupposition or special meaning attached, e.g., How old are you? does not presuppose the person is young or old; contrast: marked
unrounded vowels – the lips are drawn or flat /i, e, a/

valence – relates to the total number of noun complements that a verb takes (§8.14), e.g., subject (1) + object (2) + indirect object (3) + location (4) + instrument (5); see intransitive, transitive, ditransitive
variation – a minor change, an alternate form (q.v.)
varying patterns – tone shifts of one or two morae
velarized consonants – sound combinations with /w/
venitive – an auxiliary motion verb implying come to VERB, come and VERB (§10.2.2); contrast: andative
verb – any form inflected for tense, voice, mood, aspect, etc.
verb phrase – a verb and any other part of speech, including an auxiliary or an object or locative complement, that together serve as a verb
verbal noun or deverbal noun – any verb form that serves as a noun, such as an infinitive, an autonome, or a noun formed directly from a verb root
verbal prefix – just as each substantive has its nominal prefix, each verb has its corresponding verbal prefix: a- is the class 1 verbal prefix corresponding to -mu-; ba- is the class 2 verbal prefix corresponding to -ba- (Overdulve 1975:42,61); see: subject agreement prefixes
vocative – a special nominal case form used to call a person or address a thing
voice – form of a verb that involves either an active construction (wherein an agent does s.t. to an object) or a passive one (whereby the object is acted upon by an agent)
voiced sound – sound produced when the airflow passes through the vocal chords and they are vibrating
voiceless sound – sound produced when the airflow passes through the vocal chords and they are at rest
vowel – sound produced in such a way that the airflow is not blocked /a, e, i, o, u/; contrast: consonant
vowel harmony – a change in vowel quality to match a previous vowel; in a few cases involving words having four or more syllables, vowel harmony can work backwards to such an extent that it changes a root vowel; this results in a process which linguists call regressive assimilation (§2.5.13)

vowel roots – roots that begin with a vowel

weak noun – the noun prefix consists of a single vowel, e.g., /i–/, or if it always has a single nasal, /m–, n–/

weak noun class – the noun prefix consists of a single vowel or a single nasal; contrast: strong noun class

word family – the full collection of all derived forms in a language

word formation – the process whereby words acquire affixes to change their use or meaning

word order – determines the position of the subject and the object in relation to the verb (§1.8.5, §16)

word pairs – equivalent words with the same meaning between two or more dialects, e.g., for 'bicycle' both Rwanda and Rundi have /iɡaáre/, but Rundi also has /ikiínga/

zero (ø) – the lack of a prefix or other affix in a pattern where one might be expected, such as the active voice is marked by ø in contrast to the passive marked by -w-, or the immediate conjoint is marked by ø in contrast with the immediate disjoint marked by -ra-